

SERVICE MANUAL

Field Service

bizhub 750/600

2005.08 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

FIELD SERVICE TOTAL CONTENTS

SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS	S-1
IMPORTANT NOTICE	S-1
DESCRIPTION ITEMS FOR DANGER, WARNING AND CAUTION	S-1
SAFETY WARNINGS	S-2
SAFETY INFORMATION	S-12
IMPORTANT NOTICE	S-12
INDICATION OF WARNING ON THE MACHINE	S-13
MEASURES TO TAKE IN CASE OF AN ACCIDENT	S-15
Composition of the service manual	C-1
Notation of the service manual	C-2

bizhub 750/600 Main Body

OUTLINE	1
MAINTENANCE	7
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING	
TROUBLESHOOTING	
APPENDIX	
* For particulars, say the contents of the main body	

* For particulars, see the contents of the main body.

DF-604

OUTLINE	1
MAINTENANCE	5
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING	27
* For particulars, see the contents of DF-604.	

LU-401/402

OUTLINE	1
MAINTENANCE	3
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING	
* For particulars, see the contents of LU-401/402.	

SF-601

OUTLINE	1
MAINTENANCE	3
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING	11
* For particulars, see the contents of SF-601.	

FS-504/602

OUTLINE	1
MAINTENANCE	5
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING	33
* For particulars, see the contents of FS-504/602.	

PI-501

OUTLINE	1
MAINTENANCE	3
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING	9
* For particulars, see the contents of PI-501.	

PK-502/503/504/505

OUTLINE	1
MAINTENANCE	3
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING 1	1
* For particulars, see the contents of PK-502/503/504/505.	

ZU-601/602

OUTLINE	1
MAINTENANCE	5
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING	19
* For particulars, see the contents of ZU-601/602.	

IC-202

OUTLINE	. 1
MAINTENANCE	. 3
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING	. 7
TROUBLESHOOTING	. 9
* For particulars, see the contents of IC-202.	

SAFETY AND IMPORTANT WARNING ITEMS

Read carefully the Safety and Important Warning Items described below to understand them before doing service work.

IMPORTANT NOTICE

Because of possible hazards to an inexperienced person servicing this product as well as the risk of damage to the product, Konica Minolta Business Technologies, INC. (hereafter called the KMBT) strongly recommends that all servicing be performed only by KMBT-trained service technicians.

Changes may have been made to this product to improve its performance after this Service Manual was printed. Accordingly, KMBT does not warrant, either explicitly or implicitly, that the information contained in this Service Manual is complete and accurate.

The user of this Service Manual must assume all risks of personal injury and/or damage to the product while servicing the product for which this Service Manual is intended.

Therefore, this Service Manual must be carefully read before doing service work both in the course of technical training and even after that, for performing maintenance and control of the product properly.

Keep this Service Manual also for future service.

DESCRIPTION ITEMS FOR DANGER, WARNING AND CAUTION

In this Service Manual, each of three expressions "ADANGER", "AWARNING", and "ACAUTION" is defined as follows together with a symbol mark to be used in a limited meaning.

When servicing the product, the relevant works (disassembling, reassembling, adjustment, repair, maintenance, etc.) need to be conducted with utmost care.

DANGER: Action having a high possibility of suffering death or serious injury

WARNING: Action having a possibility of suffering death or serious injury

CAUTION: Action having a possibility of suffering a slight wound, medium trouble and property damage

Symbols used for safety and important warning items are defined as follows:



SAFETY WARNINGS

[1] MODIFICATIONS NOT AUTHORIZED BY KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

Konica Minolta brand products are renowned for their high reliability. This reliability is achieved through high-quality design and a solid service network.

Product design is a highly complicated and delicate process where numerous mechanical, physical, and electrical aspects have to be taken into consideration, with the aim of arriving at proper tolerances and safety factors. For this reason, unauthorized modifications involve a high risk of degradation in performance and safety. Such modifications are therefore strictly prohibited. The points listed below are not exhaustive, but they illustrate the reasoning behind this policy.

F	Prohibited Actions			
	A DANGER			
•	Using any cables or power cord not specified by KMBT.	\bigcirc		
•	Using any fuse or thermostat not specified by KMBT. Safety will not be assured, leading to a risk of fire and injury.	\bigcirc		
•	Disabling fuse functions or bridging fuse terminals with wire, metal clips, solder or similar object.	\bigcirc	Ø,	
•	Disabling relay functions (such as wedging paper between relay contacts)	\bigcirc		
•	Disabling safety functions (interlocks, safety circuits, etc.) Safety will not be assured, leading to a risk of fire and injury.	\bigcirc	A Contraction of the second se	
•	Making any modification to the product unless instructed by KMBT	\bigcirc		
•	Using parts not specified by KMBT	\bigcirc		

[2] POWER PLUG SELECTION

In some countries or areas, the power plug provided with the product may not fit wall outlet used in the area. In that case, it is obligation of customer engineer (hereafter called the CE) to attach appropriate power plug or power cord set in order to connect the product to the supply.



[3] CHECKPOINTS WHEN PERFORMING ON-SITE SERVICE

Konica Minolta brand products are extensively tested before shipping, to ensure that all applicable safety standards are met, in order to protect the customer and CE from the risk of injury. However, in daily use, any electrical equipment may be subject to parts wear and eventual failure. In order to maintain safety and reliability, the CE must perform regular safety checks.

1. Power Supply



Connection to Power Supply

· Check whether the product is grounded properly.

If current leakage occurs in an ungrounded product, you may suffer electric shock while operating the product. Connect power plug to grounded wall outlet.

Power Plug and Cord

When using the power cord set (inlet type) that came with this product, make sure the connector is securely inserted in the inlet of the product. When securing measure is provided, secure the cord with the fixture properly. If the power cord (inlet type) is not connected to the product securely, a contact problem may lead to increased resistance, overheating, and risk of fire. · Check whether the power cord is not stepped on or pinched by a table and so on. Overheating may occur there, leading to a risk of fire. Check whether the power cord is damaged. Check whether the sheath is damaged. If the power plug, cord, or sheath is damaged, replace with a new power cord or cord set (with plug and connector on each end) specified by KMBT. Using the damaged power cord may result in fire or electric shock. • Do not bundle or tie the power cord. Overheating may occur there, leading to a risk of fire.

Power Plug and Cord

•	Check whether dust is collected around the power plug and wall outlet. Using the power plug and wall outlet without removing dust may result in fire.	0	
•	Do not insert the power plug into the wall outlet with a wet hand. The risk of electric shock exists.		
•	When unplugging the power cord, grasp the plug, not the cable. The cable may be broken, leading to a risk of fire and electric shock.	0	

1/	•	~	•	۰.	~
v	v				u
-	-	 	-	-	3
					_

• Never use multi-plug adapters to plug multiple power cords in the same outlet.

If used, the risk of fire exists.

 When an extension cord is required, use a specified one. Current that can flow in the extension cord is limited, so using a too long extension cord may result in fire.

Do not use an extension cable reel with the cable taken up. Fire may result.

2. Installation Requirements

Prohibited Installation Places

- Do not place the product near flammable materials or volatile materials that may catch fire.
 A risk of fire exists.
- Do not place the product in a place exposed to water such as rain.



When not Using the Product for a long time

 When the product is not used over an extended period of time (holidays, etc.), switch it off and unplug the power cord.

Dust collected around the power plug and outlet may cause fire.

Ventilation

 The product generates ozone gas during operation, but it will not be harmful to the human body.

If a bad smell of ozone is present in the following cases, ventilate the room.

- a. When the product is used in a poorly ventilated room
- b. When taking a lot of copies
- c. When using multiple products at the same time

Fixing

Be sure to lock the caster stoppers.

In the case of an earthquake and so on, the product may slide, leading to a injury.







Inspection before Servicing

Before conducting an inspection, read all relevant documentation (service manual, technical notices, etc.) and proceed with the inspection following the prescribed procedure in safety clothes, using only the prescribed tools. Do not make any adjustment not described in the documentation.
 If the prescribed procedure or tool is not used, the prod-

uct may break and a risk of injury or fire exists.

• Before conducting an inspection, be sure to disconnect the power plugs from the product and options.

When the power plug is inserted in the wall outlet, some units are still powered even if the POWER switch is turned OFF. A risk of electric shock exists.

• The area around the fixing unit is hot. You may get burnt.

Work Performed with the Product Powered On

• Take every care when making adjustments or performing an operation check with the product powered.

If you make adjustments or perform an operation check with the external cover detached, you may touch live or high-voltage parts or you may be caught in moving gears or the timing belt, leading to a risk of injury.

• Take every care when servicing with the external cover detached.

High-voltage exists around the drum unit. A risk of electric shock exists.



Safety Checkpoints Check the exterior and frame for edges, burrs, and other damages. The user or CE may be injured. · Do not allow any metal parts such as clips, staples, and screws to fall into the product. They can short internal circuits and cause electric shock or fire. Check wiring for squeezing and any other damage. Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire. Carefully remove all toner remnants and dust from electrical parts and electrode units such as a charging corona unit. Current can leak, leading to a risk of product trouble or fire Check high-voltage cables and sheaths for any damage. Current can leak, leading to a risk of electric shock or fire. Check electrode units such as a charging corona unit for deterioration and sign of leakage. Current can leak, leading to a risk of trouble or fire. • Before disassembling or adjusting the write unit (P/H unit) incorporating a laser, make sure that the power cord has been disconnected. The laser light can enter your eye, leading to a risk of loss of evesight. Do not remove the cover of the write unit. Do not supply power with the write unit shifted from the specified mounting position. The laser light can enter your eye, leading to a risk of loss of evesight.





Handling of Consumables

 Toner and developer are not harmful substances, but care must be taken not to breathe excessive amounts or let the substances come into contact with eyes, etc. It may be stimulative.

If the substances get in the eye, rinse with plenty of water immediately. When symptoms are noticeable, consult a physician.

Handling of Consumables

Never throw the used cartridge and toner into fire.
 You may be burned due to dust explosion.



SAFETY INFORMATION

IMPORTANT NOTICE

The Center for Devices and Radiological Health (CDRH) of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration implemented regulations for laser products manufactured since August 1, 1976. Compliance is mandatory for products marketed in the United States.

This copier is certified as a "Class 1" laser product under the U.S.

Department of Health and Human Services (DHHS) Radiation Performance Standard according to the Radiation Control for Health and Safety Act of 1968. Since radiation emitted inside this copier is completely confined within protective housings and external covers, the laser beam cannot escape during any phase of normal user operation.

INDICATION OF WARNING ON THE MACHINE

Caution labels shown below are attached in some areas on/in the machine. When accessing these areas for maintenance, repair, or adjustment, special care should be taken to avoid burns and electric shock.

For metric area:



For inch area:



You may be burned or injured if you touch any area that you are advised by any caution label to keep yourself away from. Do not remove caution labels. And also, when the caution label is peeled off or soiled and cannot be seen clearly, replace it with a new caution label.

MEASURES TO TAKE IN CASE OF AN ACCIDENT

- If an accident has occurred, the distributor who has been notified first must immediately take emergency measures to provide relief to affected persons and to prevent further damage.
- 2. If a report of a serious accident has been received from a customer, an on-site evaluation must be carried out quickly and KMBT must be notified.
- 3. To determine the cause of the accident, conditions and materials must be recorded through direct on-site checks, in accordance with instructions issued by KMBT.
- 4. For reports and measures concerning serious accidents, follow the regulations given in "Serious Accident Report/Follow-up Procedures."

Blank page

Composition of the service manual

This service manual consists of the following sections and chapters:

<Theory of Operation section>

OUTLINE:	System configuration, product specifications,
	unit configuration, and paper path
COMPOSITION/OPERATION:	Configuration of each unit, explanation of the operating
	system, and explanation of the control system

This section gives, as information for the CE to get a full understanding of the product, a rough outline of the object and role of each function, the relationship between the electrical system and the mechanical system, and the timing of operation of each part.

<Field service section>

OUTLINE:	System configuration, and product specifications
MAINTENANCE:	Service schedule *, maintenance steps,
	list of service tools and directions for use *,
	firmware version up method *,
	and removal/reinstallation methods of major parts
ADJUSTMENT/SETTING:	Utility mode *, service mode *, security and mechanical
	aujusiment
TROUBLESHOOTING*:	List of jam codes, their causes, operation when a jam occurs and its release method, and list of error codes,
	their causes, operation when a warning is issued and esti- mated abnormal parts.
APPENDIX*:	Parts layout drawings, connector layout drawings, timing chart, overall layout drawing

This section gives, as information required by the CE at the site (or at the customer's premise), a rough outline of the service schedule and its details, maintenance steps, the object and role of each adjustment, error codes and supplementary information.

The details of items with an asterisk "*" are described only in the service manual of the main body.

Notation of the service manual

A. Product name

In this manual, each of the products is described as follows:

(1)	IC board:	Standard printer
(2)	bizhub 750/600:	Main body
(3)	PS-502 PostScript3 Option:	PS3 Option
(4)	Microsoft Windows 95:	Windows 95
	Microsoft Windows 98:	Windows 98
	Microsoft Windows Me:	Windows Me
	Microsoft Windows NT 4.0:	Windows NT 4.0 or Windows NT
	Microsoft Windows 2000:	Windows 2000
	Microsoft Windows XP:	Windows XP
	When the description is made in combine	nation of the OS's mentioned above:
		Windows 95/98/Me
		Windows NT 4.0/2000
		Windows NT/2000/XP
		Windows 95/98/Me/NT/2000/XP

B. Brand name

The company names and product names mentioned in this manual are the brand name or the registered trademark of each company.

C. Electrical parts and signals

Those listed by way of example below are not exhaustive, but only some instances among many.

Classification	Load symbol	Ex. of signal name	Description
		IN	
		PS	
Sensor	PS	Door PS1	Sensor detection signal
		SIG	
		102 PS	
		24V	Power to drive the solenoid
Solenoid	SD	DRV	Drive signal
		SOL	- Drive signal
		24V	Power to drive the clutch
Clutch	CL	DRV	Drive signal
		SOL	

Classification	Load symbol	Ex. of signal name	Description
		24V	Power to drive the motor
		CONT	Drive signal
Motor	м	DRV1	
WOLDI	IVI	DRV2	Drive signals of two kinds
		D1	
		D2	
		_U	
		_V	-
		_W	Drive signals (control signals) of three kinds
		DRV1	Drive signals (control signals) of three kinds
		DRV2	-
		DRV3	
		D1	
		D2	-
		D3	-
		D4	-
		DRV A	
		DRV A	
		DRV B	Drive signals (control signals) of four kinds
		DRV B	Motor, phases A and B control signals
		A	
Motor	М	/A	
		В	_
		/В	_
		AB	
		BB	_
		CLK, PLL	PLL control signal
		LCK, Lock, LD	PLL lock signal
		FR	Forward/reverse rotation signal
		EM, Lock, LCK, LD	Motor lock abnormality
		BLK	Drive brake signal
		P/S	Power/stop
		S/S	Operating load start/stop signal
		SS	operating load start stop signal
		CW/CCW, F/R	Rotational direction switching signal
		ENB	Effective signal
		TEMP_ER	Motor temperature abnormality detection signal
		24V	Power to drive the fan motor
Fan	FM	CONT, DRIVE	Drive signal
		HL	Speed control signal (2 speeds)
		EM, Lock, LCK, FEM	Detection signal
Others		TH1.S, ANG	Analog signal

Classification	Load symbol	Ex. of signal name	Description
Ground		SG, S.GND, S_GND	Signal ground
Ground		PG, P.GND	Ex. of signal nameDescriptioni, S.GND, S_GNDSignal groundi, P.GNDPower groundiDData carrier detectionVSerial inputVUTSerial outputRData terminal operation availableIDSignal ground (earth)R, DSETData set readySTransmission request signalSConsent transmission signalRing indicatorSerial transmission dataDSerial transmission data
		DCD	Data carrier detection
		SIN	Serial input
		SOUT	Serial output
		DTR	Data terminal operation available
.		GND	Signal ground (earth)
Serial com- munication		DSR, DSET	Data set ready
manioadion		RTS	Transmission request signal
		CTS	Consent transmission signal
		RI	Ring indicator
		TXD	Serial transmission data
		RXD	Serial reception data



SERVICE MANUAL

Field Service

bizhub 750/600 Main body

2005.08 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\underline{\land}$ to the left of the revised section. A number within $\underline{\land}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show **A** in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within $\mathbf{\Lambda}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

bizhub 750/600

OUTLINE

1.	SYSTEM CONFIGURATION	1
2.	PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS.	З

MAINTENANCE

3. PE	RIODIC	C CHECK	щ
3.1	Sche	dule7	
3.2	Main	tenance item	8
:	3.2.1	Main body	
:	3.2.2	DF	
:	3.2.3	LU	
;	3.2.4	SF	
:	3.2.5	FS	
;	3.2.6	Pl	Ş
;	3.2.7	РК	NAI
;	3.2.8	ZU	E
3.3	Repla	acement parts list	AN
:	3.3.1	Periodically replacement parts list	ž
:	3.3.2	Spot replacement parts list	
3.4	Main	tenance procedure of the external section	
:	3.4.1	Replacing the ozone filters /M, /S	DS NG
:	3.4.2	Replacing the developing suction filter	E
3.5	Main	tenance procedure of the write section	/SE
;	3.5.1	Cleaning the dust-proof glass	Ì
3.6	Main	tenance procedure of the photo conductor section	ME
:	3.6.1	Removing/reinstalling the photo conductor section	IST
:	3.6.2	Cleaning/removing the drum fixing couplings	
:	3.6.3	Replacing the drum/cleaning of the toner control sensor board	Ā
:	3.6.4	Replacing the drum claw/drum claw solenoid	
:	3.6.5	Replacing the toner control sensor board	л В
:	3.6.6	Replacing the toner collection gear /3	Ē
3.7	Main	tenance procedure of the charge section	ĕ
:	3.7.1	Replacing the charge unit	ĒS
:	3.7.2	Replacing the charge control plate, charge wire, charge cleaning board, charge slide member, charge cleaning blocks /Up and /Lw, and the C-clip	UBL
:	3.7.3	Cleaning the charge back plate and the erase lamp	L R
3.8	Main	tenance procedure of the transfer/separation charge unit	
:	3.8.1	Replacing the transfer/separation charge unit	
:	3.8.2	Replacing the transfer/separation charge wire, transfer cleaning assembly, separation cleaning assembly, transfer presser rubber and the C-clip	
:	3.8.3	Cleaning the transfer/separation charge unit	X
:	3.8.4	Replacing the transfer exposure lamp unit	L I
3.9	Main	tenance procedure of the developing unit	ЪР
:	3.9.1	Replacing the developing unit	A
:	3.9.2	Replacing the developer	

bizhub 750/600

3.9.3	Cleaning the developing unit	67
3.9.4	Cleaning the developing bias contact.	68
3.10 Main	tenance procedure of the toner supply section	69
3.10.1	Cleaning of the toner bottle section	69
3.11 Main	tenance procedure of the cleaning and toner recycle section	70
3.11.1	Replacing the cleaning blade	70
3.11.2	Replacing the toner guide roller	72
3.12 Main	tenance procedure of the paper feed section	75
3.12.1	Replacing the feed rubber, the feed roller and the separation rubber (trays 1, 2, 3, 4)	75
3.12.2	Replacing the pick-up roller (trays 1, 2, 3, 4)	79
3.12.3	Replacing the feed regulating block (Trays 1, 2, 3, 4)	80
3.12.4	Replacing the paper feed clutch and the pre-registration clutch (Trays 1, 2, 3, 4)	83
3.12.5	Replacing the separation clutch (Trays 1, 2, 3, 4)	84
3.12.6	Replacing the horizontal conveyance clutches /Rt and /Lt	86
3.13 Main	tenance procedure of the bypass tray section	87
3.13.1	Replacing the feed rubber and the separation rubber	87
3.13.2	Replacing the pick-up rubber (Bypass tray)	93
3.13.3	Replacing the gear /A	94
3.13.4	Replacing the gear /B	95
3.13.5	Replacing the loop roller	96
3.13.6	Replacing the gear /C	99
3.14 Main	tenance procedure of the vertical conveyance section	101
3.14.1	Replacing the vertical conveyance clutches /1 and /2	101
3.15 Main	tenance procedure of the ADU	103
3.15.1	Cleaning the paper dust removing brush	103
3.15.2	Replacing the registration clutch	105
3.15.3	Removing/reinstalling the registration section	107
3.15.4	Replacing the registration roller and the registration bearing /Rr	108
3.15.5	Cleaning the ADU reverse sensor and the reverse/exit sensor	109
3.15.6	Replacing the ADU registration rollers /Up, /Lw and the registration bearings /Up, /Lw	112
3.15.7	Replacing the ADU deceleration clutch and the ADU conveyance clutch	118
3.16 Main	tenance procedure of the fusing section	119
3.16.1	Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit	119
3.16.2	Replacing the cleaning web	121
3.16.3	Removing/reinstalling the fusing claw unit /Up	125
3.16.4	Replacing the fusing claw /Up	126
3.16.5	Opening/closing the fusing unit /Up	127
3.16.6	Replacing the fusing heater lamps /1 and /2	128
3.16.7	Replacing the fusing roller /Up, the bearing, the heat insulating sleeve and the fusing gear.	130
3.16.8	Removing/reinstalling the fusing claw unit /Lw	134
3.16.9	Replacing the fusing claw /Lw	135
3.16.10) Replacing the fusing heater lamp /3	136
3.16.11	Replacing the fusing roller /Lw and the bearing	137
3.16.12	Preplacing the decurler roller, the decurler bearing and the fusing paper exit gear /2	138
3.16.13	B Replacing the fusing entering gear	144
3.16.14	Replacing the thermistor /2	145
3.16.15	5 Replacing the fusing paper exit gear /1	147
3.16.16	8 Removing/reinstalling the thermistor /1	148
3.16.17	Removing/reinstalling the thermostat /3	149
3.16.18	Removing/reinstalling the thermostat /4	151
	- •	

3.16.19 3.17 Maint 3.17.1 4. SERVICE 4.1 Servic 4.2 Jig lis 4.3 Mate 4.4 Mem	Replacing the web solenoid	. 154 . 156 . 156 . 159 . 159 . 159 . 160 . 162 . 163	bizhub 750/600
4.4.1 4.4.2 4.4.3 4.4.4 5. FIRMWAF 5.1 ISW. 5.1.1 5.1.2 5.1.3	Environment in which the service tool is Used. Installation and start-up method of the hyper terminal Procedure for use . Method for the memory test. RE VERSION UP Outline . Specifications. Preparations for transmission on the copier	. 163 . 164 . 166 . 167 . 168 . 168 . 168 . 168 . 168	OUTLINE
5.1.4 6. OTHERS 6.1 Items 6.1.1 6.1.2 6.1.3 6.1.4 6.2 List o	Error list	. 173 . 174 . 174 . 174 . 177 . 179 . 180 . 181	MAINTENANCE
6.3 Disas 6.3.1 6.3.2 6.3.3 6.3.4 6.3.5 6.3.6 6.3.7 6.3.8	Removing/reinstalling the rear cover . Removing/reinstalling the left cover . Removing/reinstalling the left cover /Up . Removing/reinstalling the right cover /Up . Removing/reinstalling the right covers /Lw1, /Lw2 and /Lw3 . Removing/reinstalling the front door /Rt . Removing/reinstalling the front door /Lt . Removing/reinstalling the original glass . Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Rt	. 182 . 182 . 182 . 183 . 184 . 185 . 186 . 186 . 187 . 188	ADJUSTMENT/SETTING
6.3.9 6.3.10 6.3.11 6.3.12 6.3.13 6.3.13 6.3.14 6.3.15 6.3.16	Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Lt. Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Fr Removing/reinstalling the CCD unit . Stretching of the scanner wire . Removing/reinstalling the ADU . Removing/reinstalling the operation panel wire . Recovery of the circuit breaker . Replacing the exposure lamp .	. 188 . 189 . 193 . 195 . 198 . 204 . 210 . 211	TROUBLESHOOTING
6.3.17 6.3.18 6.3.19 6.3.20 6.3.21 6.3.22 6.3.23 6.3.23 6.3.24	Hemoving/reinstalling the exposure unit Removing/reinstalling the scanner motor Removing/reinstalling the writing unit Removing/reinstalling the trays 1 and 2 Removing/reinstalling the trays 1 and 2 lift wire Removing/reinstalling the trays 3 and 4 Removing/reinstalling the trays 3 and 4 Removing/reinstalling the trays 3 and 4 lift wire Removing/reinstalling the trays 3 and 4 lift wire	. 212 . 215 . 219 . 221 . 224 . 233 . 234 . 238	APPENDIX

ISTM	FNT/S	FTTING

7 11014/100		
7. HOW IO	USE THE ADJUSTMENT/SETTING SECTION	
7.1 Com	position	
8. UIILIIYN	ΛΕΝΟ	
8.1 List of		
9. LIST OF A	ADJUSTMENTTIEMS	
10. SERVICE	MODE	
10.1 List c	of service mode	245
10.2 Settir	ng procedure	248
10.2.1	Start and exit service mode	248
10.3 Mach	nine Adjustment	249
10.3.1	Print Positioning: Leading Edge Adjustment (Printer Area)	249
10.3.2	Print Positioning: Side Edge Adjustment (Printer Area)	250
10.3.3	Magnification adjustment in the printer feed crossover direction (printer area)	251
10.3.4	Magnification adjustment in the printer feed direction (printer area)	252
10.3.5	Pre-registration amount	253
10.3.6	Printer registration loop amount	254
10.3.7	Tray adjustment	255
10.3.8	Scan position adjustment: Leading edge (scan area)	256
10.3.9	Scan position adjustment: Side edge (scan area)	257
10.3.10	Magnification adjustment in the scan feed direction (scan area)	258
10.3.11	Warp adjustment	259
10.3.12	Printer leading edge erasure amount	260
10.3.13	Non-image area auto erasure	260
10.4 Proc	ess adjustment.	
10.4.1	Charging grid manual adjustment (high voltage adjustment)	261
10.4.2	Reade setting mode (Drum peculiarity adjustment)	262
10.4.3	Auto maximum density adjustment (Drum peculiarity adjustment)	263
10.4.0	Auto dot diameter adjustment (Drum peculiarity adjustment)	264
10.4.5	D1 Offset Adjustment/I D2 Offset Adjustment (Drum Peculiarity)	265
10.4.5	Auto gamma adjustment (1 dot) / Auto gamma adjustment (2 dot)	
10.4.0	(Drum peculiarity adjustment)	
10.4.7	Cartridge set mode (Drum peculiarity adjustment)	267
10.4.8	User paper setting	268
10.5 Syste	em setting 1	269
10.5.1	Marketing area setting	269
10.5.2	Entry of the telephone and fax numbers	269
10.5.3	Entry of the serial number	270
10.5.4	Separation of defective parts	270
10.5.5	No sleep	271
10.5.6	Foolscap size setting	271
10.5.7	Original size detection.	272
10.5.8	Detection size setting	272
10.5.9	Entry of the installation date	273
10.5.10	Initialization	273
10.6 Cour	nter/data	
10.6.1	Display of the counter/data	
10.6.2	Display and reset of the fixed parts counter	
10.6.3	Registration, display and reset of the optional parts counter	
10.6.4	Setting display and resetting of the PM cycle	300
10.0.4		

10.7 Machine condition/check	. 301	
10.7.1 Sensor check	. 301	8
10.7.2 Load check	. 309	0/6(
10.7.3 Memory/HDD condition	. 319	75(
10.7.4 Memory check (memory/HDD adjustment)	. 319	qn
10.7.5 HDD R/W check (memory/HDD adjustment)	. 319	izh
10.7.6 HDD format (memory/HDD adjustment)	. 320	
10.7.7 Display of the adjustment data list	. 320	
10.8 ADF ADJUSTMENT	. 326	
10.8.1 Magnification adjustment in the feed direction	. 326	
10.8.2 Leading edge timing adjustment	. 327	
10.8.3 Mis-centering adjustment	. 328	ų
10.8.4 Registration loop amount adjustment	. 329	E
10.8.5 Original Size Adj	. 330	8
10.8.6 Density adjustment	. 331	
10.8.7 Incline Offset Adj	. 332	
10.8.8 Stamp position adjustment (Not used)	. 333	
10.8.9 Mixed original size auto adjustment	. 334	
10.9 Finisher adjustment	. 335	
10.9.1 Center staple position adjustment (FS-602)	. 335	Ş
10.9.2 Folding position adjustment	. 336	NAI
10.9.3 Punch vertical position adjustment (PK)	. 337	ΠE
10.9.4 Punch horizontal position (PK)	. 338	A N
10.9.5 Punch unit vertical position (ZU)	. 339	ž
10.9.6 Punch unit horizontal adjustment (ZU)	. 340	
10.9.7 Punch registration amount (main body) adjustment	. 341	
10.9.8 Punch registration amount (PI)	. 342	NG
10.9.9 1st Z-folding position/2nd Z-folding position adjustment (ZU)	. 343	E
10.9.10 Three-folding position adjustment (FS-602)	. 344	/SE
10.9.11 2-staple flat stapling.	. 345	Ĭ
10.9.12 Cover sheet tray size (PI)	. 346	ME
10.10 Firmware version display	. 347	IST
10.11 CS Remote Care	. 348	
10.11.1 Outlines	. 348	AD
10.11.2 Setting Up CS Remote Care	. 348	
10.11.3 Software SW setting for CS Remote Care	. 350	ğ
10.11.4 Calling the Maintenance.	. 355	E
10.11.5 Calling the Center from the Administrator.	. 355	ĕ
10.11.6 Checking the transmission log	. 355	ES -
10.11.7 Detail on settings	. 356	В
10.11.8 List of the CS Remote Care error code	. 358	0
10.11.9 Troubleshooting for CS Bernote Care.	. 359	Τ̈́Β
10.12 System setting 2	. 360	
10 12 1 Data capture	360	
10 12 2 Paper size setting	360	
10 12 3 Tray pullout setting	361	×
10.12.4 DinSW setting	361	ģ
10 12 5 ISW	379	Ш.
10.12.6 Ontional device installation	379	API
10.12.7 Trouble reset	370	
	. 519	

10.13 List output	
10.13.1 List output	
10.14 Test mode	
10.14.1 Overall halftone (No. 1) pattern	
10.14.2 Gradation pattern (No. 2)	
10.14.3 Gradation pattern (No. 3)	
10.14.4 Gradation pattern (No. 5)	
10.14.5 Beam misalignment check (No. 11)	
10.14.6 Linearity evaluation pattern (No. 16) output	
10.14.7 Optional test pattern output	
10.14.8 Running mode	
10.15 Security setting	
10.15.1 Security setting list	
10.15.2 Start-up and termination of the security mode	
10.15.3 CE password	
10.15.4 Administrator password	
10.15.5 Administrator function expansion	
10.15.6 CE authentication function	
11.MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT	
11.1 Centering adjustment	
11.1.1 Centering adjustment of the tray 1 and 2	
11.1.2 Centering adjustment of the tray 3 and 4	
11.2 Paper skew adjustment (main body)	
11.3 Separation pressure adjustment	
11.3.1 Separation pressure adjustment of the tray 1, 2, 3 and 4	
11.3.2 Separation pressure adjustment of the bypass tray	

TROUBLESHOOTING

12. JAM CODE	. 403
12.1 Jam code list	. 403
13. MALFUNCTION CODE	. 416
13.1 Malfunction code list	. 416

APPENDIX

14. PARTS LAYOUT DRAWING
14.1 Main body
14.1.1 Switch/sensor
14.1.2 Load
14.1.3 Boards and others
14.2 DF
14.3 LU
14.4 SF
14.5 FS
14.6 Pl
14.7 PK
14.7.1 PK-502
14.7.2 PK-503/PK-504
14.7.3 PK-505
14.8 ZU
15. CONNECTOR LAYOUT DRAWING

bizhub 750/600

OUTLINE

MAINTENANCE

15.1 Main body	
15.1.1 Connector in the board	
15.2 LU	
15.3 SF	
15.4 FS	
15.5 Pl	
15.6 PK	
15.7 ZU	
16. TIMING CHART	
16.1 Main body	
16.2 DF	
16.3 LU	
16.4 SF	
16.5 FS	
16.6 Pl	
16.7 PK	
16.7.1 PK-502	
16.7.2 PK-503	
16.8 ZU	
17. OVERALL WIRING DIAGRAM	

- 17.1 Main body 1/4
 17.2 Main body 2/4
 17.3 Main body 3/4
 17.4 Main body 4/4
 17.5 DF-604
 17.6 LU-401/402
 17.7 SF-601
- 17.8 FS-504/602 17.9 PI-501
- 17.10 PK
 - 17.10.1 PK-502
 - 17.10.2 PK-503/504
- 17.10.3 PK-505
- 17.11 ZU-601/602

Blank page



1. SYSTEM CONFIGURATION

A. System configuration



- [1] Main body
- [2] Double sided original auto feeder (DF-604)
- [3] Volume paper feed tray (LU-401)
- [4] Volume paper feed tray (LU-402)
- [5] Paper exit tray with offset function (SF-601)
- [6] Z-folding puncher (ZU-601/ZU-602)
- [7] Torque limiter separation type sheet feeder (PI-501)
- [8] FS self-contained puncher (PK-502/PK-503/PK-504/PK-505)

- [9] 50 sheet staple flat stapling finisher (FS-504)
- [10] Stitch-and-fold finisher (FS-602)
- [11] Key counter
- [12] Local connection kit (EK-701)
- [13] Image controller (IC-202)

[14] Extended memory: 256 MB (EM-701)

- [15] Paper exit tray
- [16] Hard disk (HD-503)

B. Configuration for optional device connection

NOTE

- For machines equipped with ZU-601/602, the function of PK-502/503/504/505 is not available when PI-501 is not equipped.
- Any combination other than those listed below is not available.

No.	Combinations of finishing			AC power to be connected to	
1	FS-504/FS-602				
2	SF-601				
3	FS-504/FS-602	PI-501			
4	FS-504/FS-602	PK-502/PK-503/PK-504/PK-505			
5	FS-504/FS-602	PI-501	PK-502/PK-503/PK-504/PK-505		
6	ZU-601/ZU-602		FS-504/FS-602		External (ZU-601/ZU-602)
7	ZU-601/ZU-602	FS-504/FS-602	PI-501 *1		External (ZU-601/ZU-602)
8	ZU-601 *2	FS-504/FS-602	PI-501	PK-504 *2	External (ZU-601)
9	ZU-602 *2	FS-504/FS-602	PI-501	PK-502/PK-503/	External (ZU-602)
				PK-505 *2	

- *1 Paper fed from PI-501 cannot be punched.
- *2 Paper fed from PI-501 is punched by PK-502/503/504/505. And paper fed from those other than PI-501 is punched by ZU-601/602.
2. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Туре	Console type (floor-mount type)
Copying method	Indirect electrostatic method
Original stand	Fixed
Original alignment	Left rear standard
Photosensitive material	OPC
Sensitizing method	Laser writing
Paper feed trays	Four trays (1,500 sheets x1, 1,000 sheets x 1, 500 sheets x 2: 80 g/m ²) Bypass feed (100 sheet x 1: 80 g/m ²) LU-401 (5,000 sheet x 1: 64 g/m ²) *1 LU-402 (4,500 sheet x 1: 64 g/m ²) *1

*1 LU-401 and LU-402 are optional.

B. Functions

Original	Sheet, book, solid object								
Max. original size	A3 or 11 x 17								
Copy size	Trays 1 and 2	Inch:	8.5 x 11, 5.5 x 8.5, A4, B5, A5						
		Metric:	A4, B5, A5, 8.5 x 11, 5.5 x 8.5, 16k						
	Trays 3 and 4	Inch:	11 x 17 to 5.5 x 8.5, 8.5 x 14, 8 x 13,						
			8.12 x 13.2, 8.25 x 13, 8.5 x 13, A3 to A5,						
			wide paper (up to 314 mm x 458 mm)						
		Metric:	A3 wide to A5, 11 x 17 to 5.5 x 8.5, 8.5 x 14,						
			8 x 13, 8.12 x 13.2, 8.25 x 13, 8.5 x 13, 16k, 8k,						
			wide paper (up to 314 mm x 458 mm)						
	Bypass feed	Inch:	11 x 17 to 5.5 x 8.5, 8.5 x 14, 8 x 13,						
			8.12 x 13.2, 8.25 x 13, 8.5 x 13, A3 to B6, A6,						
			wide paper (up to 314 mm x 458 mm)						
		Metric:	A3 wide to B6, A6, 11 x 17 to 5.5 x 8.5, 8.5 x 14,						
			8 x 13, 8.12 x 13.2, 8.25 x 13, 8.5 x 13, 16k, 8k,						
			wide paper (up to 314 mm x 458 mm)						
	ADU	Inch:	11 x 17 to 5.5 x 8.5, 8.5 x 14, 8 x 13, 8.12 x						
			13.2, 8.25 x 13 8.5 x 13, A3 to B5, A5, wide						
			paper (up to 314 mm x 458 mm)						
		Metric:	A3 wide to B5, A5, 11 x 17 to 5.5 x 8.5, 8.5 x 14,						
			8 x 13, 8.12 x 13.2, 8.25 x 13, 8.5 x 13, wide						
			paper (up to 314 mm x 458 mm)						

Magnification	Fixed magnification	Inch: x 1 000 x 1 214 x 1 294 x 1 545 x 2 000								
Magninoadori	n nog magninoation	x 0.785 x 0.772 x 0.647 x 0.500								
		Metric: x 1 000 x 1 154 x 1 224 x 1 414 x 2 000								
		x 0.866 x 0.816 x 0.707 x 0.500								
	Special magnifica	$\times 0.020$ (can be changed between $\times 0.000$ and $\times 0.000$)								
	tion sotting	x 0.300 (carrie changed between x 0.300 and x 0.333)								
		0.5								
	Optional magnifica-	3 types								
	tion setting									
	Zoom magnification	x 0.250 to x 4.000 (at the step of 0.1%)								
	Vertical magnification	x 0.250 to x 4.000 (at the step of 0.1%)								
	Horizontal magnification	x 0.250 to x 4.000 (at the step of 0.1%)								
Warm-up time	750	Less than 300 sec. (at temperature of 20°C, at rated volt-								
		age)								
	600	Less than 270 sec. (at temperature of 20°C, at rated volt-								
		age)								
First copy out time	750	Less than 3.0 sec.								
	600	Less than 3.5 sec.								
Continuous copy speed	750	75 copies/min. (for A4/8.5 x 11)								
	600	60 copies/min. (for A4/8.5 x 11)								
Continuous copy count	Up to 9,999 sheets									
Original density selection	Auto density selection,	, manual (9 steps), optional density (9 steps)								
Resolution	Scan	600 dpi x 600 dpi								
	Write	1,200 dpi (equivalent) x 600 dpi								
Memory	Standard *	512 MB								
	Maximum	512 MB								
Interface section	RJ45 Ethernet, Serial port (RS232-C), Serial port (USB TypeB)									

* The increase of the memory is impossible.

C. Type of paper

Pla	in paper *2		High quality paper of 60 g/m ² to 90 g/m ²										
Spe	ecial paper *3		Bypass feed only	OHP film, label paper *4, blueprint master paper *4, TAB paper									
			All trays	High quality paper of 50 g/m ² to 59 g/m ² (thin paper)									
				High quality paper of 91 g/m ² to 200 g/m ² (thick paper)									
*2	Standard specified	d paper											
		Inch:	Hammermill Tidal MP (75 g/m ²), Whyerhaeuser Recycled Laser Copy										
		Metric	: Konica Minolta Pre	ofi (80 g/m ²), Konica Minolta Original (80 g/m ²), Classic White									
*3	Special paper/rec												
	Thick paper:	Inch:	HM-Cover65lb (17	76 g/m ²), HM-Laser, Print (32lb)									
		Metric	: RDEREY200 (200	g/m ²), Xerox3R91798 (160 g/m ²),									
			Xerox-Exclusive (1	10 g/m²), Xerox-3R92990 (200 g/m²)									
	Thin paper:	Inch:	Domter16lb										
		Metric	: Clair Mail (60 g/m²	2)									
	Label paper:	Inch:	AVERY 5160, 535	2,944410									
		Metric	: AVERY DSP24										
	Blue print master:	Inch:	-										
		Metric	: Transparent paper	r									
	OHP:	Inch:	HP92296T										
		Metric	: Konica 40200										
	TAB paper:	Inch:	AVERY 7103										
		Metric	: RX 3R90947										
*4	Label paper and b	lueprin	t master are loaded	l and fed one sheet at a time.									

D. Maintenance

Maintenance	Every 250,000 prints
Machine service life	7,500,000 prints or 5 years (whichever earlier)

E. Machine data

Power source	Inch: 120V AC ±10%	nch: 120V AC ±10% 60Hz, Metric: 220-240V AC ±10% 50Hz									
Power consumption:	Inch: 1920W or less, I	Inch: 1920W or less, Metric: 2000W or less									
Weight	Approx. 222 kg										
Dimensions	Main body + DF-604	W 650 mm x D 791 mm x H 1,140 mm									
	Main body + DF-604	W 1,874 mm x D 791 mm x H 1,140 mm									

F. Operating environment

Temperature	10°C to 30°C
Humidity	10% RH to 80% RH

NOTE

• The information herein may be subject to change for improvement without notice.

Blank page

Field Service Ver1.0 Aug.2005

MAINTENANCE

3. PERIODIC CHECK

3.1 Schedule

Guarantee period (5 years or 7,500,000 prints)

	Service item		x 10,000 prints									No. of																			
		0	25	20	75	8	25	20	75	8	25	20	75	8	25	20	75	8	25	20	75	8	25	20	75	8	25	20	75	20	execu-
						÷	÷	÷	·	Ñ	õ	õ	ς Ν	õ	õ	õ	ć	4	4	4	4	ã	ŝ	ŝ	ίΩ	õ	ö	ö	ö	Ň	tions
Vboc	Maintenance 1 Every 250,000 prints		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		27 times
Main	Maintenance 2 Every 500,000 prints			•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•			13 times
	Maintenance 3 Every 1,000,000 prints					•				•				•				•				•				•					6 times
	Maintenance 4 Every 2,000,000 prints									•								•								•					3 times
	Maintenance 5 Every 2,500,000 prints											•										•									2 times
	Maintenance 6 Every 5,000,000 prints																					•									1 times
DF	Maintenance 1 Every 250,000 prints		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		27 times
	Maintenance 2 Every 500,000 prints			•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•			13 times
	Maintenance 3 Every 1,500,000 prints							•						•						•						•					4 times
ΓŊ	Maintenance 1 Every 250,000 prints		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		27 times
	Maintenance 2 Every 1,000,000 prints					•				•				•				•				•				•					6 times
	Maintenance 3 Every 4,000,000 prints																	•													1 times
SF	Maintenance 1 Every 250,000 prints		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		27 times
FS	Maintenance 1 Every 250,000 prints		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		27 times
	Maintenance 2 Every 500,000 prints			•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•			13 times
F	Maintenance 1 Every 250,000 prints		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		27 times
	Maintenance 2 Every 500,000 prints			•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•		•			13 times
	Maintenance 3 Every 1,000,000 prints					•				•				•				•				•				•					6 times
	Maintenance 4 Every 3,000,000 prints													•												•					2 times
АЧ	Maintenance 1 Every 250,000 prints		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		27 times
Z	Maintenance 1 Every 250,000 prints		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		27 times
	Maintenance 2 Every 3,000,000 prints													•												•					2 times

3.2 Maintenance item

NOTE

• For the replacement procedure of periodically replaced parts, see "3.4 Maintenance procedure of the external section" to "3.17 Maintenance procedure of the paper exit section."

3.2.1 Main body

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implei	mentatio	n classifi	cation	Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Preparations	Image check			•			
2	Photo conductor section	Drum/developing unit bottom plate/drum claw cleaning		•				Blower brush/clean- ing pad
		Toner control sensor board cleaning		•				Drum cleaner
		Toner collection screw / A cleaning		•				Blower brush/clean- ing pad
З	Charge section	Charge control plate 56AA2503*	1				•	
		Charge wire 56AA2509*	1				•	
		Charge unit cleaning (Back plate and its periphery, erase lamp)		•				Drum cleaner/ waste/blower brush
		Charge cleaning board 56AA2540*	1				•	
		Charge slide member 56AA2538*	1				•	
		Charge cleaning block / Up 56AA-253*	1				•	
		C-clip 45AA2040*	1				•	
		Charge cleaning block / Lw 56AA-254*	1				•	
4	Cleaning/ toner recycle	Toner guide roller 57AA-213*	1			•	•	Electricity lubricant
	section	Cleaning blade 57AA2008*	1				•	
5	Developing section	Developing bias contact cleaning		•				Blower brush/clean- ing pad
		Developer	1				•	
		Developing unit clean- ing		•				Blower brush/clean- ing pad

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Impler	nentatio	n classifi	cation	Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
6	Transfer/ separation charge section	Transfer/separation unit cleaning (front and rear blocks/guide rail/sepa- ration bridge/entrance guide plate/lightning protection sheet/back plate)		•				Blower brush/clean- ing pad/cotton swab/drum cleaner
7	Toner supply	Toner bottle section		•				Cleaning pad
	section	cleaning						
8	Conveyance	Conveyance section		•				Drum cleaner/
	section	upper surface cleaning						cleaning pad
		Conveyance belt clean-		•				Drum cleaner/
		Transfer exposure lamp		•				
		cover cleaning		•				cleaning pad
9	External section	Ozone filter /M 57AA1059*	1				•	
		Ozone filter /S 56QA1057*	1				•	
		Developing suction filter 57AA-715*	1				•	
10	Paper exit section	Cleaning of the paper exit sensor		•				Blower brush
		Main body paper exit roller/paper exit convey- ance		•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
11	ADU	Paper dust removing brush cleaning		•				Cleaning pad/ blower brush
		Registration roller cleaning		•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
		Registration main body /Lw cleaning (removal of paper dust of the guide plate /Lw)		•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
		Reverse/exit roller cleaning		•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
		ADU reverse roller		•				Drum cleaner/
		cleaning						cleaning pad
		Cleaning of the ADU conveyance roller /1 to / 4		•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
		ADU registration roller cleaning		•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
		Cleaning of each sensor	7	•				Blower brush
		Gears				•		Plas guard No.2

3. PERIODIC CHECK

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Impler	mentatio	n classifi	cation	Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
12	Paper feed	Cleaning of each sensor	12	•				Blower brush
	section							
		Gears (separation sec-				•		Plas guard No.2
		tion)						
		Horizontal conveyance		•				Drum cleaner/
		rollers /Lt, /Rt and						cleaning pad
		driven roller cleaning						
		Pick-up roller/paper		•				Drum cleaner/
		feed roller cleaning						cleaning pad
		Separation roller clean-		•				Drum cleaner/
10	Dura a sa tura u	ing Olaaminan of analy announ	4	•				Cleaning pad
13	Bypass tray	Cleaning of each sensor	4	•		-		Blower brush
	Section	Gears		-		•		Plas guard No.2
		Bypass unit and its		•				Drum cleaner/
		periphery cleaning		-				cleaning pad
		Pick-up roller/teed roller		•				Drum cleaner/
		Clear III Ig						Drum clooper/
		separation roller clean-		•				cleaning pad
14	Scanner	Cleaning of the original/						Drum cleaner/
14	section	slit class		•				cleaning pad
	000000	Exposure lamp cleaning		•				Blower brush
		Beflector cleaning		•				Cleaning pad
				•				Blower brush/clean-
		Lens cleaning		•				ing pad
		No. 1 to No. 3 mirrors		•				Blower brush/clean-
		cleaning		-				ing pad
		APS sensor cleaning	3	•				Blower brush
		APS timing sensor/		•				Blower brush
		scanner home sensor						
		cleaning						
		Cleaning of the optical		•				Cleaning pad
		guide rail						
15	Writing	Cleaning of the dust-		•				Blower brush/clean-
	section	proof glass						ing pad

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Impler	plementation classification		cation	Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
16	Fusing	Fusing roller /Up clean-		•				Roller cleaner/
	section	ing						cleaning pad
		Fusing roller /Lw clean-		•				Roller cleaner/
		ing						cleaning pad
		Cleaning of the fusing		•				Roller cleaner/
		claw /Lw						cleaning pad
		Paper exit roller clean-		•				Roller cleaner/
		ing						cleaning pad
		Paper exit conveyance		•				Roller cleaner/
		roller /Lt, guide lib						cleaning pad
		cleaning						
		Fusing entrance guide		•				Roller cleaner/
		plate/fusing exit guide						cleaning pad
		plate cleaning						
		Thermistor /2 cleaning		•				Blower brush/paper
		Restriction shaft clean-		•				Cleaning pad
		ing (for decurler roller)						
		Fusing gear				•		Multemp FF-RM
		Cleaning web	1				•	
		57AE-543*						
		Fusing claw /Up	6				•	
		56AA5427*						
		Heat insulating sleeve				•		Multemp FF-RM (tri-
								flow also available)
17	Vertical	Vertical conveyance	3	•				Drum cleaner/
	conveyance	roller cleaning						cleaning pad
	section	Cleaning of each sensor	5	•				Blower brush
18	Final check	Peripheral and exterior		•				Drum cleaner/
		cleaning						cleaning pad
		Check of the image and			•			
		the paper through						
		PM counter reset			•			
		(in service mode)						

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification				Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Fusing section	Fusing roller /Up 56AE5305* (bizhub 750) 56AA5305* (bizhub 600)	1				•	
		Heat insulating sleeve 45405339*	2			•	•	Multemp FF-RM (tri-flow also avail- able)
		Bearing /Up 45407504*	2				•	
		Bearing /Lw 57AE7504*	2				•	
		Fusing roller /Lw 57AE5306*	1				•	
		Fusing claw /Lw 56QA5320*	3				•	
		Decurler roller 56AA5307*	1				•	
2	Photo conductor	Drum claw 56AA2070*	3				•	
	section	Drum	1				•	
3	Transfer/ separation	Transfer/separation wire 56AA2609*	3				•	
	section	Transfer cleaning assembly 56AA-264*	1				•	
		Separation cleaning assembly 56AA-267*	1				•	
		C-clip 45AA2040*	2				•	
		Transfer presser rubber 56AA1783*	3				•	
4	Paper feed section	Feed rubber 25SA4096*	4				•	Actual replacement count 125,000 feeds
		Separation rubber 25SA4096*	4				•	Actual replacement count 125,000 feeds
5	Bypass tray section	Paper feed rubber 54004056*	1				•	Actual replacement count 70,000 feeds
		Separation rubber 54004056*	1				•	Actual replacement count 70,000 feeds

C. Maintenance 3 (Every 1,000,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification			cation	Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Bypass tray	Pick-up rubber	1				•	Actual replacement
	section	55FA4233*						count 140,000 feeds
2	Fusing	Decurler bearing	4				•	
	section	07AA7509*						
		Fusing input gear	1				•	
		25BA7726*						
		Fusing heater lamp /1	1				•	
		56AE8303*						
		56AF8303*						
		Fusing heater lamp /2	1				•	
		56AE8304*						
		56AF8304*						
		Fusing heater lamp /3	1				•	
		56AE8305*						
		56AF8305*						

D. Maintenance 4 (Every 2,000,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification				Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Photo	Drum claw solenoid	1				•	
	conductor	26NA8251*						
	section							
2	ADU	Registration clutch	1				٠	
		56AA8201*						
3	Transfer/	Transfer/separation	1				•	
	separation	charge unit						
	section	57AA-260*						
4	Fusing	Fusing gear	1				•	
	section	56QA7721*						

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification				Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Photo conductor section	Toner control sensor board 56AA-910*	1				•	
2	Charge section	Charge unit 57AA-250*	1				•	
3	Paper feed section	Pick-up roller 56AA-458*	4				•	Actual replacement count 800,000 feeds
4	Developing section	Developing unit 57AA-300*	1				•	
5	Fusing section	Thermistor /2 57AE8804*	1				•	
6	ADU	Registration bearing /Rr 26NA4082*	1				•	
		Registration roller 56QA4603*	1				•	
		Registration bearing /1 55GA7551*	2				•	
		Registration bearing /2 55GA7552*	2				•	
		ADU registration roller / Up 56AA5111*	1				•	
		ADU registration roller / Lw 56QA5112*	1				•	
7	Transfer/ separation section	Transfer exposure lamp unit 56AA-387*	1				•	

F. Maintenance 6 (Every 5,000,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification			cation	Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Bypass tray section	Loop roller 56AA4251*	1				•	
		Gear /A 56AA7716*	1				•	
		Gear /B 56AA7717*	1				•	
		Gear /C 56AA7712*	1				•	
2	Photo conductor section	Toner collection gear /3 57AA7782*	1				•	
3	Fusing section	Fusing paper exit gear /1 56AA7722*	1				•	
		Fusing paper exit gear /2 56AA7723*	1				•	
4	Paper exit section	Paper exit gear /1 56AA7719*	1				•	
		Paper exit gear /2 56AA7798*	1				•	
5	Paper feed section	Paper feed regulating block 56AA4038*	4				•	
		Feed roller 25AA4010*	4				•	

G. Spot replacement (for every 2,000,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification				Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Paper feed section	Paper feed clutch (tray 1 to 4) 56AA8201* Pre-registration clutch (tray 1 to 4) 56AA8201*	4				•	
		Separation clutch (tray 1 to 4) 57AA8203*	4				•	
2	Vertical conveyance section	Vertical conveyance clutch /1, /2 57AA8203*	2				•	
3	Horizontal conveyance section	Horizontal conveyance clutch /Rt, /Lt 57AA8203*	2				•	
4	ADU	ADU deceleration clutch 57AA8203*	1				•	
		ADU conveyance clutch 57AA8203*	1				•	

H. Spot replacement (for every 3,000,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification				Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Fusing	Web solenoid assembly	1				•	
	section	57AE-716*						

3.2.2 DF

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Imple	mentatio	n classifi	cation	Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Preparations	Original through check			•			
2	Paper feed section	Original size sensor /Rt cleaning	1	•				Blower brush
		Original size sensor /Lt cleaning	1	•				Blower brush
		Original registration sensor /1 cleaning	1	•				Blower brush
		Pick-up roller rubber cleaning	1	•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
		Paper feed roller rub- ber cleaning	1	•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
		Separation roller rubber cleaning	1	•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
		Cleaning pad cleaning	1	•				Blower brush
		Registration roller cleaning	1	•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
3	Conveyance section	Original conveyance sensor cleaning	1	•				Blower brush
		Original skew sensor cleaning	1	•				Blower brush
		Original registration sensor /2 cleaning	1	•				Blower brush
		Conveyance roller /1 cleaning	1	•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
		Conveyance roller /2 cleaning	1	•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
		Platen guide cleaning	1	•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
		Reverse roller cleaning	1	•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
		Reverse exit roller cleaning	1	•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
4	Paper exit section	Paper exit roller clean- ing	1	•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
5	Final check	Paper through check			•			
		Exterior cleaning		•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad

B. Maintenance 2 (Every 500,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification				Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Paper feed section	Pick-up roller rubber 13QA4127*	1				•	
		Paper feed roller rubber 13QA4104*	1				•	
		Separation roller rubber 13QA4045*	1				•	

C. Maintenance 3 (Every 1,500,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification			Materials	
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Paper feed section	Separation roller 13QA4001*	1				•	

3.2.3 LU

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Impler	mentatio	n classifi	cation	Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Preparations	Original through check			٠			
2	Paper feed	Sensors		•				Blower brush
	section							
		Gears				•		Plas guard No.2
		Pre-registration roller/		•				Drum cleaner/
		driven roller						cleaning pad
		Pick-up roller		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad
		Feed roller		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad
		Separation roller		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad
3	Final check	Paper through check			•			
		Exterior cleaning		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad

B. Maintenance 2 (Every 1,000,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification			Materials	
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Paper feed section	Pick-up roller 55VA-484*	1				•	Actual replacement count 500,000 feeds
		Feed roller 55VA-483*	1				•	Actual replacement count 500,000 feeds
		Separation roller 55VA-483*	1				•	Actual replacement count 500,000 feeds

C. Maintenance 3 (Every 4,000,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification				Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Paper feed	Pick-up clutch	1				•	Actual replacement
	section	56AA8201*						count 2,000,000
								feeds
		Pre-registration clutch	1				•	Actual replacement
		56AA8201*						count 2,000,000
								feeds

3.2.4 SF

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implei	mentatio	n classifi	cation	Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Conveyance	Conveyance roller		•				Drum cleaner/
	section							cleaning pad
		Driven roller		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad
		Neutralized brush		•				Blower brush
		Sensors		•				Blower brush
2	Final check	Paper through check			•			
		Exterior cleaning		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad

3.2.5 FS

A. FS-504

(1) Maintenance 1 (Every 250,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implei	mentatio	n classifi	cation	Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Preparations	Original through check			•			
2	Conveyance	Conveyance roller		•				Drum cleaner/
	section							cleaning pad
		Paper exit roller	10				•	
		(sponge roller)						
		122H4825*						
		Intermediate	4				•	
		conveyance roller						
		(sponge roller)						
		13QE4531*						
3	Drive unit	Main drive unit			•	•		Plas guard No.2
		Main tray section			•	•		Plas guard No.2
		Shift drive unit			•	•		Plas guard No.2
		Paper exit drive section			•	•		Plas guard No.2
		Staple section			•	•		Plas guard No.2
4	Final check	Paper through check			•			
		Exterior cleaning		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad

(2) Maintenance 2 (Every 500,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification				Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Stacker	Paper assist roller	1				•	
	section	(sponge roller) 20AK4210*						

(3) Spotted replacement (Every 300,000 staples)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification			Materials	
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Staple section	Stapler unit /Fr 15JK-531*	1				•	
		Stapler unit /Rr 15JK-531*	1				•	

B. FS-602

(1) Maintenance 1 (Every 250,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Impler	mentatio	n classifi	cation	Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Preparations	Original through check			٠			
2	Conveyance	Conveyance roller		•				Drum cleaner/
	section							cleaning pad
		Paper exit roller	10				•	
		(sponge roller)						
		122H4825*						
		Intermediate	4				•	
		conveyance roller						
		(sponge roller)						
		13QE4531*						
3	Drive unit	Main drive unit			•	(●)		Plas guard No.2
		Main tray section			•	(●)		Plas guard No.2
		Shift drive unit			•	(●)		Plas guard No.2
		Paper exit drive section			•	(●)		Plas guard No.2
		Staple section			•	(●)		Plas guard No.2
		Folding section			•	(●)		Plas guard No.2
4	Folding	Folding roller		•				
	section							
5	Final check	Paper through check			•			
		Exterior cleaning		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad

(2) Maintenance 2 (Every 500,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification				Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Stacker	Paper assist roller	1				•	
	section	(sponge roller) 20AK4210*						

(3) Spotted replacement (Every 200,000 staples)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification			Materials	
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Staple section	Stapler unit /Fr 15JM-501*	1				•	
		Stapler unit /Rr 15JM-501*	1				•	

bizhub 750/600

3.2.6 PI

A. Maintenance 1 (Every 250,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	antity Implementation classification				Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Conveyance	Conveyance roller		•				Drum cleaner/
	section							cleaning pad
2	Paper feed	Pick-up roller		•				Drum cleaner/
	section							cleaning pad
		Original conveyance		•				Drum cleaner/
		roller						cleaning pad
		Separation roller		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad
3	Final check	Paper through check			٠			
		Exterior cleaning		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad

B. Maintenance 2 (Every 500,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification			Materials	
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Paper feed	Paper feed roller	2				•	Actual replacement
	section	50BA-575*						cycle: 100,000
		Separation roller	2				•	Actual replacement
		13QN-443*						cycle: 100,000

C. Maintenance 3 (Every 1,000,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification			Materials	
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Paper feed	Pick-up roller	2				•	Actual replacement
	section	50BA-574*						cycle: 200,000

D. Maintenance 4 (Every 3,000,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification				Materials
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Paper feed	Torque limiter	2				•	Actual replacement
	section	13QN4073*						cycle: 600,000

3.2.7 PK

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification			Materials	
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Punch unit main body	Punch edge		•				Blower brush
2	Punch scraps collection section	Punch scraps box (punch scraps dump)		•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
		Punch scraps full sen- sor		•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad
3	Final check	Paper through check			•			
		Internal cleaning		•				Drum cleaner/ cleaning pad

3.2.8 ZU

A. Maintenance 1 (Every 250,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification			cation	Materials
	classification			Cleaning Check Lubrication Replacement		Tools used		
1	Punch	Punch edge		•				Blower brush
	section							
2	Conveyance	Entrance guide plate		•				Cleaning pad
	section							
		Conveyance guide plate		•				Cleaning pad
		Paper edge sensor		•				Blower brush
		board (sensor)						
		Registration roller		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad
		Conveyance roller		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad
		Exit roller		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad
		Exit guide plate		•				Cleaning pad
3	Z-folding	Folding roller (No. 1 and		•				Drum cleaner/
	section	No. 2)						cleaning pad
		Folding guide plate		•				Cleaning pad
4	Punch scraps	Punch scraps box		•				
	conveyance							
	section							
5	Final check	Paper through check			•			
		Exterior cleaning		•				Drum cleaner/
								cleaning pad

B. Maintenance 2 (Every 3,000,000 prints)

No.	Unit	Description	Quantity	Implementation classification			Materials	
	classification			Cleaning	Check	Lubrication	Replacement	Tools used
1	Punch	Punch clutch	1				•	
	section	13NKK001*						
2	Punch scraps	Punch scraps convey-	1			٠	•	Plas guard No.2
	conveyance	ance motor						
	section	12GQ-417*						

bizhub 750/600

3.3 Replacement parts list

3.3.1 Periodically replacement parts list

NOTE

- For the replacement procedure of periodically replaced parts, see "3.4 Maintenance procedure of the external section" to "3.17 Maintenance procedure of the paper exit section."
- The parts count No. given in the table below represents the number of the fixed parts number in the service mode.

A. Main body

No.	Classification	Part name	Part number	Qt.	Actual replace-	Parts count
					ment cycle	No.
1	External	Ozone filter /M	57AA1059*	1	250,000	23
2	section	Ozone filter /S	56QA1057*	1	250,000	104
3		Developing suction filter	57AA-715*	1	250,000	105
4	Photo con-	Toner guide roller	57AA-213*	1	250,000	5
5	ductor section	Cleaning blade	57AA2008*	1	250,000	4
6		Developer	-	1	250,000	2
7		Drum claw	56AA2070*	3	500,000	9
8		Drum	-	1	500,000	3
9		Drum claw solenoid	26NA8251*	1	2,000,000	100
10		Toner control sensor board	56AA-910*	1	2,500,000	18
11		Toner collection gear /3	57AA7782*	1	5,000,000	
12	Charge	Charge control plate	56AA2503*	1	250,000	6
13	section	Charge wire	56AA2509*	1	250,000	21
14		Charge cleaning board	56AA2540*	1	250,000	
15		Charge slide member	56AA2538*	1	250,000	
16		Charge cleaning block /Up	56AA-253*	1	250,000	7
17		C-clip	45AA2040*	1	250,000	
18		Charge cleaning block /Lw	56AA-254*	1	250,000	8
19		Charge unit	57AA-250*	1	2,500,000	24
20	Developing section	Developing unit	57AA-300*	1	2,500,000	25
21	Paper feed	Feed rubber	25SA4096*	4	125,000	28, 33, 38,
	section		05044000*		105 000	43
22		Separation rubber	25SA4096*	4	125,000	28, 33, 38, 43
23		Pick-up roller	56AA-458*	4	800,000	27, 32, 37, 42
24	-	Paper feed regulating block	56AA4038*	4	5.000.000	
25	-	Feed roller	25AA4010*	4	5,000,000	
26	Bypass trav	Loop roller	56AA4251*	1	5.000.000	55
27	section	Gear /A	56AA7716*	1	5,000.000	
28	-	Gear /B	56AA7717*	1	5,000,000	

No.	Classification	Part name	Part number	Qt.	Actual replace-	Parts count
					ment cycle	No.
29	Bypass tray	Gear /C	56AA7712*	1	5,000,000	
30	section	Feed rubber	54004056*	1	70,000	48
31		Separation rubber	54004056*	1	70,000	48
32		Pick-up rubber	55FA4233*	1	140,000	47
33	Transfer/	Transfer/separation wire	56AA2609*	3	500,000	10
34	separation	Transfer cleaning assembly	56AA-264*	1	500,000	11
35	charging sec-	Separation cleaning assembly	56AA-267*	1	500,000	20
36	tion	C-clip	45AA2040*	2	500,000	
37		Transfer presser rubber	56AA1783*	3	500,000	
38		Transfer/separation charge unit	57AA-260*	1	2,000,000	19
39	Registration	Registration clutch	56AA8201*	1	2,000,000	62
40	section	Registration bearing /Rr	26NA4082*	1	2,500,000	
41		Registration roller	56QA4603*	1	2,500,000	
42	ADU	Registration bearing /2	55GA7552*	2	2,500,000	
43		Registration bearing /1	55GA7551*	2	2,500,000	
44		ADU Registration roller /Up	56AA5111*	1	2,500,000	
45		ADU Registration roller /Lw	56QA5112*	1	2,500,000	
46		Transfer exposure lamp unit	56AA-387*	1	2,500,000	26
47	Fusing	Cleaning web	57AE-543*	1	250,000	1
48	section	Fusing claw /Up	56AA5427*	6	250,000	14
49		Fusing roller /Up (bizhub 750)	57AE5305*	1	500,000	12
		Fusing roller /Up (bizhub 600)	56AA5305*			
50		Heat insulating sleeve	45405339*	2	500,000	16
51		Bearing /Up	45407504*	2	500,000	17
52		Fusing roller /Lw	57AE5306*	1	500,000	13
53		Fusing claw /Lw	56QA5320*	3	500,000	15
54		Decurler roller	56AA5307*	1	500,000	110
55		Decurler bearing	07AA7509*	4	1,000,000	111
56		Fusing input gear	25BA7726*	1	1,000,000	112
57		Fusing heater lamp /1	56AE8303*	1	1,000,000	
			56AF8303*			
58		Fusing heater lamp /2	56AE8304*	1	1,000,000	
			56AF8304*			
59		Fusing heater lamp /3	56AE8305*	1	1,000,000	
			56AF8305*			
60		Thermistor /2	57AE8804*	1	2,500,000	22
61		Fusing paper exit gear /1	56AA7722*	1	5,000,000	
62		Fusing paper exit gear /2	56AA7723*	1	5,000,000	
63		Fusing gear	56QA7721*	1	2,000,000	113
64		Bearing /Lw	57AE7504*	2	500,000	
65	Paper exit	Paper exit gear /1	56AA7719*	1	5,000,000	
66	section	Paper exit gear /2	56AA7798*	1	5,000,000	

B. Option

No.	Classification	Part name		Qt.	Actual replace-	Parts count
					ment cycle	No.
1	DF	Pick-up roller rubber	13QA4127*	1	200,000	89
2		Paper feed roller rubber	13QA4104*	1	200,000	90
3		Separation roller rubber	13QA4045*	1	200,000	91
4		Separation roller	13QA4001*	1	600,000	92
5	LU	Pick-up roller	55VA-484*	1	500,000	50
6		Feed roller	55VA-483*	1	500,000	51
7		Separation roller	55VA-483*	1	500,000	51
8		Pick-up clutch	56AA8201*	1	2,000,000	52
9		Pre-registration clutch	56AA8201*	1	2,000,000	53
10	FS	Paper exit roller (sponge roller)	122H4825*	10	250,000	
11		Intermediate conveyance roller	13QE4531*	4	250,000	
		(sponge roller)				
12		Paper assist roller (sponge roller)	20AK4210*	1	500,000	
13	PI	Paper feed roller	50BA-575*	2	100,000	77, 82
14		Separation roller	13QN-443*	2	100,000	78, 83
15		Pick-up roller	50BA-574*	2	200,000	76, 81
16	1	Torque limiter	13QN4073*	2	600,000	79
17	ZU	Punch clutch	13NKK001*	1	1,000,000	86, 87, 88
18	1	Punch scraps conveyance motor	12GQ-417*	1	1,000,000	86, 87, 88

3.3.2 Spot replacement parts list

The parts shown below are not periodically replaced parts. However, be sure to replace them when they get to the actual count value.

A. Main body

No.	Classification	Part name	Part number	Qt.	Actual replace-	Parts count
					ment cycle	No.
1	Paper feed	Paper feed clutch (tray 1 to 4)	56AA8201*	4	2,000,000	29, 34, 39,
	section					44
2		Pre-registration clutch (tray 1 to 4)	56AA8201*	4	2,000,000	30, 35, 40,
						45
3		Separation clutch (tray 1 to 4)	57AA8203*	4	2,000,000	114, 115,
						116, 117
4	Vertical	Vertical conveyance clutches (/1, /2)	57AA8203*	2	2,000,000	59, 60
	conveyance					
	section					
5	Horizontal	Horizontal conveyance clutches	57AA8203*	2	2,000,000	108, 109
	conveyance	(/Rt, /Lt)				
	section					
6	ADU	ADU deceleration clutch,	57AA8203*	2	2,000,000	63
		ADU conveyance clutch				
7	Fusing sec-	Web solenoid assembly	57AE-716*	1	3,000,000	61
	tion (Main					
	body side)					

B. Option

No.	Classification	Part name	Part number	Qt.	Actual replace-	Parts count
					ment cycle	No.
1	DF	Conveyance roller pressure/	15JA-801*	1	630,000	*1
		release motor				
2	FS	Stapler unit /Fr (FS-504)	15JK-531*	1	300,000	68
3		Stapler unit /Rr (FS-504)	15JK-531*	1	300,000	69
4		Stapler unit /Fr (FS-602)	15JM-501*	1	200,000	68
5		Stapler unit /Rr (FS-602)	15JM-501*	1	200,000	69

*1 630,000 is the number counted on the actual paper through surface. The location in which the counter value is checked is the item shown below: "Service mode \rightarrow Counter data \rightarrow ADF original passage count"

3.4 Maintenance procedure of the external section

\triangle Caution:

• When replacing a periodically replaced part, be sure to unplug the power cord from the power outlet.

3.4.1 Replacing the ozone filters /M, /S

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Ozone filter /M: Every 250,000 prints
- Ozone filter /S: Every 250,000 prints

B. Procedure



1. Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the ozone filter cover [2].



- 2. Remove the ozone filters /M [1] and /S [2].
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal procedure in reverse.

bizhub 750/600

bizhub 750/600

3.4.2 Replacing the developing suction filter

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

Developing suction filter: Every 250,000 prints

B. Procedure



[1] [2] (1) [2] (1) [2] (2) [3] 57aaf2c004na 1. Loosen the screw [1] and remove the developing suction filter cover [2].

 Pull the knob [1] and remove the developing suction filter [2].

NOTE

- When removing it, toner that has been sucked in may fall. So, be sure to pull it out slowly.
- When reinstalling it, press the upper and lower sections [3] of the developing suction filter and insert it securely.
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.5 Maintenance procedure of the write section

3.5.1 Cleaning the dust-proof glass

- A. Periodic cleaning cycle
- Dust-proof glass: Every 250,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the write unit. (See "6.3.19 Removing/ reinstalling the writing unit".)
- Clean the dust-proof glass [2] provided on the bottom of the write unit [1] with a cleaning pad and a blower brush.
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

bizhub 750/600

3.6 Maintenance procedure of the photo conductor section

3.6.1 Removing/reinstalling the photo conductor section

NOTE

- When the drum section has been removed, be sure to store it in a dark place with the drum cover provided.
- When removing/reinstalling the photo conductor section, be careful not to rotate the drum in any direction other than the specified direction. Rotating it in the opposite direction to the rotational direction while printing may cause damage to the cleaning blade.
- When removing/reinstalling the photo conductor section, be absolutely sure not to touch the drum claw.

A. Procedure



- 1. Open the front doors /Lt [1] and /Rt [2].
- With the solenoid release lever [4] of the ADU [3] held down in the arrow-marked direction [5], bring down the ADU pull out lever [6].





3. Loosen 3 screws [1] and remove the photo conductor section cover [2].

 Loosen once the screw [1] and slide the blade fixing member [2] in the arrow-marked direction [3] until it does not move any more. Then, fasten the screw [1] again.

NOTE

• The blade fixing member conducts the pressure of the cleaning blade and its release. When removing the photo conductor section, be sure to slide it in the arrow-marked direction [3]and release the pressure of the cleaning blade.



- 5. Remove 2 screws [1].
- 6. Release the toner recycle pipe [2] in the arrowmarked direction [3].

bizhub 750/600



- Remove the screw [1] and pull out the drum fixing couplings /2 [2] and /1 [3].
- 8. Hold the specified sections [4] at 2 places, and pull out the photo conductor section [5].
- 9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• For the installation method of the drum fixing couplings /1 and /2, see the next item: "3.6.2 Cleaning/removing the drum fixing couplings."

3.6.2 Cleaning/removing the drum fixing couplings

NOTE

• Be sure to conduct this operation when removing the photo conductor section.

A. Procedure



 Clean the external surface of the drum fixing couplings /1 [1] and /2 [2] with a drum cleaner and a cleaning pad.







- Field Service Ver1.0 Aug.2005
- Insert the drum fixing coupling /1 so that the convex section [2] of the drum fixing coupling /1 [1] fits in the concave section [3] of the drum.

 Insert the drum fixing coupling /2 so that the D cut section [2] of the drum fixing coupling /2 [1] fits in the drum shaft [3].

- 4. Rotate the head [2] of the drum fixing coupling /1 [1] clockwise so that the flange [4] of the drum fixing coupling /2 [3] is flush with the periphery.
- Tighten the flange of the drum fixing coupling /2 with the screw.

3.6.3 Replacing the drum/cleaning of the toner control sensor board

NOTE

- Be careful not to touch or damage the drum and the cleaning blade with bare hands.
- When storing the drum, be sure to store it in dark place with the drum cover attached.
- When reinstalling the drum, the cleaning blade and the toner guide roller (TGR), be sure to apply setting powder all around the drum and the cleaning blade regardless of these parts being new or used ones.
- When the drum is applied with setting powder, be sure to conduct the following operations before installing the photo conductor section to the main body:
 - 1) With the charge and the developing unit removed, rotate the drum one full turn (to prevent splashing of setting powder to the charge unit and prevent the image from getting blurred).
 - 2) When installing a new drum, be sure to reset the OPC drum counts in the service mode. If not reset, image background and toner splash may result. (See "10.6.4 Setting, display and resetting of the PM cycle.")

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Drum: Every 500,000 prints

B. Periodic cleaning cycle

• Toner control sensor board: Every 500,000 prints

C. Procedure



- Remove the photo conductor section from the main body. (See "3.6.1 Removing/reinstalling the photo conductor section.")
- Remove the charging corona unit from the photo conductor section. (See "3.7.1 Replacing the charge unit.")
- Remove the developing unit from the photo conductor section. (See "3.9.1 Replacing the developing unit.")
- Remove the cleaning blade and the toner guide roller (TGR) from the photo conductor section. (See "3.11 Maintenance procedure of the cleaning and toner recycle section.")
- 5. While holding down both ends of the drum [1] with your fingers not to damage the photosensitive surface of the drum, remove the drum [3] by lifting it up from the toner recycle pipe [2] side.



- 6. Clean toner adhering to the periphery [1] of the drum installation section with a cleaning pad.
- Clean the maximum density sensor [3] and the gamma sensor [4] provided on the toner control sensor board (TCSB) [2] with a cleaning pad.
- 8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.
3.6.4 Replacing the drum claw/drum claw solenoid

NOTE

• When reinstalling the drum claw, take note of the direction and position of the claw.

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Drum claw: Every 500,000 prints
- Drum claw solenoid: Every 2,000,000 prints



- Remove the drum from the photo conductor section. (See "3.6.3 Replacing the drum/cleaning of the toner control sensor board.")
- 2. Disconnect the connector [1].
- 3. Remove the spring [2].
- 4. Remove 2 screws [3] and then remove the separation guide plate assembly [4].



NOTE

When installing the separation guide plate assembly [1], be sure to set the projections [2] provided at 2 places of the separation guide plate assembly to the guide holes [3] at 2 places of the photo conductor section.



 Remove the C-clip [1], pull out the shaft [2] in the arrow-marked direction and remove the 3 drum claws [3].

NOTE

- When installing the drum claw, be sure to take note of the direction of the spring [4].
- When installing the C-clip, be sure to insert it between the ribs [5].
- After installing the drum claw, be sure to check to see if each drum claw moves smoothly.



6. Remove springs [2], 1 each, from each drum claw [1].





in a parawa [1] and then remains the drum

Field Service Ver1.0 Aug.2005

7. Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the drum claw solenoid assembly [2].

- 8. Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the drum claw solenoid (SD1) [2].
- 9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.6.5 Replacing the toner control sensor board

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Toner control sensor board: Every 2,500,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the separation guide plate assembly from the photo conductor section. (See "3.6.4 Replacing the drum claw/drum claw solenoid.")
- 2. Remove the connector [1].
- 3. Remove 3 screws [2] and then remove the toner control sensor board (TCSB) [3].

NOTE

- When reinstalling the toner control sensor board, be sure to move it to the limit in the arrow-marked direction [4] before starting installation.
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.6.6 Replacing the toner collection gear /3

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Toner collection gear /3: 5,000,000 prints

NOTE

When replacing the toner collection gear /3, be sure to conduct the operation with the photo conductor section set to the main body. Disassembling the main body with the photo conductor section removed may result in the discrepancy between the drum fixing couplings /1 and /2 and the phase of the drum shaft.



- Remove the rear cover, left cover and the right covers /Up and /Lw3. (See "6.3.1 Removing/reinstalling the rear cover," "6.3.2 Removing/reinstalling the left cover," "6.3.3 Removing/reinstalling the right cover /Up," and "6.3.4 Removing/reinstalling the right covers /Lw1, /Lw2 and /Lw3.")
- 2. Remove 4 screws [1] and then remove the read ground plate /Rt assembly [2].
- 3. Remove 17 screws [3], and then remove the board installation cover assembly [4].
- Release the cleaning blade. (See "3.11.1 Replacing the cleaning blade.")



- 5. Remove 6 connector [1] and 2 connector [2].
- 6. Bring down the connector [3] in the arrow-marked direction and remove the ribbon cable [4].
- Remove the wiring harness from the cable clamps at 14 places.





- 8. Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the memory cover assembly [2].
- 9. Remove the CF card [3].
- 10. Remove 2 screws [4].
- 11. Remove the connector cap [5].

12. Remove 9 screws [1] and open the board box assembly [2].







13. Remove 3 screws [1] and then remove 4 flywheels [2].

14. Release the cable [2] from the cable clamp [1].15. Remove the connector [3].

NOTE

• When removing the connector [3], be careful not to crack the board [4].

16. Remove 2 hexagon socket screws [1] and then remove the mounting member [2].







- 17. Remove the drum collar [1].
- 18. Remove 2 screws [2] and then remove the drum ground spring [3].
- 19. Remove the ground bearing [4].

NOTE

• When installing the drum ground spring [1], be sure to set the edge [2] to the notch [4] of the ground bearing [3].

20. Remove 4 screws [1] and then remove the drum drive assembly [2].





- 21. Remove the E-ring [1] and then remove the toner collection gear /4 [2], the spring [3] and the drum coupling collar [4].
- 22. Remove 4 screws [5] and then remove the drum drive board /2 [6].

23. Remove the bearing [1], the drum coupling collar[2] and the toner collection gear /3 [3].

NOTE

shaft.

• Be sure to install the toner collection gear /3 so that the arrow-mark [4] side turns upward.

 When reinstalling the drum drive assembly, be sure to conduct the operation with the photo conductor section set to the main body.
 Reinstalling the drum drive assembly with the photo conductor section removed may result in the discrepancy between the drum fixing couplings /1 and /2 and the phase of the drum

24. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.7 Maintenance procedure of the charge section

3.7.1 Replacing the charge unit

- When removing the charge unit, be careful not to touch the mesh area of the charge control plate with bare hands.
- When cleaning the charge control plate, be sure to blow off impurities with a blower brush.
- A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle
- Charge unit: Every 2,500,000 prints



- Remove the photo conductor section from the main body. (See "3.6.1 Removing/reinstalling the photo conductor section.")
- 2. Remove 2 connectors [1].
- By holding the sections indicated by [2] and [3] in the drawing, remove the charge unit [4].
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.7.2 Replacing the charge control plate, charge wire, charge cleaning board, charge slide member, charge cleaning blocks /Up and /Lw, and the C-clip

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Charge control plate: Every 250,000 prints
- Charge wire: Every 250,000 prints
- Charge cleaning board: Every 250,000 prints
- Charge slide member: Every 250,000 prints
- Charge cleaning block /Up: Every 250,000 prints
- Charge cleaning block /Lw: Every 250,000 prints
- C-clip: Every 250,000 prints



- Remove the charge unit from the photo conductor section. (See "3.7.1 Replacing the charge unit.")
- 2. Remove 2 springs [1] and then remove the charge control plate [2].



- Remove lightning protection sheets /Fr [1] and /Rr [2].
- 4. Remove the charge cleaning block /Lw [3].
- 5. Remove the spring [4] and then remove the charge wire [5].



6. Remove the C-clip [1] and then remove the charge cleaning block /Up [2].

- When removing the charge cleaning block / Up, be careful that collars [3] and [4] do not get lost.
- 7. Remove the charge cleaning board [5] and the charge slide member [6].



- When reinstalling the charge cleaning block / Up [1], be sure to install it so that it is positioned to the erase lamp (EL) [2] as shown in the drawing. And also be sure to install 2 collars without fail.
- 8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.7.3 Cleaning the charge back plate and the erase lamp

A. Periodic cleaning cycle

- Charge back plate: Every 250,000 prints
- Erase lamp (EL): Every 250,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the charge unit from the photo conductor section. (See "3.7.1 Replacing the charge unit.")
- 2. Remove the charge control plate, charge wire, charge cleaning board, charge slide member, and the charge cleaning block /Up and /Lw from the charge unit. (See "3.7.2 Replacing the charge control plate, charge wire, charge cleaning board, charge slide member, charge cleaning blocks /Up and /Lw, and the C-clip.")
- 3. Release the lock [1] and remove the erase lamp (EL) [2].

- When a urethane sheet [3] is peeled off while installing the erase lamp (EL), be sure to apply it again securely.
- Clean the erase lamp (EL) and the inside and outside of the charge back plate [4] with a cleaning pad soaked with dry cleaner and a blower brush.
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.8 Maintenance procedure of the transfer/separation charge unit

3.8.1 Replacing the transfer/separation charge unit

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Transfer/separation charge unit: Every 2,000,000 prints



- Pull out the ADU from the main body. (See "3.15.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush.")
- 2. Loosen 2 screws [1] and remove the transfer/separation charge unit [2].



NOTE

- Reinstall the transfer/separation charge unit [1] so that the couplings [2] and [3] engage correctly.
- *3.* Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.8.2

Α.

•

•

B. Procedure

C-clip: Every 500,000 prints

Periodically replaced parts/cycle

Transfer/separation charge wire: Every 500,000 prints

Transfer cleaning assembly: Every 500,000 prints

Separation charge assembly: Every 500,000 prints Transfer presser rubber: Every 500,000 prints

> Remove the transfer/separation charge unit from the ADU. (See "3.8.1 Replacing the transfer/separation charge unit.")

Replacing the transfer/separation charge wire, transfer cleaning assembly, separation

cleaning assembly, transfer presser rubber and the C-clip

[1]

 Release the locks [1] provided at 6 separate places and remove the wire guides /1 [2] and /2 [3].





Remove lightning protection sheets /Fr [1] and /Rr [2].



 Remove springs [1], 1 each, and remove the 3 transfer /separation charge wires [2] and the 3 transfer presser rubber [3].

- When reinstalling the transfer/separation charge wire, be sure to insert each wire into the notch [4] of the transfer presser rubber.
- When reinstalling the transfer/separation charge wire, be sure to conduct the operation so that all of the hooks [5] of each spring are positioned in the direction as shown in the drawing.



5. Remove the screw [1] and then remove the transfer guide plate assembly [2].

- When removing the transfer guide plate assembly, be careful that 2 springs [3] do not get lost.
- When removing the transfer guide plate assembly, be careful not to snap the positioning boss [5] of the transfer/separation block / Fr [4].





3.8.3 Cleaning the transfer/separation charge unit

A. Periodic cleaning cycle

Transfer/separation charge unit: Every 250,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Rotate the coupling [1] in the arrow-marked direction and move it to the position in which the transfer cleaning assembly [2] and the separation cleaning assembly [3] evade the stopper [4] respectively.
- Remove C-clips [6], 1 each, from the shaft [5] of each cleaning assembly.
- Turn over the transfer/separation charge unit [7] and remove the transfer cleaning assembly and the separation cleaning assembly.
- 9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• When installing a new periodically replaced part, be sure conduct the next item: "3.8.3 Cleaning the transfer/separation charge unit.")

- Remove the transfer/separation charge unit from the ADU. (See "3.8.1 Replacing the transfer/separation charge unit.")
- Remove the transfer/separation charge wire, transfer cleaning assembly and the separation cleaning assembly. (See "3.8.2 Replacing the transfer/separation charge wire, transfer cleaning assembly, separation cleaning assembly, transfer presser rubber and the C-clip.")
- Clean the inside and outside of the transfer/separation back plate [1] with a cleaning pad soaked with drum cleaner.



3.8.4 Replacing the transfer exposure lamp unit

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Transfer exposure lamp unit: Every 2,500,000 prints

B. Procedure



 Remove the transfer/separation charge unit from the ADU. (See "3.8.1 Replacing the transfer/separation charge unit.")

4. Clean lightning protection sheets /Fr [1] and /Rr [2]

5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal

drum cleaner.

steps in reverse.

and the wire guides /1 [3] and /2 [4] that have

been removed with a cleaning pad soaked with

- 2. Remove the connector [1].
- 3. Remove 3 screws [2] and then remove the transfer exposure lamp unit [3].
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.9 Maintenance procedure of the developing unit

3.9.1 Replacing the developing unit

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

Developing unit: Every 2,500,000 prints



- Remove the photo conductor section from the main body. (See "3.6.1 Removing/reinstalling the photo conductor section.")
- 2. Release the toner recycle pipe [1].
- 3. Release the developing pressure lever [2] at 2 places.
- By holding the sections as indicated by [3] and [4] in the drawing, remove the developing unit [6] from the photo conductor section [5].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.9.2 Replacing the developer



A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Developer: Every 250,000 prints

B. Procedure



- When replacing the developer, be careful that dirt does not get into it.
- When rotating the developing roller [1], be absolutely sure to turn the developing gear [2] counterclockwise [3] only.
- Be absolutely sure not to rotate the developing gear [2] clockwise.
- When putting in new developer, be sure to reset the developer counter in the service mode. If not reset, image gray background and toner splash may result. (See "10.6.4 Setting, display and resetting of the PM cycle.")

- Remove the developing unit from the photo conductor section. (See "3.9.1 Replacing the developing unit.")
- 2. Release 2 hooks [1] and remove the developing unit cover /1 [2].
- 3. Release 2 hooks [3] and remove the developing unit cover /2 [4].





4. With the developing unit [1] tilted about 45° [2], rotate the developing gear [3] counterclockwise [4] to discharge thoroughly the developer [5] in the developing unit.

NOTE

 Any used developer remaining in the developing roller may cause gray background to the image.

- Pour new developer [1] evenly [3] from above the mixing screw [2].
- Rotate the developing gear [5] counterclockwise
 [6] so that the developer gets fully into the developing unit [4].
- Repeat the steps 5 and 6 to pour the developer completely.
- Rotate the developing gear counterclockwise and apply developer uniformly on the entire surface of the developing roller [7].
- 9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

bizhub 750/600

A. Periodic cleaning cycle

Developing unit: Every 250,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the developing unit from the photo conductor section. (See "3.9.1 Replacing the developing unit.")
- Remove the developing unit cover /1 from the developing unit. (See "3.9.2 Replacing the developer.")
- 3. Clean the developer regulation blade [1], the under surface of the developing roller [2], and both ends of the developing roller [3] with a cleaning pad.

- Be careful not to fold the sheet [4] of the under surface of the developing roller.
- Clean the backside of the developing unit cover /1 with a cleaning pad.
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.9.4 Cleaning the developing bias contact.

A. Periodic cleaning cycle

Developing bias contact: Every 250,000 prints



- Remove the developing unit from the photo conductor section. (See "3.9.1 Replacing the developing unit.")
- 2. Wipe off smudges adhering to the developing bias contact [1] with a cleaning pad.
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

bizhub 750/600

3.10 Maintenance procedure of the toner supply section

3.10.1 Cleaning of the toner bottle section

A. Periodic cleaning cycle

• Toner bottle section: Every 250,000 prints



- Open the toner supply door [1], and pull the lever [2] to pull out the toner bottle [3].
- 2. Remove the toner bottle.



- Clean around the toner bottle insertion opening [1] with a blower brush and a cleaning pad.
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.11 Maintenance procedure of the cleaning and toner recycle section

3.11.1 Replacing the cleaning blade

NOTE

- Be absolutely sure to replace the cleaning blade and the toner guide roller at the same time.
- Be sure to avoid touching the edge of the cleaning blade with bare hands.
- When reinstalling the cleaning section, be sure to apply setting powder to the entire periphery of the drum and the cleaning blade regardless of these parts being new or used ones.
- When the drum is applied with setting powder, be sure conduct the following operations before installing the photo conductor section to the main body:
 - 1) To obtain an accurate toner density, clean setting powder splashed onto the gamma sensor and the maximum density sensor on the toner control sensor board (TCSB) with a cleaning pad soaked in drum cleaner.
 - 2) With the charge unit and the developing unit removed, rotate the drum one full turn (for splash prevention of setting powder to the charge and prevention against the image getting blurred).

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

Cleaning blade: Every 250,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the photo conductor section from the main body. (See "3.6.1 Removing/reinstalling the photo conductor section.")
- Remove the developing unit from the photo conductor section. (See "3.7.1 Replacing the charge unit.")
- Remove the developing unit from the photo conductor section. (See "3.9.1 Replacing the developing unit.")
- Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the cleaner cover [2].

NOTE

• When installing the cleaner cover, be careful that sponge does not get clipped. Otherwise, the splashes of toner may result.





- Check to see if the blade fixing member [1] is released (on the OFF indication side [2] in the drawing). If not released, release it. (See "3.6.1 Removing/reinstalling the photo conductor section.")
- 6. Remove the blade fulcrum bearing [3] and then remove the cleaning blade assembly [4].

NOTE

 After replacing the cleaning blade, be sure to conduct "Blade set mode" in "Drum peculiarity adjustment" of "Process adjustment" in the service mode to prevent the blade from turning up. (See "10.4.2 Blade setting mode (Drum peculiarity adjustment).")

- Remove the screw [1] and then remove the cleaning blade [3] from the cleaning blade assembly [2].
- 8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

3.11.2 Replacing the toner guide roller

- When reinstalling the toner guide roller, apply setting powder uniformly on the toner guide roller. Be sure to conduct this operation with toner guide roller removed from the photo conductor section.
- Be sure to avoid touching the scraper of the toner guide roller with bare hands. And also avoid the direct contact of an object with the roller section.
 - 1) When the toner guide roller has been replaced, be sure to apply electricity lubricant to the roller shaft power supply section.
 - 2) When replacing the toner guide roller, be sure to reset the count value of "Toner collection roller assembly" in "Fixed parts counter" of "Counter/data" in the service mode. (See "10.6.2 Display and reset of the fixed parts counter.")

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Toner guide roller: Every 250,000 prints



- Remove the photo conductor section from the main body (See "3.6.1 Removing/reinstalling the photo conductor section.")
- Remove the charge unit from the photo conductor section. (See "3.7.1 Replacing the charge unit.")
- Remove the developing unit from the photo conductor section. (See "3.9.1 Replacing the developing unit.")
- Remove the cleaning blade from the photo conductor section. (See "3.11.1 Replacing the cleaning blade.")
- 5. Release the power supply pin [1].
- 6. Remove the C-lip [2] and then remove the cleaner idle gear [3].
- 7. Loosen once the screw [4] and move the blade fixing member [5] to the set side (the ON indication side [6] as shown in the drawing) for fixing.
- 8. Remove screws [7], 1 each, and remove the 2 positioning member [8].
- 9. Remove the toner guide roller [9].
- 10. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.



NOTE

• When a new toner guide roller is installed, be sure to bring the blade fixing member [1] back to the release side (OFF indication side [2]).
3.12 Maintenance procedure of the paper feed section

3.12.1 Replacing the feed rubber, the feed roller and the separation rubber (trays 1, 2, 3, 4)

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Feed rubber: Every 500,000 prints (once for every 125,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)
- Separation rubber: Every 500,000 prints (once for every 125,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)
- Feed roller: 5,000,000 prints

B. Procedure



- 1. Pull out the paper feed tray.
- Loosen the shaft screw [1] and remove the screw [2].
- 3. Remove the connector [4] while lifting up the paper feed unit [3], and remove the paper feed unit.

bizhub 750/600



- 4. Remove 2 C-clips [1] and slide 2 bearings [2] to the outside.
- Evacuate the shaft [3] through the slit [5] of the holder [4] and remove the feed roller assembly [6].

NOTE

• When installing it, be sure to set the pin [8] of the shaft [7] to the coupling [9].



6. Remove a bearing [1] and the C-clip [2], and then remove the feed roller [3].

NOTE

- Be sure to install the feed roller so that the arrow-mark [4] side comes to the opposite side of the double feed prevention plate [5].
- 7. Remove the feed rubber [6] from the feed roller.

NOTE

• Be sure to install a new feed rubber so that the paint mark [7] side comes to the arrowmark [4] side of the feed roller. bizhub 750/600



Remove the C-clip [1], push the separation roller
 [2] down to the lower side and remove it.

NOTE

• Be sure to install the separation roller so that the paint mark [3] side comes to the opposite side of the gear [4].



9. Remove the separation rubber [2] from the separation roller [1].

NOTE

- When installing a new separation rubber, be sure to install it so that the paint mark [3] comes to the thin flange [4] side of the separation roller.
- 10. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• Be sure to check the each roller if it is smeared with grease.

3.12.2 Replacing the pick-up roller (trays 1, 2, 3, 4)

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Pick-up roller: Every 2,500,000 prints (once for every 800,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)

B. Procedure



57aaf2c071na

- 1. Pull out the paper feed tray.
- Remove the paper feed unit and then remove the feed roller assembly. (See "3.12.1 Replacing the feed rubber, the feed roller and the separation rubber (trays 1, 2, 3, 4).")
- Remove the C-clip [1] and then remove the pickup roller [2].

NOTE

- Be sure to install the pick-up roller so that the arrow-mark [3] side comes to the opposite side of the double feed prevention plate [4].
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• Be sure to check the pick-up roller if it is smeared with grease.

3.12.3 Replacing the feed regulating block (Trays 1, 2, 3, 4)

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Feed regulating block: 5,000,000 prints

B. Procedure



- 1. Pull out the paper feed tray.
- Remove the paper feed unit and then remove the feed roller assembly. (See "3.12.1 Replacing the feed rubber, the feed roller and the separation rubber (trays 1, 2, 3, 4).")
- Remove the paper feed clutch. (See "3.12.4 Replacing the paper feed clutch and the pre-registration clutch (Trays 1, 2, 3, 4).")
- 4. Remove 3 screws [1] and then remove the wiring harness protective cover [2].



5. Remove the spring [1] and evacuate the cam plate [2] in the arrow-marked direction [3].



- 6. Remove 3 E-rings [1].
- 7. After removing the bearing [2], release the bearing[3] and then remove the feed input shaft [4].



- 8. Remove the screw [1] and then remove the coupling [2].
- 9. Remove the bearing [3], pull out the feed input shaft [4] and remove the feed regulating block [5].

- Be sure to install a new feed regulating block so that the arrow-mark [6] side becomes the coupling side.
- 10. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.12.4 Replacing the paper feed clutch and the pre-registration clutch (Trays 1, 2, 3, 4)

Α. Spotted replaced parts/cycle

- Paper feed clutch: once for every 2,000,000 prints for actual replacement cycle •
- Pre-registration clutch: once for every 2,000,000 prints for actual replacement cycle •

B. Procedure



[3] [2] [4] [5] [1] 57aaf2c077na

- 1. Pull out the paper feed tray.
- 2. Remove the feed unit. (See "3.12.1 Replacing the feed rubber, the feed roller and the separation rubber (trays 1, 2, 3, 4).")
- 3. Remove the connector [1].
- 4. Remove the C-clip [2] and then remove the paper feed clutches /1, /2, /3, /4 (CL3, 5, 7, 9) [3].

NOTE

· When installing each paper feed clutch, be sure to set the stopper [4] to the screw [5].

- 5. Remove the connector [1].
- 6. Remove the C-clip [2] and then remove the preregistration clutch /1, /2, /3, /4 (CL4, 6, 8, 10) [3].

- · When installing each pre-registration clutch, be sure to set the stopper [4] to the screw [5].
- 7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.12.5 Replacing the separation clutch (Trays 1, 2, 3, 4)

A. Spotted replaced parts/cycle

• Separation clutch: once for every 2,000,000 prints for actual replacement cycle

B. Procedure



- 1. Pull out the paper feed tray.
- Remove the feed unit. (See "3.12.1 Replacing the feed rubber, the feed roller and the separation rubber (trays 1, 2, 3, 4).")
- 3. Replace the paper feed clutch and the pre-registration clutch. (See "3.12.4 Replacing the paper feed clutch and the pre-registration clutch (Trays 1, 2, 3, 4).")
- 4. Remove the E-ring [1].





 Push once the coupling [1] in the arrow-marked direction [2] and pull out the pin [3] to remove the coupling.

6. Remove the spring [1].



- 7. Remove the connector [1].
- Remove the C-clip [2] and then remove the separation clutches /1, /2, /3, /4 (CL21, 22, 17, 18) [3].

- When it is not possible to pull out the separation clutch smoothly, rotate the shaft [4] so that the E-ring [5] does not interfere with the gear [6] of the separation clutch.
- When installing each of the separation clutch, be sure to set stopper [7] to the guide plate [8].
- 9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.12.6 Replacing the horizontal conveyance clutches /Rt and /Lt

A. Spotted replaced parts/cycle

- Horizontal conveyance clutch /Rt: once for every 2,000,000 prints for actual replacement cycle
- Horizontal conveyance clutch /Lt: once for every 2,000,000 prints for actual replacement cycle

B. Procedure



- Remove the vertical conveyance section. (See "3.14.1 Replacing the vertical conveyance clutches /1 and /2.")
- 2. Pull out the tray 2 and the horizontal conveyance section.
- 3. Remove the screw [1] and then remove the sensor mounting plate [2].



- 4. Remove the connector [1].
- Remove the C-clip [2] and then remove the horizontal conveyance clutch /Rt (CL16) [3].

NOTE

- When installing the horizontal conveyance clutch /Rt (CL16), be sure to set the stopper [4] to the guide [5].
- 6. Remove the connector [6].
- Remove the C-clip [7] and then remove the horizontal conveyance clutch /Lt (CL15) [8].

- When installing the horizontal conveyance clutch /Lt (CL15), be sure to set the stopper [9] to the guide [10].
- 8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.13 Maintenance procedure of the bypass tray section

3.13.1 Replacing the feed rubber and the separation rubber

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Feed rubber: Every 500,000 prints (once for every 70,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)
- Separation rubber: Every 500,000 prints (once for every 70,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)



- Remove the bypass tray. (See "6.3.24 Removing/ reinstalling the bypass tray.")
- 2. Remove the C-clip [1] and a bearing [2].
- 3. Slide the shaft [3] and remove the gear [4], the feed roller [5] and the feed roller assembly [6].



- Removing the shaft releases the retention of the feed roller assembly [1] with the gear [2] and the feed roller [3] separated. Be careful that each part does not drop.
- Be sure to install the feed roller so that the arrow-mark [2] side becomes the gear [2] side.



 Remove the feed rubber [2] from the feed roller [1].

NOTE

• Be sure to install a new feed rubber so that the paint mark [3] side becomes the arrowmarked [4] side. bizhub 750/600

5. Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the bottom plate assembly [2].



57aaf2c088na

6. Remove the spring [1].

- The installation holes on the frame side of the spring come up with 3 places according to the separation pressure. When installing the spring, be sure to install it at the same hole as it was removed.
- Shift the supporting sections [2] 1 position inward for each and remove the separation roller assembly [3].



8. Remove the C-clip [1], and pull out the shaft [2] to remove the separation roller [3].

NOTE

• When installing the separation roller, be sure to set the stopper section [4] to the slit [5].

bizhub 750/600



9. Remove the separation rubber [2] from the separation roller [1].

NOTE

- Be sure to install a new separation rubber so that the paint mark [3] side comes to the opposite side of the stopper section [4].
- 10. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• Be sure to check each roller if it is smeared with grease.

bizhub 750/600

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

Pick-up rubber: Every 1,000,000 prints (once for every 140,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)

B. Procedure



- Remove the bypass tray. (See "6.3.24 Removing/ reinstalling the bypass tray.")
- Remove the feed roller assembly from the bypass tray. (See "3.13.1 Replacing the feed rubber and the separation rubber.")
- 3. Remove the C-clip [1], and pull out the shaft [2] to remove the pick-up rubber [3].

NOTE

- When installing the pick-up rubber, be sure to set the D cut [4] of the shaft to the D cut [6] of the feed roller assembly [5].
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• Be sure to check the pick-up rubber if it is smeared with grease.

- 3.13.3 Replacing the gear /A
- A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle
 - Gear /A: 5,000,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the bypass tray. (See "6.3.24 Removing/ reinstalling the bypass tray.")
- 2. Remove the E-ring [1] and then remove the gear / A [2].

- Be sure to install a new gear /A so that the arrow-marked side [3] becomes the frame [4] side.
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

bizhub 750/600

- A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle
- Gear /B: 5,000,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the bypass tray. (See "6.3.24 Removing/ reinstalling the bypass tray.")
- 2. Remove the E-ring [1] and then remove the gear / B [2].

- Be sure to install a new gear /B so that the arrow-marked side [3] becomes the frame [4] side.
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.13.5 Replacing the loop roller

- A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle
- Loop roller: 5,000,000 prints



- Remove the bypass tray. (See "6.3.24 Removing/ reinstalling the bypass tray.")
- Remove the gear /A from the bypass tray. (See "3.13.3 Replacing the gear /A.")
- 3. Remove the hexagon socket screw [1] and then remove the knob [2].



- 4. Remove 2 E-rings [1].
- 5. Slide 2 bearings [2] to the outside respectively, and remove the loop roller assembly [3].





[1]

57aaf2c096na

[3]

- 6. Remove the E-ring [2] and 2 bearings [3] from the loop roller assembly [1].
- 7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

bizhub 750/600

B. Procedure

Α.

•

3.13.6 Replacing the gear /C

Gear /C: 5,000,000 prints

[1]

Periodically replaced parts/cycle

[2]

Remove the bypass tray. (See "6.3.24 Removing/ reinstalling the bypass tray.")

- Pull out the ADU. (See "3.15.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush.")
- Remove the C-clip [1] and then remove the gear
 [2] and the pin [3].
- When removing the gear [2], be careful that the pin [3] does not get lost.
- MAINTENANCE





- Remove 3 screws [1] and then remove the bypass drive assembly [2].



5. Remove 2 E-rings [1] and then remove the gear / C [2].

- Be sure to install a new gear /C so that the arrow-mark [3] side comes to the opposite side of the mounting plate [4].
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.14 Maintenance procedure of the vertical conveyance section

3.14.1 Replacing the vertical conveyance clutches /1 and /2

A. Spotted replaced parts/cycle

- Vertical conveyance clutch /1: once for every 2,000,000 prints for actual replacement cycle
- Vertical conveyance clutch /2: once for every 2,000,000 prints for actual replacement cycle





- Remove the right cover /Up, /Lw1, /Lw2 and / Lw3. (See "6.3.3 Removing/reinstalling the right cover /Up" and "6.3.4 Removing/reinstalling the right covers /Lw1, /Lw2 and /Lw3.")
- 2. Disconnect the connector [1].
- 3. Remove 11 screws [2] and then remove the vertical conveyance section [3].

- 4. Pull out the trays 2 to 4.
- Remove 2 C-clips [1] and then remove 2 gears [2] and 2 collars [3].



6. Remove a connector [1] and then remove the vertical conveyance clutch /1 (CL11) [2].

NOTE

- When installing the vertical conveyance clutch /1 (CL11), be sure to set the stopper [3] to the guide [4].
- Remove a connector [5] and then remove the vertical conveyance clutch /2 (CL12) [6].

- When installing the vertical conveyance clutch /2 (CL12), be sure to set the stopper [7] to the guide [8].
- 8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.15 Maintenance procedure of the ADU

\triangle Caution:

• Be absolutely sure not to turn on forcibly the interlock switches /1 (MS1) and /2 (MS2) with the ADU pulled out. An unexpected high voltage may be generated.

3.15.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush

A. Periodic cleaning cycle

• Paper dust removing brush: Every 250,000 prints



- 1. Open the front door /Lt [1] and /Rt [2].
- While holding down the solenoid release lever [4] of the ADU [3] in the arrow-marked direction [5], pull down the ADU pull-out lever [6].
- 3. Pull the ADU pull-out lever and pull out the ADU.



 Press the projections [1] at 2 places for each to release the lock, and remove the 2 paper dust removing brushes [2].

NOTE

• When reinstalling the paper dust removing brush, be sure to set each projections to the positioning hole [3].

- [1] [2] 57aaf2c105na
- 5. Clean the brush section [2] of the paper dust removing brush [1] with a blower brush.
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

bizhub 750/600

A. Periodically replaced cycle

• Registration clutch (CL1): Every 2,000,000 prints



- Pull out the ADU from the main body. (See "3.15.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush.")
- Remove the screw [1] and then remove the ADU pull-out lever [2].



- 3. Open the mis-centering detection assembly [1].
- Remove 3 screws [2] and then remove the ADU cover [3].





- 6. Remove a connector [1].
- 7. Remove the screw [2] and then remove the clutch fixing member [3].
- 8. Remove the registration clutch (CL1) [4].

NOTE

• When installing a new registration clutch, be sure to set the stopper [5] to the guide plate [6].

5. Remove the screw [1] and then remove the knob

[2].



NOTE

- When installing the clutch fixing member, be sure to take note of the insertion direction.
 [1]: Correct example
 [2]: Incorrect example
- 9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.15.3 Removing/reinstalling the registration section

A. Procedure



- Pull out the ADU from the main body. (See "3.15.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush.")
- Remove the ADU cover. (See "3.15.2 Replacing the registration clutch.")
- 3. Remove 2 connectors [1].
- Open the mis-centering detection assembly [2] and remove 2 screws [3].
- Remove the 2 screws [4] and the registration section [5].
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

 Be sure to install the registration section so that the registration entrance sheet [6] comes to the inside of the ADU paper exit member / Lt [7]. bizhub 750/600

3.15.4 Replacing the registration roller and the registration bearing /Rr

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Registration roller: Every 2,500,000 prints
- Registration bearing /Rr: Every 2,500,000 prints



- Pull out the ADU from the main body. (See "3.15.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush.")
- Remove the registration section from the ADU. (See "3.15.3 Removing/reinstalling the registration section.")
- Remove the registration clutch (CL1) from the registration section. (See "3.15.2 Replacing the registration clutch.")
- Turn over the registration section [1] and remove 2 E-rings [2] and a bearing [3].
- 5. Remove an E-ring [4] and then remove the registration bearing /Rr [5].
- 6. Remove the E-ring [6] and shift the bearing [7].
- After sliding once the registration roller [8] to the arrow-marked direction, pull out it in the arrowmarked direction [10] for removal.



- Remove a bearing [2] from the registration roller [1].
- 9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.15.5 Cleaning the ADU reverse sensor and the reverse/exit sensor

A. Cleaning cycle

• No cleaning cycle is specified. However, be sure to clean it when a jam occurs frequently at the ADU reversal section due to paper dust.



- Pull out the ADU from the main body. (See "3.15.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush.")
- Remove the fusing unit from the ADU. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Remove the ADU cover. (See "3.15.2 Replacing the registration clutch.")
- 4. Remove the screw [1] and then remove the ground plate [2].
- Remove the spring [4] from the open/close wire
 [3].

MAINTENANCE







- Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the open/ close wire assembly [2].
- Remove 2 screws [3] and then remove the ADU reverse guide assembly [4].

NOTE

• When installing the ADU reverse guide assembly [1], be sure to set the 2 projections on the rear side to the 2 installation holes [4] in the ADU bottom plate assembly [3].

8. Remove 9 screws [2] from the bottom of the ADU [1].

110
- While pressing the ADU bottom plate assembly [1], remove the screw [2] and then remove the open/close wire [3].

• Removing the open/close wire releases the fixing of the ADU bottom plate assembly. Be sure to hold down the ADU bottom plate assembly when removing the screw [2].



10. After bringing down the ADU bottom plate assembly [1] vertically, remove the ADU guide cover [2].



- 11. Clean the ADU reverse sensor (PS45) [1] and the reverse/exit sensor (PS46) [2] with a blower brush.
- 12. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

$3.15.6 \quad \text{Replacing the ADU registration rollers /Up, /Lw and the registration bearings /Up, /Lw}$

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- ADU Registration roller /Up: Every 2,500,000 prints
- ADU Registration roller /Lw: Every 2,500,000 prints
- Registration bearing /1: Every 2,500,000 prints
- Registration bearing /2: Every 2,500,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Pull out the ADU from the main body. (See "3.15.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush.")
- Remove the registration section from the ADU. (See "3.15.3 Removing/reinstalling the registration section.")
- 3. Remove a connector [1].
- 4. Remove the screw [2] and then remove the connector mounting plate [3].
- 5. Remove 4 screws [4] and then remove the registration drive unit [5].



- 6. Remove the E-ring [1].
- Press once the coupling [2] in the arrow-marked direction [3] and pull out a pin [4] to remove the coupling.
- 8. Remove a spring [5] and a spacer [6].



- 9. Remove the spring [1].
- 10. Remove the E-ring [2] and then remove the registration bearing /1 [3].
- 11. Remove the spring [4].
- 12. Remove the E-ring [5] and then remove the registration bearing /1 [6].

13. After sliding once the ADU registration roller /Up[1] in the arrow-marked direction [2], pull out it in the arrow-marked direction [3] for removal.





- Remove the E-ring [1] and then remove the registration bearing /2 [2].
- 15. Remove the E-ring [3] and then remove the registration bearing /2 [4].

- [2] [3]
- 16. Open the ADU bottom plate assembly [1] and slide once the ADU registration roller /Up [2] in the arrow-marked direction [3]. And then, pull out it in the arrow-marked direction [4] for removal.
- 17. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.15.7 Replacing the ADU deceleration clutch and the ADU conveyance clutch

A. Spotted replaced parts/cycle

- ADU deceleration clutch (CL2): once for every 2,000,000 prints for actual replacement cycle
- ADU conveyance clutch (CL13): once for every 2,000,000 prints for actual replacement cycle

B. Procedure



- Pull out the ADU from the main body. (See "3.15.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush.")
- Remove the ADU cover. (See "3.15.2 Replacing the registration clutch.")
- 3. Remove the connector [1].
- Remove the C-clip [2] and then remove the ADU deceleration clutch (CL2) [3].

NOTE

- When installing a new ADU deceleration clutch, be sure to set the stopper [4] to the guide plate [5].
- 5. Remove the connector [6].
- Remove the C-clip [7] and then remove the ADU conveyance clutch (CL13) [8].

- When installing a new ADU conveyance clutch (CL13), be sure to set the stopper [9] to the guide plate [10].
- 7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.16 Maintenance procedure of the fusing section

\triangle Caution:

 Immediately after turning off the main power switch (SW1) or the power switch (SW2), the fusing section is very hot and you may get burnt. Be sure to start operations when the temperature cools down sufficiently.

3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit

A. Procedure



- Open the front doors /Lt and /Rt and pull out the ADU section. (See "3.15.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush.")
- 2. Release the pressure release lever [1].
- 3. Remove 2 screws [2] and remove the fusing cover /Fr [3].

- 4. Remove 2 screws [1].
- With the pressure release lever [2] and the fusing handle /Rr [3] held by hand, lift the fusing unit [4] for removal.
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.



3.16.2 Replacing the cleaning web

- A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle
- Cleaning web: Every 250,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Open the front doors /Lt and /Rt, and pull out the ADU section. (See "3.15.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush.")
- Remove the fusing unit from the ADU section. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- 3. Open the fusing claw unit /Up [1] and remove 2 screws [2].

MAINTENANCE



 Remove 2 screws [1] and close the fusing claw unit /Up. And then remove the web cover [2].



5. Remove 2 screws [1] and remove the cleaning web [2].

NOTE

- When installing a new cleaning web, be sure to set the fusing cleaning blocks /Fr [5] and / Rr [6] to each slit [4] of the fusing unit [3].
- When installing the web cover [2], be sure to screw [1] it while pressing it down.



- The performance of a new cleaning web [1] is guaranteed from the position in which a red line [2] disappears. When installing it, be sure to rotate the gear [3] to take the cleaning web up to the position in which the red line disappears.
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.16.3 Removing/reinstalling the fusing claw unit /Up A. Procedure



- Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Remove the web cover. (See "3.16.2 Replacing the cleaning web.")
- Remove the screw [1] and remove the fixing plate [2].
- 4. Open the fusing claw unit /Up [3] for removal.
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.16.4 Replacing the fusing claw /Up

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• The fusing claw /Up: Every 250,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Remove the fusing claw unit /Up. (See "3.16.3 Removing/reinstalling the fusing claw unit /Up.")
- 3. Remove the screw [1] and pull out the shaft [2].

NOTE

- The shaft is apt to bend. Be careful when removing it.
- Remove 6 springs [4] from each of the fusing separation claws /Up [3].
- 5. Remove 6 fusing separation claws /Up [3].

- When installing a new fusing claw /Up, be sure to operate its edge with your finger and check to see if it gets back to its original state by the force of the spring.
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.16.5 Opening/closing the fusing unit /Up A. Procedure



- Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- 2. Bring the pressure release lever [1] down and release the pressure.
- Remove 2 screws [2] and open the fusing unit /Up
 [3].
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.16.6 Replacing the fusing heater lamps /1 and /2

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Fusing heater lamp /1 (L2): Every 1,000,000 prints
- Fusing heater lamp /2 (L3): Every 1,000,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Remove the cleaning web. (See "3.16.2 Replacing the cleaning web.")
- Open the fusing claw unit /Up. (See "3.16.3 Removing/reinstalling the fusing claw unit /Up.")
- 4. Remove the faston [1] and [2].

NOTE

• When removing the faston, be sure to hold the connector.

Be absolutely sure to avoid pulling it off by holding the wiring harness section.

5. Remove all the wiring harnesses from the wire clamp [3].



- 6. Remove the fusing unit /Up. (See "3.16.5 Opening/closing the fusing unit /Up.")
- 7. Remove the faston [1] and [2].

• When removing the faston, be sure to hold the connector.

Connector cannot be removed by pulling on the harness [3].

- 8. Remove the screw [4] and remove the lamp fixing plate /Fr [5].
- Pull out the fusing heater lamps /2 (L3) [6] and /1 (L2) [7] in the arrow-marked direction [8] for removal.
- 10. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• When installing the fusing heater lamps /1 and /2, be sure to insert it so that the manufacturer's mark comes to the rear side.

3.16.7 Replacing the fusing roller /Up, the bearing, the heat insulating sleeve and the fusing gear

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Fusing roller /Up: Every 500,000 prints
- Bearing /Up: Every 500,000 prints
- Heat insulating sleeve: Every 500,000 prints
- Fusing gear: Every 2,000,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Remove the fusing heater lamp /1 and /2. (See "3.16.6 Replacing the fusing heater lamps /1 and /2.")
- 3. Remove the screw [1] and remove the lamp fixing plate /Rr [2].

- 4. Remove the C-ring [1] and fusing gear [2].
- 5. Remove the C-ring [3] and the gear [4].





- When installing the fusing gear [1] and the gear [2], be sure to set the detent section [3] of each gear to the slit [5] of the fusing roller / Up [4].
- When installing the gear [2], be sure to turn the punch mark "5440" inward.



- 6. Remove the E-ring [1] and remove the gear [2].
- 7. Remove 3 screws [3] and remove the bearing /Up [4].
- 8. Remove the spacer [5].
- 9. Remove 3 screws [6] and remove the bearing /Up [7].
- 10. Pull out the fusing roller /Up [8] in the arrowmarked direction [9] for removal.

- When installing a new fusing roller /Up, be careful not to damage its surface.
- When installing the fusing roller /Up, be careful not to mix up 750 with 600.

750: No groove provided on the edge of the roller

600: 1 groove provided on the edge of the roller





11. Remove 2 heat insulating sleeve [2] from the fusing roller /Up [1].

NOTE

- When installing a new heat insulating sleeve, be sure to apply multemp FF-RM or tri-flow on the inside and outside peripheries.
- When installing a new heat insulating sleeve, be sure to install it so that each of the flange sections comes to the inside.
- 12. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• When installing the heat insulating sleeve, coat the inside and outside surfaces with Multemp FF-RM (tri-flow may be also used).

3.16.8 Removing/reinstalling the fusing claw unit /Lw A. Procedure



 Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")

- Open the fusing unit /Up. (See "3.16.5 Opening/ closing the fusing unit /Up.")
- Remove 2 screws [1] and remove the fusing claw unit /Law [2].
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.16.9 Replacing the fusing claw /Lw

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Fusing claw /Lw: Every 500,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Remove the fusing claw unit /Lw. (See "3.16.8 Removing/reinstalling the fusing claw unit /Lw.")
- Remove the spring [1] one each and Remove 3 fusing claws /Lw [2].

- After completion of the installation of a new fusing claw /Lw, be sure to check the exit guide plate [3] if it operates smoothly.
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Fusing heater lamp /3 (L4): Every 1,000,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Open the fusing unit /Up. (See "3.16.5 Opening/ closing the fusing unit /Up.")
- 3. Bring down the pressure release lever [1] and release the pressure.
- 4. Remove the faston [2].
- 5. Remove the faston [3].

NOTE

When removing the faston, be sure to hold the connector.
 Connector.

Connector cannot be removed by pulling on the harness.

- 6. Remove the screw [4] and remove the lamp fixing plate /Rr [5].
- Pull out the fusing heater lamp /3 (L4) [6] in the arrow-marked direction [7] for removal.
- 8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• When installing the fusing heater lamp /3, be sure to insert it so that the manufacturer's mark comes to the rear side. B. Procedure

Α.

•

3.16.11 Replacing the fusing roller /Lw and the bearing

Periodically replaced parts/cycle

Bearing /Lw: Every 500,000 prints

111

[1]

[2]

Fusing roller /Lw: Every 500,000 prints

bizhub 750/600

Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")

- Remove the fusing claw unit /Lw. (See "3.16.8 Removing/reinstalling the fusing claw unit /Lw.")
- Remove the fusing heater lamp /3. (See "3.16.10 Replacing the fusing heater lamp /3.")
- 4. Remove 2 screws [1] and remove the fusing entrance guide plate [2].
- MAINTENANCE

- 5. Raise up the fusing roller /Lw [1] for removal.
- Remove the bearing /Lw [2], 1 each, from both ends of the fusing roller /Lw.
- 7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

57aaf2e019na

- When installing the fusing roller /Lw, be careful not to damage its surface.
- When installing the fusing entrance guide plate, be sure to hit it against the bearing of the fusing roller /Up with pressure applied and fasten it with screws. Without this operation, paper may crease with wrinkles at the fusing section.

3.16.12 Replacing the decurler roller, the decurler bearing and the fusing paper exit gear /2

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Decurler roller: Every 500,000 prints
- Decurler bearing: Every 1,000,000 prints
- Fusing paper exit gear /2: 5,000,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Open the fusing unit /Up. (See "3.16.5 Opening/ closing the fusing unit /Up.")
- Press once the connected section /Rr [1] in the arrow-marked direction [2] for release, and remove the paper exit guide plate /Up [3].

- When installing the paper exit guide plate /Up, be sure to take note of the installation direction of the springs /Fr [4] and /Rr [5].
- After installing the paper exit guide plate /Up, be sure to check the guide plate to see if it gets back to its original position by the force of the spring when it is opened by the lever [6].





4. Remove the E-ring and remove the spring /Rr [2].

5. Remove the spring /Fr [1].



- Remove the screw [1] and then remove the paper exit mounting plate /2 [2] and the paper exit guide plate /Lw [3].
- Remove the screw [4] and remove the paper exit mounting plate /1 [5].



- 8. Remove the spring [1].
- 9. Remove the screw [2] and remove the knob [3].
- 10. Remove the E-ring [4] and remove the fusing paper exit gear /2 [5].

• When installing the fusing paper exit gear /2, be sure to install it so that the arrow mark [6] side comes to the frame [7] side.



- 11. Remove the screw [1].
- 12. Remove the E-ring [2] and remove the spacer [3] and decurler bearing [4].
- 13. Remove the screw [5].
- 14. Remove the E-ring [6] and remove the spacer [7] and decurler bearing [8].
- 15. Remove the decurler driven roller [9].

• The screws [1] and [5] are inserted with the spacers [10]. Be careful that they do not get lost.

- [1] [3] [2] [4] [7] [5] [6] 57aaf2e027na
- 16. Remove 2 E-rings [1] and remove the spacer [2] and decurler bearing [3].
- 17. Remove the E-ring [4] and remove the spacer [5] and decurler bearing [6].

- Be careful that each of the spacers that has been removed does not get lost. And be sure to reinstall it without fail.
- 18. Remove the decurler roller [7].
- 19. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.16.13 Replacing the fusing entering gear

- A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle
- Fusing input gear: Every 1,000,000 prints

B. Procedure





- Remove the paper exit section. (See "3.17.1 Replacing the paper exit gears /1, /2.")
- 2. Remove 3 screws [1] and remove the fusing drive plate [2].

- Remove the fusing input gear [2] from the shaft [1].
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

B. Procedure

Α.

•

3.16.14 Replacing the thermistor /2

Periodically replaced parts/cycle

Thermistor /2 (TH2): Every 2,500,000 prints

1. Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See

- "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Remove the cleaning web. (See "3.16.2 Replacing the cleaning web.")
- 3. Remove the connector [1].

NOTE

- When the wire binding band is severed, be sure to use a new heat resistant wiring band.
- Remove the screw [2] and remove the thermistor / 2 assembly [3].

- After installing the thermistor /2 assembly, be sure to check to see if it is in touch with the fusing roller /Up [4].
- After installing the thermistor /2 assembly, be sure to check the wiring harness to see if it is not in touch with the fusing roller /Up.





- 5. Remove the screw [1] and remove the thermistor / 2 (TH2) [2].
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.
bizhub 750/600

3.16.15 Replacing the fusing paper exit gear /1

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Fusing paper exit gear /1: 5,000,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Remove the fusing unit /Up. (See "3.16.5 Opening/closing the fusing unit /Up.")
- 3. Remove the E-ring [1] and remove the pressure release lever[2].



- 4. Remove the pin [1].
- Remove the E-ring [2] and remove the paper exit entrance guide plate [3].
- Remove the E-ring [4] and remove the fusing paper exit gear /1[5].

- When installing the fusing paper exit gear /1, be sure to install it so that the arrow mark [6] comes to the opposite side of the frame [7].
- 7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.16.16 Removing/reinstalling the thermistor /1 A. Procedure







- Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Remove the cleaning web. (See "3.16.2 Replacing the cleaning web.")
- 3. Remove the connector [1].

- When the wire binding band is severed, be sure to use a new heat resistant wiring band.
- 4. Remove the screw [2] and thermistor /1 (TH1) [3].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.16.17 Removing/reinstalling the thermostat /3

A. Procedure for removal





- Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Remove the cleaning web. (See "3.16.2 Replacing the cleaning web.")
- 3. Remove 2 faston [1].

NOTE

- When the wire binding band is severed, be sure to use a new heat resistant wiring band.
- 4. Remove the screw [2] and remove the thermostat /3 assembly [3].

bizhub 750/600



 Remove 2 screws [1] and remove the thermostat / 3 (TS3) [3] from the thermostat mounting plate [2].

B. Procedure for installation



- Install the thermostat /3 [TS3] to the thermostat mounting plate with 2 screws.
- Set the thermostat /3 assembly [1] and tighten it tentatively with the screw [2].
- 3. Connect 2 fastons [3] to the thermostat /3.
- Insert the thermostat positioning jig /Up (57AEJG010) [5] between the fusing roller /Up [4] and the thermostat /3.
- 5. Adjust the position of the thermostat /3 so that the clearance between the thermostat /3 and the fusing roller /Up becomes the same thickness as that of the thermostat positioning jig /Up, and then tighten the screw [2] firmly.

NOTE

- Make sure that the distance a [6] between the thermostat /3 and the fusing roller /Up becomes the same thickness as that of the thermostat positioning jig /Up.
 Standard value: a = 3.5 to 3.8 mm
- Be sure to adjust the position of the thermostat /3 with the fusing roller /Up cool.
- Make sure that the thermostat /3 is in parallel with the fusing roller /Up.
- 6. Apply screwlock to the screw [2].

NOTE

- After adjusting the position of the thermostat /3, be sure to apply screwlock to the screw.
- 7. For parts to be installed in the subsequent steps, be sure to install them following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• After installing the thermostat /3, be sure to check the wiring harness if it is in touch with the fusing roller /Up.

3.16.18 Removing/reinstalling the thermostat /4

A. Procedure for removal



- Remove the fusing unit from the main body. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Remove the fusing claw unit /Lw. (See "3.16.8 Removing/reinstalling the fusing claw unit /Lw.")
- Remove the fusing heater lamp /3. (See "3.16.10 Replacing the fusing heater lamp /3.")
- 4. Remove the fusing roller /Lw. (See "3.16.11 Replacing the fusing roller /Lw and the bearing.")
- 5. Remove 2 faston [1].

NOTE

- When the wire binding band is severed, be sure to use a new heat resistant wiring band.
- Remove 2 screws [2] and remove the thermostat / 4 assembly [3].
- Remove 2 screws [4] and remove the thermostat / 4 (TS4) [5].

B. Procedure for installation



- Install the thermostat /4 (TS4) to the thermostat mounting plate with 2 screws.
- Set the thermostat /4 assembly and fasten it tentatively with 2 screws.
- 3. Install 2 fastons to the thermostat /4.
- Install the fusing roller /Lw and keep it pressured with the pressure release lever.

- Be sure to keep the fusing roller /Lw pressured.
- Insert the thermostat positioning jig (56AEJG011)
 between the fusing roller /Lw [1] and the thermostat /4 [2].
- Adjust the position of the thermostat /4 assembly
 [5] so that the clearance between the thermostat / 4 and the fusing roller /Lw becomes the same thickness as the A portion [4] of the thermostat positioning, and then tighten the screw [2] firmly.



NOTE

• Make sure that the distance a [3] between the thermostat /4 [1] and the fusing roller /Lw [2] is the same thickness as the A portion [5] of the thermostat positioning iig [4].

Standard value: a = 1.5 to 2.0 mm

- · After installation, be sure to check the B portion [6] of the thermostat positioning jig to see if it cannot be inserted between the thermostat /4 and the fusing roller /Lw.
- · Be sure to conduct the position adjustment of the thermostat /4 with the fusing roller /Lw cool.
- Make sure that the thermostat /4 is in parallel with the fusing roller /Lw.

bizhub 750/600



7. Apply screwlock to 2 screws [1].

NOTE

- · After adjusting the position of the thermostat /4, be sure to apply screwlock to the screw.
- 8. For parts to be installed in the subsequent steps, be sure to install them following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

· After installing the thermostat /4, be sure to check the wiring harness if it is in touch with the fusing roller /Lw.

3.16.19 Replacing the web solenoid

A. Spotted replaced parts/cycle

• Web solenoid (SD2): Once for every 3,000,000 counts for actual replacement cycle

B. Procedure



- Remove the left cover. (See "6.3.2 Removing/reinstalling the left cover.")
- Remove the fan mounting assembly. (See "6.3.19 Removing/reinstalling the writing unit.")
- Pull out the ADU section from the main body. (See "3.15.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush.")
- 4. Remove the fusing cover /Fr. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- 5. Remove 4 screws [1] and remove the cleaner duct [2].



- 6. Remove the connector [1].
- Remove 2 screws [2] and remove the web solenoid assembly [3].

NOTE

- When installing the web solenoid assembly, pull out the ADU from the main body and fasten it tentatively with 2 screws [2]. And bring the ADU back again to the main body to adjust it to the position at which the position of the connecting member [6] and the projection of the web drive section [5] engage each other smoothly, and then fasten it with the screws.
- 8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

bizhub 750/600

3.17 Maintenance procedure of the paper exit section

3.17.1 Replacing the paper exit gears /1, /2

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Paper exit gear /1: 5,000,000 prints ٠
- Paper exit gear /2: 5,000,000 prints •

B. Procedure



- 1. Remove the left cover. (See "6.3.2 Removing/reinstalling the left cover.")
- 2. Remove 2 connectors [1].
- 3. Remove 4 screws [2] and then remove the paper exit unit [3].

- · When installing the paper exit unit, be sure to set the 2 holes [5] in the notch onto the 2 hooks [4] of the frame and fasten it with screws.
- · When fastening it with screws, be sure to slide it to the limit in the arrow-marked [6] direction.



- 4. Remove 2 connectors [1].
- 5. Remove the wiring harness from the cable clamps[2] provided at 4 places.
- 6. Remove 3 screws [3] and then remove the paper exit motor assembly [4].



7. Remove E-rings [1], 1 each, and then remove the paper exit gears /1 [2] and /2 [3].

- Be sure to install the paper exit gears /1 and / 2 so that the arrow-mark [4] side turns to the frame side [5].
- 8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

4. SERVICE TOOLS

4.1 Service material list

Material No.	Name	Shape	Remark
000V-16-0	Drum cleaner		200ml
000V-17-0	Roller cleaner		200ml
00GR00020	Plas guard No.2		25g
00GR00260	Multemp grease FF- RM		25g
00GR00200	Electricity lubricant		25g For toner guide roller
000V-19-0	Setting powder		25g
000V-18-0	Cleaning pad		10pcs/1pack

4.2 Jig list

Parts No.	Name	Shape	Quantity	Remark
57AEJG010	Thermostat positioning jig /Up	R	1	
56AEJG011	Thermostat	B	1	
	positioning jig /Lw			
7050K0020	Optics unit position- ing jig	~	2	
00M6-2-00	Door switch jig		4	
403479400	Gray test chart (A3)		1	With a KONICA MINOLTA logo
403479420	Gray test chart (A3)		1	Without a KONICA MINOLTA logo
00VC-2-00	Drum cover		1	
00VD-1000	Blower brush		1	
00VE-1003	Tester		1	
120A1052*	Positioning shaft	S	2pc/set	For DF adjust- ment
120A9711*	Adjustment chart		1	For DF adjust- ment

Parts No.	Name	Shape	Quantity	Remark
120A9712*	White chart		1	For DF adjust- ment
129XJG011	Stapler positioning jig	and the second s	1	For old type cartridge For FS adjust- ment
13QEJG010	Stapler positioning jig	<u>I</u>	1	For new type cartridge For FS adjust- ment

4.3 Materials

A. Item

Parts name	Useful life	Type name
Toner bottle	55,000 prints	TN710
Drum	500,000 prints	DR710
Developer	250,000 prints	DV710

B. Maintenance work set (250,000 prints/1 kit)

Parts name	Parts No.	Unit	Quantity
Charge control plate	56AA2503*	Charge unit	1
Charge wire	56AA2509*		1
Charge cleaning board	56AA2540*		1
Charge slide member	56AA2538*		1
Charge cleaning block /Up	56AA-250*		1
Charge cleaning block /Lw	56AA-254*		1
C-clip	45AA2040*		1
Toner guide roller	57AA-213*	Cleaning section	1
Cleaning blade	57AA2008*		1
Ozone filter /M	57AA1059*	External section	1
Ozone filter /S	56QA1057*		1
Developing suction filter	57AA-715*		1
Cleaning web	57AA-543*	Fusing unit	1
Fusing claw /Up	56AA5427*	1	6

4.4 Memory check by using the PC

Using the terminal communication program of the personal computer (PC) allows you to conduct the memory check by BIOS.

4.4.1 Environment in which the service tool is used

The environment in which the service tool is used is as follows.

- Windows on board computer
- Hyper terminal (terminal communication program)

Setting condition

Bit/second:	9600 bits/sec. (fixed)
Data bit:	8 bits
Parity:	None
Stop bit:	1
Flow control:	None

• RS-232C serial cable (D-Sub 9 pin female ← → D-sub 9 pin female cross)

Connection diagram

	U U	
PC	Print Contr	oller
1 DCD	1 DCD	
2 TxD 🦳	2 TxD	
3 RxD 🦯	^ 3 RxD	
4 DTR 🔨	🖉 4 DTR	
5 GND	×(−− 5 GND	
6 DSR —	└— 6 DSR	
7 RTS —	7 RTS	
8 CTS	~ 8 CTS	9-Pin D-SUB Connector
9 RI	9 RI	(female)
		prn 1050 D SUB 9

For the method for the installation of the hyper terminal and its use, see the next and succeeding pages together with the manual of the Windows to be used.

4.4.2 Installation and start-up method of the hyper terminal

The hyper terminal is a Windows 98/Me/NT4.0/2000/XP standard terminal communication program. When it is not installed to the Windows 98/Me/NT4.0, it must be installed.

\triangle Caution:

- For Windows 2000/XP, the hyper terminal is not required to be installed additionally since it is provided as standard equipment.
- When installing the hyper terminal, the CD of the Windows is required that is being used.
- The method for the set-up and start-up varies with each version of the Windows.

A. Installation method of the hyper terminal

The explanation here is given of he Windows 98 as an example.

Add/Remove Programs Properties	?	×
Install/Uninstall Windows Setup Startup	Disk	
To add or remove a component, select or the check box is shaded, only part of the c installed. To see what's included in a comp Components:	clear the check box. If component will be ponent, click Details.	
Accessories	11.6 MB 🔺]
🗹 🧇 Communications	6.0 MB	1
Desktop Themes	0.0 MB	1
🗹 😂 Internet Tools	4.6 MB	
Microsoft Outlook Express	5.4 MB 💌	l
Space used by installed components: Space required: Description Includes accessories to help you connect and online services	32.8 MB 0.0 MB 3772.7 MB	
3 of 8 components selected	Details Have Disk	
OK	Cancel Apply	

Communications	Þ
To add a component, select the check box, or don't want the component. A shaded box mean the component will be installed. To see what's in component, click Details.	click to clear it if you s that only part of ncluded in a
Dial-Up Networking	1.2 MB
Dial-Un Server	0.0 MB
Ban Direct Cable Connection	0.0 MB
V Morer Terminal	0.8 MB
🗆 🥸 Microsoft Chat 2.1	0.0 MB 💌
Space used by installed components:	32.8 MB
Space required:	0.7 MB
Space available on disk:	3772.7 MB
Description	
Provides a connection to other computers and via a modem.	d online services
	Details
OK	Cancel

- Insert into the CD drive the CD that contains the OS of the Windows that is being used.
- 2. Select [Start]-[Setting]-[Control panel] in this order. The [Control panel] window appears.
- Double-click [Add/Remove Programs]. The [Add/Remove Programs Properties] window appears.
- Double-click the [Windows Setup] tab and turn on the check boxes from [Components] to [Communications].
- 5. Click the [Details] button. The [Communications] window appears.
- Turn ON the [HyperTerminal] check box and click the [OK] button.
- When the display returns to the [Add/Remove Programs Properties] window, click the [OK] button.

With necessary files copied, the installation is completed.

B. Start-up method of the hyper terminal

The explanation here is given of Windows XP as an example.

Connection Description ? 🛛		
New Connection		
Enter a name and choose an icon for the connection:		
Name:		
lcon:		
OK Cancel		

Connect To
Service
Enter details for the phone number that you want to dial:
Country/region: United States (1)
Area code:
Phone number:
Connect using: COM1
OK Cancel

COM1 Properties	? 🛛
Port Settings	
Bits per second:	9600
<u>D</u> ata bits:	8
<u>P</u> arity:	None
Stop bits:	1
Elow control:	None
	<u>R</u> estore Defaults
	K Cancel Apply

 Select [Start]-[All programs]-[Accessory]-[Communications]-[HyperTerminal] in this order. The [Connection Description] window appears.

NOTE

- When connected once, an icon with a name entered in Step 2 is created. When the icon has been already created (setting for the connection of the printer has been registered), the connection is made by just double-clicking the icon and the steps below are not required.
- 2. Enter the name and click the [OK] button.
- Select [COM (1 to 3)] for the [Connect using], and click the [OK] button.
 The [Port settings] screen appears.

 Set the port setting as shown left and click the [OK] button.

- The setting of the serial port of the complex machine cannot be changed.
- Be sure to leave items other than [Bits per second] and [Flow control] set to the default setting of the Windows.

4.4.3 Procedure for use

KONICAMINOL TA - HyperTerminal

🗃 🗇 🌋 🗈 🦢 😭

BIOS Version 0.10 0123456789W\$%&:()@=-+*/ Memory:512MB ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUV#X

Press [a] or [s] . . Boot from DOS-ROM VZ abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz Roott

Starting Embedded DOS-ROM... Current date is Tue 01-01-1980 Enter new date (mm-dd-vy):

Auto detect Auto detect

ted 0:01:43

Yew ⊆all Transfer Help

A. Start-up method of the DOS for service



- Turn OFF the main power switch (SW1) of the main body.
- 2. Connect the PC and the main body with the RS-232C serial cable. (See the illustration given left.)
- 3. Start up the hyper terminal. (See "4.4.2 Installation and start-up method of the hyper terminal."
- Turn ON the main power switch (SW1) of the main body while pressing the k key.

 "Press [a] or [s]" appears (within 7 seconds) and enter the a key. The DOS starts up.

NOTE

- Be sure to avoid the use of the s key since it is intended for the use at the factory.
- When the key is not pressed for more than 7 seconds, the normal start-up is conducted.
- When "Enter new date (mm-dd-yy):" appears, enter the month - date - year (ex.: enter 10-01-2004 for October 1, 2004), and then press the Enter key.
- 7. When "Enter new time (hh:mm:ss):" appears, enter the hour - minute - second (ex.: enter 18:14:20 for 18 o'clock, 14 minutes and 20 seconds), and then press the Enter key. The enter of the DOS command is available.

NOTE

 The main body system receives the time information from the main body. However, since the DOS for service cannot communicate with the main body, the entry of the date and hour is required.

5	
Ż.	
ş.	
Ξ	
Ξ.	
A	
Σ	

4.4.4 Method for the memory test

When the operation is unstable after the expansion of memory or when a defective memory size occurs, conduct this test.

For memory test, there are a regular memory test and a detailed memory test provided.

The regular memory test is a test that is conducted after turning on the power.

Description of the regular memory test:

Areas less than 64 KB: Read and write test, address test and data test to the entire areas

A Caution:

In the detailed memory test, the entire memory areas are tested by the operation from the service port.

Description of the detailed memory test:

Areas less than 64 KB: Read and write test, address test and data test to the entire areas Areas more than 64 KB: Read and write test of the data in units of 64 KB

A. Procedure for the memory test



- Start up the DOS for service. (See "A. Start-up method of the DOS for service.")
- Turn ON the main power switch (SW1) of the main body while pressing the m key. The detailed memory test is executed.
- Check all the memory to see if it is normal ("Memory Passed" appears).

- When all the memory is normal, the main body starts up normally.
- Turn OFF once the main power switch (SW1) of the main body.
- 5. Remove the serial cable.
- Turn ON again the main power switch (SW1) of the main body and check the operation.
- 7. If the memory is defective (when "Critical Error" appears, or when the value after completion of the Ext. Memory Passed is less than the amount of the extended memory), remove the extended memory and conduct the memory check again.

5. FIRMWARE VERSION UP

5.1 ISW

5.1.1 Outline

A. ISW (In-System Writer)

This is an operation in which a control program stored in the flash ROM that is built in each control board in the copier is rewritten with the board built in the copier main body. Conducting the ISW allows the version up of control program without changing the board and the installation of the up to date program when replacing the board.

5.1.2 Specifications

A. Transfer time

For the transfer time of the program, see the table below. (The transfer time given below is a reference value.)

Program	Transfer time
MFP controller	Approx. 4 minutes 30 seconds
Operation panel message data	Approx. 30 seconds
Image controller	Approx. 1 minutes 30 seconds
Printer controller	Approx. 1 minutes 15 seconds
Finisher	Approx. 1 minutes 30 seconds

B. Parts required to conduct the ISW

USBmemory: 1

Item	Specifications	
Rewrite board	Image processing board, System control board, Printer control board,	
	FNS control board	
Method for rewriting program	Local ISW by USB memory	
Rewritable program	MFP controller	
	Printer controller	
	Image controller	
	Operation panel message data	
	Finisher	
Conditions	Main body power turned on	

- To execute the ISW, check surely to see if the power source of the main body has been turned on in advance.
- For rewritable programs, it is not possible to rewrite plural programs at a time.

5.1.3 Preparations for transmission on the copier

A. Checking of the ROM version

Before rewriting the ROM data, be sure to check the ROM version of the current control program by following the procedure given below.

Step	Operation		
1	Enter the service mode.		
2	Press the [Firmware version display] key in [Service mode menu screen.]		
3	[Firmwa	- irmware Version screen]	
	Check the version information.		
END]		END	
	1	MFP Controller 57AA-0100-F00-C7-000(01)	Printer Controller C1 57AA-8201-F00-A9-000
	2	Image Controller 57AA-1000-F00-B2-000(06)	Printer Controller C2 57AA-8202-F00-A5-000
		Operation Panel Message Data 57AA-8100-F00-02-000(05)	Printer Controller C3 57AA-8203-F00-A9-000
			Printer Controller C4 57AA-8204-F00-A4-000
			Printer Controller C5 57AA-8205-F00-A7-000

B. Standby for the ISW transfer

NOTE

• The ISW transfer stand-by state is a condition in which the rewrite operation of the program can be started by just pressing the start key.

Step	Operation
1	Connect the USB memory to the main body
2	Enter the service mode.
3	Press the [System 2] key in [Service mode menu screen.]
4	Press the [ISW] key.
5	[ISW screen]
	Ex.: MFP controller program
	Please select a board type.
	Board Type Selection
	Marketing Area Selection
	File Selection
	Execute

Step	Operation
6	Press the [Select board type] key.
	Select the [MFP controller] key and press the [END] key.
	ISW END
	Board Type Selection All Printers
	MFP Controller Printer Controller C1
	Operation Panel Message Data Printer Controller C2
	Image Controller Printer Controller C3
	Printer Controller C4
	Finisher Printer Controller C5
7	Proce the [Select dectination] key
'	Select the [US] key and press the [END] key.
	Marketing Area
	Selection
	Japan US Europe
	China AP Taiwan
8	Press the [Select file] key.
	Select an appropriate program and press the [END] key.
	ISW END
	File Selection
	57ae000m1fc70100.bin 75544885 byte 04/22/2005 15:20
0	Dread the [Even stal key
9	
	ISW END
	Please press Execute key to execute IS₩.
	Board Type Selection MFP Controller
	Marketing Area Selection
	Execute

Step		Operation	
10	[ISW transfer stand-by scr	reen]	
	IS₩		END
	Execution Check	MFP Controller	
		57ae000m1fc70100.bin	
		Press Start key to execute ISW.	

C. Firmware

(1) Firmware data flow

The following shows the flow of the ISW data.

USB memory \rightarrow System control board \rightarrow Image processing board

- → Process control board
- \rightarrow Finisher control board

NOTE

When the image processing board (IPB) is replaced, be sure to execute ISW of the image control
program first. It is not possible to write other programs with the image control program not
contained in the image processing board (IPB).

(2) Types of the transfer mode

There are 2 types of the ISW transfer mode on the machine side as shown below.

1) When writing a new program (when replacing a board or when failed in writing a program)

	Displayed normally when starting up	Method for ISW transmission
Image processing board	Power save LED flashing	Power ON mode
	No display on operation board	
Others	Error code display	Service mode

When there is an abnormality found with the image processing program of the image processing board, or an error is found with date displayed on the operation panel, a startup is normally unavailable. In the condition like this, when the power switch is turned on, the system gets into the ISW standby status.

And, when an error occurs with the contents of the memory broken while writing the image control program, the start key turns on red while in the restart of the power with ISW placed in the stand-by condition.

When the image processing program is in the normal condition and there is an abnormality found with other programs, an SC error is normally display on the touch panel while in the startup.

2) When in the version up of the program

	Displayed normally when starting up	Method for ISW transmission
Image processing board	Normal	Service mode
Others	Normal	Service mode

3) Use of each transmission mode

Power ON mode

This mode is used when there is no program installed in the image processing board (IPB) of the copier main body, or when an error code is displayed.

When the image control program of the IPB is not installed, the IPB can be written with the power switch ON.

Service mode

This mode is used when the image control program of the IPB has been already installed.

D. Connection to the main body

Preparations are made of the following when a connection is made.

USB memory

NOTE

- Be sure to copy the program to be updated in the USB memory in advance.
- When the program has not been copied correctly, a warning: "There is no data to display" is shown on the panel while in the execution of ISW.

(1) Procedure

Step	Operation
1	Turn off the power of the copier.
2	Peel off the cover seal in the interface section on the right side of the copier.
3	Set the USB memory.
4	Turn on the power of the copier.

E. Rewriting the firmware

(1) Procedure for rewriting

Ex.: In the case of the MFP controller program

Step	Method
1	Set the USB memory to the copier, and place the copier in the stand-by for the ISW transfer.
	Execution Check MFP Controller
	57ae000m1fc70100.bin
	Press Start key to execute ISW.
2	Press the start key.

bizhub 750/600

5.1.4 Error list

A. Detection function

When an error occurs while in the execution of ISW or after completion of the execution, the start key (LED) turns on red with a message below shown on the operation panel.

No.	Message
1	Flash ROM clearing failed.
2	An error occurs while in the write.
З	An error occurs in the checksum.
4	There is no space available in the flash ROM
5	An error occurs while in the read.
/	

B. Main body error list

The table below shows error codes.

Error code	Description	Condition for detection	
C1 01 Printer control, Initial communication		To the initial communication request to the printer control board (PRCB) when turning on the power, there is no initial communica-	
error		tion response from PRCB even after the elapse of a specified period of time.	
02	Printer control, Commu- nication error	When an error is detected at the time of completion of the reception from PRCB, or when the transmission has not been completed within a specified period of time after the transmission is started.	
03	Communication error in the operation panel	When an error is detected at the time of completion of the reception from the control in the operation panel, or when the transmission has not been completed within a specified period of time after the transmission is started.	
04	Printer control, ISW not yet written	When the program condition of each unit of the printer controller is checked at the time of the power on and a condition is detected in which the program is not yet written.	
06	ISW time out error	When no regular header information cannot be received a specified period of time after ISW is started.	
07	ISW data error	When a checksum error or header erron is founded in the ISW download data.	
08 ISW write error 09 FNS ISW, Not yet written		When it is not possible to write properly the ISW data in the flash memory on the image control board.	
		When the FNS control program is checked at the time of the power on and a condition is found in which the program is not yet written.	

A. Detection function

No.	b. Message Solution				
1	-				
2 An error occurs while in the write.		·Execute ISW again after confirming the connnection of USB.			
		• Execute ISW again after turning the machine OFF and ON.			
		Replace the Flash ROM.			
3	An error occurs in the checksum.	·Execute ISW again after confirming the connnection of USB.			
		• Execute ISW again after turning the machine OFF and ON.			
		·Replace the Flash ROM.			
4 There is no space available in the flash ROMReplace the Flash ROM.					
5	An error occurs while in the read.	·Confirm that the USB storage memory operates correctly on PC.			
		Confirm that the files in the USB storage memory are available.			
		·Replace the system control board.			

B. Main body error list

Erro	code	Description	Condition for detection	Solution
C1	01	Printer control,	To the initial communication request to the printer control board	·Turn the machin ON pressing
		Initial communication error	(PRCB) when turning on the power, there is no initial communication	the Utility key to enter service
			response from PRCB even after the elapse of a specified period of	mode from the trouble reset
			time.	screen and execute ISW again.
	02	Printer controll,	When an error is detected at the time of completion of the reception	·Turn the machin ON pressing
		Communication error	from PRCB, or when the transmission has not been completed within a	the Utility key to enter service
			specified period of time after the transmission is started.	mode from the trouble reset
	03	Communication error in the	When an error is detected at the time of completion of the	screen and execute ISW again.
		operation panel	reception from the control in the operation panel, or when the	·Replace the correcponding
			transmission has not been completed within a specified period of time	board.
			after the transmission is started.	
	04	Printer control,	When the program condition of each unit of the printer controller is	·Turn the machin ON pressing
		ISW not yet written	checked at the time of the power on and a condition is detected in	the Utility key to enter service
			which the program is not yet written.	mode from the trouble reset
	06	ISW time out error	When no regular header information cannot be received a specified	screen and execute ISW again.
			period of time after ISW is started.	
	07	ISW data error	When a checksum error or header error is founded in the ISW download	
			data.	
	08	ISW write error	When it is not possible to write properly the ISW data in the flash	
			memory on the image control board.	
	09	FNS ISW,	When the FNS control program is checked at the time of the power on	
		Not yet written	and a condition is found in which the program is not yet written.	

Read position positioning plate /Fr

6. OTHERS

6. OTHERS

MAINTENANCE



6.1.1 Scanner section

Read position adjusting plates /Fr and /Rr Α.

- (1) Positions from which the screws are not allowed to be removed
- Attaching screws, one each, of the read position adjusting plates /Fr and /Rr •



- Screw not allowed to be removed [1]
- [2] Read position positioning plate /Rr

(2) Reason

The read position adjusting plates /Fr and /Rr hold in place the slit glass that becomes the read position while in the DF scan. The displacement of the slit glass may cause the image read by the DF to be deformed. Accordingly, this position of installation is not allowed to be changed.

[3]

B. Mirror unit/exposure unit

(1) Parts not allowed to be removed

· Installation positions of the mirror unit and the exposure unit



[1] Exposure unit

[2] Mirror unit

(2) Reason

The distance between the mirror unit and the exposure unit affects the magnifications of the original to be read in the sub scan direction. Therefore, the installation positions of the mirror unit and the exposure unit must not be arbitrarily adjusted. However, when the exposure unit and the scanner wire have been removed, these parts must be reinstalled using the optics unit positioning jig.

- C. CCD unit
- (1) Parts not allowed to be removed
- 11 screws used to assemble the CCD unit
- 4 attaching screws of the lens reference plate assembly



- [1] Screw not allowed to be removed
- [2] Attaching screw of the CCD unit (allowed to be removed when replacing the CCD unit)
- [3] Screw not allowed to be removed
- [4] Lens reference plate assembly
- [5] CCD unit

(2) Reason

The accuracy of the CCD unit is guaranteed as a unit, and if disassembled, its accuracy is not guaranteed. Accordingly, screws that lead up to the disassembly of the CCD unit are not allowed to be removed.

The lens reference plate assembly acts as the basis for the installation position of the CCD unit. Removing this assembly may cause the displacement of the optical axis of the CCD unit. So, be sure not to remove the attaching screws of the lens reference plate assembly.

6.1.2 Writing section

A. Write section cover

(1) Parts not allowed to be removed

• 9 attaching screws of the writing section cover



[1] Screw not allowed to be removed

[2] Writing section cover

(2) Reason

The inside of the writing section becomes the laser light path. Opening the cover allows dust and dirt to get inside, which may block the laser light path. Therefore, the screws of the writing section cover are not allowed to be removed.

B. Write section positioning shaft

(1) Parts not allowed to be removed

• 2 fastening screws of the fixing plate of the write section positioning shaft.



- [1] Screw not allowed to be removed
- [2] Write section positioning shaft

[3] Fixing plate of the write section positioning shaft

(2) Reason

The write section positioning shaft is the basis of an angle at which the write section is installed to the drum. When these screws are removed, the parallelism between the drum and the write section is lost, thus resulting in deformed images. Therefore, the screws that fasten the write section positioning shaft fixing plate must not normally be removed.
6.1.4 Transfer/separation charging unit

(1) Parts not allowed to be removed

5 attaching screws of the transfer guide plate



[1] Screw not allowed to be removed [2] Transfer guide plate

(2) Reason

The transfer guide plate decides the approach angle of paper against the transfer position and the displacement of the installation position may result in poor transfer. Accordingly, the attaching screws of the transfer guide plate are not allowed to be removed.

6.2 List of parts to be disassembled and reassembled

- This list shows the explanation of the disassembly and reassembly of the parts which are considered necessary to replace (other than periodically replaced parts). However, these parts except for the covers are not required to be disassembled while in normal service operations.
- For the method of replacing the periodically replaced parts, see "3.4 Maintenance procedure of the external section" to "3.17 Maintenance procedure of the paper exit section."

No.	Section	Part name	Page referred to
1	Cover	Rear cover	182
2		Left cover	182
3		Right cover /Up	183
4		Right cover /Lw1	184
5		Right cover /Lw2	184
6		Right cover /Lw3	184
7		Front door /Rt	185
8		Front door /Lt	186
9		Original glass	187
10		Upper cover /Rt	188
11		Upper cover /Lt	188
12		Upper cover /Fr	189
13	Scanner section	CCD unit	193
14		Exposure lamp	211
15		Exposure unit	212
16		Scanner wire	195
17		Scanner motor	215
18	ADU	ADU	198
19	Operation panel	Operation panel wire	204
20	Write section	Write unit	219
21	Paper feed section	Tray 1	221
22		Tray 2	221
23		Tray 3	233
24		Tray 4	233
25		Lift wire (Tray 1/Tray 2)	224
26	1	Lift wire (Tray 3/Tray 4)	234
27	By-pass tray	By-pass tray	238
28	Others	Circuit breakers /1, /2	210

6.3 Disassembling/assembling procedure

• When disassembling/assembling the parts, be sure to unplug the power cord of the main body from the power outlet.

6.3.1 Removing/reinstalling the rear cover

A. Procedure



6.3.2 Removing/reinstalling the left cover A. Procedure



1. Remove 14 screws [1] and 2 screws [2], and then remove the rear cover [3].

- When reinstalling the rear cover, be sure to set the 3 projections [4] provided at the lower section to the 3 stopper holes [5] in the frame.
- 2. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

- 1. Remove 8 screws [1] and then remove the left cover [2].
- 2. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.3 Removing/reinstalling the right cover /Up

A. Procedure





- Loosen the screw [1] and remove the connector cover [2].
- Loosen the screw [3] and remove the developing suction filter cover [4].

- 3. Loosen 5 screws [1].
- Open the by-pass tray [2] and remove the right cover /Up [3].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.4 Removing/reinstalling the right covers /Lw1, /Lw2 and /Lw3

A. Procedure



- Loosen 2 screws [1] and remove the right cover / Lw1 [2].
- Loosen 2 screws [3] and remove the right cover / Lw2 [4].
- Loosen 2 screws [3] and remove the right cover / Lw3 [6].
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.5 Removing/reinstalling the front door /Rt

A. Procedure





- 1. Open the front door /Lt [1].
- 2. Open the front door /Rt [2].

- Remove the screw [1] and then remove the stopper [2].
- Remove 2 screws [3] and then remove the hinge / Rt2 [4] and the front door /Rt [5].

- When reinstalling the front door /Rt, be sure to insert the installation holes [6] provided at the upper and lower sections into the projections [8] of the hinges /Rt1 [7] and /Rt2 [4].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.





- 1. Open the front door /Lt [1].
- 2. Remove 2 screws [2] and then remove the hinge / Lt2 [3] and the front door /Lt [1].

- When reinstalling the front door /Lt, be sure to insert the installation holes [4] provided at the upper and lower sections into the projections [6] of the hinges /Lt1 [5] and /Lt2 [3].
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

The same removal and reinstallation procedure is applicable when the DF is provided.

A. Procedure



- Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the original stopper plate /Lt [2].
- Remove 3 screws [3] and then remove the original stopper plate /Rr [4].



3. Remove the original glass [1].

- When reinstalling the original glass, be sure that the shading correction plate (white) [2] is on the upper side of the glass.
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.8 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Rt A. Procedure



1. Remove screws [1] and [2], and then remove the upper cover /Rt [3].

NOTE

- When DF is equipped, be sure to close DF before removing the screw [2].
- 2. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.9 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Lt A. Procedure



1. Remove screws [1] and [2], and then remove the upper cover /Lt [3].

- When DF is equipped, be sure to close DF before removing the screw [2].
- 2. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.10 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Fr

A. Procedure



- 1. Remove the original glass. (See "6.3.7 Removing/ reinstalling the original glass")
- Remove the upper cover /Rt. (See "6.3.8 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Rt")
- 3. Remove the upper cover /Lt. (See "6.3.9 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Lt")
- 4. Remove the left cover (See "6.3.2 Removing/reinstalling the left cover")
- 5. Remove the right cover /Up (See "6.3.3 Removing/reinstalling the right cover /Up")
- 6. Remove the original glass guide /Fr [1], Fr [2].
- 7. Remove the operation panel. (See "6.3.14 Removing/reinstalling the operation panel wire")



8. Remove screws [1], 1 each, and then remove the operation panel fixing blocks /Rt [2] and /Lt [3].



• Each of the operation panel fixing blocks /Rt [1] and /Lt [2] is inserted with a flat nut [3]. Each of these flat nuts are not fixed and be careful that they do not get lost.



- 9. Remove the connector [1].
- 10. Loosen screws [2], 2 each.
- 11. Remove 3 screws [3] and then remove the upper cover /Fr [4].
- 12. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.11 Removing/reinstalling the CCD unit

A. Procedure







- Remove the original glass. (See "6.3.7 Removing/ reinstalling the original glass")
- Remove the upper cover /Rt. (See "6.3.8 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Rt")
- 3. Remove 6 screws [1] and then remove the lens light blocking cover [2].

 Remove the ribbon cable [2] from the CCD board (CCDB) [1]. bizhub 750/600

NOTE

• When removing the ribbon cable [1], be sure to bring down the lock lever [3] of the connector [2] in the allow-marked direction [4] for release, and then pull out the ribbon cable.







 When reinstalling the ribbon cable [1], be sure to check that the lock lever [2] has been brought down. And insert it fully deep into the connector [4] so that the conductor face [3] comes to the side opposite to the lock lever.

And then return the lock lever [1] to its original position and lock the ribbon cable [2].

5. Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the CCD unit [2].

- When removing the CCD unit, be sure to put a mark [3] at the installation position before removing it.
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

MAINTENANCE

6.3.12 Stretching of the scanner wire

NOTE

- · Be sure to wind the wire closely without overlapping each other.
- When re-stretching or replacing the scanner wire, be sure to use the optics unit positioning jig.
- When re-stretching or replacing the scanner wire, be sure to conduct the image adjustment in the service mode.

A. Procedure



- 1. Remove the original glass (See "6.3.7 Removing/reinstalling the original glass.")
- 2. Remove the upper cover /Rt. (See "6.3.8 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Rt.")
- 3. Remove the upper cover /Lt. (See "6.3.9 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Lt.")
- 4. Remove the operation panel (See "6.3.14 Removing/reinstalling the operation panel wire.")
- 5. Remove the upper cover /Fr. (See "6.3.10 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Fr.")
- 6. Move the exposure unit (See "6.3.17 Removing/reinstalling the exposure unit.")
- 7. Move the V-mirror unit [1] toward the V-mirror positioning hole [2].
- 8. Insert the optics unit positioning jig [3] into the V-mirror positioning hole and fix the V-mirror unit.

- Be sure to insert the optics unit positioning jig [3] from the front side and pass it through the V-mirror unit [1].
- Be care full not to confuse the V-mirror positioning hole [2] with the unused hole [4].



9. Drop the metal balls [3] of the scanner wires /Fr [1] and /Rr [2] into the installation hall of the drive pulley [4], and with this as a starting point, wind the wire 4 turns [5] outward and 5 turns [6] inward respectively.

NOTE

- Be sure to wind the scanner wire with the metal ball [7] at the end outwards and the scanner wire with the wire terminal [8] at the end inwards.
- For both scanner wires, be sure to pull out the one wound outwards in the paper feed direction [9] from above the drive pulley and the one wound inwards in the paper exit direction [10] from above the drive pulley.
- 10. For each scanner wire that has been wound round the drive pulley, fasten it to the respective wire stoppers through the wire stopper /Fr [11] or /Rr [12] pulley /1 [13] and via the outside of the pulley [15] of the V-mirror unit [14].

NOTE

• Each wire stopper is provided with 2 grooves. Fix the metal ball [7] in the groove on the outside for the wire stopper /Fr [11], and fix it in the groove on the inside for the wire stopper /Rr [12].

11. For each scanner wire that has been wound round the drive pulley, after reversing it by the pulley /2 [16], pass it through the inside of the pulley [15] of the V-mirror unit [14] and pulley /3 [17] and hook the wire terminal [8] to the spring fixing plate [18].



12. Paste the wire restriction sheet [19] to the wire stoppers /Fr [11] and /Rr [12]. (The sheet is common to both the front and rear stoppers.)

NOTE

• Be sure to paste it so that the wire restriction sheet comes in contact with the wire.

- 13. Fasten tentatively each of the spring fixing plates with the screw [20].
- 14. Loosen once the screw [20], attach the spring [21] between 2 spring fixing plate [18] and then fix each spring fixing plate with the screw [20].

NOTE

• After attaching each of the scanner wires, check the respective exposure unit mounting brackets [22] if they turn to the inside.

15. For the parts to be installed hereafter, reinstall them following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.13 Removing/reinstalling the ADU

NOTE

• When Removing/reinstalling the ADU, this work requires 2 persons since a very heavy object has to be moved.

A. Procedure



- Pull out the ADU from the main body. (See "3.15.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush.")
- Remove the fusing unit from ADU. (See "3.16.1 Removing/reinstalling the fusing unit.")
- Remove the transfer/separation charging unit from ADU. (See "3.8.1 Replacing the transfer/separation charge unit.")
- Remove the registration section from ADU. (See "3.15.3 Removing/reinstalling the registration section.")
- 5. Loosen the screw [1] and remove the connector cover [2].
- Remove the screw [3] and release the fixing of the stay [4].





• When reinstalling the stay [1], be sure to insert the projection [2] into the slit [4] of the ADU [3].

bizhub 750/600

7. Remove 3 connectors [2] from the stay [1].

NOTE

• When removing each connector, be sure to remove the one provided on the ADU side.



8. Remove 2 screws [2] from the guide rail /Rt [1].

NOTE

• The 2 black screws [3] provided on the guide rail /Rt are those that must not be removed. When removed, ADU [4] may fall down. Be absolutely sure not to remove them.



9. Remove 2 screws [2] from the guide rail /Lt [1].

NOTE

• The 2 black screws [3] provided on the guide rail /Lt are those that must not be removed. When removed, ADU [4] may fall down. Be absolutely sure not to remove them.



- 10. Remove the screw [1] and release the fixing of the handle /Rt [2].
- 11. Pull out the handle /Lt [3].
- 12. Hold the handles /Rt and /Lt with 2 persons separately and remove the ADU [4].



• When reinstalling the ADU [1], be sure to set the slit sections [5], 2 positions each, to the set members [4], 2 positions each, of the guide rails /Rt [2] and /Lt [3].

13. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.14 Removing/reinstalling the operation panel wire

A. Procedure



- 1. Open the front doors /Rt and /Lt
- 2. Remove 2 screws [1].
- 3. With the lock release lever [2] left pressed, pull out the operation panel [3].

NOTE

Pressing the lock release lever stores the projections [4] provided on both sides into the operation panel. When reinstalling the operation panel, be sure to set the projections on both sides to the 2 installation holes [5].



- 4. Close the front doors /Rt [1] and /Lt [2] half-way and put the operation panel [3] upon them.
- 5. Remove 3 connectors [4] and then remove the operation panel.





- 6. Turn over the operation panel [1].
- Remove screws [2], 1 each, and then remove the ground plates /Rt [3] and /Lt [4].
- 8. Remove 5 screws [5] and 7 screws [6].
- 9. Remove the operation panel cover /Lw [8].

• When reinstalling the operation panel cover / Lw, be sure to check to see if screws [10], 1 each, is inserted into the slot [9] at the 2 places.

- 10. Turn over the operation panel cover /Lw [1].
- 11. Remove 12 screws [2] and then remove the operation panel lock base plate [3].



- 12. Turn over the operation panel lock base plate [1].
- 13. Loosen screws [2], 2 each, and release the tension of the 2 lock wires [5] by the tension plates /1[3] and /2 [4].
- 14. Remove the pulley covers [6], 1 each, and release the lock wire from each pulley [7].



- 15. Turn over the operation panel lock base plate [1].
- Remove screws [2], 1 each, and release the fixing of the 2 lock wires [3].
- Remove the pulley cover [4] and then remove the lock wires [3] from the pulley [5].
- Remove an E-ring [6] and then remove the lock release lever [7].

 Remove the pulley cover [1] and then remove the lock wire [3] from the pulley [2].







- 20. Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the lever cover [2].
- 21. Remove the 2 lock wires [3].
- 22. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

- When installing the 2 lock wires [1], be sure to adjust tension with the tension plates /1 [6] and /2 [7] so that the outside of the notches [3] provided in the projections [2] on both sides comes to the same height as the inside [5] of the folding section of the operation panel lock base plate [4].
- After completion of the tension adjustment, be sure to check to see if the projections on both sides are stored completely into the operation panel lock base plate when the lock release lever [8] is pressed.

6.3.15 Recovery of the circuit breaker

ACaution:

• Be absolutely sure not to change the connection of the wiring cables to the circuit breakers /1 (CBR1) and /2 (CBR2).

A. Procedure



[1] [2] [3] (1) [2] [3] (2) [3] (3) [3] (3) [3] (3) [3] (4) [3] (3)

- Remove the rear cover. (See "6.3.1 Removing/ reinstalling the rear cover.")
- 2. Remove 2 screws [1] and release the fixing of the circuit breaker assembly [2].

- Turn over the circuit breaker assembly [1] and press in the recovery buttons [4], 1 each, of the circuit breakers /1 (CBR1) [2] and /2 (CBR2) [3].
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

bizhub 750/600

6.3.16 Replacing the exposure lamp

NOTE

- Be sure not to touch the lamp section of the exposure lamp (L1) with bare hands.
- After reinstalling the exposure lamp (L1), be sure to conduct the image adjustment in the service mode.

A. Procedure



- Remove the original glass. (See "6.3.7 Removing/ reinstalling the original glass.")
- Remove the upper cover /Rt. (See "6.3.8 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Rt.")
- 3. Remove the upper cover /Lt. (See "6.3.9 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Lt.")
- Remove the original glass guides /Fr and /Rr. (See "6.3.10 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover / Fr.")
- 5. Move the exposure unit [1] to the notch section [2] of the frame.
- 6. Remove the screw [3] and then remove the wiring harness clamp [4].
- 7. Remove the connector [5].
- Remove 2 screws [6] and then remove the exposure lamp (L1) [7].
- 9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.17 Removing/reinstalling the exposure unit

NOTE

- When reinstalling the exposure unit, be sure to use the optics unit positioning jig.
- After reinstalling the exposure unit, be sure to conduct the image adjustment in the service mode.

A. Procedure for removal





- Remove the original glass. (See "6.3.7 Removing/ reinstalling the original glass.")
- Remove the upper cover /Rt. (See "6.3.8 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Rt.")
- Remove the upper cover /Lt. (See "6.3.9 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Lt.")
- Remove the operation panel. (See "6.3.14 Removing/reinstalling the operation panel wire.")
- Remove the upper cover /Fr. (See "6.3.10 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Fr.")
- Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the operation panel ground plate /Lw [2].



- Move the exposure unit [1] to the notch section [2] of the frame.
- 8. Remove 2 screws [3] and then remove the cord presser member /B [4].
- 9. Remove the screw [5] and then remove the ground terminal [6].
- 10. Remove the connector [7].
- 11. Remove 2 screws [8] and then remove the exposure unit.





- Move the V-mirror unit to the vicinity of the V-mirror positioning hole and insert the optics unit positioning jig [5] for fixing. (See "6.3.12 Stretching of the scanner wire.")
- 2. Insert the optics unit positioning jig [2] into the exposure unit positioning hole [1].
- 3. Press the exposure unit [3] against the optics unit positioning jig.
- 4. Install the exposure unit with screws [4], 2 each.
- 5. Remove the optics unit positioning jigs [2] and [5].
- 6. For the parts to be installed hereafter, reinstall them following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.18 Removing/reinstalling the scanner motor

A. Procedure for removal



- 1. Remove DF.
- Remove the rear cover. (See "6.3.1 Removing/ reinstalling the rear cover.")
- Remove the original glass. (See "6.3.7 Removing/ reinstalling the original glass.")
- Remove the upper cover /Rt. (See "6.3.8 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Rt.")
- Remove the upper cover /Lt. (See "6.3.9 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /Lt.")
- 6. Remove the original glass guides /Fr and /Rr. (See "6.3.10 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover / Fr.")
- 7. Remove the read ground /Rt assembly. (See "3.6.6 Replacing the toner collection gear /3.")
- 8. Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the upper cover /Rr [2].
- 9. Remove the connector [1].
- 10. Remove 11 screws [2] and then remove the hinge installation plate [3].






- 11. Remove the connector [2] from the scanner motor (M11) [1].
- 12. Remove 4 screws [3] and then remove the scanner motor assembly [4].

NOTE

• When removing the scanner motor assembly [1], be careful not to damage the belt [2] provided inside.



13. Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the scanner motor (M11) [2].



- Install the scanner motor (M11) [2] onto the mounting plate [1].
- 2. Install the belt [4] to the pulley [3].
- Insert the pulley [5] of the scanner motor (M11) [2] into the belt and fasten tentatively the scanner motor assembly with 4 screws.

NOTE

- Be sure to install the belt at the center of the 2 pulleys.
- When fastening it tentatively, be sure to turn back a turn after fastening it once firmly.



 Hook a spring balance [3] to the hole [2] provided in the upper section of the scanner motor assembly [1].

5. Pull the spring balance [1] upward and tighten up 4 screws [2] firmly with the tension of 2 \pm 0.2 kgf (20 \pm 2 cNm).

NOTE

- After fastening it firmly, check to see if the scanner motor assembly [3] moves lightly up and down.
- After fastening it firmly, check to see if the belt is not slackened.
- 6. For parts installed in the succeeding steps, reinstall them following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.19 Removing/reinstalling the writing unit

- Be absolutely sure not to turn on the writing section with it displaced from its regular position.
- Be absolutely sure not to remove the writing section cover. If laser beams get in your eyes, you
 may suffer loss of sight.
- After turning off the main power switch (SW1) or the power switch (SW2), be absolutely sure not to remove the writing section for about 2 minutes.

A. Procedure



- Remove the left cover. (See "6.3.2 Removing/reinstalling the left cover.")
- 2. Remove the connector [1].
- *3.* Remove 10 screws [2] and then remove the fan mounting plate assembly [3].



- 4. Remove 3 connectors [1].
- Loosen screw [2] and pull out the writing section
 [3] for removal.
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.20 Removing/reinstalling the trays 1 and 2

▲Caution:

When removing the tray, be careful not to hurt your hip by taking an appropriate posture.

NOTE

- The trays 1 and 2 are of the same form and mechanism. This procedure shows mainly the steps taken for the tray 1.
- When there remains any paper in the tray, be sure to take off all of it before starting the work.

A. Procedure



- 1. Pull out the tray 1.
- Remove the paper feed unit. (See "3.12.1 Replacing the feed rubber, the feed roller and the separation rubber (trays 1, 2, 3, 4).")
- 3. Remove 4 screws [1] (tray 1) or 5 screws (tray 2), and then remove the LCT cover /1 [2] (tray 1) or /2 [3] (tray 2).





- 4. Remove 5 screws [1] and then remove the tray [2] while lifting it up.
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.21 Removing/reinstalling the trays 1 and 2 lift wire

NOTE

• The trays 1 and 2 are of the same form and mechanism. This procedure shows the steps taken for the tray 1.

A. Procedure



- Remove the tray from the main body. (See "6.3.20 Removing/reinstalling the trays 1 and 2.")
- 2. Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the wire cover /Fr [2].
- 3. Remove 2 screws [3] and then remove the wire cover /Rr [4].



4. Remove an E-ring [1] and a bearing [2], and then remove the gear assembly [3].



- Remove an E-ring [1] and slide the drive pulley [2] in the arrow-marked direction [3] to remove the wire /2 (white) [5] from the shaft [4].

5. Remove the bearing [1].



- 7. Remove an E-ring [1].
- Remove the pulley [2] and the wire restraining cover [3], and then remove the wire /2 (white) [4] and the wire /1 (black) [5].



- 9. Remove an E-ring [1].
- Remove the pulley [2] and the wire restraining cover [3], and then remove the wire /2 (white) [4].
- 11. Pull out and remove the wire /2 (white) toward the rear side of the lift plate [5].

6. OTHERS

MAINTENANCE



- 12. Remove an E-ring [1] and slide the drive pulley [2] in the arrow-marked direction [3] to remove the wire /1 (black) [5] from the shaft [4].
- 13. Pull out and remove the wire /1 (black) toward the rear side of the lift plate [6].

- 14. Remove an E-ring [1] and slide the drive pulley [2] in the arrow-marked direction [3] to remove the wire /3 (black) [5] from the shaft [4].



- 15. Remove an E-ring [1].
- Remove the pulley [2] and the wire restraining cover [3], and then remove the wire /3 (black) [4] and the wire /4 (white) [5].
- 17. Pull out and remove the wire /3 (black) toward the rear side of the lift plate [6].

- 18. Remove an E-ring [1] and slide the drive pulley [2] in the arrow-marked direction [3] to remove the wire /4 (white) [5] from the shaft [4].





- 19. Remove an E-ring [1].
- 20. Remove the pulley [2] and the wire restraining cover [3], and then remove the wire /4 (white) [4].
- 21. Pull out and remove the wire /4 (white) toward the rear side of the lift plate [5].
- 22. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

- The length of each wire is as shown below:
 - [1] 294.8 ± 1 mm (tray 1) 232.4 ± 1 mm (tray 2)
 - [2] 391.7 ± 1 mm (tray 1) 329.2 ± 1 mm (tray 2)
 - [3] Wires /2 and /4
 - [4] Wires /1 and /3

6.3.22 Removing/reinstalling the trays 3 and 4

▲Caution:

When removing the tray, be careful not to hurt your hip by taking an appropriate posture.

NOTE

- The trays 3 and 4 are of the same form and mechanism. This procedure shows mainly the steps taken for the tray 3.
- When there remains any paper in the tray, be sure to take off all of it before starting the work.

A. Procedure



- 1. Pull out the tray 3.
- Remove the paper feed unit. (See "3.12.1 Replacing the feed rubber, the feed roller and the separation rubber (trays 1, 2, 3, 4).")
- 3. Remove 4 screws [1] and then remove the tray cover [2].
- Remove 4 screws [3] and then remove the tray [4] while lifting it up.
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

6.3.23 Removing/reinstalling the trays 3 and 4 lift wire

NOTE

• The trays 3 and 4 are of the same form and mechanism. This procedure shows the steps taken for the tray 3.

A. Procedure



- Remove the tray 3 from the main body. (See "6.3.22 Removing/reinstalling the trays 3 and 4.")
- 2. Remove 3 screws [1] and then remove the wire cover /Fr [2].
- 3. Remove 3 screws [3] and then remove the wire cover /Rr [4].

 Remove an E-ring [1] and slide the drive pulley [2] in the arrow-marked direction [3] to remove the wire /3 (black) [5] and the wire /4 (white) [6] from the shaft [4].







- 5. Remove an E-ring [1].
- Remove the pulley [2] and the wire restraining cover [3], and then remove the wire /3 (black) [4] and the wire /4 (white) [5].
- Pull out and remove the wire /3 (black) toward the rear side of the lift plate [6].

- 8. Remove an E-ring [1].
- Remove the pulley [2] and the wire restraining cover [3], and then remove the wire /4 (white) [4].
- 10. Pull out and remove the wire /4 (white) toward the rear side of the lift plate [5].





- Field Service Ver1.0 Aug.2005
- 11. Remove the drive pulley presser [1].
- 12. Remove an E-ring [2] and then remove the drive pulley [3].
- 13. Remove the wire /2 (white) [5] and the wire /1 (black) [6] from the shaft [4].

- 14. Remove an E-ring [1].
- 15. Remove the pulley [2] and the wire restraining cover [3], and then remove the wire /2 (white) [4] and the wire /1 (black) [5].
- 16. Pull out and remove the wire /1 (black) toward the rear side of the lift plate [6].





- 17. Remove an E-ring [1].
- Remove the pulley [2] and the wire restraining cover [3], and then remove the wire /2 (white) [4].
- 19. Pull out and remove the wire /2 (white) toward the rear side of the lift plate [5].
- 20. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

- The length of each wire is as shown below:
 - [1] 182.8 ± 1 mm (trays 3 and 4)
 - [2] 473.1 ± 1 mm (trays 3 and 4)
 - [3] Wires /2 and /4
 - [4] Wires /1 and /3

6.3.24 Removing/reinstalling the bypass tray A. Procedure



- Remove the right cover /Up. (See "6.3.3 Removing/reinstalling the right cover /Up")
- 2. Remove the connector [1].
- Remove 5 screws [2] and remove the bypass tray
 [3].

NOTE

- When setting the by-pass tray, be sure to hit it in the arrow-marked direction [4].
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

■ ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

7. HOW TO USE THE ADJUSTMENT/SETTING SECTION

7.1 Composition

This part "ADJUSTMENT/SETTING" describes items to be adjusted and the method of adjustment that is required by this machine, it also gives detailed explanations.

A. Checking before starting work

When conducting claims in the field, it is necessary to check first the following:

- 1. Are the power supply and voltage secured in accordance with the specifications?
- 2. Is the power supply properly grounded?
- 3. Is any equipment that repeatedly consumes a lot of electricity connected to the same power supply? (e.g.: Electric noise sources such as elevator and air conditioner)
- 4. Are environmental conditions suitable for the machine?
- High temperature and high humidity, direct sunlight, air ventilation, etc.
- Levelness of the location on which the machine is installed.
- 5. Does the cause of poor images lie in the original itself?
- 6. Is density selected properly?
- 7. Is the original glass stained?
- 8. Is proper paper used for copy?

9. Are copy consumable replaced with new ones at their life? (e.g.: Developer, drum, cleaning blade, etc) 10. Is toner filled?

B. Checkpoints when conductions on-site service

Due attention should be paid to the following when repairing the machine.

- Be sure to unplug the power cord from the power outlet. Also, when operating the machine with the power supplied, be careful of the scan of the exposure unit and be sure not to get caught by the gear.
- 2. The fusing section may be very hot. Be careful not to get burnt when handling it.
- 3. The developing unit is strongly magnetized. Be careful not to bring a watch and instrument near to the unit.
- 4. Be careful not to damage the drum with a tool.
- 5. Be careful not to touch IC directly with bare hands.

8. UTILITY MENU

8.1 List of utility menu

NOTE

• For detail on the utility menu, refer to "User's guide."

One-Touch Registration	[1] Scan	[1] Address Book					
		[2] Group					
		[3] Program					
		[4] Subject/Text (for E-Mail)					
	[3] User Box	[1] Public/Personal User Box					
User Setting	[1] System Setting	[1] Language Selection					
		[2] Measurement Unit Selection					
		[3] Paper Tray Setting					
		[4] Reset Setting					
		[5] LCD Backlight Setting					
		[6] Power Save Setting					
		[7] Output Setting					
		[8] Date & Time Setting					
		[9] Daylight Saving Time Setting					
		[0] original Image Density					
	[2] Display Setting	[1] Sub Screen Display ON/OFF					
		[2] Scan Basic Screen Default Setting					
		[3] Fax Basic Screen Default Setting					
		[4] Copy Screen					
		[5] Fax Active Screen					
	[3] Initial Setting						
	[4] Copier Setting	Auto Paper Size for Small Original					
		Auto Booklet ON when Fold & Staple					
		Auto Zoom for Combine/Booklet					
		Sort/Group Auto Change					
		Auto Zoom (Platen)					
		Auto Zoom (ADF)					
		Select Tray when APS OFF					
		Select Tray for Insert Sheet					
		Exit Direction of 1 Sheet (Platen)					
		Image Rotation (Platen)					
		Tri-Fold Printed Side Selection					
		Print Page # on Blank Page					
		Print Jobs During Copy Operation					
	[5] Scanner Setting	JPEG Compression Level					
		Black Compression Level					
		TWAIN Lock Time					
	[6] Printer Setting	[1] Basic Setting					
		[2] Paper Setting					
		[3] PCL Setting					
		[4] PS Setting					
		[5] Print Reports					

Administrator Setting	[1] System Setting	[1] Power Save Setting
		[2] Output Setting
		[3] Date/Time Setting
		[4] Daylight Saving Time Setting
		[5] Weekly Timer setting
		[6] Restrict User Access
		[7] Expert Adjustment
		[8] List/Counter
		[9] LCD Backlight Setting
		[0] Standard Size Setting
	[2] Administrator/Machine Setting	[1] Administrator Registration
		[2] Input Machine Address
	[3] One-Touch Registration	[1] Scan
		[3] User Box
		[4] One-Touch Registration List
	[4] User Authentication /Account	[1] General Settings
	Track	[2] User Authentication Setting
		[3] Account Track Setting
		[4] Print without Authentication
		[5] Counter List
	[5] Network Setting	[1] Network Setting
	[0] Hotwork Cotting	[2] TCP/IP Setting
		[3] Netware Setting
		[/] IPP Setting
		[5] FTP Setting
		[6] SMB Setting
		[7] AppleTalk Setting
		[8] I DAP Setting
		[9] E-Mail Setting
	[6] Copier Setting	Auto Zoom (Platon)
	[0] Copier Setting	Auto Zoom (ADE)
		Auto Zoom (ADF)
		Select Tray for Insert Sheet
		Exit Direction of 1 Sneet (Platen)
		Image Rotation (Platen)
		Iri-Fold Printed Side Selection
		Print Page # on Blank Page
		Print Jobs During Copy Operation
	[7] Printer Setting	[1] Local I/F Timeout
		[2] Parallel I/F
	[9] System Connection	[1] IS OpenAPI Setting
	[0] Security Setting	[1] Administrator Password
		[2] User Box Admin. Setting
		[3] Administrator Security Level
		[4] Security Details
		[5] HDD Setting

9. LIST OF ADJUSTMENT ITEMS

~				-				-										-
			5								ŧ							
			ntati								2							
		Adjustment items Replacement parts/Others	mer							12	nin			<u>a</u>				
			ble			ade	eb		8	glas	6			2	y 2	44	~	
			N I		19	ld Bi	ΜB	12	- Bla	loof	2	ŧ	ŧ	atio	Tra	Tre	tra	÷
			P.	Ξ	/elo	anir	anir	glas	gina	st-p	anne	D	teu	gistr	÷	63	SSBC	U m
	Adjustment/setting it	ems	Affe	Da	De	Cle	Cle	Silt	Ö	Dus	Sce	8	Wri	НĞ	Tra	Tray	Byg	ADI
Machine	Printer area	Print Positioning: Leading Edge											3	2				
		Print Positioning: Side Edge											2					
		Cross Direction												1				
		Paper Feed Direction Adj.											0				-	1
	Printer Pre-resist	Tray 1													0		-	-
		Tray 2													0		-	-
		Trav 3														0	-	-
		Trav 4														0		
		ICT														Ŭ	-	-
		ADU															-	0
	Printer Resist Loop	Trav in common		-				-							0	0		Ĕ
	Third House coop	Bynass													~	0	0	-
		ADU															0	0
	Trout	Trave														~		0
	Itely	Trav 4														0		
		nay 4														0	~	
		Dypass 1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-			-	-	-	-	-	0	-
	Oran Arra	Bypass 2	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>		~	-		<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	0	<u> </u>
	Scan Area	Image Position: Leading Edge	1	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	1	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	L		Û	Û		L	L	<u> </u>	⊢	1
		Image Position: Side Edge	-	I	-	-	-	I				2				-		-
		Feed Direction Adjustment		<u> </u>				<u> </u>				3					L	
	Warp Adjustment	Original glass main scan									2	4					L	
		Original glass sub scan									3	\$						
		ADF main scan									4							
		ADF sub scan									\$							
Imaging Process	Charging Adj.	Grid Charging Manual Adj.		2									4		0			
Adjusting	Drum Peculiarity	Blade Setting Mode		4		0												
		Auto Maximum Density Adj.		\$	2					1			\$					
		Auto Laser Diameter Adj.		6	3		1	1		2			6			1	1	1
		LD1 Offset Adj.		Ø	4								Ø				-	-
		LD2 Offset Adj.		8	\$		1	1					8			1	1	
		Auto Gamma Adj. (1 Dot)		9	6					3			9				-	-
		Auto Gamma Adj. (2 Dot) *		- 00	0					(4)			- 00				-	+
		Cartridge Installation Mode		3	8					0			0					
System Setting 1	Serial number input			-	-			-										-
,	Detection size setting	Tray (main body)		-				-							0	0		
		Bypass tray													~	Ŭ	0	+
		Original glass															0	-
		ADE		-				-				-					-	-
		D																
O	Developed Device Life (we are)	FI		_	~		~											-
Counter	Present Parts Life (reset)			Φ	Φ		0									-		-
ADF	Paper Feed Direction																<u> </u>	
	Lead Edge Adj.																<u> </u>	
	Centering Adj.																	
	Resist Loop Adj.		-	-	-	-	-	-				-				-	L	-
	Original Size Adj.			<u> </u>				<u> </u>									L	
	Density Adj.							0										
	Incline Offset Adj.																	
	Stamp Position Adjustment	1																
	Mixed Original Size Adjustr	nent	L			L											L	L
Finisher	Center Staple Position (FS-	602)																
	Half-Fold Position (FS-602)		1	1	1	1	1	1				1				1	1	Γ
	Punch hole vertical position	1 (PK)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1			1		1	1	1	1	1
	Punch hole horizontal posit	ion (PK)	1	1	1	1	1	1				1				1	t	t
	Punch unit vertical position	(ZU)	1	1	1	1	1	1	1			1		1	1	1	1	1
	Punch unit horizontal positi	ion (ZU)	1	1	1	1	1	1				1	-			1	+	+
	Punch registration amount	(main body)	1	1	1	1	1	1				1	-			1	+	+
	Punch registration amount	(PI)	1	1	1	1	1	1	-			1		-	-	1	+	+
	1st Z-Fold Position (71)		1	1	1	1	1	1	-			-	-	-	-	1	+	+
	2nd Z-Fold Position (ZLI)		-		 	-	 		-			-	-	-	-	 	+	+
	Tri-Fold Position (ES-600)		-	-	-	-	-	-	-			-	-	-	-	-	-	-
	2 Decition Stanle Dist		-	-	-	-	-	-	-					-	-	-	-	<u> </u>
	2 Position Staple List.		-	-	-	-	-	-				-				-	⊢	-
0 attain 0	Cover Sheet Iray Size (PI)	Toront	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	<u> </u>			I		<u> </u>	<u> </u>		<u> </u>	<u> </u>
System Setting 2	Paper size setting	iray 1	1	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	1	<u> </u>	<u> </u>	L			I		L	L	0	⊢	<u> </u>
		Iray 2	-		I	-	I					-				0		
		LI-402	-		I	-	I					-				I		
		LI-412										1						
	ISW		1	1	1	1	1	1	1			1		1	1	1	1	1

	SCB)	RCB)	31)		ADFCB)							
je unit	trol board (trd board (F	ooard /1 (Of		rol board (R	402						
High voltag	system cor	Printer con	Operation t	DF-604	RADF cont	LT-401/LT-2	FS-504	FS-602	PI-501	PK-502	PK-503	ZU-602
						0						
0				0	0							
	-	-		0		0	0	0				
				0					0			
				0 0								
				0								
				0								
				0				0				
			L					0			0	
										0	0	0
									0	0	0	0
								0				0
							0	0	0			
	0	0	0	0	0	0						

This table shows the list of adjustment items when replacing part. Items are numbered in a circle by the priority if there is any.

* Auto Gamma Adj. (2dot) is necessary only when the DIPSW 11-5 is set to "1". Blank page

10. SERVICE MODE

10.1 List of service mode

	Adjustment/settin	g items	page
Machine	Printer Area	Print Positioning: Leading Edge	249
		Print Positioning: Side Edge	250
		Cross Direction	251
		Paper Feed Direction Adj.	252
	Printer Pre-resist		253
	Printer Resist Loop		254
	Tray		255
	Scan Area	Image Position: Leading Edge	256
		Image Position: Side Edge	257
		Feed Direction Adjustment	258
	Warp Adjustment		259
	Lead Edge Erase Adjustment		260
	Non-Image Area Erase Check	<	260
Imaging Process	Charging Adj.	Charging Main Manual Adj.	-
Adjusting		Transfer Manual Adj.	-
		Separation (AC) Manual Adj.	-
		Separation (DC) Manual Adj.	-
		Grid Charging Manual Adj.	261
		Bias Voltage Manual Adj.	-
		Transfer Guide Check	-
		TGR Manual Adj.	-
	Drum Peculiarity	Blade Setting Mode	262
		Auto Maximum Density Adj.	263
		Auto Laser Diameter Adj.	264
		LD1 Offset Adj.	265
		LD2 Offset Adj.	265
		LD1 Bias Adj.	-
		LD2 Bias Adj.	-
		Auto Gamma Adj. (1 Dot)	266
		Auto Gamma Adj. (2 Dot)	266
		Cartridge Installation Mode	267
	Drum Peculiarity Manual	Maximum Density Manual Adj.	-
		Laser Diameter Manual Adj.	-
	User Paper Set	•	268

c	
C	5
C	D.
2	2
5	۲.
2	2
	۰.
2	2
F	3
2	-1
P	V
7	5
-	-

	Adjustment/setting items	page
System 1	Marketing Area	269
	Tel/Fax Number	269
	Serial Number	270
	Trouble Isolation	270
	No Sleep	271
	Foolscap Size Setting	271
	Original Size Detection	272
	Detected Size Setting	272
	Install Date	273
	Initialization	273
Counter	Total Service	274
	Fax Communication Error	274
	Mode	275
	ADF Counter	276
	Service Call	276
	JAM	282
	Present Parts Life	291
	Optional Parts Life	298
	PM	300
	Warning	286
	Reuse	287
	Coverage Data History	289
	High coverage data	290
	Paper Jam History	282
	Jam Counter History	282
	Time series trouble (SC)	276
	Block trouble (SC)	276
State Confirmation	Sensor Check	301
	Load Check	309
	Memory/HDD Condition	319
	Memory/HDD Adjustment	319
	Adj. Data Table	320
ADF	Paper Feed Direction	326
	Lead Edge Adj.	327
	Centering Adj.	328
	Resist Loop Adj.	329
	Original Size Adj.	330
	Density Adj.	331
	Incline Offset Adj.	332
	Stamp Position Adjustment	333
	Mixed Original Size Adjustment	334

	Adjustment/setting items	page
Finisher	Center Staple Position	335
	Half-Fold Position	336
	Punch hole vertical position	337
	Punch hole horizontal position	338
	Punch unit vertical position	339
	Punch unit horizontal position	340
	Punch registration amount (main body)	341
	Punch registration amount (PI)	342
	1st Z-Fold Position	343
	2nd Z-Fold Position	343
	Tri-Fold Position	344
	2 Position Staple Dist.	345
	Cover Sheet Tray Size	346
Firmware Version		347
CS Remote Care		348
System 2	Data Capture	360
	Paper Size Setting	360
	Tray Pullout Setting	361
	DipSW Setting	361
	ISW	379
	Option	379
	Trouble Reset	379
List Output	Machine Management List	380
	Adjustments List	380
	Coverage Data List	380
	Service Parameter	380
	Protocol Trace	380
	Fax Setting List	380
Test Mode	Full Image Halftone	381
	Gradation Pattern (No.2)	383
	Gradation Pattern (No.3)	385
	Gradation Pattern (No.5)	387
	Beam Gap Check	389
	Line Check Pattern	391
	Test Pattern Output Mode	393
	Running Mode	394

10.2 Setting procedure

This machine is provided with a service mode for various adjustments/settings. Data adjusted/set in this mode is stored in the nonvolatile memory on image control board (ICB) and CF on system control board (SCB).

10.2.1 Start and exit service mode

You can access the service mode while the power is both turned ON and OFF. In either way, the started service mode is the same, but how to exit differs.

A. Starting and exiting service mode while the power is ON

- 1. Be sure that the ordinary copy screen is displayed.
- 2. Press the Utility/Counter button.
 - Sales Counter/Utility Menu screen appears.
- 3. Press the [Details] key.
- 4. On the Operation panel, press the following buttons.
 Stop → 0 → 0 → Stop → 0 → 1
 Caution
 When the CE password has been set, you must enter the password to enter the service mode.
- "Service mode menu screen"
 Press the key for an item you want to configure.
 The setting screen for each item appears.
- 6. Conduct necessary operations and press the [OK] key after completion of operations. This enables the settings made.
- 7. Press the [Exit] key to go back to the ordinary copy screen.

B. Starting and exiting service mode while the power is OFF

- 1. While pressing the Utility/Counter botton, turn ON the power switch (SW2).
- 2. Trouble reset screen appears.
- 3. Press the [Trouble reset] key.
- 4. On the Operation panel, press the following buttons.

```
Stop \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow \text{Stop} \rightarrow 0 \rightarrow 1
Caution
```

When the CE password has been set, you must enter the password to enter the service mode.

- Service mode menu screen"Press the key for an item you want to configure. The setting screen for each item appears.
- 6. Conduct necessary operations and turn OFF the SW2 after completion of operations.
- 7. The new settings become effective.

10.3 Machine Adjustment

10.3.1 Print Positioning: Leading Edge Adjustment (Printer Area)

For each type of paper (plain paper, thick paper), adjust the leading edge timing of the image. This adjustment changes the restart timing of paper from the registration roller.

NOTE

• Before starting this adjustment, make sure that the magnification adjustment in the printer feed direction has been completed.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Machine] key.
2.	"Machine Adjust screen"
	Press the [Printer Area] key.
З.	"Printer Area screen"
	Press the [Print Positioning: Leading Edge] key.
4.	"Print Positioning: Leading Edge screen"
	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select A3 paper and press the START button.
	The test pattern (No. 16) is output.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Print Positioning: Leading Edge screen appears.
7.	Measure the leading edge timing with a scale.
	Standard value [1]: 20 ± 0.5mm
	57aaf3c007na
8.	"Print Positioning: Leading Edge screen"
	Press the paper type key to select paper to be set. Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press
	[Setting] key.
	Setting range: -3.0 mm (short) to +6.0 (long)
	1 step= 0.1 mm
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
9.	Repeat Steps 4 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.
10	Press the [END] key.
	Return to the Machine Adjustment screen.

10.3.12 Printer leading edge erasure amount

Adjust the image erasure amount of the leading edge.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Machine] key.
2.	"Machine Adjust screen"
	Press the [Lead Edge Erase Adjustment] key.
З.	"Lead Edge Erase Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Test Copy] key.
4.	With the test chart set to the original glass, select A3 paper and press the Start button.
5.	Press the [END] key.
	Lead Edge Erase Adjustment screen appears.
6.	Check the printer leading edge erasure amount.
	Standard value: 3 mm or less
7.	"Lead Edge Erase Adjustment screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -2.0 mm (small) to +4.0 mm (large)
8.	1 step= 0.1 mm
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
9.	Repeat Steps 3 to 7 until the value gets inside the standard value.
10	Press the [END] key.
	Machine Adjust screen appears.

10.313 Non-image area auto erasure

When installing the copier, or moving its installation location, check to see if the non-image area erasure adnotion of the copy application setting operates satisfactorily in its installation location. This also adjusts sensitivity automatically to detect the non-image area.

Preparation:

- Open fully the DF.
- There should not be anything on the viginal glass.
- Clean the original glass.

A. Procedure

- "Service Mode screen" Press the [Machine] key.
- 2. "Machine Adjust screen"
- Press the [Non-Image Area Erase Check] key.
- 3. Press Start button
- 4. Make sure that "OK" has appeared.
- 5. Press the [END] key.
- Muchine Adjust screen appears.

10.3.13 Non image area erase check

When installing the copier or moving its installation location, check to see if the non-image area erase function of the application functions works satisfactorily. This also automatically adjusts sensitivity to correctly detect the non-image area.

Preparation:

- Open fully the DF.
- There should not be anything on the original glass.
- Clean the original glass.

A. Procedure

1. Enter the Tech. Rep. mode.
2. "Tech. Rep. mode menu screen"
Press the [Machine Adjust] key.
3. A sub menu appears on the right side of the screen.
Press the [Non-Image Area Erase Check] key on the sub menu.
4. "Non-image area erase check screen"
Press the [Start] key.
5. Make sure the following message appears.
The machine is set to appropriate parameters for Non-image area erase
The machine is set to appropriate parameters for hor-image area erase.
If any other message appears, refer to "B. Error message and Handling", and perform the Non

B. Error message and Handling

image Area Erase Check again.

If an error is detected while performing the "Non Image Area Erase Check" mode, the following error will be displayed.

(1) Error -1

Handling

When the non-image area erase function is not used very frequently, or when copy originals that have a dark background are not copied very frequently in non-image area erase, the copier can be used in the current installation location. However, when copy originals that have a dark background are frequently copied, install the copier in a location where less external light gets in (darker) than the present location, and check the non-image area erase check mode again.

(2) Error -2

Handling

When the non-image area erase function is not used very frequently, the copier can be used in the current installation location. However, if the non-image area erase function is frequently used, install the copier in a location where less external light gets in (darker) than the present location, and check the non-image area erase check mode again. At this time, when there is a bright light source such as a fluorescent light installed directly above the copier, reconsider the installation location, or take some measures to shield the light source and check the mode again.
10.3.3 Magnification adjustment in the printer feed crossover direction (printer area)

Adjust the magnification in the printer main scan direction.

This adjustment changes the horizontal magnification in the image processing prior to the laser exposure.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Machine] key.
2.	"Machine Adjust screen"
	Press the [Printer Area] key.
З.	"Printer Area screen"
	Press the [Cross Direction] key.
4.	"Cross Direction screen"
	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select A3 paper and press the START button.
	The test pattern (No. 16) is output.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Cross Direction screen appears.
7.	Measure the magnification in the main scan direc- tion with a scale. Standard value [1]: ± 0.95 mm or less (± 0.95 mm or less to 190 mm)
8.	"Cross Direction screen" Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key. Setting range: -1.0% (small) to +1.0% (large) 1 step= 0.1% Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
9.	Repeat Steps 4 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.
10	Press the [END] key.
	Machine Adjust screen appears.

10.3.4 Magnification adjustment in the printer feed direction (printer area)

Adjust the magnification in the printer sub scan direction.

This adjustment changes the drum and the registration roller line speed uniformly.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Machine] key.
2.	"Machine Adjust screen"
	Press the [Printer Area] key.
З.	"Printer Area screen"
	Press the [Paper Feed Direction Adj.] key.
4.	"Paper Feed Direction Adj.screen"
	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select A3 paper and press the START button.
	The test pattern (No. 16) is output.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Paper Feed Direction Adj. screen appears.
7.	Measure the magnification in the sub scan direc-
	tion with a scale.
•	Standard value [1]: ± 0.35 or less (when in equal
	magnification)
	205.7 ± 0.72 mm or less
	57aaf3c009na
8	"Paper Feed Direction Adi. screen"
0.	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key
	Setting range: -1.35% (small) to +5.00% (large)
	1 step= 0.05%
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
9.	Repeat Steps 4 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.
10	Press the [END] key.
	Machine Adjust screen appears.

10.3.5 Pre-registration amount

Adjust the pre-registration amount in the registration roller section to correct the skew of paper, wrinkles in the paper, or a jam in the registration section.

The pre-registration amount of the printer can be adjusted for each paper feeder (trays 1 to 4, LCT and ADU)

	Press the [Machine] key.
2.	"Machine Adjust screen"
	Press the [Printer Pre-resist] key.
З.	"Printer Pre-resist Adjustment screen"
	Press the key of the paper feeder to be adjusted.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select the same paper feeder as with Step 4 and press the Start button.
	A blank sheet is supplied from the paper feeder.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Printer Pre-resist Adjustment screen appears.
7.	"Printer Pre-resist Adjustment screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range (Tray 1 to 4, LCT): -10ms (small) to +10ms (large)
	Setting range (ADU): -10ms (small) to +10ms (large)
	1 step= 2ms
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
8.	Repeat Steps 4 to 7 until the value gets inside the standard value.
9.	Press the [END] key.
	Machine Adjust screen appears.

10.3.6 Printer registration loop amount

Adjust the paper loop amount in the registration roller section to correct the skew of paper, wrinkles in the paper, or a jam in the registration section.

The printer registration amount can be adjusted for each paper feeder (trays 1 to 4 (common), LCT, by-pass tray or ADU).

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Machine] key.
2.	"Machine Adjust screen"
	Press the [Printer Resist Loop] key.
З.	"Printer Resist Adjustment screen"
	Press the key of the paper feeder to be adjusted.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select the same paper feeder as with Step 4 and press the Start button.
	A blank sheet is supplied from the paper feeder.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Printer Resist Adjustment screen appears.
7.	"Printer Resist Adjustment screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range (Tray in common):-10ms (small) to +10ms (large)
	Setting range (Bypass, ADU):-20ms (small) to +20ms (large)
	1 step= 2ms
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
8.	Repeat Steps 4 to 7 until the value gets inside the standard value.
9.	Press the [END] key.
	Machine Adjust screen appears.

10.3.7 Tray adjustment

Adjust the paper size of the tray 3, tray 4 and the by-pass tray. Conduct this adjustment when the paper size of the tray cannot be detected correctly.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Machine] key.
2.	"Machine Adjust screen"
	Press the [Tray] key
З.	"Tray screen"
	Press the key of the tray and select the tray to be adjusted.
4.	Pull out the tray selected. And with the paper guide [1] expanded to the utmost limit, move the paper guide [1] slowly in the direction in which the width is reduced and set it to the scale position of "A4R" [2]. (The inner measurement of the paper guide is 210 mm.) The bypass tray adjustment is A4R (bypass tray 1) or 8.5 x 11 (bypass tray 2).
	[ľ] 57aaf3c019na
5.	Set the tray.
6.	Press Start button.
	The current position of the tray selected is read in.
	After completion of the adjustment, "OK" appears.
7.	When adjusting other trays, repeat Steps 3 to 6.
8.	Press the [END] key.
	Machine Adjust screen appears.

10.3.8 Scan position adjustment: Leading edge (scan area)

Adjust the leading edge timing while in the scan in the original glass.

This adjustment adjusts the position at which the read is started while in the original scan by the exposure unit.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Machine] key.
2.	"Machine Adjust screen"
	Press the [Scan Area] key.
З.	"Scan Area screen"
	Press the [Image Position: Leading Edge] key.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	With the test chart set to the original glass, select A3 paper and press the Start button.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Scan Area screen appears.
7.	Check the scanner edge position (original glass).
	Standard value: 3 mm or less
8.	"Scan position adjustment screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -2.0 mm (short) to +6.0 (long)
	1 step= 0.1mm
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
9.	Repeat Steps 4 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.
10	Press the [END] key.
	Machine Adjust screen appears.

10.3.9 Scan position adjustment: Side edge (scan area)

Adjust the mis-centering of images while in the scan in the original glass.

NOTE

• The side edge position adjustment should have been completed. (See "10.3.2 Print Positioning: Side Edge Adjustment (Printer Area).")

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Machine] key.
2.	"Machine Adjust screen"
	Press the [Scan Area] key.
З.	"Scan Area screen"
	Press the [Image Position: Side Edge] key.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	With the test chart set to the original glass, select A3 paper and press the Start button.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Scan Area screen appears.
7.	Fold the paper output in half at the center in the paper feed direction and check the discrepancy of the left
	and right lines.
	Standard value: ± 2 mm or less
8.	"Scan Area screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -3.0 mm (short) to +3.0 (long)
	1 step= 0.1 mm
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
9.	Repeat Steps 4 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.
10	Press the [END] key.
	Machine Adjust screen appears.

10.3.10 Magnification adjustment in the scan feed direction (scan area)

Adjust the magnification in the main scan direction of the scanner system. This adjustment changes the scan speed of the exposure unit.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Machine] key.
2.	"Machine Adjust screen"
	Press the [Scan Area] key.
З.	"Scan Area screen"
	Press the [Feed Direction Adjustment] key.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	With the test chart set to the original glass, select A3 paper and press the Start button.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Scan Area screen appears.
7.	Measure the magnification in the sub scan direction with a scale. Standard value [1]: ± 0.5% or less (in life-size) ± 1 mm or less to 200 mm
8.	"Scan Area screen" Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key. Setting range: -2.00% (small) to +2.00% (large) 1 step= 0.05% Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
9.	Repeat Steps 4 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.
10	2. Press the [END] key.
	Machine Adjust screen appears.

10.3.11 Warp adjustment

Adjust the image distortion in scanning.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Machine] key.
2.	"Machine Adjust screen"
	Press the [Warp Adjustment] key.
З.	"Warp Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Original Glass CD], [Original Grass FD], [ADF CD] or [ADF FD] key.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	In the case of the original glass main scan or the original glass sub scan, set the test chart to the original
	glass, select A3 paper and press the Start button.
	In the case of the ADF main scan or the ADF sub scan, set the test chart to ADF, select A3 paper and
	press the Start button.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Warp Adjustment screen appears.
7.	Measure the image warp with a scale.
	Standard value: \pm 0.5% or less (the difference in length of the 2 diagonal lines of the square of 200 mm is
	1.4 mm or less.)
8.	"Warp Adjustment screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -2.50% (small) to +2.50% (large)
9.	1 step= 0.05%
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
10	Repeat Steps 4 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.
11	Press the [END] key.
	Machine Adjust screen appears.

10.3.12 Printer leading edge erasure amount

Adjust the image erasure amount of the leading edge.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Machine] key.
2.	"Machine Adjust screen"
	Press the [Lead Edge Erase Adjustment] key.
З.	"Lead Edge Erase Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Test Copy] key.
4.	With the test chart set to the original glass, select A3 paper and press the Start button.
5.	Press the [END] key.
	Lead Edge Erase Adjustment screen appears.
6.	Check the printer leading edge erasure amount.
	Standard value: 3 mm or less
7.	"Lead Edge Erase Adjustment screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -2.0 mm (small) to +4.0 mm (large)
8.	1 step= 0.1 mm
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
9.	Repeat Steps 3 to 7 until the value gets inside the standard value.
10.	Press the [END] key.
	Machine Adjust screen appears.

10.3.13 Non-image area auto erasure

When installing the copier, or moving its installation location, check to see if the non-image area erasure function of the copy application setting operates satisfactorily in its installation location. This also adjusts sensitivity automatically to detect the non-image area.

Preparation:

- Open fully the DF.
- There should not be anything on the original glass.
- Clean the original glass.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Machine] key.
2.	"Machine Adjust screen"
	Press the [Non-Image Area Erase Check] key.
З.	Press Start button.
4.	Make sure that "OK" has appeared.
5.	Press the [END] key.
	Machine Adjust screen appears.

10.4 Process adjustment

10.4.1 Charging grid manual adjustment (high voltage adjustment)

Adjust the charging grid voltage.

Be sure to check that the drum counter has been reset.

NOTE

- Be sure to lock the ADU lock lever.
- Be sure to insert the door switch jig into the interlock MS/L and the interlock MS/R.

A. Procedure

1.	Check the charging grid voltage adjustment value as given in the drum flange section.
2.	Connect a tester as shown in the drawing below.
	+: Grid pin
	-: GND (earth)
	Range: 1,000 VDC
З.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Imaging Process Adjustment] key.
4.	"Imaging Process Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Charging Adj.] key.
5.	"Charging Adj. screen"
	Press the [Grid Charging Manual Adj.] key.
6.	"Grid Charging Manual Adj. screen"
	Press Start button.
	A charging grid voltage is output.
7.	Check the value indicated by the tester.
8.	Press Stop button.
9.	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: 0 (small) to 255 (large)
	1 step = 1
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
10	Repeat Steps 4 to 9 until the value gets inside the standard value.
11	Press the [OK] key.
	Imaging Process Adjustment screen appears.

Standard value: Drum specified value \pm 5V Setting range: 0 to 255 1 step = 1.6V



10.4.2 Blade setting mode (Drum peculiarity adjustment)

Perform this adjustment when changing the cleaning blade. In this mode, apply toner to the cleaning blade and drum, to prevents damages to them.

NOTE

- Apply setting powder to the cleaning blade and drum.
- Before starting this adjustment, be sure to check the cleaning blade to see if it is at the release position.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Imaging Process Adjustment] key.
2.	"Imaging Process Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Drum Peculiarity] key.
З.	"Drum Peculiarity screen"
	Press the [Blade Setting Mode] key.
4.	Set the cleaning blade to the release position (OFF).
5.	"Blade Setting Mode"
	Press Start button.
	First of all, the drum is coated with toner. And then it is cleaned by the cleaning blade.
6.	Make sure that "OK" has appeared.
7.	Set the cleaning blade to the pressure position (ON).
8.	Repeat twice Steps 5 to 6.
9.	Press the [OK] key.
	Imaging Process Adjustment screen appears.

10.4.3 Auto maximum density adjustment (Drum peculiarity adjustment)

Automatically adjust maximum density of images.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Imaging Process Adjustment] key.
2.	"Imaging Process Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Drum Peculiarity] key.
З.	"Drum Peculiarity screen"
	Press the [Auto Maximum Density Adj.] key.
4.	"Auto Maximum Density Adj."
	Press Start button.
	An auto adjustment is started.
5.	Make sure that "OK" has appeared.
6.	Press the [OK] key.
	Imaging Process Adjustment screen appears.

NOTE

- When the following error messages appear, check to see if the toner control sensor board (TCSB) is properly installed and cleaned. Conduct the adjustment again.
 - 1) Error 1

The maximum density sensor (on the TCSB) dirt correction but it does not converge.

2) Error 2

The auto maximum density adjustment is not completed, when the developing roller rotation speed reaches the specified value.

3) Error 3

No signal is outputted from the maximum density sensor. Control patch detect signal is not outputted.

10.4.4 Auto dot diameter adjustment (Drum peculiarity adjustment)

Automatically adjust the diameter of laser beam.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Imaging Process Adjustment] key.
2.	"Imaging Process Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Drum Peculiarity] key.
З.	"Drum Peculiarity screen"
	Press the [Auto Laser Diameter Adj.] key.
4.	"Auto Laser Diameter Adj."
	Press Start button.
5.	Make sure that "OK" has appeared.
6.	Press the [OK] key.
	Imaging Process Adjustment screen appears.

NOTE

- When the following error messages appear, check to see if the toner control sensor board (TCSB) is properly installed and cleaned. Conduct the adjustment again.
 - 1) Error 1
 - The gamma sensor (on the TCSB) dirt correction but it does not converge.
 - 2) Error 2

The auto dot diameter adjustment completed with an abnormal value.

10.4.5 LD1 Offset Adjustment/LD2 Offset Adjustment (Drum Peculiarity)

Equally adjust two laser (LD1 / LD2) intensity.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Imaging Process Adjustment] key.
2.	"Imaging Process Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Drum Peculiarity] key.
З.	"Drum Peculiarity screen"
	Press the [LD1 Offset Adj.] or [LD2 Offset Adj.] key.
4.	"LD1 Offset Adj. screen" or "LD2 Offset Adj. screen" Press the [I S 357] key
5	Press the [Test Conv] key
6	Select A3 paper and press the START button
0.	Test pattern is output.
7.	Press the [END] key.
	LD1 Offset Adj. screen or LD2 Offset Adj. screen appears.
8.	Check the patches of LD1 and LD2 on the output
	paper.
	natterns created by the LD1 and LD2. Confirm
	that density is uniform (+ 1 gap is OK) as per the
	following figure and the highlighted patterns start
	between the two reference lines.
	[1] Reference lines
	57aaf3c012na
9.	"LD1 Offset Adj. screen" or "LD2 Offset Adj. screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -128 (small) to +127 (large)
	1 step= 1
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
10	Repeat Steps 5 to 9 until the reference lines get aligned on LD1 and LD2.
11	Repeat Steps 4 to 10 for each line speed.
12	Press the [OK] key.
	Imaging Process Adjustment screen appears.

10.4.6 Auto gamma adjustment (1dot) / Auto gamma adjustment (2dot) (Drum peculiarity adjustment)

Automatically adjust image gradation (gamma).

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Imaging Process Adjustment] key.
2.	"Imaging Process Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Drum Peculiarity] key.
З.	"Drum Peculiarity screen"
	Press the [Auto Gamma Adj. (1dot)] or [Auto Gamma Adj. (2dot)] key.
4.	"Auto Gamma Adj. (1dot) screen" or "Auto Gamma Adj. (2dot) screen"
	Press Start button.
5.	Make sure that "OK" has appeared.
6.	Press the [OK] key.
	Imaging Process Adjustment screen appears.

NOTE

- When the following error messages appear, check to see if the toner control sensor board (TCSB) is properly installed and cleaned. Conduct the adjustment again.
 - 1) Error 1

The gamma sensor (on the TCSB) dirt correction but it does not converge.

2) Error 2

No signal is outputted from the gamma sensor. Control patch detect signal is not outputted.

3) Error 3

Regression error during the gamma curve calculation.

10.4.7 Cartridge set mode (Drum peculiarity adjustment)

Conduct this adjustment when black spots (toner) appear on the print-out after removing/inserting the photo conductor section.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Imaging Process Adjustment] key.
2.	"Imaging Process Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Drum Peculiarity] key.
З.	"Drum Peculiarity screen"
	Press the [Cartridge Installation Mode] key.
4.	"Cartridge Installation Mode"
	Press Start button.
	With "In execution" displayed, the developing unit and the photosensitive material drum rotates for 2 min-
	utes to charge toner with less electric charge.
5.	When "OK" appears, press [Test Copy] key.
6.	Select A3 paper and press the START button to output 10 blank papers, thus cleaning the drum.
7.	Press the [OK] key.
8.	When black spots do not disappear, repeat Steps 4 to 7.
9.	Press the [OK] key.

Imaging Process Adjustment screen appears.

10.4.8 User paper setting

Use this adjustment when the transfer and separation functions do not work satisfactorily with the standard adjustments because of using special papers, etc.

This setting is applied when you select [User] as the paper type.

By default, the following data are inputted.

- For inch area: 72 to 91 g/m² Normal paper
- For metric area: 72 to 91 g/m² Normal paper

NOTE

• Input data according to instructions of KMBT field support section.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Imaging Process Adjustment] key.
2.	"Imaging Process Adjustment screen"
	Press the [User Paper Set] key.
З.	"User Paper Set screen"
	Press the [User 1], [User 2] or [User 3] key and select the user specified paper to be set.
4.	"User Paper Set screen"
	Press the [Transfer] or [Separation (DC)] key.
5.	Select [Lead Edge Side 1] to [Rear Edge Side 2] and enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press
	[Setting] key.
	Setting range: -128 to +127
	1 step= 1
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
6.	Repeat Steps 3 to 5 and set the necessary user specified paper.
7.	Press the [OK] key.
	Imaging Process Adjustment screen appears.

10.5 System setting 1

10.5.1 Marketing area setting

Set the marketing area for this machine.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 1] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Marketing Area] key.
З.	"Marketing Area screen"
	Press the [Japan] to [Others4] key, select the destination.
4.	Press the [END] key.
	System Input screen appears.

10.5.2 Entry of the telephone and fax numbers

Set the telephone number and the fax number of the service center that appear on the screen when a service call occurs.

The telephone number and the fax number are also displayed at the service center contact which is the basic screen of the user screen.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 1] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Tel/Fax Number] key.
З.	"Service Telephone/Fax Number Setting"
	Press the [TEL] or [FAX] key.
4.	Enter the telephone number or fax number through the sheet number setting button.
5.	When setting both the telephone number and the fax number, repeat Steps 3 to 4.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	System Input screen appears.
NO	TE

- Numeric values input enter the most important digit first and appear while shifting from left to right.
- · Pressing the clear button erases all the figures of the item selected.

10.5.3 Entry of the serial number

This is a function to display and set/change the serial number of the main body and the optional equipment.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 1] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Serial Number] key.
	The serial number that is registered appears.
З.	"Serial Number Input screen"
	Press the key ([Printer (main body)], [LCT], [Finisher]) of the device that is registered. The soft keyboard
	appears.
4.	"Software Keyboard screen"
	Enter the serial number through the alphabet keys and the numeric keypad.
5.	Press the [OK] key.
	Serial Number Input screen appears.
6.	Repeat the Steps 3 to 5 to enter the serial number of each device.
7.	Press the [END] key.
	System Input screen appears.

NOTE

• When a serial number is incorrectly set, a warning message appears on the pop-up window. Be sure to press the [OK] key to close the pop-up window, and then set again the serial number correctly.

10.5.4 Separation of defective parts

When any trouble is found with each function (device), make the use of the copier available by separating defective parts.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 1] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Trouble Isolation] key.
З.	"Trouble Isolation screen"
	Set the separation of each item by the [Set] or [Unset] key.
4.	Press the [END] key.
	System Input screen appears.

10.5.5 No sleep

Set the on or off of the sleep in the administrator mode.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 1] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [No Sleep] key.
З.	"No Sleep screen"
	Set the availability of the sleep by the [Permit] or [Prohibit] key.
4.	Press the [END] key.
	System Input screen appears.

10.5.6 Foolscap size setting

Set the foolscap size.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 1] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Foolscap Size Setting] key.
З.	"Foolscap Size Setting screen"
	Press the [8 1/2 x 13], [8 1/4 x 13], [8 1/8 x 131/4] or [8 x 13] key to set the foolscap size.
4.	Press the [END] key.
	System Input screen appears.

10.5.7 Original size detection

Set the detection performance of the original size in the original glass and the ADF.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 1] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Original Size Detection] key.
З.	"Original Size Detection Change screen"
	Press the key to set the detection size in similar sizes of each of three kinds.
4.	Press the [Original Glass Original Size Detect] key.
5.	"Original Glass Original Size Detect screen"
	Press the key to set the size to be detected in the original glass.
6.	Press the [ADF Original Size Detect] key.
7.	"ADF Original Size Detect screen"
	Press the key to set the size to be detected in ADF.
8.	Press the [OK] key.
	System Input screen appears.

10.5.8 Detection size setting

In the size detection in the main body paper feed tray, bypass tray, original glass, ADF or PI, set the B series or K size (8K/16K size).

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 1] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Detected Size Setting] key.
З.	"8K/16K Select screen"
	Press the [B Series] or [K Size] key to set the size series to be detected for each place of size detection.
4.	Press the [END] key.
	System Input screen appears.

10.5.9 Entry of the installation date

Set the start date of the total counter.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 1] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Install Date] key.
З.	"Install Date screen"
	Press the [Entry] key.
4.	Press the [END] key.
	System Input screen appears.

10.5.10 Initialization

Initialize the setting/adjustment data that is managed in non-volatile memory. The following data can be initialized.

Classification	Data	
Utility/Administrator Setting Data	Job Memory Setting DataFAX Setting DataNetwork Setting Data	
Destination Storage Data		
CS Remote Care Setting Data		
Service Mode Setting (Adj.) Data	Image Process Adj. DataMachine and ADF Adjustment Data	

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 1] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Initialization] key.
З.	Press each key to select the data to be initialized.
	Press the [All Select] key to select all data.
4.	Press Start button.
	The data selected is initialized.
5.	Press the [END] key.
1	System Input screen appears.

10.6 Counter/data

10.6.1 Display of the counter/data

Display on the operation panel the following data that is maintained by this copier.

- Total Service Counter
- Mode Counter
- JAM counter / Time series JAM data / Block JAM data
- Trouble counter (SQ) / Time series trouble (SC) data / Block trouble (SC) data
- Warning Counter
- Coverage block data / High coverage data
- Each Parts Counter

Reuse Counter

ADF Paper Counter

• Parts Counter (Fixed)

FAX Communication Error Counter

PM Counter

The data collected can also be checked by the CS Remote Care and on the output list.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Counter] key.
2.	"Counter/Data screen"
	Press the key of the counter/data that is displayed.
	The counter/data keys are spread over 2 pages. The page can be changed over by the arrow key [1] or
	[↓].
З.	Each Counter screen
	Check the value of the intended item.
	When the items are spread over 2 or more pages, the page can be changed over by the arrow key [\uparrow] or
	[↓].
4.	Press the [OK] key.
	Counter/Data screen appears.
4.	Press the [OK] key. Counter/Data screen appears.

B. Total Service Counter

Display the total number of prints made in the service mode and the user mode.

CSRC	Items	Count conditions	
parameter			
 Total Service The number of prints made in the single sided mode sided mode. 		The number of prints made in the single sided mode and double sided mode.	
_	Total Service (2-Sides)	Of the above, the number of prints made in the double sided mode.	

C. FAX Communication Error Counter (Not available)

Display the number of errors that occurs while in the fax reception, with a distinction made between while in the FAX reception and while in the FAX transmission.

CSRC	Items	Items Count conditions	
parameter			
_	FAX TX Error	Number of errors that occurred while in the fax transmission.	
_	FAX RX Error	Number of errors that occurred while in the fax reception.	

D. Mode Counter

Display the use condition for each mode used by the copy/scanner.

NOTE

• The counter counts up to 99,999,999.

CSRC	Items	Count conditions
parameter (F1)		
01	No. of Prints in Half-Fold Mode	
02	No. of Prints in Center Staple Mode	
03	No. of Prints in Tri-Fold Mode	
04	No. of Prints in Z-Fold Mode	
05	No. of Staples 1	
06	No. of Staples 2	
07	No. of Punches	
08	BOX Housing: Copy - Proof Print	
09	BOX Housing: Copy - BOX Hold	
0A	BOX Housing: Print - Proof Print	
0B	BOX Housing: Print - BOX Hold	
0C	BOX Housing: Print - Classified Document	
0D	BOX Housing: Scanner - BOX Hold	
OE	BOX Housing: FAX/IFAX Scanning - BOX Hold	
0F	BOX Housing: FAX RX - Distribute by F-Code	
10	BOX Housing: FAX RX - Distribute by TSI	
11	BOX Housing: FAX RX - BOX Hold	
12	Output from Box: Copy Image - Print	
13	Output from Box: Copy Image - E-Mail TX	
14	Output from Box: Copy Image - FTP TX	
15	Output from Box: Copy Image - SMB TX	
16	Output from Box: Print Image - Print	
17	Output from Box: Print Image - E-Mail TX	
18	Output from Box: Print Image - FTP TX	
19	Output from Box: Print Image - SMB TX	
1A	Output from Box: Scan Image - Print	
1B	Output from Box: Scan Image - E-Mail TX	
1C	Output from Box: Scan Image - FTP TX	
1D	Output from Box: Scan Image - SMB TX	
1E	Output from Box: FAX Scan Image - Print	
1F	Output from Box: FAX Scan Image - FAX TX	
20	Output from Box: FAX Scan Image - E-Mail/IFAX TX	
21	Output from Box: FAX RX Image - Print	
22	Output from Box: FAX RX Image - FAX TX	
23	Output from Box: FAX RX Image - E-Mail/IFAX TX	

E. ADF Paper Counter

Display the ADF passage count by modes.

NOTE

• The counter counts up to 99,999,999.

CSRC	Original feed mode	Remarks
parameter (F0)		
00	No. of Original Feed in 1-Side Mode	
01	No. of Original Feed in 2-Side Mode	
07	No. of 1-Side Mixed Original Feed	
08	No. of 2-Side Mixed Original Feed	
0A	No. of 1-Side Z-Fold Original Feed	
0B	No. of 2-Side Z-Fold Original Feed	

F. Trouble code (SC), time series trouble (SC), block trouble (SC) count

Troubles that occurred are displayed by the SC codes, in the order of occurrence and by the areas in which they occurred.

NOTE

- The time series trouble count and the block trouble count cannot be used in CSRC.
- The counter counts up to 99,999,999.
- While in the occurrence of a trouble, "C-" is given at the head of the trouble code and followed by the upper 2 digits and lower 2 digits.
- When the service mode DIPSW3-1 is 1 (ratchet), SC34, 35, 36, 23-14 and 23-17 are not counted.

CSRC	SC code		Section	Count Conditions
parameter (E0)	ameter (E0) Upper Lower			
00	01	01	Paper Feed Motor Rotating Abnormality	
01	01	02	LCT Conveyance Motor Rotating Abnormality	
02	01	03	2nd Paper Feed Rotating Motor Abnormality	
03	02	01	Tray 1 Up/Down Motor Abnormality	
04	02	02	Tray 1 Up/Down Abnormality	
05	02	03	Tray 2 Up/Down Motor Abnormality	
06	02	04	Tray 2 Up/Down Abnormality	
07	02	05	Tray 3 Up/Down Motor Abnormality	
08	02	06	Tray 3 Up/Down Abnormality	
09	02	07	Tray 4 Up/Down Motor Abnormality	
0A	02	08	Tray 4 Up/Down Abnormality	
0B	02	09	LCT Up/Down Motor Abnormality	
0C	02	10	LCT Up/Down Abnormality	
0D	02	11	Bypass Tray Up/Down Abnormality	
ΟE	03	01	Conveyance Suction Fan Lock (ADU)	
OF	03	02	Paper Exit Inhalation Fan Lock	
10	03	03	Machine Paper Exit Fan Lock	
11	03	04	ADU Cooling Fan Lock	

	CSRC	SC c	ode	Section	Count Conditions
	parameter (E0)	Upper	Lower		
	C3	03	05	Paper Exit Exhaust Fan Lock	
	12	10	01	Comm. Serial RX Error Detect Abnormality FS504/FS506/FS602	
	13	10	02	Comm. Start ??? Error Detect Abnormality FS504/FS506/FS602	
	14	10	03	FNS-PK503/PK504/PK505 Rocking Comm. Abnormality	
	15	10	04	Sub CPU RX Error	
	16	10	05	Main CPU RX Error	
	17	11	01	Shift Drive Abnormality <fs504 fs506="" fs602="" sf601=""></fs504>	
	18	11	02	Tray U/D Drive Abnormality <fs504 fs506="" fs602="" sf601=""></fs504>	
	19	11	03	Alignment Board Drive Abnormality <fs504 <br="">FS506/FS602></fs504>	
	1A	11	04	Paper Exit Roller Drive Abnormality <fs504 fs506="" fs602=""></fs504>	
	1B	11	05	Paper Exit Opening Drive Abnormality <fs504 fs506="" fs602=""></fs504>	
	1C	11	06	Stapler Moving Drive Abnormality <fs504 fs506="" fs602=""></fs504>	
	1D	11	07	Stapler Clinch Rotating Drive Abnormality <fs602></fs602>	
	1E	11	08	Stapler Driver Rotating Drive Abnormality <fs506 fs602=""></fs506>	
	1F	11	09	Stapler F Unit Driver Abnormality <fs504 fs506="" fs602=""></fs504>	
	20	11	10	Stapler R Unit Driver Abnormality <fs504 fs506="" fs602=""></fs504>	
	21	11	11	Stapler F Unit Clinch Drive Abnormality <fs602></fs602>	
	22	11	12	Stapler R Unit Clinch Drive Abnormality <fs602></fs602>	
	23	11	13	Rear Edge Stopper Motor Drive Abnormality <fs602></fs602>	
	24	11	14	Stapler Side Guide Motor Drive Abnormality <fs602></fs602>	
F	25	11	15	Half-Fold Knife Motor Drive Abnormality <fs602></fs602>	
	26	11	16	Half-Fold Conveyance Motor Drive Abnormality <fs602></fs602>	

CSRC	SC o	code	Section	Count Conditions
parameter (E0)	Upper	Lower		
27	11	17	Not used	_
28	11	18		
29	11	19		
2A	11	20		
2B	11	21		
2C	11	22		
2D	11	23		
2E	11	24	Sheet Feeder Up/Down Drive Abnormality (Lower)	
			<fs504 fs602=""></fs504>	
2F	11	25	Sheet Feeder Up/Down Drive Abnormality (Upper)	
			<fs504 fs602=""></fs504>	
30	11	26	Sheet Feeder Conveyance Drive Abnormality	
			<fs504 fs602=""></fs504>	
31	11	27	PK503/PK504 Rocking Unit Punch Moving Motor	
			Drive Abnormality <fs504 fs602=""></fs504>	
32	11	28	Z-Fold Stacker Fan Motor 1Drive Abnormality	
			<fs504 fs602=""></fs504>	
33	11	29	Z-Fold Stacker Fan Motor 1 Drive Abnormality	
34	11	30	Z-Fold Stopper Motor 1 Drive Abnormality ZLIS	
25	11	21	Z Fold Stopper Motor 2 Drive Abnormality <20>	
35	11	20	Pupeh Motor Drive Abnormality	
30		32	<pk502 pk503="" pk504=""></pk502>	
37	11	33	Punch Moving Motor Drive Abnormality <7U>	
38	11	34	Fan Motor Drive Abnormality <7U>	
39	11	35	Punch Drive Motor Drive Abnormality <7U>	
3A	11	36	Punch Hole Change Motor Drive Abnormality	
0,1		00	<zu> (2 Holes, 3Holes, 4 Holes)</zu>	
3B	11	37	Gate Motor Drive Abnormality	
C4	11	38	Side of Trans. Motor Drive Abnormality	
3C	21	01	Charging Cl. MT Abnormality 1	
3D	21	02	Charging Cl. MT Abnormality 2	
ЗE	21	03	Charging Cl. MT Abnormality 3	
ЗF	21	04	Trans./Sep. Cl. MT Abnormality 1	
40	21	05	Trans./Sep. Cl. MT Abnormality 2	
42	22	01	Toner Bottle Motor Rotating Abnormality	
43	22	02	Developing Motor Rotating Abnormality	
44	22	03	Drum Motor Rotating Abnormality	
45	24	01	PCL Connection Abnormality	
46	23	01	Developing Suction Fan Lock	
47	23	02	Cleaner Cooling Fan Lock	
48	23	03	Bypass Cooling Fan Lock	
49	27	01	Charging EM	
I	1	I		

CSRC	SC c	ode	Section	Count Conditions
parameter (E0)	Upper	Lower		
4A	27	02	Transfer EM	
4B	27	03	Separation EM	
4C	28	01	Maximum Density Correction Error 1	
4D	28	02	Maximum Density Correction 2	***
4E	28	03	Maximum Density Correction Error 3	
4F	28	04	Gamma Correction Error 1	
50	28	05	Gamma Correction Error 2	
51	28	06	Gamma Correction Error 3	
52	28	07	Dot Diameter Correction Error 1	
53	28	09	Dot Diameter Correction Error 2	
54	34	01	Fixing Abnormal Detection 1	
55	34	02	Fixing Abnormal Detection 2	
56	37	01	Center Part of Fixing Upper Roller High Temp.	
			Abnormal Detection (Soft Detection)	
57	37	02	Center Part of Fixing Upper Roller High Temp.	
			Abnormal Detection (TH1:NC Sensor/1)	
58	37	03	Side of Fixing Upper Roller Sensor	
			High or Low Temp. Abnormal Detection (TH2)	
59	37	04	Side of Fixing Upper Roller High Temp. Abnormal	
			Detection (TH3:NC Sensor/2)	
5A	37	05	Side of Fixing Upper Roller Sensor	
			High or Low Temp. Abnormal Detection (TH5)	
5B	37	06	Side of Fixing Upper Roller High Temp. Abnormal	
	07	07	Detection (TH3:NC Sensor/2)	
C5	37	07	Fixing Unit High Temp. Detection	
5C	38	01	Center Part of Fixing Upper Roller Low Temp.	
50	00	00	Abrionnal Detection (Soft Detection)	
50	38	02	Abnormal Detection (Soft Detection)	
55	38	03	Center Part of Fixing Lipper Boller Low Temp	
0L	00	00	Abnormal Detection (TH1:NC Sensor/1)	
5F	38	06	Side of Fixing Upper Boller Low Temp	
0.	00	00	Abnormal Detection (TH3:NC Sensor/1)	
61	38	08	Side of Fixing Upper Roller Low Temp.	
			Abnormal Detection (TH3:NC Sensor/2)	
62	39	01	Center Part of Fixing Upper Roller Sensor	
			Disconnecting Detection (TH1)	
63	39	02	Side of Fixing Upper Roller Sensor	
			Disconnecting Detection (TH3:NC Sensor/2)	
64	41	01	Polygon Motor Rotating Abnormality	
65	43	01	Writing Cooling Fan Lock	
69	47	04	Index Sensor Abnormality	
6A	47	05	Printer Time-out	

CSBC	SC	ode	Section	Count Conditions
parameter (E0)	Upper	Lower	Conton	Count Containone
6C	47	07	APC Abnormality	
6F	50	01	Peripheral Serial Comm. Abnormality <printer con-<="" td=""><td></td></printer>	
			trol Board Main Body Drive Serial Input Abnormal-	
			ity 1>	
70	50	02	Peripheral Serial Comm. Abnormality <printer con-<="" td=""><td></td></printer>	
			trol Board Main Body Drive Serial Input Abnormal-	
			ity 2>	
71	50	03	Peripheral Serial Comm. Abnormality < Printer Con-	
			trol Board Main Body Drive Serial Input Abnormal-	
			ity 3>	
72	50	04	Peripheral Serial Comm. Abnormality <printer con-<="" td=""><td></td></printer>	
			trol Board Main Body Drive Serial Input Abnormal-	
70	50	05	Ry 4>	
13	50	05	trol Board Drive Comm. Error detect Abnormality	
74	50	06	Image Control Board Comm. Connection Abnor-	
14	00	00	mality	
75	50	07	Image Control Board Comm. Serial RX Error	
			Detect Abnormality	
76	50	08	Peripheral Serial Comm. Abnormality <adu drive<="" td=""><td></td></adu>	
			Board ADU Drive Serial Input Abnormality 1>	
77	50	09	Peripheral Serial Comm. Abnormality <adu drive<="" td=""><td></td></adu>	
			Board ADU Drive Serial Input Abnormality 2>	
7B	50	13	Peripheral Serial Comm. Abnormality <adu drive<="" td=""><td></td></adu>	
			Board ADU Drive Comm. Error Detect Abnormal-	
			ity>	
7D	51	01	Main Motor Rotating Abnormality	
7E	53	01	DC Power Cooling Fan Lock/1 Lock	
7F	53	02	Main Body Cooling Fan Lock	
80	53	03	DC Power Cooling Fan Lock/2 Lock	
81	53	04	IH Power Cooling Fan Lock	For Japan
C6	53	05	IH ADU Fan Lock	
82	54	01	IH Power IGBT Abnormality Detection	
83	54	02	IH Power Input Compression Abnormality Detec-	
	-		tion	
84	54	03	IH Power Control Abnormality Detection	
85	61	01	Scanner HP Search Abnormality	
86	63	01	Optical Cooling Fan Lock	
87	67	01	Filter Coefficient Abnormality	
89	67	03	Long SVV Abnormality	
8A	67	04	Scanner Time-out	
8C	67	06	SVV Off Abnormality	
8D	67	07	White/Black Collecting Abnormality	
8E	67	08	AOC/AGC Level Adj. Abnormality	

CSRC	SC c	ode	Section	Count Conditions
parameter (E0)	Upper	Lower		
8F	67	09	Resolution Correcting Data Abnormality	
90	67	10	Gamma Curve Creation Failure for Density Conver-	
			sion	
93	67	13	APC Initial Sampling Abnormality	
94	67	14	MPCAbnormality	
97	67	17	Book Copy Range Abnormality	
99	67	19	Cannot Complete Inclining Correction	
9A	67	20	Cannot Complete Mis-centering Correction	
9B	67	21	AGC Retry	
9C	67	22	PWM Gamma Curve Creation Failure	
9D	68	01	Unreached Initial Comm. Error	
9E	83	01	DDF Fan Lock	
A4	B0	01	FAX Board Abnormality 1	
A5	B0	02	FAX Board Abnormality 2	
A6	B0	03	FAX Board Abnormality 3	
AC	C1	01	Printer Control Initial Comm. Abnormality	
AD	C1	02	Printer Control Comm. Abnormality	
AE	C1	03	Operation Part Comm. Abnormality	
AF	C1	04	Printer Control (ISW is Unwritten)	
B1	C1	06	ISW Time-out Error	
B2	C1	07	ISW Data Error	
B3	C1	08	ISW Write Error	
B4	C1	09	FNS (ISW is Unwritten)	
B6	D0	01	HDD Initialization Abnormality	
B7	D0	02	JOB RAM Save Abnormality	
B8	D0	03	HDD Fixing Cl. Abnormality	
B9	D0	04	HDD Access Failure	
BA	D1	01	Tandem Communication Error	
BB	D1	02	Tandem Image Communication Error	
?	D2	01	CPU Fan Lock	****
?	D2	02	HDD Fan Lock	****
?	D2	03	Initial Communication Error With Image Control	****
			Board	
BC	E0	01	Message Cue Abnormality	
BD	E0	02	Illegal Parameter of Message or Method	
BE	E0	03	Illegal Task	
BF	E0	04	Illegal Event	
CO	EO	05	Memory Access Abnormality	
C1	EO	06	Header Access Abnormality	
C2	EO	07	DIMM Initialization Abnormality	

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

G. Jam, paper jam history and jam counter history

Jams that occurred are displayed by the jam codes, in the order of occurrence and by the areas in which they occurred.

NOTE

- The jam counter history cannot be used in CSRC.
- The maximum count is 999,999
- When the JAM code is displayed, "J-" is given at the head of the jam code and followed by the upper 2 digits and the lower 2 digits.

CSRC	JAM	code	Section	Count Conditions
parameter (J0)	Upper	Lower		
00	10	01	Bypass Paper Feed	
01	10	02		
02	11	01	Tray 1 Feed	
03	11	02		
04	11	03		
05	11	04		
06	11	05		
07	12	01	Tray 2 Feed	
08	12	02		
09	12	03		
0A	12	04		
0B	12	05		
0C	13	01	Tray 3 Feed	
0D	13	02		
0E	13	03		
OF	13	04		
10	13	05		
11	14	01	Tray 4 Feed	
12	14	02		
13	14	03		
14	14	04		
15	14	05		
16	15	01	LU Feed	
17	15	02		
18	15	03		
19	15	04		
1A	17	01	Paper Feed Conveyance (In Common for Each)	
1B	17	02	Paper Feed Conveyance (Tray 1)	
1C	17	03	Paper Feed Conveyance (Tray 3/4)	
1D	17	04	Paper Feed Conveyance (Tray 2)	
1E	17	05	Paper Feed Conveyance (Tray 3)	
1F	17	06	Paper Feed Conveyance (Tray 4)	
20	17	07		

CSRC	JAM	code	Section	Count Conditions
parameter (J0)	Upper	Lower		
21	17	08	LU	
22	17	09	Paper Feed Conveyance	
23	17	10		
25	17	12		
26	19	01	Vertical Conveyance Door	
27	19	02	LU	
28	21	01	Drum	
29	21	02		
2A	31	01	2nd Paper Feed Conveyance	
2B	31	02		
2C	32	01	Fixing Unit/Exit Conveyance (Straight Paper Exit)	
2D	32	02	Fixing Unit/Exit Conveyance (Reverse Paper Exit) (ADU)	
2E	32	03	Fixing Unit/Exit Conveyance (Reverse Paper Exit)	
2F	32	04		
30	32	05	Fixing Unit/Exit Conveyance	
31	32	06		
32	32	07		
33	32	08		
34	32	09		
35	32	10		
?	32	11		
37	51	01	Front Door	
38	61	01	DF	
39	61	02		
ЗA	62	01		
3B	62	02		
3C	62	03		
3D	62	04		
ЗE	62	05		
ЗF	62	06		
40	62	07		
41	62	08		
42	62	09		
43	62	10		
44	63	01		
45	63	02		
46	63	03		
47	63	04		
48	63	05		

10. SERVICE MODE

CSRC	JAM (code	Section	Count Conditions
parameter (J0)	Upper	Lower		
49	65	01	DF (standstill JAM)	
4A	65	02		
4B	65	04		
4C	65	08		
4D	65	10		
4E	65	20		
4F	71	01	FS	
52	72	16		
53	72	17		
54	72	18		
55	72	19		
56	72	20		
57	72	21		
58	72	22		
59	72	23		
5A	72	24		
5B	72	25		
5C	72	26		
5E	72	28		
5F	72	29		
60	72	30		
61	72	32		
62	72	33		
63	72	34		
64	72	35		
65	72	38		
66	72	39		
67	72	40		
68	72	41		
69	72	42		
6A	72	43		
6B	72	44		
6C	72	45		
6D	72	46		
6E	72	47		
6F	72	48		
70	72	49		
71	72	50		
72	72	51		
73	72	60		
74	72	61		

CSRC	JAM	code	Section	Count Conditions
parameter (J0)	Upper	Lower		
75	72	62	FS	
76	72	63		
77	72	64		
78	72	81		
79	72	82		
7A	72	83		
7B	72	90		
7C	73	01		
7E	73	02		
7F	73	05		
80	73	07		
81	73	08		
82	73	09		
83	73	10		
84	73	11		
85	73	12		
86	73	13		
87	73	14		
88	73	15		
89	73	17		
8A	92	01	ADU Entrance Conveyance	
8B	92	02		
8C	92	03		
8D	93	01	ADU Reverse Conveyance	
8E	93	02		
8F	93	03	ADU Exit Conveyance	
90	94	01		
91	94	02		
92	94	03		
H. Warning counter

The number of occurrences are displayed for each warning that occurs while in the use of this machine.

CSRC	Warning	Count conditions
parameter (E4)		
00	Engine: Sub scan beam correction error	The number of 1-counts when the sub scan
01 Engine: Mis-centering adjustment is too		beam correction error occurs.
01	Engine: Mis-centering adjustment is too	The number of occurrences of the mis-center-
	late.	ing adjustment error.
02	Engine: ADF skew adjustment is too late.	The number of occurrences of the ADF skew
		adjustment.
03	Engine: Compressed memory overflow (*)	The number of occurrences of insufficient
		memory while in the scanner compression/
		printer compression.
04	Engine: Page memory overflow (scan) (*)	The number of occurrences of insufficient
		memory for print data reception.
05	Engine: Page memory overflow (print) (*)	The number of occurrences of insufficient
		expanded page memory.
06	Engine: FNS alarm (tray/sheet cutting)	The number of occurrences of the paper exit
		tray alarm
07	Engine: FNS alarm (staple)	The number of occurrences of the staple alarm
08	Engine: The number of occurrences of	The number of occurrences of the original RF.
	ADF RF	
09	Engine: The number of occurrences of	The number of occurrences of the original size
	the ADF special error 1	error detection
0A	Engine: The number of occurrences of	The number of occurrences of the next original
	the ADF special error 2	information error
0B	Engine: The number of occurrences of	The number of occurrences of the prohibited
	the ADF special error 3	mixing of original size error
0C	Engine: The number of occurrences of	The number of occurrences of the ready time-
	the ADF special error 4	out error
0D	Engine: The number of occurrences of	The number of occurrences of insufficient HDD
	memory overflows	read memory while in the occurrence of mem-
		ory overflow (*)
OE	Engine: The number of occurrence of the	The number of occurrence of the fusing alarm
	fusing alarm	
OF	Engine: The number of AGC retries	The number of occurrences of the AGC retry
10	Engine: The number of occurrences of	The number of occurrences of the ADF skew
	the ADF skew adjustment data abnor-	adjustment data abnormality
	mality	

I. Reuse count

The cumulative use time of the part and the number of occurrences of a job that uses the part are displayed.

CSRC	Items	Count conditions and unit
parameter (F5)		
00	Power condition 1: Power ON time	Cumulative time during which the system control
		board and the image processing board were turned
		on (the main power switch (SW1) was turned on).
		(Unit: minute)
01	Power condition 2: Power ON time	Cumulative time during which the main relay (RL1)
		was turned on. (Unit: minute)
02	Power condition 3: Power ON time	Cumulative time during which the power source
		control signal (REM3) was turned on. (Unit: minute)
03	Power condition 4: Power ON time	Cumulative time during which the power source
		control signal (REM4) was turned on. (Unit: minute)
04	Low power mode time	Cumulative time during which the low power mode
		was turned on. (Unit: minute)
05	WUP time	Accumulation of time required for warm-up (Unit:
		minute) (The print ready time is omitted.)
06	Front door open time	Cumulative time during which the front door was
		open. (Unit: minute)
07	Single sided straight paper exit print	Cumulative time from the start of the print to the end
	operating time	of the print. (Unit: minute) (Down time due to a jam is
08	Single sided reverse/exit print oper-	omitted.)
	ating time	
09	Double sided print operating time	
0A	ADF operating time	Accumulation of the operating time of ADF (Unit:
		minute)
0B	Early morning correction operation	Cumulative number of the image stabilization control
	count	(fusing temperature: 50°C or less) operations
0C	APS sensor ON time	Accumulation of time during which the APS sensor
		was turned on. (Unit: second)
0D	The number of jobs in which the	The number of jobs in which the paper exit was
	main tray is used.	made into the main tray.
0E	The number of jobs in which the	The number of jobs in which the paper exit was
	sub tray is used.	made into the sub tray.
OF	The number of jobs in which the	The number of jobs in which the stitch-and-fold
	stitch-and-fold mode is employed.	mode was used.
10	The number of jobs in which the	The number of jobs in which the folding mode was
	folding mode is employed.	used.
11	The number of the scanner scans	The number of scans made in the original glass.
12	The number of executions of the	The number of executions of the charging corona
	charging corona cleaning	cleaning
13	Scanner count	The number of scans in the platen mode
14	The number of occurrences of the	The number of system stops due to toner running
	stop due to toner running out.	out.

		İ.
CSRC	Items	Count conditions and unit
parameter (F5)		
15	The number of prints made by	The number of prints made by the bypass feed.
	selecting the bypass feed tray	
16	The number of prints made by	The number of prints made by the LCT paper feed.
	selecting the LCT paper feed tray	
17	The number of prints made in the	The number of prints made in the staple (1-staple,
	staple mode	2-staple) mode.
18	The number of times the stapling at	The number of prints made in the staple (1-staple at
	the upper left is made (1-staple)	rear) mode.
19	The number of small size punches	The number of punches made on paper smaller
	(sizes smaller than A4 and letter	than A4 or 8.5 x 11 size.
	size)	
1A	The number of sub tray paper exits	The number of sheets of paper exited into the sub
		tray.

J. Coverage data history count

With 5000 prints as one data, the coverage of up to 30 data and the total accumulation are displayed.

NOTE

The coverage displayed here is a conversion ratio (theoretical value) of colored area per unit area, and this is not a printing rate when the print is actually made.

Up to 30 latest coverage data are maintained with the older ones deleted in sequence.

CSRC	Print count	Coverage data (%)	CSRC	Print count	Coverage data (%)
parameter (VO)			parameter (VO)		
00	Total	(00.0 to 99.9%)			
01	150K to 145K		10	75K to 70K	(00.0 to 99.9%)
02	145K to 140K		11	70K to 65K	
03	140K to 135K		12	65K to 60K	
04	135K to 130K		13	60K to 55K	
05	130K to 125K		14	55K to 50K	
06	125K to 120K		15	50K to 45K	
07	120K to 115K		16	45K to 40K	
08	115K to 110K		17	40K to 35K	
09	110K to 105K		18	35K to 30K	
0A	105K to 100K		19	30K to 25K	
0B	100K to 95K		1A	25K to 20K	
0C	95K to 90K		1B	20K to 15K	
0D	90K to 85K		1C	15K to 10K	
0E	85K to 80K		1D	10K to 5K	
OF	80K to 75K		1E	5K to 0	

K. High coverage data count

Upper 15 high coverage data jobs are displayed.

NOTE

Jobs with prints less than 5 are omitted.

CSRC	Coverage data (%)	No. of print	Paper size	Print mode	Date
parameter (V1)					
00	1st place (00.0 to 99.9%)	000000	Refer to the	Copy/printer/	
01	2nd place (00.0 to 99.9%)	to	table be low	scanner/FAX	
02	3rd place (00.0 to 99.9%)	65000 sheets			
03	4th place (00.0 to 99.9%)				
04	5th place (00.0 to 99.9%)				
05	6th place (00.0 to 99.9%)				
06	7th place (00.0 to 99.9%)				
07	8th place (00.0 to 99.9%)				
08	9th place (00.0 to 99.9%)				
09	10th place (00.0 to 99.9%)				
0A	11th place (00.0 to 99.9%)				
0B	12th place (00.0 to 99.9%)				
0C	13th place (00.0 to 99.9%)	1			
0D	14th place (00.0 to 99.9%)	1			
OE	15th place (00.0 to 99.9%)	1			

KRDS		Remarks		
parameter				
(B1,B6,B7,B8)	Japan	Metric Area	Inch Area	
01	A3	A3	11 x 17	
02	B4	B4 (8K)	8.5 x 14	
03	A4	A4	8.5 x 11	
04	B5	B5 (16K)	5.5 x 8.5	
05	A5	A5	-	
06	B6	F4	-	
07	8.5 x 14	-	-	
08	8.5 x 11	-	A4	
09	Special	Special	Special	

10.6.2 Display and reset of the fixed parts counter

Display the counter of a part intended.

And when a part intended is replaced, reset the counter of the replaced part to manage the service history.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Counter] key.
2.	"Counter/Data screen"
	Press the [Present Parts Life] key.
З.	"Parts Counter (Fixed) screen"
	Press the $[\uparrow]$ or $[\uparrow]$ key to show a part of which the counter is checked or reset.
4.	Check the count value of a part intended.
	When resetting, press the key of a part to be reset and then press the clear button.
5.	Press the [OK] key.
	Counter/Data screen appears

B. Fixed parts count

NL-	0000		Dauta Ma	L See States and the	
INO.	CSRC	Parts name ("4)	Parts No.	Limit value	Count condition
	(71)				
001	(21)	Finite a Ole serie a Misle		00000000	
001	00	Fixing Cleaning web	57 AA-543	999999999	i count for each discharge of
			(For Japan)		for a double sided copy
			other than Japan)		tor a double sided copy.
002	01	Davalanar	57442060	-	Count is made according to the
002	01		577443000	-	conditions (given below) of
003	02	OPC Drum	56AA-220	-	DIPSW8-6
004	03		57AA2010	-	0:1 count for each paper exit in
005	04	Ioner Recycling Roller Unit	57AA-213	-	the single side mode, 2 counts
006	05	Charging Control Plate	56AA2503	_	in the double side mode.
007	06	Charging Cl. Unit /Upper	56AA-253		1:2 counts for each A3, 11 x 17,
800	07	Charging Cl. Unit /Lower	56AA-254		8K paper exit in the single side
009	08	Drum Separation Claw	56AA2070		mode, 4 counts for double side
010	09	Discharge Wire	56AA2609		mode.
011	0A	Transfer Cl. Unit	56AA-264		
012	0B	Fixing Roller/Upper	56AE5305 (750)	-	
			56AA5305 (600)		
013	0C	Fixing Roller/Lower	57AA-524	-	
			(For Japan)		
			57AE5306 (For		
			other than Japan)		
014	0D	Fusing claw /Upper	56AA5427		
015	0E	Fusing claw /Lower	56QA5320		
016	0F	Heat insulating sleeve /Upper	57AA5332		
			(For Japan)		
			45405339 (For		
			other than Japan)		
017	10	Upper roller bearing	57AA7503		
			(For Japan)		
			45407504 (For		
			other than Japan)		
018	11	Toner control board unit	56AA-910		
019	12	Transfer/separation corona	57AA-260		
		unit			
020	13	Separation cleaning assem-	56AA-267		
		bly			
021	14	Charging wire	56AA2509		
022	15	Upper roller abnormality	57AA8804		
		detection sensor	(For Japan)		
			57AE8804 (For		
			other than Japan)		
023	16	Ozone filter /M	57AA1059		

No.	CSRC	Parts name (*4)	Parts No.	Limit value	Count condition
	parameter				
	(Z1)				
024	17	Charging corona unit (PCL included)	56AA-250	999999999	Count is made according to the conditions (given below) of DIPSW8-6.
025	18	Developing unit	57AA-300		0:1 count for each paper exit in the single side mode, 2 counts in the double side mode.
026	19	TSL cover assembly	56AA-387		1:2 counts for each A3, 11 x 17, 8K paper exit in the single side mode, 4 counts for double side mode.
027	1A	Tray 1 feed rubber	25AA4001		1 count each time a sheet of
028	1B	Tray 1 conveyance rubber and reverse rubber	25SA4096		paper is exited that has been supplied from the tray 1.
029	1C	Tray 1 paper feed clutch	56AA8201	_	
030	1D	Tray 1 conveyance clutch	56AA8201		
031	1E	Tray 1 passage count	57AA-400		
032	1F	Tray 2 feed rubber	25AA4001		1 count each time a sheet of
033	20	Tray 2 conveyance rubber and reverse rubber	25SA4096		paper is exited that has been supplied from the tray 2.
034	21	Tray 2 paper feed clutch	56AA8201	_	
035	22	Tray 2 conveyance clutch	56AA8201	_	
036	23	Tray 2 passage count	57AA-400		
037	24	Tray 3 feed rubber	25AA4001		1 count each time a sheet of
038	25	Tray 3 conveyance rubber and reverse rubber	25SA4096		paper is exited that has been supplied from the tray 3.
039	26	Tray 3 paper feed clutch	56AA8201		
040	27	Tray 3 conveyance clutch	56AA8201		
041	28	Tray 3 passage count	57AA-400		
042	29	Tray 4 feed rubber	25AA4001		1 count each time a sheet of
043	2A	Tray 4 conveyance rubber and reverse rubber	25SA4096		paper is exited that has been supplied from the tray 4.
044	2B	Tray 4 paper feed clutch	56AA8201	7	
045	2C	Tray 4 conveyance clutch	56AA8201	7	
046	2D	Tray 4 passage count	57AA-400	7	
047	2E	Bypass feed roller	55FA4233	7	1 count each time a sheet of
048	2F	Bypass conveyance roller and reverse roller	54004056		paper is exited that has been supplied from the bypass tray.
049	30	Bypass tray passage count	57AA-460	7	

10. SERVICE MODE

No.	CSRC	Parts name (*4)	Parts No.	Limit value	Count condition
	parameter				
	(Z1)				
050	31	LCT feed roller	55VA-484	999999999	1 count each time a sheet of
051	32	LCT conveyance rubber and reverse rubber	55VA-483		supplied from the LU.
052	33	LCT paper feed clutch	56AA8201	_	
053	34	LCT conveyance clutch	56AA8201		
054	35	LCT passage count	13RJ/RE-050	-	
055	36	Loop roller	56AA4251		1 count each time a sheet of paper is exited that has been supplied from the trays 1 to 4 and the LU.
056	37	Vertical conveyance exit con- veyance roller	56AA4408		1 count each time a sheet of paper is exited that has been supplied from the trays 2 to 4.
057	38	Vertical conveyance convey- ance roller /M	56AA4408		1 count each time a sheet of paper is exited that has been supplied from the trays 3 to 4.
058	39	Vertical conveyance convey- ance roller /Lw	56AA4408		1 count each time a sheet of paper is exited that has been supplied from the tray 4.
059	ЗA	Vertical conveyance convey- ance clutch 1	56AA8203		1 count each time a sheet of paper is exited that has been supplied from the trays 3 to 4.
060	3B	Vertical conveyance convey- ance clutch 2	56AA8203		1 count each time a sheet of paper is exited that has been supplied from the trays 3 to 4.
061	3C	Web solenoid	55VA8251		For each operation
062	3D	Registration clutch	56AA8201		1 count for each discharge of single sided copy and 2 counts for a double sided copy.
063	3E	ADU pre-registration clutch	57AA8203		1 count for each discharge of a double sided copy (No count is made for a single sided copy).
064	3F	Registration passage count			1 count for each discharge of single sided copy and 2 counts for a double sided copy.
065	40	Reverse/exit passage count			For each paper exit, 2 counts for a single sided paper exit. However, 0 count is made for a single sided straight paper exit and 1 count for a double sided paper exit.
066	41	ADU passage count			1 count for each discharge of a double sided copy (No count is made for a single sided copy).

No.	CSRC	Parts name (*4)	Parts No.	Limit value	Count condition
	parameter				
	(Z1)				
067	42	FNS up/down motor	129U8004	999999999	1 count each time a sheet of paper is exited into the FS main tray, and also makes 1 count each time a copy is exited in the staple mode.
068	43	FNS stapler /Ft	13QE4241		1 count each time a copy of
069	44	FNS stapler /Rr	13QE4241		paper is exited in each mode of the 1-staple, 2-staple and the stitch-and-fold.
070	45	FNS shift motor	12QR-357		1 count each time an even num- ber of copies is exited in the sort mode.
071	46	FNS paper exit opening open/close motor	12QR-361		1 count at the start of a large size job (A4 SEF/8.5 x 11 SEF or larger) in the staple mode, and makes 1 count each time a copy is exited. And makes 1 count at the start of the folding, stitch-and-fold and the three- folding jobs.
072	47	FNS folding knife motor	120H8001	_	1 count each time a copy is exited in the folding, stitch-and- fold and the three-folding modes.
073	48	FNS bypass SD	12QR-263		1 count each time a copy is exited in the staple mode (A4/ B5/8.5 x 11/16K size)
074	49	FNS DM gate SD	12QR-263		1 count each time a copy is exited in the three-folding mode.
075	4A	PI sheet paper feed clutch / Upper	13QN8201		1 count each time a sheet of paper is fed to the PI upper
076	4B	PI feed roller assembly /A	50BA-574	1	stand.
077	4C	PI feed roller assembly /B	50BA-575	1	
078	4D	PI reverse rubber assembly	13QN-443	1	
079	4E	PI torque limiter	13QN4073	1	
080	4F	PI sheet paper feed clutch / Lower	13QN8201		1 count each time a sheet of paper is fed to the PI lower
081	50	PI feed roller assembly /A	50BA-574	1	stand.
082	51	PI feed roller assembly /B	50BA-575	1	
083	52	PI reverse rubber assembly	13QN-443	1	
084	53	PI torque limiter	13QN4073	1	
085	54	Trimmer knife	13LH1026	1	

10. SERVICE MODE

No.	CSRC	Parts name (*4)	Parts No.	Limit value	Count condition
	parameter				
	(Z1)				
086	55	Punch holes on main body (2	13NK5001	999999999	The number of sheets exited in
		holes)			the punch mode.
087	56	Punch holes on main body (3	13NL5001		
		holes)			
088	57	Punch holes on main body (4	13NM5001	-	
		holes)			
089	58	ADF paper feed roller	13QA4127		Original passage count in all
090	59	ADF separation roller	13QA4104	-	modes.
091	5A	ADF double feed prevention	13QA4045	-	
		rubber			
092	5B	ADF double feed prevention	13QA4001	-	
		roller			
093	5C	ADF paper exit solenoid	12QV8251	-	1 count each time an original is
					fed in the double sided feed
					mode and the mixed original
					mode.
094	5D	ADF paper feed clutch	56AA8201		Single sided: 1 count for 1 job in
					all single sided modes.
					Double sided: 3 counts x origi-
					nal passage count in all double
					sided modes.
095	5E	ADF reverse solenoid	12QV8251		1 count each time an original is
					fed in the double sided feed
					mode and the mixed original
		105 VI VI VI	05040005	_	mode.
096	5F	ADF separation roller solenoid	25SA8265		2 counts each time an original is
					red in the double sided mode
007	60		57449901	_	Lipit time
097	00		57AA6501	-	
098	61	Power switch	65GA86U3		I count each time the power
000	60	De ex quiteb	404 49501		1 count coch time the front door
099	02	Door Switch	40448501		is opened
100	62	Drum senaration claw colo	26NIA9251	-	1 count each time a single sided
100	03	noid	ZUINAOZƏT		sheet of paper is evited with 2
		nora			counts for a double sided sheet
					of paper.
101	64	Main power switch	55GA8601	4	1 count each time the image
		· · [•601			control is turned on (the number
					of start-ups made by the CPU
					start-up conditions other than
					the power switch/CSRC/SHUT
					OFF/WT).
102	65	PI registration	13QN8201	1	1 count for each PI paper exit.

No.	CSRC	Parts name (*4)	Parts No.	Limit value	Count condition
	parameter				
	(Z1)				
103	66	Punch motor x	54008003	99999999	The number of sheets of paper
104	67	Ozone filter /S	56QA1057	-	exited when the punch mode is
105	68	Toner filter	57AA-715	-	selected.
106	69	Horizontal conveyance roller /	56QA5705	-	1 count each time a sheet of
		Rt			paper is exited that has been
107	6A	Horizontal conveyance roller / Lt	56QA5706	-	supplied from the tray 1.
108	6B	Horizontal conveyance clutch /Rt	57AA8203		
109	6C	Horizontal conveyance clutch /Lt	57AA8203	-	
110	6D	Fusing decurler roller	56AA5307	-	
111	6E	Fusing decurler bearing	07AA7509		
112	6F	Fusing input gear	57AA7703	-	
			(For Japan)		
			56QA7721 (For		
			other than Japan)		
113	70	Fusing drive gear	57AA7706	-	
			(For Japan)		
			56QA7721 (For		
			other than Japan)		
114	71	Tray 1 handling release clutch	57AA8203	-	1 count each time a sheet of
					paper is exited that has been
					supplied from the tray 1.
115	72	Tray 2 handling release clutch	57AA8203	-	1 count each time a sheet of
					paper is exited that has been
					supplied from the tray 2.
116	73	Tray 3 handling release clutch	57AA8203	-	1 count each time a sheet of
					paper is exited that has been
					supplied from the tray 3.
117	74	Tray 4 handling release clutch	57AA8203	-	1 count each time a sheet of
					paper is exited that has been
					supplied from the tray 4.
118	75	Drum drive one-way clutch	57AA7782	-	1 count each time a single sided
119	76	Bypass drive one-way clutch	57AA7712	1	sheet of paper is exited with 2
					counts for a double sided sheet of paper.

10.6.3 Registration, display and reset of the optional parts counter

This is used when you want to control the service history of each part not registered as a special part.

Confirm and reset part name, part number, limit value setting and print count.

Up to 35 data from No.01 to No.35 can be set.

However, when optional parts are counted, 1 count is made for all types of sheets regardless of the paper sizes.

A. Procedure for registration

1.	"Service Mode screen"								
	Press the [Counter] key.								
2.	"Counter/Data screen"								
	Press the [Optio	nal Parts Life] key.							
З.	"Each Parts Cou	unter screen"							
	Press the key th	at registers the part.							
4.	Press the [Regis	ster] key.							
5.	"Count of Each	Parts Registration screen"							
	Select any item you want to set or change from among the [Part Name], [P/N] and [Limit value] keys, and								
	make entry thro	ugh the alphanumeric keys.							
•	[Part Name]	:Through the keyboard displayed, enter a part name (20 digits) and press the [OK] key.							
•	[P/N]	:Through the keyboard displayed, enter a part number (9 digits) and press the [OK] key.							
•	[Limit Value] :Press the sheet-number button to enter a limit value.								
6.	Press the [OK] key.								
	Each Parts Counter screen appears.								
7.	Press the [OK] k	ey.							
	Counter/Data so	creen appears.							

B. Procedure for display and reset

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Counter] key.
2.	"Counter/Data screen"
	Press the [Optional Parts Life] key.
З.	"Each Parts Counter screen"
	Press the arrow key $[\uparrow]$ or $[\downarrow]$, and check the counter or display a part you want to reset.
4.	Check the count value of an intended part.
	When resetting the counter, press the key of a part you want to reset and press the clear button.
5.	Press the [OK] key.
	Counter/Data screen appears.

NOTE

• When the count is in excess of the limit value, the mark "*" appears on the right side of the limit value.

C. Copy count of each part

No.	Part name	P/N	Counter value	Limit value	Count conditions
	CSRC	CSRC	CSRC	CSRC	
	parameter (Z4)	parameter (Z3)	parameter (G0)	parameter (H0)	
001	00	00	00	00	At the time of completion of the
002	01	01	01	01	print operation in each mode of the
003	02	02	02	02	Copy/Printer/Fax/Box, all counters
004	03	03	03	03	count up in block.
005	04	04	04	04	1 step is made for a single sided
006	05	05	05	05	conv and 2 steps for a double sided
007	06	06	06	06	conv. A large size count (2 for single
008	07	07	07	07	sided and 4 for double sided) is not
009	08	08	08	08	sided and 4 for double sided) is not
010	09	09	09	09	made.
011	0A	0A	0A	0A	I he count is made even while in the
012	0B	0B	0B	0B	print of a blank sheet.
013	0C	0C	0C	0C	
014	0D	0D	0D	0D	
015	0E	OE	0E	0E	
016	OF	OF	OF	OF	
017	10	10	10	10	
018	11	11	11	11	
019	12	12	12	12	
020	13	13	13	13	
021	14	14	14	14	
022	15	15	15	15	
023	16	16	16	16	
024	17	17	17	17	
025	18	18	18	18	
026	19	19	19	19	
027	1A	1A	1A	1A	
028	1B	1B	1B	1B	
029	1C	1C	1C	1C	
030	1D	1D	1D	1D	

10.6.4 Setting, display and resetting of the PM cycle

Configure settings of the PM cycle, developer cycle and drum cycle.

NOTE

• The PM cycle, developer cycle and drum cycle are already inputted in the initial settings. Usually, do not change these settings.

A. Cycle setting procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Counter] key.
2.	"Counter/Data screen"
	Press the [PM] key.
З.	"PM Counter screen"
	Enter a PM cycle value (1 to 9999999) with the sheet number setting button and press the [Set] key.
4.	Enter a PM cycle value (1 to 9999999) with the sheet number setting button and press the [Set] key. Press the [OK] key.
4.	Enter a PM cycle value (1 to 9999999) with the sheet number setting button and press the [Set] key. Press the [OK] key. Counter/Data screen appears.

B. Display and resetting procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen" Press the [Counter] key.
2.	"Counter/Data screen" Press the [PM] key.
З.	"PM Counter screen" Check the PM counter. When resetting it, press the clear button.
4.	Press the [OK] key. Counter/Data screen appears.

10.7 Machine condition/check

10.7.1 Sensor check

As a self-diagnostic function, this machine is provided with an input check function. With this function, each signal can be checked.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [State Confirmation] key.
2.	"State Confirmation screen"
	Press the [Sensor Check] key.
З.	"Sensor Check screen"
	Enter the check code and the multi code with the sheet number setting button.
	The condition (H/L) of the sensor appears.
4.	When conducting other sensor checks, repeat Step 3.
5.	Press the [OK] key.
	State Confirmation screen appears.

B. List of sensors

tion		de	-		Display and	signal source
sifica	Code	Iti co	ymbo	Name	Н	L
Clas	0	Mu	S			
	1	0	PZS	Toner level sensor	Toner	No toner
	2	0	VR301	DDF size VR signal	0 to 255 ^{*2}	
	3	1	TH1	Differential temperature signal at the center of the		
				fusing upper roller		
		2	TH5	Compensation temperature signal at the center		
				of the fusing upper roller		
		3	TH3	Differential temperature signal at the edge of the		
				fusing upper roller		
		4	TH2	Compensation temperature signal at the edge of		
al ^{*1}				the fusing upper roller		
sigr		5	TH4	Fusing lower roller temperature signal		
alog	4	1	TH1	Temperature (°C) at the center of the fusing		
Ane				upper roller		
		2	TH2	Temperature (°C) at the edge of the fusing upper		
				r oller.		
		3	TH4	Fusing lower roller temperature (°C)		
	5	0	HUM	Humidity sensor		
	6	0	TCSB	Maximum density sensor monitor signal		
	7	0	TCSB	Maximum density sensor signal		
	8	0	TCSB	Gamma sensor signal		
	9	0	TCSB	Machine inside temperature signal		
	10	0	-		_	

tion		de	10	Display and	signal source											
sifica	oode	ti co	mbc	Name	Н	L										
Class	0	Mul	Ś													
Ŭ	11	1	PS3	Paper empty sensor /1 (tray 1)	Paper	No paper										
		2	PS9	Paper empty sensor /2 (tray 2)												
		3	PS15	Paper empty sensor /3 (tray 3)												
		4	PS21	Paper empty sensor /4 (tray 4)												
		5	PS33	Paper empty sensor /bypass												
		6	PS108	Paper empty sensor (LU)												
	12	1	PS4	Paper remaining sensor /1 (tray 1)	ON	OFF										
		2	PS10	Paper remaining sensor /2 (tray 2)												
		3	PS16	Paper remaining sensor /3 (tray 3)												
		4	PS22	Paper remaining sensor /4 (tray 4)												
		5	PS102	Paper remaining sensor /1(LU)												
		6	PS103	Paper remaining sensor /2(LU)												
Q		7	PS104	Paper remaining sensor /3(LU)												
/anc		8	PS105	Paper remaining sensor /4(LU)												
nvey	13	1		_	-	—										
d co		2		-	-	-										
feed		3		-	-	-										
aper		4		-	-	-										
đ		5	PS17	Paper size sensor /Fr1 (tray 3)	ON	OFF										
		6	PS18	Paper size sensor /Rr1 (tray 3)												
		7	PS23	Paper size sensor /Fr2 (tray 4)												
												8	PS24	Paper size sensor /Rr2 (tray 4)		
		9	PS31	Paper size sensor /Fr3 (bypass)												
		10	PS32	Paper size sensor /Rr3 (bypass)												
	14	1		-	-											
		2		-	-											
		3	VR3	Paper size VR/3 (tray 3)	0 to 255											
		4	VR4	Paper size VR/4 (tray 4)]											
		5	VR5	Paper size VR/BP (bypass)												
	15	1		-	-	-										
		2			-	-										

tion		de			Display and signal source	
ifica	ode	i co	mbc	Name	Н	L
lass	Ŏ	Mult	Syl			
0	15	3	_	Paper size (tray 3)	0: 11 x 17, 1: A	A3, 2: B4,
					3: 8.5 x 14, 4:	A4R,
		4	_	Paper size (tray 4)	5: 8.5 x 11R, 6	: B5R,
					7: 8.5 x 11, 8: 5.5 x 8.5R,	
		5	—	Paper size (bypass)	9: A4, 10: A5R	, 11: B5,
					12: A5, 13: B6	K,
					14: 5.5x8.5, 15	о: во,
					17: F4(8.125x1	3.25).
					18: F4(8x13),	
					19: F4(8.25x13	i),
					20: F4(8.5x13)	
	16	1	PS2	Upper limit sensor /1 (tray 1)	Upper limit	Not at upper
		2	PS8	Upper limit sensor /2 (tray 2)		limit
		3	PS14	Upper limit sensor /3 (tray 3)		
		4	PS20	Upper limit sensor /4 (tray 4)		
		5	PS34	Upper limit sensor /bypass		
		6	PS35	Lower limit sensor/bypass	Lower limit	Not at lower
Φ						limit
ano		7	PS109	Upper limit sensor (LU)	Upper limit	Not at upper
Ney						limit
cor		8	PS101	Lower limit sensor (LU)	Lower limit	Not at lower
feec				_	-	limit
per	17	1	-	Tray 1 set	Set	Not set
Ра		2	-	Tray 2 set		
		3	-	Tray 3 set		
		4	-	Tray 4 set		
		5	PS11	Horizontal conveyance set	ON	OFF
	20	0	—	Pre-registration detection	-	-
	20	1	—	Pre-registration (tray 1)	ON	OFF
		2	-	Pre-registration (tray 2)		
		3	-	Pre-registration (tray 3)		
		4	-	Pre-registration (tray 4)		
		5	PS107	Pre-registration (LU)		
	21	1	PS1	Paper feed sensor /1 (tray 1)]	
		2	PS7	Paper feed sensor /2 (tray 2)		
		3	PS13	Paper feed sensor /3 (tray 3)		
		4	PS19	Paper feed sensor /4 (tray 4)	1	
		5	PS6	Horizontal conveyance sensor /Rt	1	
		6	PS5	Horizontal conveyance sensor /Lt	1	
	22	1	PS106	LU exit sensor	1	
	23	1	PS43	Paper leading edge sensor	1	

tion		de	_		Display and	signal source
ifica	ode	i co	mbc	Name	Н	L
Class	0	Mult	Sy			
	23	2	PS36	Loop sensor	ON	OFF
		3	PS44	Registration sensor	_	
	24	1	PS30	Fusing exit sensor		
ġ		2	PS37	Paper exit sensor		
/anc		3	PS42	Reverse sensor		
UVe		4	PS46	Reverse/exit sensor		
00	25	1	PS29	Conveyance door sensor /Lw	Open	Close
feed		2	PS38	Door open/close sensor /1		
aper		3	PS39	Door open/close sensor /2		
P		4	MS1/2	Door SW		
		5	PS100	Upper door open/close sensor (LU)		
		6	PS110	Front door open/close sensor (LU)		
		0	PS40	Toner supply door sensor		
0	26	1	—	Fusing set detection signal	No detected	Detected
		2	-	Fusing destination signal 1	*3	•
lsing		3	-	Fusing destination signal 2		
Ē		4	-	IH set detection	No detected	Detected
		5	-	Fusing unit set detection	No detected	Detected
	30	1	PS61	Scanner home sensor	HP	Other than HP
		-		-	-	-
	31	1	PS63	APS sensor /1	OFF	ON
Ce		2	PS64	APS sensor /2		
dev		3	PS65	APS sensor /3		
ical		4		-	-	-
Opt		5		-	-	-
		6		-	-	-
		7		-	-	-
		8	PS51	Platen OPEN detection	Close	Open
	50	0	—	LU identification signal	LU	No LU
ction	51	0	SW10	Tray up/down switch (LU)	ON	OFF
fun	50	0		Key counter connection sized	Detected	No dotacted
cific	52	U	ONTZ	Ney counter connection signal	Delected	IND GELECIED
Spe	54	-	DSEO	Transfer/constration cleaning home access		- Other then LID
	54		P852			Other than HP
		2	PS53	Iranster/separation cleaning limit sensor		

10. SERVICE MODE

tion		de	_		Display and	signal source
ifica	ode	i co	mbc	Name	Н	L
lass	0	Mult	Syl			
0	60	1	PS309	Original size sensor /Rt	Paper	No paper
		2	PS310	Original size sensor /Lt		
		3	PS304	Original registration sensor /1		
		4	PS305	Original registration sensor /2		
		5	PS306	Original conveyance sensor		
		6	PS303	Original exit sensor		
		7	PS301	Original empty sensor		
Ð		8	PS302	Original set sensor		
		9	MS301	Cover open/close switch	Open	Close
		10	PS311	RADF open/close sensor	Open	Close
		11	PS307	Original skew sensor	Paper	No paper
		12	_	Original skew detection sensor /rear		
		13	PS312	Original registration sensor /3		
		14	PS308	Conveyance roller pressure/release home sensor	HP	Other than HP
	76	0	PS1	Sub tray paper exit sensor	Paper	No paper
		1	PS2	Main tray upper limit sensor	Upper limit	Not at upper
						limit
		2	PS3	Tray lower limit sensor	Lower limit	Not at lower
						limit
		3	PS4	FNS entrance sensor	No paper	Paper
		4	PS5	Stacker entrance sensor	Paper	No paper
		5	PS6	Main tray paper exit sensor	Paper	No paper
		6	PS7	Stapler paper exit upper limit sensor	Other than	Stand-by
					the stand-by	position
		7	DOO		position	0
		/	PS8	Alignment plate nome sensor /Up	HP	Other than HP
Z		8	PS9	Paper exit belt home sensor	HP	Other than HP
ш		9	PS13	Stapler rotation home sensor	HP	Other than HP
		10	PS30	Registration shutter home sensor	HP	Other than HP
		11	PS12	Paper exit opening home sensor	Other than	Closed posi-
					the closed	tion
		10	D014		position	Oth su th su LID
		12	P014		HP David av	Other than HP
		13	PS15	Counter reset sensor	Paper	No paper
		14	PS16	Gate home sensor	Other than HP	HP
		15	PS20	Stacker empty sensor	Paper	No paper
		16		H_LS no staple sensor	No staple	Staple
		17		R_DHP rear driver HP sensor	Other than HP	HP
		18		R_CS cartridge presence sensor	No cartridge	Cartridge
					(not used)	(not used)

10. SERVICE MODE

tion		de	-		Display and s	signal source
Jassifica	Code	Multi co	Symbo	Name	Н	L
0	76	19		R_LST clincher start signal	Other than	Start
					start	
		20		Z stacker fan 2 lock signal	Other than	Control
					control speed	speed
		21		R_CHP rear side clincher HP sensor	Other than HP	HP
		22	PS19	Sub tray full sensor	Full	Other than full
		23		24V (front door) detection	Door opened	Door closed
		24		F_LS no staple sensor	No staple	Staple
		25		F_DHP rear driver HP sensor	Other than HP	HP
		26		F_CS cartridge presence sensor	No cartridge	Cartridge
					(not used)	(not used)
		27		F_LST clincher start signal	Other than	Start
					start	
		28		Z stacker fan 1 lock signal	Other than	Control
		00			control speed	speed
		29		F_CHP front side clincher HP sensor	Other than HP	HP
		30		Paper exit M lock detection	Other than	Control
		01		ENP connection dataction bit	Connection	Speed
		51		FINS connection detection bit	CONNECTION	tion
z		32	PS22	Folding knife home sensor	HP	Other than HP
ш		33	PS23	Stitch-and-fold stopper home sensor	HP	Other than HP
		34	PS24	Alignment plate home sensor /Lw	Other than HP	HP
		35	PS25	Folding paper exit sensor	Paper	No paper
		36	PS26	Folding passage sensor	Paper	No paper
		37	PS29	Folding full sensor	Other than full	Full
		38	PS1	Passage sensor	No paper	Paper
		39		Folding conveyance M lock detection	Other than	Control
					control speed	speed
		40	PS9	Exit sensor	No paper	Paper
		41	PESB	Paper edge sensor board (2) (ZU)	No paper	Paper
		42	PESB	Paper edge sensor board (3) (ZU)	No paper	Paper
		43	PESB	Paper edge sensor board (4) (ZU)	No paper	Paper
		44		PI conveyance M lock detection	Other than	Control
					control speed	speed
		45		DIPSW0	Other than	Unit operation
					unit operation	
		46	PS5	Punch shift home sensor (ZU)	HP	Other than HP
		47	PS6	Punch home sensor (ZU)	Other than HP	HP
		48	PS8	Punch scraps full sensor (ZU)	Other than full	Full
		49	PS7	Punch scraps box set sensor (ZU)	Detected	No detected

tion		de	_		Display and s	signal source
sifica	tode	ti co	mbc	Name	Н	L
lass	0	Mult	Sy			
0	76	50	PS10	Conveyance encoder sensor	Other than	Lock
	70				lock	
		51	MS2	Punch switching switch	3 (/4) holes	2 holes
		52		Sheet conveyance detection (upper stage)	Paper	No paper
		53		Sheet conveyance detection (lower stage)		
		54	PS4	No.2 stopper home sensor (ZU)	Other than HP	HP
		55	PS3	No.1 stopper home sensor (ZU)	Other than HP	HP
		56	MS1	Door switch (ZU)	Open	Close
		57		ZU fan motor lock detection	Detection	Other than detection
		58		_	—	_
		59		Folding connection detection	No connection	Connection
		60		-	—	_
		61		Gate HP detection	HP (in the sub	Other than HP
					tray direction)	
		62	PESB	Paper edge sensor board (5) (ZU)	No paper	Paper
		63	PS201	PI paper passage sensor /Up	No paper	Paper
		64	PS202	PI paper empty sensor /Up	No paper	Paper
		65	PS203	PI paper set sensor /Up	No paper	Paper
FN		66	PS205	PI tray lower limit sensor /Up (upper stage)	Lower limit	Not at lower limit
		67	PS204	PI tray upper limit sensor /Up (upper stage)	Upper limit	Not at upper limit
		68		PI sheet feeder manual start/clear S	SW off	SW on
		69		PI sheet feeder manual punch button SW	SW off	SW on
		70		PI sheet feeder manual function selection button	SW off	SW on
				SW		
		71		PI cover sheet open/close detection	Open	Close
		72	PS207	PI paper empty sensor /Lw	No paper	Paper
		73	PS208	PI paper set sensor /Lw	No paper	Paper
		74	PS209	Pl tray upper limit sensor /Lw (lower stage tray)	Upper limit	Not at upper limit
		75	PS210	PI tray lower limit sensor /Lw (lower stage tray)	Lower limit	Not at lower limit
		76		PI sheet size detection /small	No paper	Paper
		77		PI sheet size detection /middle	No paper	Paper
		78	PS212	PI L size sensor /Lw	No paper	Paper
		79	1	MPI presence	No connection	Connection
		80	1	—	-	-
		81	1	—	-	-
		82	PS11	Stapler movement home sensor	HP	Other than HP

tion		de	-		Display and s	signal source
sifica	Code	ti co	/mbc	Name	Н	L
Class	0	Mul	Ś			
	76	83	PS301	Punch home sensor	Other than HP	HP
		84		_	-	-
		85		_	-	-
		86	PS302	PK scraps box full sensor	Other than full	Full
		87	PS304	PK scraps box set sensor	Set	Other than set
		88	PS305	PK swing edge face detection 1	No paper	Paper
z		89	PS305	PK swing edge face detection 2		
Ē		90	PS305	PK swing edge face detection 3		
		91	PS305	PK swing edge face detection 4		
		92	PS305	PK swing edge face detection 5		
		93		PK swing punch movement home position	HP	Other than HP
		94		PK swing connection detected	No connection	Connection
		95		Reserved		
		96		-	—	-
	80	1	PS45	ADU reverse sensor	ON	OFF
		2	PS48	ADU conveyance sensor	ON	OFF
ADU		3	PS49	ADU deceleration sensor	ON	OFF
		4	PS50	ADU pre-registration sensor	ON	OFF
		5	PS47	ADU handle release sensor	ON	OFF

*1 Analog signal display represents an AD sensor input signal.

*2 Resolution 1024 is also displayed as resolution 256.

*3 Destination information is as shown below:

26-1	26-2	Destination
1	1	Domestic
0	1	North America
1	0	Europe

10.7.2 Load check

As a self-diagnostic function, this machine is provided with an output check function to check the load operation.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [State Confirmation] key.
2.	"State Confirmation screen"
	Press the [Load Check] key.
З.	"State Confirmation screen"
	Enter the check code and the multi code with the sheet number setting button.
4.	Press Start button.
	The load specified operates.
5.	Press Stop button.
	The operation of the load is completed.
6.	When conducting the output check of other loads or signals, repeat Steps 3 to 5.
7.	Press the [OK] key.
	State Confirmation screen appears.

B. List of loads

Classification	Code	Multi code	Symbol	Name	Remarks
		0	L1	Exposure lamp	
	1	0	M13	Toner bottle motor	"cont" is on even when the door is open. However, no SC check is made.
	2	0	ΗV	Charging	No output made when DipSW30-bit0 is turned off (normal mode).
	3	0	HV	Transfer	No output made when DipSW30-bit0 is turned off (normal mode).
oltage	4	0	HV	Separation	No output made when DipSW30-bit0 is turned off (normal mode).
h vo	5	0	TCSB	DmaxLED	
Ξ.	6	0	TCSB	Gamma LED	
	7	0	TCSB	JAM detection LED	
	8	0	HV	Guide plate	No output made when DipSW30-bit0 is turned off (normal mode).
	9	0	HV	Bias	No output made when DipSW30-bit0 is turned off (normal mode).
	10	0	HV	TGR	No output made when DipSW30-bit0 is turned off (normal mode).

Classification	Code	Multi code	Symbol	Name	Remarks
SDS 0	15	1	-	CSRC counter clear. See CSRC counter list.	Effective when DIPSW3-bit6 is turned on, and automatically set to OFF after execu- tion.
云		2	—	CSRC JOB memory	JOB lock data included.
		98		CSRC setting initialization	
	20	0	SD100	LU pick-up solenoid	
	21	1	CL3	Paper feed clutch /1	
		2	CL5	Paper feed clutch /3	
		3	CL7	Paper feed clutch /5	
		4	CL9	Paper feed clutch /7	
		5	CL101	LU feed clutch	
		6	CL11	Vertical conveyance clutch /1	
		7	CL12	Vertical conveyance clutch /2	
		8	CL15	Horizontal conveyance clutch /Lt	
		9	CL16	Horizontal conveyance clutch /Rt	
	22	1	CL4	Pre-registration clutch /1	
		2	CL6	Pre-registration clutch /2	
		3	CL8	Pre-registration clutch /3	
		4	CL10	Pre-registration clutch /4	
		5	CL102	LU Pre-registration clutch	
77		6	CL21	Separation clutch /1	
feed		7	CL22	Separation clutch /2	
aper		8	CL17	Separation clutch /3	
å		9	CL18	Separation clutch /4	
	23	1	M16	Paper lift motor /1	
		2	M17	Paper lift motor /2	
		3	M18	Paper lift motor /3	
		4	M19	Paper lift motor /4	
		5	M100	LU paper lift motor (Up)	
		6	M100	LU paper lift motor (Down)	
		7	M20	Bypass tray lift motor (Up)	
		8	M20	Bypass tray lift motor (Down)	
	25	0	CL1	Registration clutch	
	26	1	M6	Loop motor normal rotation H(LS470)	
		2	M6	Loop motor normal rotation L(LS357)	
		3	M6	Loop motor normal rotation L(LS300)	
		4	M6	Loop motor normal rotation L(LS178.5)	
		5	M6	Loop motor reverse rotation (LS402.9)	

cation	de	code	lodi	Namo	Pomorko
lassifi	Õ	Multi e	Sym	Name	nemarks
0	27	1	M7	Paper exit motor (LS378.4)	600 is LS318.
		2	M7	Paper exit motor (LS300)	
-		3	M7	Paper exit motor (LS178.5)	
feec		4	M7	Paper exit motor (LS666.7)	
per	28	1	M1	Paper feed motor (LS470)	
Ра		2	M101	LU conveyance motor (LS470)	
	29	0	SD1	Separation claw solenoid	
	30	0	PS66	Mis-centering sensor LED	
	31	1	M11	Optical operation	Operation in life-size line speed.
		2	M11	—	—
	32		M15	Polygon motor(LS357)	
		1	M15	Polygon motor(LS300)	
~		2	-	—	
ptic	34	0	M11	Shading correction operation	
Ō	37	0	-	Write fixing shaft adjustment	No output made when DipSW30-bit0 is
					turned off (normal mode).
	38		LDB	LD alarm check	No output made when DipSW30-bit0 is
					turned off (normal mode).
		99	LDB	LD alarm adjustment data clear	
	40		M4	Main motor(LS357)	
		1	M4	Main motor(LS300)	
		2	M4	Main motor(LS178.5)	
	41		M2	Drum motor (LS357) and developing	The Developing motor also turns on at
				motor	the same time (Vs/Vp = 2.00)
		1	M2	Drum motor (LS300) and developing	The Developing motor also turns on at
				motor	the same time (Vs/Vp = 2.00)
		2	M2	Drum motor (LS1/8.5) and developing	The Developing motor also turns on at the same time $\Lambda(s\Lambda(n - 2, 00))$
~		2	MO	Drum motor/L \$257)	$\frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2} $
poo		1	M2	Drum motor(LS300)	
ain I		5	M2	Drum motor(LS000)	
≥		6	M3	Developing motor(2500rpm)	
		7	M3	Developing motor(1500rpm)	
	12	1	FMQ	Scapper cooling fan	
	72	2	FM2	Write cooling fan H rotation	Turns ON at all times. While in 47 opera-
		2	1 1012	White cooling fair riteration	tion, turns OFF for 30 sec, and after that.
					turns ON.
		3	FM12	Bypass tray suction fan	
		4	FM3	Transfer/separation suction fan	
		5	FM4	Developing suction fan	

Classification	Code	Multi code	Symbol	Name	Remarks
	42	6	FM1	Main fan H (turns off for 30 sec., and after that, turns ON.)	While in the fusing ON, turns ON and rotates at a high speed.
		7	FM1	Main fan L (turns OFF for 30 sec., and	While in the fusing on, turns ON and
				after that, turns ON.)	rotates at a low speed.
		8	FM5	Cleaner cooling fan H (turns OFF for	While in the fusing ON, turns ON and
				30 sec., and after that, turns ON.)	rotates at a high speed.
		9		—	
		10	FM6	Suction fan /Fr	
		11		Power supply cooling fan	
		12	FM10	ADU cooling fan	
		13	FM19	Exhaust fan /Rr	
		14	FM2	Write section cooling fan L rotation (turns OFF for 30 sec., and after that, turns ON)	Turns ON at all times.
		15	FM8	Paper exit fan	
		16	FM16	Power source cooling fan //1 H	
		17	FM16	Power source cooling fan //1 L	
		18	FM15	Power source cooling fan //2 H	
≥		19	FM15	Power source cooling fan //2 L	
bod		20	FM17	IH cooling fan H	Machines used in Japan only.
Aain		21	FM17	IH cooling fan L	Machines used in Japan only.
2		22	FM18	IH ADU FAN	Machines used in Japan only.
	43	1	CNT1	Total counter	
		2	CNT2	Key counter	
	44	0	_	Board unit check	
	45	1	L2	Fusing upper heater (turns ON for 5	Machines used in oversea countries only.
				sec.)	Temperature adjustment control when
		2	L3	Fusing upper sub heater (turns ON for	DipSW30-bit0 is turned OFF (normal
				5 sec.)	mode).
		3	L4	Fusing lower heater (turns ON for 5 sec.)	
		4	SD2	Fusing web SD	
		5	IHL	IH_Temperature adjustment	Machines used in Japan only. Electric power: 700W fixed. PWM = Stand-by status. Temperature adjusted at 200°C. Temperature control provided (control of CONT1 and CONT2). While in the ON time, the IH cooling fan should rotate at a high speed and the fusing cooling fan should also rotate.

Classification	Code	Multi code	Symbol	Name	Remarks
	45	6	IHL	IH_Center coil	Machines used in Japan only. Electric power: 700W fixed. PWM = Stand-by status. Turns on for 2 sec. Turned off forcibly at 200°C. (Control of CONT1). While in the ON time, the IH cooling fan should rotate at a high speed and the fus- ing cooling fan should also rotate.
		7	IHL	IH_Edge coil	Machines used in Japan only. Electric power: 700W fixed. PWM = Stand-by status. Turns on for 2 sec. Turned off forcibly at 200°C. (Control of CONT2). While in the ON time, the IH cooling fan should rotate at a high speed and the fus- ing cooling fan should also rotate.
ody	46			Charging corona cleaning operation	
Main b		1	M14	Charging cleaning motor rear direction (turns ON for 5 sec.)	
		2	M14	Charging cleaning motor front direc- tion (turns ON for 5 sec.)	
	47			Transfer/separation corona cleaning operation	
		1	M10	Transfer/separation cleaning motor rear direction (turns ON for 5 sec.)	
		2	M10	Transfer/separation cleaning motor front direction (turns ON for 5 sec.)	
		3	M10, M14	Charging corona cleaning (charging + transfer/separation)	
	48		OB1	Operation panel LED all on	
	49		—	Operation panel unit check	
		1	SP	Speaker volume check	
	50		MЗ	Developing motor	The drum motor also turns ON at the same time.
0	51		EL	Erase lamp	
tions	52		TSL	Transfer exposure lamp	
unct	54		CL14	Toner recycle clutch	
liar f	56		M12	Toner supply motor	
Pecu	57	1	-	IP connection verification test	No function provided when DIPSW30- bit0 is turned OFF (normal mode).
		2	-	FAX connection verification test	No function provided when DIPSW30- bit0 is turned OFF (normal mode).

Classification	Code	Multi code	Symbol	Name	Remarks
suc	57	3	—	MK(USB, parallel expansion connec- tor) verification test	No function provided when DIPSW30- bit0 is turned OFF (normal mode).
functi	58		-	LU connection verification test	No function provided when DIPSW30-
ıliar					bit0 is turned OFF (normal mode).
Pec	59		-	FNS connection verification test	No function provided when DIPSW30- bit0 is turned OFF (normal mode).
	60	1	M1	Original feed motor normal rotation	
		2	M1	Original feed motor reverse rotation	
		3	M2	Original conveyance motor normal rotation	
		4	M2	Original conveyance motor reverse rotation	
		5		-	
		6	SD3	Pressure roller release solenoid	
ä		7	SD1	Reverse gate solenoid	
		8		Paper exit gate solenoid	
		9	FM1	Cooling fan	
		10	MЗ	Original feed motor normal rotation	
		11	M3	Original feed motor reverse rotation	
		12	M4	Conveyance roller pressure release motor	
		13	SD4	Stamp solenoid	
	75	1	M1	FNS conveyance motor	
		2	M2	Shift roller motor HP search	
		3	M2	Roller shift motor shift position move-	
				ment (The HP movement and the rota-	
				tional direction are in the same	
		4	MO	Deller shift meter 1 retation	
		4	IVIZ M2	Main tray up/down motor HP soarch	
		6	M3	Main tray up/down motor lower limit	
F		0	IVIO	movement	
		7	МЗ	Small number of sheets up/down	
				operation in the main tray up/down	
		0	ME		
		0	M7	Paper evit reller meter staple mede	
		9	1017	HP search	
		10	M7	Paper exit roller motor reverse rotation	
		11	M8	Paper exit opening motor HP search (closed angle)	

Classification	Code	Multi code	Symbol	Name	Remarks
0	75	12	M8	Paper exit opening motor opening	
				movement (open angle)	
		13		—	
		14	M9	Stapler motor /Rr stapling operation	
		15		—	
		16	M14	Stapler motor /Fr stapling operation	
		17	M11	Stapler movement motor HP search =	
				2-stapling position	
		18	M11	Stapler movement motor movement	
				by sizes (A4, 1-stapling position)	
		19	M13	Stacker entrance motor	Start-up speed can be controlled.
		20	M201	Saddle stitching stopper motor (HP	FS-602 only
				search)	
		21	M16	Alignment motor /Lw (HP search)	
		22		_	
		23	M19	Folding knife motor HP search	
		24	M20	Folding conveyance motor convey-	
				ance start	
		25	M303	Registration shutter HP search	
		26	M303	Registration shutter registration posi-	
Z				tion	
-		27		_	
		28		-	
		29		-	
		30	SD7, SD8	Flat stapling release solenoid	
		31	SD4	Paper exit opening solenoid	
		32	SD5	Bypass gate solenoid	
		33	M5	Alignment motor /Up Open	(A4 position) (Available only from the HP position)
		34	M5	Alignment motor /Up Close	(A4 position) (Available only from the HP position)
		35	M5	Alignment motor /Up swing	(Available only from the open position)
	75	36	M16	Alignment motor /Lw open	(A4 position) (Available only from the HP position) FS-602 only
		37	M16	Alignment motor /Lw close	(A4 position) (Available only from the HP
		38	M16	Alignment motor /Lw swing	(Available only from the open position) ES-602 only
		39	M20	Saddle stitching stopper motor (A4R position)	FS-602 only
		41		-	

Classification	Code	Multi code	Symbol	Name	Remarks
	75	45	SD51	Paper assist solenoid	
		46	M51	Paper assist motor normal rotation	
		47	M51	Paper assist motor reverse rotation	
		50	CL201	PI registration clutch	
		53	M301	Punch 2/3 or 2/4 switching motor	2 holes position movement
		54	M301	Punch 2/3 or 2/4 switching motor	3 (4) holes position movement
		55		-	
		56		-	
		57		-	
		58		-	
		59		-	
		60		-	
		61		-	
		62		-	
		63		-	
		64	CL202	PI conveyance clutch /Lw paper feed start	
		65	M202	PI tray lift motor /Lw lower limit move- ment (HP search)	
Z		66	M202	PI tray lift motor /Lw upper limit move- ment	
-		67	SD202	PI separation solenoid /Lw	
		68		_	
		69		—	
		70		—	
		71		—	
		72	M1,	ZU registration motor, conveyance	
			M6	motor	
		73	M2	ZU 1st stopper motor HP search	
		74	M3	ZU 2nd stopper motor HP search	
		75	SD1	ZU Z-folding gate solenoid	
		76	SD201, SD202	ZU punch bypass solenoid	
		77	CL1	ZU punch clutch	
		78	M301	PK punch motor	
		79	M302	PK punch registration motor HP search	
		80			
		81	M7	Punch scraps conveyance motor (7U)	
		82	M10	Conveyance motor cooling fan (ZLI)	
		83	CI 201	PL conveyance clutch / I p	
		00	ULLUT		

Classification	Code	Multi code	Symbol	Name	Remarks
	75	84	M201	PI tray lift motor /Up lower limit move- ment (HP search)	
		85	M201	PI tray lift motor /Up upper limit move-	
				ment	
		86	CL201	PI separation solenoid (upper stage)	
		87	M203	PI conveyance motor	
		88	M12	Gate motor	
		89	M12	Gate motor stacker direction switch-	
				ing	
7		90	M12	Gate motor straight direction switch-	
Ē		-		ing	
		91	M21	Sub tray paper exit motor	
		92	M4	Clincher rotation motor HP search	
		93	M4	Clincher rotation motor skew shift	
		94	M6	Stapler rotation motor HP search	
		95	M6	Stapler rotation motor skew shift	
		96	SD6	Tri-folding gate solenoid	FS-602 only
		97	M4	ZU punch motor	
		98	M5	ZU punch shift motor HP search	
		99		Running mode	
	80	1	SD7	Reverse gate solenoid	
		2	SD9	ADU lock solenoid	
	81	0	CL13	ADU conveyance clutch	
	82	0	CL2	ADU deceleration clutch	
	83	1	M5	Registration motor (LS357)	
		2	M5	Registration motor (LS300)	
		3	M5	Registration motor (LS178.5)	
	84	1	M9	ADU reverse motor normal rotation	
				(LS357)	
В		2	M9	ADU reverse motor normal rotation	
AI		0	MO		
		3	IVI9	(LS178.5)	
		4	M9	ADU reverse motor normal rotation	
				(LS601)	
		5	M9	ADU reverse motor normal rotation	
				(LS702)	
1		6	M9	ADU reverse motor reverse rotation	
1				(LS666.7)	
1		7	M9	ADU reverse motor reverse rotation	600 is LS525.
1				(LS862)	

Classification	Code	Multi code	Symbol	Name	Remarks
	84	8	M9	ADU reverse motor reverse rotation (LS724)	600 is LS525.
		9	M9	ADU reverse motor reverse rotation (LS431)	600 is LS312.
	86	1	M8	normal rotation (LS300)normal rotation (LS357)	600 is LS300
		2	M8	normal rotation (LS300)normal rotation (LS300)	
AD		3	M8	normal rotation (LS300)normal rotation (LS178.5)	
		4	M8	normal rotation (LS300)normal rotation (LS601)	
		5	M8	normal rotation (LS300)normal rotation (LS702)	
		6	M8	normal rotation (LS300)reverse rota- tion (LS666.7)	
	90	0		-	
	92	0		-	
d e	93	0		Initial set in the field*	
СШ	94	0		Adjustment mode list displayed	
scial	95			—	
spe	95	1		—	
anc	96	0		—	
nent	97	0		Electronic RDH DIMM capacity check	
ustn	98	0		Electronic RDH DIMM check	
Adj	99	1	HD-503	Total HDD capacity	
		2	HD-503	HDD remaining capacity	
		3	HD-503	CheckDisk	

* Executing "93" allows you to bring the data of the adjusted value back to the data set at the time of shipment from the factory.

10.7.3 Memory/HDD condition

Display the memory capacity and the hard disk capacity (total/free space).

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [State Confirmation] key.
2.	"State Confirmation screen"
	Press the [Memory/HDD Condition] key.
	The installed memory capacity and the total capacity and the free space of the HDD appear.
З.	Press the [END] key.

State Confirmation screen appears.

10.7.4 Memory check (memory/HDD adjustment)

Check the operation of the memory.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [State Confirmation] key.
2.	"State Confirmation screen"
	Press the [Memory/HDD Adjustment] key.
З.	Press the [Rough] or [Detail] key.
4.	"Memory Check screen"
	Press Start button.
	The results of the memory check appear.
5.	Press the [END] key.
	State Confirmation screen appears.

10.7.5 HDD R/W check (memory/HDD adjustment)

Conduct the read/write check of the hard disk.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [State Confirmation] key.
2.	"State Confirmation screen"
	Press the [Memory/HDD Adjustment] key.
З.	Press the [HDD R/W Check] key.
4.	"HDD R/W Check screen"
	Press Start button.
	A check is made, and the result of the check appears.
5.	Press the [END] key.
	State Confirmation screen appears.

10.7.6 HDD format (memory/HDD adjustment)

Format an HDD.

NOTE

• Formatting an HDD erases all data kept in the HDD. This is irreversible.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [State Confirmation] key.
2.	"State Confirmation screen"
	Press the [Memory/HDD Adjustment] key.
З.	Press the [HDD Format] key.
	The verification screen appears.
4.	Press the [Yes] key.
	Formatting is executed.
5.	Press the [END] key.
	State Confirmation screen appears.

10.7.7 Display of the adjustment data list

Display the adjustment data set in this machine.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [State Confirmation] key.
2.	"State Confirmation screen"
	Press the [Adj. Data Table] key.
З.	"Display of the adjustment data list screen"
	Press the [\uparrow] or [\downarrow] key to display an item required.
4.	Pressing the [Non-volatile value] key changes the display to the No. of steps set, and pressing the [Adjust-
	ment value] key changes it to the adjustment value (1-step value x No. of steps.)
5.	Press the [OK] key.
	State Confirmation screen appears.

B. List of the display (adjustment) items

Adjustment/setting item
Print position adjustment: Leading edge (LS357)
Print position adjustment: Leading edge (LS300)
Print position adjustment: Leading edge (LS178.5)
Print position adjustment: Side edge
Magnification in the printer feed direction
Magnification in the printer feed crossover direction
Scanner (original glass) leading edge timing
Scanner (original glass) mis-centering
Magnification in the scanner feed direction
Printer registration loop amount (tray in common)
Printer registration loop amount (bypass)
Printer registration loop amount (ADU)
Printer leading edge erasure amount adjustment
Printer pre-registration amount (tray 1)
Printer pre-registration amount (tray 2)
Printer pre-registration amount (tray 3)
Printer pre-registration amount (tray 4)
Printer pre-registration amount (LCT)
Printer pre-registration amount (ADU)
Skew (original glass main scan)
Skew (original glass sub scan)
Skew (ADF main scan)
Skew (ADF sub scan)
Tray adjustment (tray 3)
Tray adjustment (tray 4)j
Tray adjustment (bypass 1)
Tray adjustment (bypass 2)
Charging main
Transfer manual (LS357)
Transfer manual (LS300)
Transfer manual (LS178.5)
Separation AC manual (LS357)
Separation AC manual (LS300)
Separation AC manual (LS178.5)
Separation DC manual (LS357)
Separation DC manual (LS300)
Separation DC manual (LS178.5)
Charging grid manual
Developing bias manual
TGR manual
LD1 offset (LS357)
Adjustment/setting item
--
LD1 offset (LS300)
LD1 offset (LS178.5)
LD2 offset (LS357)
LD2 offset (LS300)
LD2 offset (LS178.5)
LD1 bias (LS357)
LD1 bias (LS300)
LD1 bias (LS178.5)
LD2 bias (LS357)
LD2 bias (LS300)
LD2 bias (LS178.5)
Maximum density (Dmas) manual
Dot diameter manual (LS357)
Dot diameter manual (LS300)
Dot diameter manual (LS178.5)
User specified paper 1 (transfer leading edge (SIDE1))
User specified paper 1 (transfer center 1 (SIDE1))
User specified paper 1 (transfer center 2 (SIDE1))
User specified paper 1 (transfer trailing edge 1 (SIDE1))
User specified paper 1 (transfer trailing edge 2 (SIDE1))
User specified paper 1 (transfer leading edge (SIDE2))
User specified paper 1 (transfer center 1 (SIDE2))
User specified paper 1 (transfer center 2 (SIDE2))
User specified paper 1 (transfer trailing edge 1 (SIDE2))
User specified paper 1 (transfer trailing edge 2 (SIDE2))
User specified paper 1 (separation DC leading edge (SIDE1))
User specified paper 1 (separation DC center 1 (SIDE1))
User specified paper 1 (separation DC center 2 (SIDE1))
User specified paper 1 (separation DC trailing edge 1 (SIDE1))
User specified paper 1 (separation DC trailing edge 2 (SIDE1))
User specified paper 1 (separation DC leading edge (SIDE2))
User specified paper 1 (separation DC center 1 (SIDE2))
User specified paper 1 (separation DC center 2 (SIDE2))
User specified paper 1 (separation DC trailing edge 1 (SIDE2))
User specified paper 1 (separation DC trailing edge 2 (SIDE2))
User specified paper 2 (transfer leading edge (SIDE1))
User specified paper 2 (transfer center 1 (SIDE1))
User specified paper 2 (transfer center 2 (SIDE1))
User specified paper 2 (transfer trailing edge (SIDE1))
User specified paper 2 (transfer trailing edge (SIDE1))
User specified paper 2 (transfer leading edge (SIDE2))
User specified paper 2 (transfer center 1 (SIDE2))

Adjustment/setting item		
User specified paper 2 (transfer center 2 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 2 (transfer trailing edge 1 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 2 (transfer trailing edge 2 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 2 (separation DC leading edge (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 2 (separation DC center 1 (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 2 (separation DC center 2 (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 2 (separation DC trailing edge (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 2 (separation DC trailing edge (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 2 (separation DC leading edge (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 2 (separation DC center 1 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 2 (separation DC center 2 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 2 (separation DC trailing edge 1 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 2 (separation DC trailing edge 2 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 3 (transfer leading edge (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 3 (transfer center 1 (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 3 (transfer center 2 (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 3 (transfer trailing edge (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 3 (transfer trailing edge (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 3 (transfer leading edge (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 3 (transfer center 1 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 3 (transfer center 2 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 3 (transfer trailing edge 1 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 3 (transfer trailing edge 2 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 3 (separation DC leading edge (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 3 (separation DC center 1 (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 3 (separation DC center 2 (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 3 (separation DC trailing edge (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 3 (separation DC trailing edge (SIDE1))		
User specified paper 3 (separation DC leading edge (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 3 (separation DC center 1 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 3 (separation DC center 2 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 3 (separation DC trailing edge 1 (SIDE2))		
User specified paper 3 (separation DC trailing edge 2 (SIDE2))		
ADF registration loop amount (single sided)		
ADF registration loop amount (double sided (front face))		
ADF registration loop amount (double sided (back face))		
ADF registration loop amount (double sided pre-registration)		
Magnification (100%) in the ADF feed direction		
Magnification (50%) in the ADF feed direction		
Magnification (200%) in the ADF feed direction		
Magnification (400%) in the ADF feed direction		
ADF leading edge timing (single sided)		

Adjustment/setting item		
ADF leading edge timing (double sided (front face))		
ADF leading edge timing (double sided (back face))		
ADF mis-centering (single sided: small size)		
ADF mis-centering (double sided (front side): small size)		
ADF mis-centering (double sided (back side): small size)		
ADF mis-centering (single sided: large size)		
ADF mis-centering (double sided (front side): large size)		
ADF mis-centering (double sided (back side): large size)		
ADF density		
ADF original size (A4)		
ADF original size (B6)		
ADF skew offset		
DipSW No.01		
DipSW No.02		
DipSW No.03		
DipSW No.04		
DipSW No.05		
DipSW No.06		
DipSW No.07		
DipSW No.08		
DipSW No.09		
DipSW No.10		
DipSW No.11		
DipSW No.12		
DipSW No.13		
DipSW No.14		
DipSW No.15		
DipSW No.16		
DipSW No.17		
DipSW No.18		
DipSW No.19		
DipSW No.20		
DipSW No.21		
DipSW No.22		
DipSW No.23		
DipSW No.24		
DipSW No.25		
DipSW No.26		
DipSW No.27		
DipSW No.28		
DipSW No.29		
DipSW No.30		

Adjustment/setting item		
DipSW No.31	DipSW No.31	
DipSW No.32	DipSW No.32	
DipSW No.33	DipSW No.33	
DipSW No.34	DipSW No.34	
DipSW No.35	DipSW No.35	
DipSW No.36	DipSW No.36	
DipSW No.37	DipSW No.37	

10.8 ADF ADJUSTMENT

10.8.1 Magnification adjustment in the feed direction

Adjust the magnification for each expansion and reduction ratio (100%, 50%, 20%, 400%) in the sub scan direction of the scanner system. This adjustment allows the ADF scan speed to be changed.

1.	"Service Mode screen"		
	Press the [ADF] key.		
2.	"ADF Adjustment screen"		
	Press the [Paper Feed Direction] key.		
З.	"Paper Feed Direction screen"		
	Press the [100%], [50%], [200%] or [400%] key to select the magnification to be adjusted.		
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.		
5.	Select A3 paper and with the adjustment chart set to the ADF, press the Start button.		
6.	Press the [END] key.		
	Paper Feed Direction screen appears.		
7.	Measure the magnification in the feed direction with a scale. Standard value [1]: \pm 0.35% or less (200 \pm 0.7 mm or less)		
8.	 g. "Paper Feed Direction screen" Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key. Setting range: -2.00%(short) to +2.00%(long) 1 step= 0.05% 		
9.	9. Repeat Steps 4 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.		
10. Repeat Steps 3 to 9 for each magnification.			
11	11. Press the [OK] key.		
	ADF Adjustment screen appears.		

10.8.2 Leading edge timing adjustment

While in the ADF original scan, adjust the leading edge timing for each mode (single sided, double sided (front/back)).

This adjustment adjusts the position at which the read is started by the ADF while in the original scan.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [ADF] key.
2.	"ADF Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Lead Edge Adj.] key.
З.	"Lead Edge Adj. screen"
	Press the [1-Side], [2-Sided (Front)], or [2-Sided (Back)] key to select a mode.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select A3 paper and with the adjustment chart set to the ADF, press the Start button.
	When [2-Sided (Front)] or [2-Sided (Back)] is selected, press the $[1\rightarrow 2]$ key.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Lead Edge Adj. screen appears.
7.	Measure the leading edge timing with a scale.
	Standard value [1]: ± 1.0 mm or less
8.	"Lead Edge Adj. screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -6.0 mm (image, fast) to +5.0 mm (image, slow)
	1 step= 0.1 mm
9.	Repeat Steps 4 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.
10.	Repeat Steps 3 to 9 for each mode.
11.	Press the [OK] key.
	ADF Adjustment screen appears.

10.8.3 Mis-centering adjustment

While in the original scan from the ADF, adjust the mis-centering of the image for each mode and paper size.

NOTE

• Make sure that the mis-centering adjustment of the printer has been completed.

1	"Service Mode screen"
/.	Prose the IADEL Key
2.	"ADF Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Centering Adj.] key.
З.	"Centering Adj. screen"
	Press the [1-Sided: Small] to [2-Sided (Back): Large] key, select an item you want to adjust.
NC	DTE
•	Small size paper refers to those the size of which is 300 mm or less in the sub scan direction.
	However, A4 or 8.5 x 11 are omitted that are automatically corrected by the mis-centering sen-
	sor.
•	Large size paper refers to those the size of which is 300 mm or more in the sub scan direction.
	However, A3 or 11 x 17 are omitted that are automatically corrected by the mis-centering sensor.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select paper according to the item selected in Step 3, and with the adjustment chart set to the ADF, press
	the Start button.
	When the double sided copy is selected in Step 3, press the $[1\rightarrow 2]$ key.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Centering Adj. screen appears.
7.	Fold the paper output in half at the center in the paper feed direction and check the discrepancy of the left
	and right lines.
	Standard value: ± 1.0 mm or less
8.	"ADF Adjustment screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -3.0 mm (image in front) to +3.0 mm (image in back)
	1 step= 0.1 mm
9.	Repeat Steps 4 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.
10	P. Repeat Steps 3 to 9 for each mode and paper size.
11	. Press the [OK] key.
	ADF Adjustment screen appears.

10.8.4 Registration loop amount adjustment

Adjust the pre-registration amount (double sided only) of the ADF and the original loop amount (single sided and double sided) of the registration loop roller section to adjust the skew and wrinkles, or an original jam in the registration section.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [ADF] key.
2.	"ADF Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Resist Loop Adj.] key.
З.	"Resist Loop Adj. screen"
	Press the [1-Sided], [2-Sided (Front)], or [2-Sided (Back)] key to select a mode. And, when adjusting the
	pre-registration amount, press the [2-Sided Pre-Resist] key.
4.	Select paper according to the item selected in Step 3, and with the adjustment chart set to the ADF, press
	the Start button.
	When the double sided is selected in Step 3, press the $[1\rightarrow 2]$ key.
5.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Resist Loop Adj. screen appears.
7.	"Resist Loop Adj. screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -5.0 mm (small) to +5.0 mm (large)
	1 step = 0.5 mm
8.	Repeat Steps 5 to 7 until the value gets inside the standard value.
9.	Repeat Steps 3 to 8 for each mode.
10.	Press the [OK] key.
	ADF Adjustment screen appears.

10.8.5 Original Size Adj.

Conduct this adjustment when the ADF original size is not properly detected.

1.	"Service Mode screen"	
	Press the [ADF] key.	
2.	"ADF Adjustment screen"	
	Press the [Original Size Adj.] key.	
З.	"Original Size Adj. screen"	
	Press the [8 1/2 x 11] key.	
4.	With 8 1/2 x 11 size paper set to the ADF, press the Start button.	
	After completion of adjustment, "OK" appears.	
5.	Press the [5 1/2x8 1/2] key.	
6.	With 8 1/2 x 11 size paper set to the ADF, press the Start button.	
	After completion of adjustment, "OK" appears.	
7.	Press the [OK] key.	
	ADF Adjustment screen appears.	
8.	Press the [5 1/2x8 1/2] key.	
9.	Set the paper of 5 1/2 x 8 1/2 size to DF.	
10.	10. Press the [Test Copy] key.	
11.	Check the 5 1/2 x 8 1/2 size is detected.	
12	Press the [OK] key.	
	Original Size Adj. screen appears.	
13.	Press the [OK] key.	
	ADF Adjustment screen appears.	

10.8.6 Density adjustment

Conduct this adjustment when the slit glass has been changed.

Since the slit glass of the scanning section is coated with electrical conductive material, The way it refracts light from the exposure lamp is different from that of the original glass.

Preparation:

- Clean the slit glass.
- Make sure the white chart is not dirty. (Partial dirt can be ignored)

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"		
	Press the [ADF] key.		
2.	"ADF Adjustment screen"		
	Press the [Density Adj.] key.		
З.	"Density Adj. screen"		
	Set the "white chart" on the ADF.		
NC	NOTE		
•	Set the "white chart" in the A4-direction.		
4.	Press Start button.		
	The white chart is scanned, and density is automatically adjusted. After completion, "OK" appears.		
5.	When an error message appears, turn OFF/ON the power switch (SW2) of the main body. Repeat steps 3		
	to 4 until it is completed properly.		
6.	Press the [OK] key.		
	ADE Adjustment screen appears.		

10.8.7 Incline Offset Adj.

Adjust image skew in the ADF scanning mode.

This adjustment is reflected on the skew adjustment control in ADF scanning mode.

1.	"Service Mode screen"	
	Press the [ADF] key.	
2.	"ADF Adjustment screen"	
	Press the [Incline Offset Adj.] key.	
З.	"Incline Offset Adj. screen"	
	Press the [Test Copy] key.	
4.	Select A3 paper and with the adjustment chart set to the ADF, press the Start button.	
5.	Press the [OK] key.	
	Incline Offset Adj. screen appears.	
6.	Measure the image skew with a scale.	
	Standard value [1]: within ± 0.35% (1.4 mm or	
	less per 400 mm)	
	15jaf3c014na	
7.	"Incline Offset Adj. screen"	
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.	
	Setting range: -3.00%(CCW) to +3.00%(CW)	
	1 step= 0.05%	
8.	Repeat Steps 3 to 7 until the value gets inside the standard value.	
9.	Press the [OK] key.	
	ADF Adjustment screen appears.	

10.8.8 Stamp position adjustment (Not used)

Adjust the position on which a stamp indicating that FAX has been transmitted is affixed.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"		
	Press the [ADF] key.		
2.	"ADF Adjustment screen"		
	Press the [Stamp Position Adjustment] key.		
З.	"Stamp Position Adjustment screen"		
	Press the [Test Copy] key.		
4.	With a blank sheet set to the ADF, press the Start be	utton.	
5.	Press the [OK] key.		
	Stamp Position Adjustment screen appears.		
6.	Measure the stamp position on the original with a	[2]	
	scale.		
	Standard value [3]:		
	[1] Stamp		
	[2] + direction		
	[3] Standard value		
	[4] - direction		
		[¹] 15jaf3c015na	
7.	"Stamp Position Adjustment screen"		
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key. Setting range: -5.0 mm (short) to +5.0 (long)		
	1 step = 0.5mm		
8.	3 Beneat Stens 3 to 7 until the value gets inside the standard value		
9			
0.	ADE Adjustment screen appears		
	ADI Aujustinent soreen appears.		

10.8.9 Mixed original size auto adjustment

While in the mixed original size mode, adjust automatically the threshold value of the size detection by feeding a standard size sheet of paper.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [ADF] key.
2.	"ADF Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Mixed Original Size Adjustment] key.
З.	"Mixed Original Size Adjustment"
	Press the [11 x 17] key.
4.	With 11 x 17 size paper set to the ADF, press the Start button.
	After completion of adjustment, "OK" appears.
5.	Press the [5 1/2 x 8 1/2] key.
6.	With 8 1/2 x 11 size paper set to the ADF, press the Start button.
	After completion of adjustment, "OK" appears.
7.	Press the [OK] key.
	ADF Adjustment screen appears.

10.9 Finisher adjustment

10.9.1 Center staple position adjustment (FS-602)

While in the stitch-and-fold mode, adjust the staple position.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Finisher] key.
2.	"Finisher Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Center Staple Position] key.
З.	"Center Staple Position Adj. screen"
	Press each key to select the paper size to be adjusted.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Set 2 or more sheets of paper to the ADF, and with an appropriate paper selected, press the Start button.
6.	Press the [OK] key.
	Center Staple Position Adj. screen appears.
7.	Check the center of paper and the staple position.
	Standard value: ± 1mm
8.	"Center Staple Position Adj. screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -12.8 mm (short) to +12.7 (long)
	1 step = 0.1mm
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
9.	Repeat Steps 3 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.
10	Press the [OK] key.
	Finisher Adjustment screen appears.

10.9.2 Folding position adjustment

Adjust the folding position while in the folding print.

1.	"Service Mode screen"				
	Press the [Finisher] key.				
2.	"Finisher Adjustment screen"				
	Press the [Half-Fold Position] key.				
З.	"Half-Fold Position Adjustment screen"				
	Press each key to select the paper size to be adjusted.				
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.				
5.	Select an appropriate paper size and press the Start button.				
	A test pattern (No. 16) is output.				
6.	Press the [OK] key.				
	Half-Fold Position Adjustment screen appears.				
7.	Check the discrepancy [1] at the edge of the				
	paper output.				
	Standard value [1]: ± 1.5mm				
	1 15jmi3c024na				
8.	"Half-Fold Position Adjustment screen"				
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.				
	Setting range: -12.8 mm (short) to +12.7 (long)				
	1 step= 0.1mm				
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.				
•	When an discrepancy is as indicated in Step 6, enter a set value on the plus (+) side.				
9.	Repeat Steps 3 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.				
10	Press the [OK] key.				
	Finisher Adjustment screen appears.				

Adjust the punch hole position in the sub scan direction while in the use of PK.

1.	"Service N	Node screen"					
	Press the	[Finisher] key.					
2.	"Finisher Adjustment screen"						
	Press the [Punch vertical position] key.						
З.	"Punch Ve	ertical Position Adjustment sc	reen"				
	Press eac	h key to select the paper size	to be adjust	ted.			
4.	Press the	[Test Copy] key.					
5.	Select an	appropriate paper size and p	ress the Star	t button.			
	A test pat	tern (No. 16) is output.					
6.	Press the	[OK] key.					
	Punch Ve	rtical Position Adjustment scr	een appears.				
7.	Check the	e distance [1] from the edge o	f the paper				
	output to	the center of the punch hole.		[1]			
	No. of	Standard value [1] (mm)	٦				
	holes						
	2 bolos	105+50	-				
	2 110163	10.0 ± 0.0	-	•			
	3 holes	9.5 ± 5.0		l in the			Inter
							hain
				φ			
					-		L.I.
							15knf3c100na
8.	"Punch Ve	ertical Position Adjustment sc	reen"				
	Enter adju	ustment value using [+]/[-] key	, then press [[Setting] key.			
	Setting ra	nge: - 5.0 mm (short) to +50	(long)				
	1 step = 0).1mm					
	Press the	[Restore] key to return to the	value before	change.			
9.	Repeat Steps 3 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.						
10	<i>O.</i> Press the [OK] key.						
	Finisher Adjustment screen appears.						

10.9.4 Punch horizontal position (PK)

Adjust the punch hole position in the main scan direction while in the use of the PK.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Finisher] key.
2.	"Finisher Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Punch horizontal position] key.
З.	"Punch Vertical Position Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Test Copy] key.
4.	Select paper size to adjust, press Start button.
	A test pattern (No. 16) is output.
5.	Press the [OK] key.
	Punch Unit Horizontal Position Adjustment screen appears.
6.	Check the center of the paper and the position of the punch hole.
	Standard value (length from the edge of the paper to the center of the punch hole): 10.5 mm (2 holes/
	Swedish 4 holes/4 holes), 9.5 mm (3 holes/inch 2 holes)
7.	"Punch Horizontal Position Adjustment screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -5.0 mm (short) to +5.0 (long)
	1 step= 0.1mm
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
8.	Repeat Steps 3 to 7 until the value gets inside the standard value.
9.	Press the [OK] key.
	Finisher Adjustment screen appears.

10.9.5 Punch unit vertical position (ZU)

Adjust the punch hole position in the sub scan direction while in the use of ZU.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode	screen"					
0	"Fieldber Adius	treent cereen"					
2.	"Hnisher Adjustment screen" Press the IPunch unit vertical position lkey						
3	"Punch Unit Ve	ertical Position Adjustmen	nt screen"				
0.	Press key to a	diust paper size.	10010011				
4.	"Punch Unit Ve	ertical Position Adjustmer	nt screen"				
	Press the Test	Copy] key.					
5.	Set an original	to the DF, and with an a	ppropriate pa	aper size selec	ted, press th	ne Start butto	on.
	A punched prir	nt is output.					
6.	Press the [OK]	key.					
	Punch Unit Ver	tical Position Adjustmen	t screen app	ears.			
7.	Check the dist	ance [1] from the edge o	f the paper				
	output to the c	enter of the punch hole.		[1]			
	No. of holes	Standard value [1] (m	ım)				
	2 holes	10.5 ± 5.0			1	1	
	3 holes	9.5 ± 5.0			I	1	
				φ			
				φ.			
						1	
						1	
							15kvf3c015na
8.	"Punch Unit Ve	ertical Position Adjustmer	nt screen"				
	Enter adjustme	ent value using [+]/[-] key	, then press	[Setting] key.			
	Setting range:	-5.0 mm (short) to +5.0	(long)				
	1 step= 0.1mn	n					
	Press the [Res	tore] key to return to the	value before	change.			
9.	Repeat Steps	3 to 7 until the value gets	3 inside the s	standard value.			
10	Press the [OK]	key.					
	Finisher Adjustment screen appears.						

10.9.6 Punch unit horizontal adjustment (ZU)

Adjust the punch hole position in the main scan direction while in the use of the ZU.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Finisher] key.
2.	"Finisher Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Punch unit horizontal position] key.
З.	"Punch Unit Horizontal Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Test Copy] key.
4.	Select paper size to adjust, press Start button.
	A blank sheet that has been punched out is output.
5.	Press the [OK] key.
	Punch Unit Horizontal Adjustment screen appears.
6.	Check the center of the paper and the position of the punch hole.
	Standard value: 10.5 mm
7.	"Punch Unit Horizontal Adjustment screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -5.0 mm (short) to +5.0 (long)
	1 step= 0.1mm
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
8.	Repeat Steps 3 to 7 until the value gets inside the standard value.
9.	Press the [OK] key.
	Finisher Adjustment screen appears.

10.9.7 Punch registration amount (main body) adjustment

Adjust the registration loop amount while in the paper feed from the main body (reversed paper exit and ADU paper exit (straight paper exit))

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Finisher] key.
2.	"Finisher Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Punch registration Amount (main) body] key.
З.	"Punch Registration Amount (main body) Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Test Copy] key.
4.	Select paper size to adjust, press Start button.
	A blank sheet that has been punched out is output.
5.	Press the [OK] key.
	Punch Registration Amount (main body) Adjustment screen appears.
6.	Check the registration loop amount.
7.	[Punch registration loop amount (main body) screen]
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -16.0 mm (short) to +16.0 (long)
	1 step = 0.8mm
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
8.	Repeat Steps 3 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.
9.	Press the [OK] key.
	Finisher Adjustment screen appears.

10.9.8 Punch registration amount (PI)

Adjust the registration loop amount while in the paper feed from the PI.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Finisher] key.
2.	"Finisher Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Punch registration amount (PI)] key.
З.	"Punch Registration Amount (main body) Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Test Copy] key.
4.	Select paper size to adjust, press Start button.
	A blank sheet that has been punched out is output.
5.	Press the [OK] key.
	Punch registration amount (PI) screen appears.
6.	Check the registration loop amount.
7.	[Punch registration loop amount (PI) screen]
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -16.0 mm (short) to +16.0 (long)
	1 step = 0.8mm
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
8.	Repeat Steps 3 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.
9.	Press the [OK] key.
	Finisher Adjustment screen appears.

10.9.9 1st Z-folding position/2nd Z-folding position adjustment (ZU)

Adjust the 1st Z-folding and the 2nd Z-folding positions while in the Z-folding print.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Finisher] key.
2.	"Finisher Adjustment screen"
	Press the [1st Z-Fold Position] or [2nd Z-Fold Position] key.
З.	"1st Z-Fold Position Adj. screen" or "2nd Z-Fold Position Adj. screen"
	Press the key to select the paper size to be adjusted.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select an appropriate paper size tray and press the Start button.
	A blank sheet that has been Z-fold is output.
6.	Press the [OK] key.
	1st Z-Fold Position Adj. screen or 2nd Z-Fold Position Adj. screen appears.
7.	Check the 1st and the 2nd Z-folding positions of the Z-folding.
8.	"1st Z-Fold Position Adj. screen" or "2nd Z-Fold Position Adj. screen"
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.
	Setting range: -12.8mm to +12.8mm
	1 step = 0.1mm
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.
9.	Repeat Steps 4 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.
10	Repeat Steps 3 to 9 for the paper size required.
11	Press the [OK] key.
	Finisher Adjustment screen appears.

10.9.10 Three-folding position adjustment (FS-602)

Adjust the folding position while in the three-folding print.

<i>1.</i> "Se Pre	rvice Mode ss the [Finis	screen" her] key.				
2 "Fir	nisher Adiust	ment scree	n"			
Pre	ss the [Tri-F	old Position] key.			
<i>3.</i> "Tri	-Fold Positic	on Adj. scree	en"			
Pre	ss the key to	o select the	paper size	to be adjus [.]	ted.	
4. Pre	ss the [Test	Copy] key.				
<i>5.</i> Sel	ect an appro	opriate pape	er size tray a	and press th	ne Start button.	
Ab	lank sheet t	hat has bee	n three-fold	is output.		
<i>6.</i> Pre	ss the [END] key.				
Tri-	Fold Position	n Adj. scree	n appears.			
7. Che	eck the posi	tion of each	folding.			
folding	5	Standard valu	е	Standard		
position	A4R	8.5 x 11R	16KR			
[1]	93 mm	86.4 mm	83 mm	±2 mm		
[2]	102 mm	97 mm	93.5 mm	±2mm	[3]	
[3]	102 mm	97 mm	93.5 mm	± 2 mm		
					[2] 15	5jmf3c025na
<i>8.</i> "Tri	-Fold Positic	on Adj. scree	en"			
Ent	er adjustme	nt value usii	ng [+]/[-] ke	, then pres	s [Setting] key.	
Set	Setting range: -12.8mm to +12.7mm					
1 s'	1 step = 0.1mm					
Pre	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.					
<i>9.</i> Rep	9. Repeat Steps 3 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.					
<i>10.</i> Pre	10. Press the [OK] key.					
Fini	sher Adjustr	ment screer	appears.			

10.9.11 2 position staple distance adjustment (For FS-602)

Adjust the distance between 2 staples for flat stapling or stitch-and-fold.

A. Procedure

7.	"Service Mode screen"				
	Press the [Finisher] key.				
2.	"Finisher Adjustment screen"				
	Press the [2 Position Staple Dist.] key.				
З.	"2 Position Staple Distance Adj. screen"				
	Press the [Staple] or [Center Staple] key.				
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.				
5.	Set 2 or more sheets of paper to the DF, and with a tray corresponding to the paper size selected, press				
	the Start button.				
6.	Press the [OK] key.				
	2 Position Staple Distance Adj. screen appears.				
7.	Check the distance between 2 staples for 2-sta-				
	ple flat stapling.				
	Standard value[1] = 120mm				
	15kvf3c016na				
8.	"2 Position Staple Distance Adj. screen"				
	Enter adjustment value using [+]/[-] key, then press [Setting] key.				
	Setting range: -12.8mm to +16.0mm				
	1 step= 0.1mm				
	Press the [Restore] key to return to the value before change.				
9.	Repeat Steps 3 to 8 until the value gets inside the standard value.				
10.	<i>10.</i> Press the [OK] key.				
	Finisher Adjustment screen appears.				

10.9.12 Cover sheet tray size (PI)

Conduct this adjustment when the size detection of the cover sheet tray of PI cannot be made properly.

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Finisher] key.
2.	"Finisher Adjustment screen"
	Press the [Cover Sheet Tray Size] key.
З.	"Cover Sheet Tray Size Adj. screen"
	Press the [Upper Tray] or [Lower Tray] key and select the cover sheet tray to be adjusted.
4.	Set A4R size paper to the cover sheet tray selected by PI and press the Start button.
	The size adjustment is made and after completion of adjustment, "OK" appears.
5.	Repeat Steps 3 to 4 to adjust the other cover sheet tray.
6.	Press the [OK] key.
	Finisher Adjustment screen appears.

10.10 Firmware version display

Display the version of the firmware (main body and options)

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Firmware Version] key.
2.	"Firmware Version display screen"
	Press the [1] or [2] key to display an item intended.
З.	Press the [FND] key.

Service Mode screen appears.

10.11 CS Remote Care

10.11.1 Outlines

CS Remote Care enables the machine and the computer at CS Remote Care center to exchange data through telephone line in order to control the machine.

CS Remote Care enables the machine to call the computer at the center when trouble occurs. It also enables the computer at the center to contact the machine for the necessary data.

Data which CS Remote Care handles can be divided into the following groups.

- Data which show the status of use of the machine such as Total count, PM count.
- Data which show the abnormal situation on the machine such as where and how often errors occur.
- Data on adjustment
- Data on setting

10.11.2 Setting Up CS Remote Care

NOTE

- At this moment in time, the use of the communication means other than the modem is unavailable.
- For resetting up the machine which CS Remote Care has already been set up, clear the RAM for CS Remote Care before resetting.
 For clearing the RAM, see "(3) RAM Clear."
- When using the telephone line for connection, use the recommended modem. (For recommended modem, contact responsible person of KONICA MINOLTA.)

A. Procedure for setting up

 Register the device ID to the application at CS Remote Care Center. The initial connection is not available unless the device ID is registered.

2. Connecting the modem

Turn the power for the modem OFF. Connect the machine and the modem with a modem cable. Connect the modem and the wall jack with a modular cable.

* For connecting the modular cable, see the manual for the modem.

- 3. Clearing the RAM
 - 1. Select Service Mode \rightarrow CS Remove Care, and touch "Detail Setting" key.
 - 2. Touch "RAM Clear" key.
 - 3. Select Set, and touch "END."

For clearing the RAM, see "10.11.7 C. (3) RAM Clear."

NOTE

• When Detail Setting key is not displayed, skip this step and proceed to Step 4.

4. Selecting the CS Remote Care function

Select Service Mode \rightarrow CS Remove Care \rightarrow System Selection, and touch "Modem" key.

- 5. Inputting the ID Code
 - 1. Select Service Mode \rightarrow CS Remote Care \rightarrow ID Code, and touch "ID Code" key.
 - 2. Input the seven digits ID of the service person, and touch "ID Code" key again.
 - (See "10.11.7 B. ID Code.")

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

6. Setting the date and time for CS Remote Care 1. Select Service Mode \rightarrow CS Remove Care, and touch "Detail Setting" key. 2. Touch "Date & Time Setting" key. 3. Input the date, time and the time zone using the 10-Key Pad, and touch "Set" key. (See "10.11.7 C. (2) Date/Time Input.") 7. Setting the Center ID 1. Select Service Mode \rightarrow CS Remove Care, and touch "Detail Setting" key. 2. Touch Basic Setting \rightarrow Center ID, and input the Center ID (five digits). (See "10.11.7 C. (1) Machine Setting.") 8. Setting the Device ID 1. Select Service Mode → CS Remove Care, and touch "Detail Setting" key. 2. Touch Basic Setting → Device ID, and input Device ID (nine digits). (See "10.11.7 C. (1) Machine Setting.") 9. Setting the telephone number of the Center 1. Select Service Mode → CS Remove Care, and touch "Detail Setting" key. 2. Touch Basic Setting → Center Telephone Number key. 3. Input the telephone number of the Center using the 10-Keys Pad and P, T, W, - keys. (See "10.11.7 C. (1) Machine Setting.") 10. Inputting the Device telephone number 1. Select Service Mode \rightarrow CS Remove Care, and touch "Detail Setting" key. 2. Touch Basic Setting \rightarrow Device Telephone Number key. 3. Input the Device telephone number using the 10-Key Pad and P, T, W, - keys. (See "10.11.7 C. (1) Machine Setting.") 11. Inputting the AT command for initializing the modem 1. Select Service Mode \rightarrow CS Remove Care, and touch "Detail Setting" key. 2. Touch "AT Command" key. 3. Input AT Command. NOTE . Change this Command only when it is necessary. (They do not need to be changed in normal condition.) · For details on AT Command, see the manual for the modem. (See "10.11.7 C. (7) AT Command.")

12. Setting the DIPSW for CS Remote Care

NOTE

 This setting is not normally necessary. Take this step only when necessary in a specific connecting condition.

13. Executing the initial transmission

- 1. Select Service Mode \rightarrow CS Remove Care, and touch "Detail Setting" key.
- 2. Touch "initial transmission" key on the right bottom of the screen to start initial transmission.
- 3. When the machine is properly connected with the Center, CS Remote Care setting screen will be displayed.

NOTE

• The initial transmission key at the right bottom of the screen will be displayed only when the Center ID, the Device ID, Telephone number of the Center and the Device telephone number have been input.

(See "10.11.7 C. (1) Machine Setting.")

B. Setup confirmation

Follow the steps below to make sure that CS Remote Care has been properly set up.

1.	Call the Service Mode to the screen.
2.	Touch "CS Remote Care" key.
З.	Check to make sure that only selected item is displayed.

10.11.3 Software SW setting for CS Remote Care

NOTE

• SW bits data are written into the NVRAM every time a change is made. In case you changed bit data by accident, be sure to restore the previous state.

A. Procedure

1.	Select Service Mode \rightarrow "CS Remote Care" \rightarrow "Detail Setting", and touch "Software Switch Setting" key.
2.	Touch "Switch No." key, and input the SW number (two digits) using the 10-Key Pad.
З.	Touch "Bit Assignment", and select SW bit number using the arrow keys, and input 0 or 1 using the 10-
	Key Pad.
	(For setting by hexadecimal numbers, touch "HEX Assignment" key, and input using the 1-Key Pad or A to
	F keys.)

4. Touch "Fix" key.

NOTE

• About functions of each switch, see to "B. List of software SW for CS Remote Care."

B. List of software SW for CS Remote Care

NOTE

• Do not change any bit not described on this table.

SW No.	Bit	Functions	0	1	Default
SW 01	0	Dial Mode	Pulse	Tone	1
	1	Line for send only	No	Yes	0
	2	Reserved	-	-	0
	3	Reserved	-	-	0
	4	Baud rate	*1	*1	0
	5		*1	*1	0
	6		*1	*1	0
	7		*1	*1	1
SW 02	0	Auto call on SC occurrence	Do not call	Call	1
	1	Auto call on date specification	Do not call	Call	1
	2	Auto call on the part replacement	Do not call	Call	1
	3	Auto call on the drum replacement	Do not call	Call	1
	4	Auto call on the periodic maintenance (PM)	Do not call	Call	1
	5	Auto call on the IU Life	Do not call	Call	1
	6	Auto call of the IR shortage	Do not call	Call	1
	7	Auto call on the zero reset of the fixed parts replacement.	Do not call	Call	1
SW 03	0	Reserved	-	-	0
	1	Auto call on the toner supply	Do not call	Call	1
	2	Reserved	-	-	0
	3	Auto call on the waste toner bottle full	Do not call	Call	1
	4 - 7	Reserved	_	_	0
SW 04	0 - 7	Reserved	_	_	0
SW 05	0	Modem redial interval	*2	*2	1
	1		*2	*2	1
	2		*2	*2	0
	3		*2	*2	0
	4 - 7	Reserved	-	_	0
SW 06	0	Modem redial times	*3	*3	0
	1		*3	*3	1
	2		*3	*3	0
	3		*3	*3	1
	4		*3	*3	0
	5		*3	*3	0
	6		*3	*3	0
	7	Reserved	-	-	0

SW No.	Bit	Functions	0	1	Default
SW 07	0	Reserved	-	-	1
	1 - 7	Reserved			0
SW 08	0	Reserved		-	0
	1		-	-	1
	2		-	-	1
	3		-	-	0
	4 - 7	Reserved	-	-	0
SW 09	0	Reserved			0
	1		I	I	1
	2		I	I	0
	3		_	-	1
	4		_	_	0
	5		_	_	0
	6		_	-	0
	7	Reserved	_	-	0
SW 10	0 - 7	Reserved	_	_	0
SW 11	0	Timer 1	*4	*4	0
	1	RING reception \rightarrow CONNECT reception	*4	*4	0
	2		*4	*4	0
	3		*4	*4	0
	4		*4	*4	0
	5		*4	*4	1
	6		*4	*4	0
	7		*4	*4	0
SW 12	0	Timer 2	*5	*5	0
	1	Dial request completed \rightarrow CONNECT	*5	*5	0
	2	reception	*5	*5	0
	3		*5	*5	0
	4		*5	*5	0
	5		*5	*5	0
	6		*5	*5	1
	7		*5	*5	0
SW 13	0 - 7	Reserved	_	-	0
SW 14	0	Timer 4	*6	*6	0
	1	Line connection \rightarrow Start request tele-	*6	*6	0
	2	gram delivery	*6	*6	0
	3		*6	*6	0
	4		*6	*6	0
	5		*6	*6	1
	6		*6	*6	0
	7		*6	*6	0

SW No.	Bit	Functions	0	1	Default
SW 15	0	Timer 5	*7	*7	0
	1	Wait time for other side's response	*7	*7	1
	2		*7	*7	1
	3		*7	*7	1
	4		*7	*7	1
	5		*7	*7	0
	6		*7	*7	0
	7		*7	*7	0
SW 16	0 - 7	Reserved	_	-	0
SW 17	0 - 7	Reserved	_	-	0
SW 18	0	Attention display	Do not call	Call	1
	1 - 7	Reserved	_	-	0
SW 19 to SW	0 - 7	Reserved	_	-	0
40					

*1: Baud rate

Mode	01-7	01-6	01-5	01-4
9600 bps	0	1	1	0
19200 bps	0	1	1	1
38400 bps	1	0	0	0

*2: Modem redial interval

Mode	05-3	05-2	05-1	05-0
1 minute	0	0	0	1
2 minutes	0	0	1	0
3 minutes	0	0	1	1
4 minutes	0	1	0	0
5 minutes	0	1	0	1
6 minutes	0	1	1	0
7 minutes	0	1	1	1
8 minutes	1	0	0	0
9 minutes	1	0	0	1
10 minutes	1	0	1	0

*3: Modem redial times

Mode	06-6	06-5	06-4	06-3	06-2	06-1	06-0
0 to 9 times	000 0000 to 000 1001						
10 times	0	0	0	1	0	1	0
11 to 99 times	000 1011 to 110 0011						

*4: Timer 1 (RING reception \rightarrow CONNECT reception)

Mode	11-7	11-6	11-5	11-4	11-3	11-2	11-1	11-0
0 to 31 sec	0000 0000 to 0001 1111							
32 sec	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
33 to 255 sec	0010 0001 to 1111 1111							

*5: Timer 2 (Dial request completed \rightarrow CONNECT reception)

Mode	12-7	12-6	12-5	12-4	12-3	12-2	12-1	12-0
0 to 63 sec	0000 0000 to 0011 1111							
64 sec	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0
65 to 255 sec	0100 0001 to 1111 1111							

*6: Timer 4 (Line connection \rightarrow Start request telegram delivery)

Mode	14-7	14-6	14-5	14-4	14-3	14-2	14-1	14-0
0 to 31 (x 100 msec)	0000 0000 to 0001 1111							
32 (x 100 msec)	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0
33 to 255 (x 100 msec)	0010 0001 to 1111 1111							

*7: Timer 5 (Wait time for other side's response)

Mode	15-7	15-6	15-5	15-4	15-3	15-2	15-1	15-0
0 to 29 sec	0000 0000 to 0001 1101							
30 sec	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0
31 to 255 sec	0001 1111 to 1111 1111							

10.11.4 Calling the Maintenance

When CE starts maintenance, inputting the ID code of CE (seven digits: numbers which CE can identify. They are controlled by the distributor.) will transmit the information to the Center side and tells that the maintenance has started.

When the maintenance is finished, touching "Maintenance Complete" key will transmit the information to the Center and tells that it is finished.

A. Procedure for starting the maintenance

1.	Select	Service M	ode and	touch	"CS	Remote	Care"	key.
----	--------	-----------	---------	-------	-----	--------	-------	------

- 2. Touch "ID Code" key, and input ID Code.
- 3. Touch "ID Coke" key.

* The Start key blinks while maintenance is being carried out.

B. Procedure for terminating the maintenance

1. Select Service Mode and touch "CS Remote Care" key.

2. Touch "Maintenance Complete" key.

10.11.5 Calling the Center from the Administrator

When the CS Remote Care setup is complete, the administrator can call the CS Remote Care center.

A. Procedure

- 1. Select "Administrator Setting", and touch "System Connection" key.
- 2. Touch "Admin. transmission" key.
- 3. Press the Start key.

When the setup is not complete or another transmission is being carried out, the Admin. transmission key will not be displayed, and the transmission is not available.

NOTE

• For transmitting data of the machine by calling the center on the specified date and time, refer to the manual for CS Remote Care Center.

10.11.6 Checking the transmission log

The transmission log list will be output to be checked.

- 1. Select Service Mode \rightarrow CS Remove Care, and touch "Detail Setting" key.
- 2. Touch "Communication Log Print" key.
- 3. Load Tray 1 or Bypass tray with A4R paper.
- 4. Press the Start key to output transmission log.

10.11.7 Detail on settings

A. System Selection

Functions	To select the system type for remote diagnosis.			
Use	Use to newly build or change the system.			
Setting/	 Select E-Mail, Modem, or Fax. 			
Procedure	• Fax is available only when the optional Fax kit is being installed.			
	E-Mail (Not Used)ModemFax (Not Used)			

B. ID Code

Functions	To register the Service ID.
Use	Use when registering and changing Service ID.
Setting/	Enter a 7-digit code from the 10-Key Pad. (0000001 to 9999999)
Procedure	
	<registration></registration>
	Touch ID Code and enter the Service ID.
	Touch "ID code" key to register the ID.
	• The "Detail Setting" key will appear when the ID has been registered.

C. Detail Setting

(1) Machine Setting

Functions	Execute the primar	y setting.			
Use	Use to change the	set contents.			
	Use to register the	machine to the CS Remote Care Center.			
Setting/	1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.				
Procedure	2. Touch "CS Remote Care."				
	3. Touching the "Deta	il Setting" will display the primary setting.			
	Primary Setting				
	Set the Center ID, I	Device ID, and the phone No.			
	• When the system is selected to E-Mail, the phone No. will be the mail address.				
	* When entering the phone No, 10-Keys and keys on the screen have following mean-				
	ings.				
	[-] Pose	: Waits to start transmitting after dialing			
	[W] Wait	: Detects the dial tone of the other end			
	[T] Tone dial	: Carry out tone dialing			
	[P] Pulse dial	: Carry out pulse dialing			
	[*],[#]	: To be used as necessary			
	Initial Transmission				
	• Touching the Initial Transmission key will sent the information to the CS Remote Care				
	Center to register the machine.				
	(Only when the Modem or Fax is selected on the system Input.)				

(2) Date/Time Input

Functions	To set the data and time-of-day
Use	Use to set or change the date and time-of-day.
Setting/	1. Call the Service Mode to the screen.
Procedure	2. Touch "CS Remote Care."
	3. Touch "Detail Setting" to access Date/Time Input.
	4. Enter the date (month, day and year), time-of-day, and the time zone from the 10-Key
	Pad.
	5. Touch "SET" to start the clock.

(3) RAM Clear

Functions	 To clear the following data at the Center ID Code, Primary Setting, Date/Time Input, and Common DT. 		
Use	To be used for resetting CS Remote Care.Use to clear various types of data of the Center.		
Setting/	The default setting is "Disable."		
Procedure	Enable "Disable"		

(4) Communication Log Print

Functions	To print out the Communication Log.				
Use	Use to output and use the Communication Log.				
Setting/	7. Call the Service Mode to the screen.				
Procedure	2. Touch "CS Remote Care."				
	3. Touch "Detail Setting" to access Communication Log Print.				
	4. Load Tray 1 or Bypass Tray with A4R paper.				
	5. Press Start key to print out the Communication Log.				

(5) Software SW

Functions	To change the CS Remote Care settings.
Use	 To change the settings for CS Remote Care as necessary.
Setting/	For procedures on settings, see "10.11.3 Software SW setting for CS Remote Care."
Procedure	

(6) Response Time Out

Functions			
Use	Not Used		
Setting/	• Not Osed.		
Procedure			
(7) AT Command

Functions	To set the command to be issued at the time of Modem Initialization.This setting is available only when "Modem" is selected for the system setting.
Use	 To set the command to be issued at the time of Modem Initialization.
Setting/ Procedure	Enter the command and touch "SET" to register.

D. Server set

Functions	
Use	Not Used
Setting/	
Procedure	

10.11.8 List of the CS Remote Care error code

NOTE

• Error codes in the shaded region may occur when transmitting from the machine to the center.

Error code	Error	Solution
K00_00	Connection NG	Redial and wait for re-reception.
	(Cannot connect from the modem, timed out).	
K00_01	No response (After connection, no start telegram	Redial and wait for re-reception.
	from the center detected).	
K00_02	Copying. Could not be written in non-volatile	—
	memory, and line disconnected.	
K00_03	Center ID mismatch.	Confirm the center ID.
K00_04	Serial number mismatch.	Confirm the serial number.
K00_05	Syntax error (when receiving undefined com-	Redial.
	mands or parameters).	
K00_06	Received a write order for an unwritable item.	_
K00_07	Unread item error.	—
K00_08	Signal reception time out after a response detec-	Redial.
	tion (after the start telegram shuttled).	
K00_09	Already registered serial number.	_
K00_10	Communication error occurred because of the	Redial.
	carrier OFF (NO CARRIER detected in the	
	modem).	
K00_11	Dialtone (NO DIALTONE) detected in the modem.	Redial.
K00_12	Busy signal (BUSY) detected in the modem.	Redial.
K00_13	NO ANSWER detected in the modem.	Redial.
K00_14	Telegram error (irregular telegram received in	Retry standard times, and redial.
	response to the telegram you sent).	
K00_15	Serial number not registered in the center (4 x 40	—
	telegrams received).	

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

Error code	Error	Solution
K00_16	Errors not defined in the above -00 to 15 (last 2 digits).	Redial.
K00_17	Telephone number you must call was not regis- tered.	_
K01_00	DSR turned OFF or remains turned OFF.	_
K01_01	Error on creating a message queue.	_
K01_02	Error on generating a task.	_
K01_03	Error on sending a message.	—
K01_04	Error on receiving a message.	—
K01_05	Received an error (NG) from the timer task.	—
K02_01	Modem initialization NG.	—
K03_00	Center call evacuation buffer is full. Cannot evac- uate any more.	-
K05_90	Because of memory shortage, unable to secure	_
	enough area for sending a mail.	
K05_92	Controller in operation: unable to send a mail	In the manual transmission, retry
	because the controller is in operation.	when the controller is idling. In
		the auto transmission, an auto-
		matic retry is performed after 1
		minute.
K05_93	Mail sending error: an error was returned on	In the auto transmission, an auto-
	sending a mail.	matic retry is performed after the
		po fault in the network environ-
		ment and the network settings.
K05 94	Machine in operation: unable to send a mail	In the manual transmission, retry
_	because the machine is in operation.	when the machine is idling. In the
		auto transmission, an automatic
		retry is performed after 1 minute.

10.11.9 Troubleshooting for CS Remote Care

If the transmission is not normal when using the modem, check the following.

- The power for the modem is ON.
- The phone line is properly connected.

10.12 System setting 2

10.12.1 Data capture

A setting is made to decide whether a print job data is captured or not. Capturing a print job data allows the reproduction of a print with which a trouble is found.

NOTE

• For detailed procedure, see "IV Troubleshooting in Field Service JC-202.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 2] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Data Capture] key.
З.	"Data Capture screen"
	Press the [ON] or [OFF] key to select it.
4.	Press the [END] key.
	System Input screen appears.

10.12.2 Paper size setting

Store the paper size of the tray 1 and the tray 2 in the main body.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 2] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Paper Size Setting] key.
З.	"Paper Size Setting screen"
	Press the [Tray 1] or [Tray 2] key, select a tray you want to setting.
4.	Press the [Paper Size] key.
5.	"Paper Size Select screen"
	Press key to paper size to use, press [OK] key.
6.	Repeat Steps 3 to 5 for the tray 1 and the tray 2 required.
7.	Press the [OK] key.
	System Input screen appears.
8.	Press the [Fixed Size], [Custom Size] or [Wide Paper] key.
9.	When [Fixed Size] was pressed in the step 8, select the paper size in the same procedure as in the step 5.
	When [Custom Size] was pressed, input the size using the [+]/[-] keys and press the [OK] key.
	When [Wide Paper] was pressed, enter the size using the [+]/[-] keys, select the image matching position
	with the [Lead Edge], [Center], and [Trail Edge] keys and press the [OK] key.
10	Press the [OK] key.
	System Input screen appears.

10.12.3 Tray pullout setting

Set the read operation while the tray is pulled out to supply paper.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 2] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Tray Pullout Setting] key.
З.	"Tray Pullout Setting screen"
	Press the [Stop reading] or [Not stop reading] key to select the operation.
4.	Press the [OK] key.
	System Input screen appears.

10.12.4 DipSW setting

Set the software DipSW.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"					
	Press the [System 2] key.					
2.	"System Input screen"					
	Press the [DipSW Setting] key.					
З.	"Software Switch Setting screen"					
	Press the [SW No.] key.					
4.	Enter SW No. using [+]/[-] key.					
5.	Press the [Bit No] key.					
6.	Enter Bit No. using [+]/[-] key.					
7.	Enter Bit Data using [OFF (0)]/[ON (1)] key.					
8.	Press the [Set] key.					
9.	Repeat Steps 3 to 8 to set the software DipSW required.					
10	0. Press the [OK] key.					
	System Input screen appears.					

B. List of software DIPSW

NOTE

Be sure not to change bits with no particular reference made of the function.

DIPSW No	Bit	Function	0	1	Default sett		ting
					Japan	Inch	Metric
1	0	Print stop condition after toner	*1	*1	1	1	1
	1	supply display	*1	*1	0	0	0
	2	Print stop method after toner	*2	*2	1	1	1
	3	supply display	*2	*2	0	0	0
	4	Prohibition of printing when the	Disabled	Enabled	0	0	0
	_	PM count is reached			_		_
	5	Print number setting until print-	*3	*3	0	0	0
	6	ing is prohibited after PM is	*3	*3	0	0	0
	7	displayed	*3	*3	0	0	0
2	0	-	—	—	0	0	0
	1	-	—	—	0	0	0
	2	—	_	_	0	0	0
	3	-	_	_	0	0	0
	4	All charger cleaning cycle	*4	*4	1	1	1
	5	(after printing out)	*4	*4	0	0	0
	6	-	—	_	0	0	0
	7		_	—	0	0	0
3	0	-	_	—	0	0	0
	1	SC (service call) latch	Unlatched	Latched	0	0	0
	2	Service mode password input setting (password: 92729272)	Disabled	Enabled	0	0	0
	3	Charger cleaning function	Enabled	Disabled	0	0	0
	4	Transfer/separation charger cleaning function	Enabled	Disabled	0	0	0
	5	-	_	_	0	0	0
	6	Data acquisition clear	Disabled	Enabled	0	0	0
	7	-	—	—	0	0	0
4	0	ADF auto skew adjustment	Enabled	Disabled	0	0	0
	1	-	—	—	0	0	0
	2	-	—	—	0	1	0
	3		—	—	0	0	1
	4-7	-	_	-	0	0	0

DIPSW No	Bit	Function	0	1	De	fault set	ting
					Japan	Inch	Metric
5	0	Lowering amount for the toner	*5	*5	0	0	0
	1	control patch bias	*5	*5	0	0	0
	2	PWM clipping value (used	*6	*6	1	1	1
	3	exclusively for the copier)	*6	*6	0	0	0
	4	TSL user paper 2 control	Lighting	Non-lighting	0	0	0
	5	TSL user paper 3 control	Lighting	Non-lighting	0	0	0
	6	-	-	-	0	0	0
	7	Smoothing	OFF	ON	1	1	1
6	0	Transfer/separation output	*7	*7	0	0	0
	1	standard paper selection	*7	*7	0	0	0
	2	-	*7	*7	0	0	0
	3	Transfer/separation output	*8	*8	0	0	0
	4	thick paper selection	*8	*8	0	0	0
	5	Transfer/separation output thin	*9	*9	0	0	0
	6	paper selection	*9	*9	0	0	0
	7	Time while the contact of the	Normal	Extension	0	0	0
		separation craw is released					
7	0	Toner guide roller current value	*10	*10	0	0	0
	1	correction (unnecessary to	*10	*10	0	0	0
		touch in general. Apply some					
		minal on each PM)					
	2	TSI user paper 1 control	Liahtina	Non-lighting	0	0	0
	3	_		_	0	0	0
	4	_	_	_	0	0	0
	5	Transfer/separation output	*11	*11	0	0	0
	6	recycled paper selection	*11	*11	0	0	0
	7	-	*11	*11	0	0	0
8	0	PWM clipping value	*12	*12	0	0	0
	1				0	0	0
	2	Fusing preparative rotation	*13	*13	0	0	0
	3				1	1	1
	4	Overseas fusing preparative	*14	*14	0	0	0
	5	rotation time			0	0	0
	6	Counter switchover	1 count for a sin-	2 counts for a	0	0	0
			gle sided, 2	single sided and			
			counts for a dou-	4 counts for a			
			ble sided	double sided			
				with A3, 11x17,			
	7			on			
1	1	—	-	-			_

10. SERVICE MODE

DIPSW No	Bit	Function	0	1	Defau		ult setting	
					Japan	Inch	Metric	
9	0	Operation at key counter	Same as ST/CL	Immediate	0	0	0	
		removal (copier)	operation	stop (jam)				
	1-3	—	—	_	0	0	0	
	4	Print quantity limit	*15	*15	0	0	0	
	5		*15	*15	0	0	0	
	6		*15	*15	0	0	0	
	7		*15	*15	0	0	0	
10	0-3	_	—	—	0	0	0	
	4	Transfer/separation output	*16	*16	0	0	0	
	5	normal paper selection	*16	*16	0	0	0	
	6		*16	*16	0	0	0	
	7		*16	*16	0	0	0	
11	0	_	—	—	0	0	0	
	1	_	—	—	0	0	0	
	2	Erasure amount of trailing edge	3mm	1mm	0	0	0	
		of tab paper						
	3	_	—	—	0	0	0	
	4	Filter for jagged edges on	Disabled	Enabled	0	0	0	
		slanting lines selection						
	5	Gradation switchover in the	1dot 1bit PWM	2dot 2bit PWM	0	0	0	
	-	photo mode			-	-	-	
	6	_	—	_	0	0	0	
	7	Jam code display selection	With a jam code	Without a jam	0	0	0	
10	0	later of few a data of the state of the second	Europe Operate	code	0	0	0	
12	0	patterns	Every 3 prints	Every 6 prints	0	0	0	
	1	Replacement of the copy	Disabled	Enabled	0	0	0	
	0	Vender from A3 to A3R	En als la al	Disabled	0	0	0	
	2	Operation jam detection	Enabled	Disabled	0	0	0	
	3	Printer auto centering correc- tion	Enabled	Disabled	0	0	0	
	4	HV manual adjustment output	Disabled	Enabled	1	1	1	
	5	_	-	—	0	0	0	
	6	TAB paper length switchover	12mm	15mm	0	0	0	
	7	_		—	0	0	0	

DIPSW No	Bit	Function	0	1	Det	fault set	ting
					Japan	Inch	Metric
13	0	Size detection switchover 1	A5 (LEF)	5.5 x 8.5 (LEF)	0	1	0
	1	Size detection switchover 2	A4 (SEF)	8.5 x 11 (SEF)	0	1	0
	2	Size detection switchover 3	8.5 x 14	F4	0	0	1
	3	Size detection switchover	*17	*17	0	0	0
	4		*17	*17	0	1	0
	5	Selection of paper in 13 inch	*18	*18	0	0	0
	6		*18	*18	0	0	0
	7		*18	*18	0	0	0
14	0	Selection of 8k/16k (main tray)	19	19	0	0	0
	1-2	Size detection switchover set- ting	20	20	0	0	0
	3	Selection of 8k/16k (bypass tray)	21	21	0	0	0
	4	Selection of 8k/16k (platen)	22	22	0	0	0
	5	Selection of 8k/16k (DF)	23	23	0	0	0
	6	Selection of 8k/16k (PI)	24	24	0	0	0
	7	Size detection switchover set-	B5 (LEF) / B5	Executive (LEF) /	0	0	0
		ting	(SEF)	Executive (SEF)			
15	0	_	_	_	0	0	0
	1	Staple number allowed	*25	*25	0	0	0
	2		*25	*25	0	0	0
	3	FN (finisher) alarm stop SW	*26	*26	0	0	0
	4		*26	*26	0	0	0
	5	_	_	_	0	0	0
	6	Maximum density when in the printer mode	1.43	1.35	0	0	0
	7	Large size staple limit changeover	Ignored	-20 sheets	0	0	0
16	0-1	_	_	—	0	0	0
	2	_	_	_	0	0	0
	3	C (K) count in the printer mode * C = counter, K = key counter	Disabled	Enabled	0	0	0
	4	-	_	_	0	0	0
	5	Non-image area erase mode	*27	*27	0	0	0
	6	judge level	*27	*27	0	0	0
	7	—	_	-	0	0	0

10. SERVICE MODE

DIPSW No	Bit	Function	0 1	Default setting		ting	
					Japan	Inch	Metric
17	0	Weekly timer summer time set-	*28	*28	0	0	0
	1	ting	*28	*28	1	1	1
	2		*28	*28	1	1	1
	3		*28	*28	0	0	0
	4	Density selection when in	*29	*29	0	0	0
	5	scanning tab paper	*29	*29	0	0	0
	6		*29	*29	0	0	0
	7	_	_	_	0	0	0
18	0	Tray 1 faulty part isolation	Normal	Unavailable	0	0	0
	1	Tray 2 faulty part isolation			0	0	0
	2	Tray 3 faulty part isolation			0	0	0
	3	LU faulty part isolation			0	0	0
	4	DF faulty part isolation			0	0	0
	5	Folding, saddle stitching, and			0	0	0
		tri-folding faulty part isolation					
	6	Cover inserter faulty part isola- tion			0	0	0
	7	HDD faulty part isolation			0	0	0
19	0	Tray 4 faulty part isolation	Normal	Unavailable	0	0	0
	1	Fusing temperature switchover	*30	*30	0	0	0
	2		*30	*30	0	0	0
	3		*30	*30	0	0	0
	4	ZU faulty part isolation	Normal	Unavailable	0	0	0
	5	PK faulty part isolation			0	0	0
	6	Fax board 1 faulty part isola- tion			0	0	0
	7	Network faulty part isolation			0	0	0
20	0	USB faulty part isolation	Normal	Unavailable	0	0	0
	1	Image area with shift function	Normal	Original priority	0	0	0
	2	_	_	-	0	0	0
	3	IEEE1284 faulty part isolation	Normal	Unavailable	0	0	0
	4	Fax board 2 faulty part isola- tion			0	0	0
	5-6	—	—	-	0	0	0
	7	_	_	-	0	0	0

DIPSW No	Bit	Function	0 1		Default set		ting
					Japan	Inch	Metric
21	0	Mixed size paper staple prohi-	Stops the job when	Does not stop the	0	0	0
		bition control	in detection of	job when in detec-			
			mixed size paper	tion of mixed size			
			staple	paper staple			
	1-3	_	—	—	0	0	0
	4	-	—	—	0	0	0
	5	—	—	—	0	0	0
	6-7	-	_	—	0	0	0
22	0	-	_	_	0	0	0
	1	No. punch holes	*31	*31	0	1	0
	2		*31	*31	0	0	1
	3-4	-	_	_	0	0	0
	5	Punch holes auto changeover unit	Disabled	Enabled	0	0	0
	6-7	-	_	—	0	0	0
23	0	Setting of the directional align-	Not set	Set	0	0	0
		ment while in the mixing of original sizes					
	1	Operation when the printer	Prints out by	Does not print out	0	0	0
		EKC password does not	counting as EKS		-	-	
		match	and other user				
			areas				
	2	Standard value for the speed	*32	*32	0	0	0
	3	of the developing sleeve/photo conductor system	*32	*32	0	0	0
	4	_	_	_	0	0	0
	5	_	_	_	0	0	0
	6	Registration of the settings of bypass special paper to the job memory	Prohibition	Allowed	0	0	0
	7	—	—	_	0	0	0
24	0-3	-	-	—	0	0	0
	4-5	Z-fold output number limit (main tray)	*33	*33	0	0	0
	6-7	Z-fold + staple number limit	*34	*34	0	0	0
25	0-3		_		0	0	0
20	4	Vender CPE signal switchover	*35	*35	0	0	0
	5				0	0	0
	6				0	0	0
	7	-	_		0	0	0
	1	—	-	—	U	U	U

10. SERVICE MODE

DIPSW No	Bit	Function	0 1		Default set		ting
					Japan	Inch	Metric
26	0-1	_	—	—	0	0	0
	2	Punch unit recognition setting	*36	*36	1	1	1
	3		*36	*36	1	1	1
	4-5	_	—	—	0	0	0
	6	Over load recognition without FN	Enabled	Disabled	0	0	0
	7	Fusing slight rotation selection	Disabled	Enabled	0	1	1
27	0	_	—	—	0	0	0
	1	Recycle clutch control (when in printing)	*37	*37	1	1	1
	2	Development theta control, toner supply prohibition (unavailable)	Normal control	Without supplying toner	0	0	0
	3	Preparative rotation when the power is ON for the first time in the morning	Disabled	Enabled	0	1	1
	4	Development theta forced to be specified (unavailable)	Detection of a patch	Fixed value	0	0	0
	5	Recycle clutch control (Idling	*38	*38	1	1	1
	6	time during warming up)	*38	*38	0	1	1
	7	Recycle clutch control (when in maximum density control and gamma correction)	*39	*39	1	1	1
28	0-1	_	—	—	0	0	0
	2	_	—	—	0	0	0
	3	Punch mode restriction (PK- 502)	Enabled	Disabled	0	0	0
	4	-	_	-	0	0	0
	5	Paper type selection 1 (Bypass tray)	Recycled paper	Bleached paper	0	0	0
	6	Paper type selection 2 (Bypass tray)	Normal paper	Reused paper	0	0	0
	7	-	—	-	0	0	0
29	0-7	_	—	-	0	0	0
30	0-3	—	—	-	0	0	0
	4	Staple number allowed	*40	*40	0	0	0
	5-7	_	_	_	0	0	0
31	0-7	_	-	-	0	0	0

DIPSW No	Bit	Function	0	1	Det	fault set	ting
					Japan	Inch	Metric
32	0	—	—	—	0	0	0
	1	Product distinction setting for	Disabled	Enabled	0	0	0
		ISW					
	2	_	_	_	0	0	0
	3	_	_	—	0	0	0
	4	_	_	—	0	0	0
	5	_	_	_	0	0	0
	6-7	_	_	_	0	0	0
33	0	Process speed adjustment for	*41	*41	0	0	0
	1	fusing			0	0	0
	2	*			0	0	0
	3	† 			0	0	0
	4-7	-	_	_	0	0	0

26-7 (Fusing slight rotation control): Due to the concave created while the drum is left unused, a half tone image (of a large size) may have slightly uneven density. In this case, set to 26-7 to 1.

NOTE

bizhub 750/600

*1 Print stop condition after toner supply display Select the number of prints that stops printing after a toner near empty displays.

Mode	1-1	1-0
Stops after 1,500 prints	0	0
Stops after 3,000 prints	0	1
Stops after 4,000 prints	1	0
Stops after 5,000 prints	1	1

*2 Print stop method after toner supply display Select the method to stop printing when the number specified with DIPSW1-1/-2 is reached.

Mode	1-3	1-2
Stops after exit paper in	0	0
the machine		
Stops at a break between	0	1
print set		
Stops at the end of the	1	0
current job		
Does not stop	1	1

*3 Print number setting until printing is prohibited after PM is displayed

Select the number of prints that stops printing after the value specified with the PM counter is reached.

Mode	1-7	1-6	1-5
1,000 prints	0	0	0
2,000 prints	1	0	0
3,000 prints	0	1	0
4,000 prints	1	1	0
5,000 prints	0	0	1
1,000 prints	1	0	1
1,000 prints	0	1	1
1,000 prints	1	1	1

*4 All charger cleaning cycle (after turned ON) The main purpose of this is to set the timing to start cleaning the machine with the 24H power ON.

Mode	2-5	2-4
Stops after 5,000 prints	0	0
Stops after 10,000 prints	0	1
Stops after 20,000 prints	1	0
Stops after 30,000 prints	1	1

*5 Lowering amount for the toner control patch bias This setting should be changed when the excess of the image density in all gradation, the distortion of the image, scattering the toner, or the shortage of the image density in all gradation occurs. Changing this settings results in changing the threshold for reading in the pattern created on the drum to control the density of toner.

Mode	5-1	5-0
Standard value	0	0
Standard value -25V	0	1
Standard value +25V	1	0
Standard value +50V	1	1

*6 PWM clipping value (used exclusively for the copier)

This setting should be changed when the image density of the black spot on the solid section is too dark or light, the characters or lines are too thick or thin, or the consumption of toner is too much.

*7 Transfer/separation output standard paper selection

This setting is applied when paper specified for blank (...), normal, color, custom, or peeling with "6" paper type/custom size setting is used, and changes the transferred CH output.

bizhub 750/600

Mode	6-2	6-1	6-0
No specification	0	0	0
Not used	1	0	0
Recycled paper /1 (Japan)	0	1	0
Recycled paper /1 (inch area)	1	1	0
Recycled paper /1 (AB area)	0	0	1
User specified paper 1	1	0	1
User specified paper 2	0	1	1
User specified paper 3	1	1	1

*8 Transfer/separation output thick paper selection This settings are applied when paper specified for thick paper with "6" paper type/custom size setting is used and change the transferred CH output, the paper conveyance speed, and the fusing temperature.

*9 Transfer/separation output thin paper selection This setting is applied when paper specified for thin paper with "6" paper type/custom size setting is used, and changes the transferred CH output.

Mode	6-4	6-3
No specification	0	0
170g/m ² normal paper above	0	1
Normal paper	1	0
-	1	1

Mode	6-6	6-5
No specification	0	0
52.4g/m ² normal paper	0	1
64g/m ² normal paper	1	0
Bypass moisture absorp-	1	1
tion of paper		

*10 Toner guide roller current value correction Setting for cold regions

This setting should be changed when cleaning is not sufficient due to the hardening of the blade under the cold circumstances. Changing this setting results in increasing the current applied to the toner guide roller and more toner is pulled onto the roller.

Note: Do not change this setting outside the cold regions. The drum may be damaged due to the over collection of toner (the drum may be damaged by the toner on the guide roller).

Mode	7-1	7-0
Applies current at all	0	0
times		
No current when H tem-	0	1
perature is detected		
Applies current accord-	1	0
ing to the value in the		
table regardless of the cir-		
cumstances		
Applies fixed current	1	1
using the value of TGR		
manual adjustment in the		
service mode		

*11 Transfer/separation output recycled paper selection This setting is applied when paper specified for recy-

cled paper with "6" paper type/custom size setting in the operator mode is used, and changes the transferred CH output.

Mode	7-7	7-6	7-5
Recycled paper 1	0	0	0
Recycled paper 2	0	0	1
Recycled paper 3	0	1	0
Recycled paper 4	0	1	1
Moisture absorption of	1	0	0
paper /1 (Japan)			
Moisture absorption of	1	0	1
paper /2 (inch area)			
Moisture absorption of	1	1	0
paper /2 (AB area)			
User specified paper	1	1	1

*12 PWM clipping value

Set the PMM value. Use when you want to make characters thinner.

Mode	8-1	8-0
Standard (235)	0	0
Darker (255)	0	1
Lighter (175)	1	0
Lightest (150)	1	1

*13 Fusing preparative rotation

To avoid the insufficient fusing after the power is turned ON for the first time in the morning in the low temperature environment, rotate the fusing roller while in the warm-up to make the pressure roller obtain an even heat distribution.

To avoid incorrect fusing due to the difference of the circumferential speed between the middle and the edge of the roller after a lot of paper in a small size passed.

Mode	8-3	8-2
Low temperature	0	0
Normal temperature	0	1
High temperature	1	0
No preparatory rotation	1	1

*14 Overseas fusing preparative rotation time Set the preparative rotation time.

Mode	8-3	8-2
180 sec	0	0
120 sec	0	1
60 sec	0	0
240 sec	1	1

*15 The number of prints is limited.

Mode	9-7	9-6	9-5	9-4
No limit.	0	0	0	0
1 sheets	0	0	0	1
3 sheets	0	0	1	0
5 sheets	0	0	1	1
9 sheets	0	1	0	0
10 sheets	0	1	0	1
20 sheets	0	1	1	0
30 sheets	0	1	1	1
50 sheets	1	0	0	0
99 sheets	1	0	0	1
250 sheets	1	0	1	0

*The combination other than above results in "No limit."

*16 Transfer/separation output fine paper selection This setting is applied when paper specified for fine paper with "6" paper type/custom size setting is used, and changes the transferred CH output.

* The combination other than above results in "Reserve."

*17 Size detection switchover (DF)

Set the smallest possible original size to be detected by DF.

Mode	10-7	10-6	10-5	10-4
No specification	0	0	0	0
64g/m ² printer paper	0	0	0	1
80g/m ² printer paper	0	0	1	0
Reused paper	0	0	1	1

Mode	13-4	13-3
A5 (SEF)	0	0
B6 (SEF)	0	1
5.5 x 8.5 (SEF)	1	0
-	1	1

*The default value varies for each destination.

*18 Detection of paper in 13 inch

Set the rounding when in detection of the original size.

Mode	13-7	13-6	13-5
8 x 13 inch	0	0	0
8_1/4 x 13 inch	0	0	1
8_1/8 x 13_1/4 inch	0	1	0
8.5 x 13 inch	0	1	1
216 x 330 mm	1	0	0

*The combination other than above results in "No specification."

*19 8 open/16 open selection (main body tray): for European countries

Set the size detection switchover at the tray.

*20 Size detection switchover

Set the size detection switchover.

Mode	14-0
B4 (SEF) / 11x17 (SEF), B5 (LEF) / 8_1 / 2	0
x 11 (LEF) /, B5 (SEF) / 8_1 / 2 x 11 (SEF)	
8K (SEF) / 16 (LEF) / 16K (SEF)	1

Mode	14-2	14-1
A3 (SEF)	0	0
RA3 (SEF)	0	1
12x18 (SEF)	1	0

*21 Selection of 8k/16k (bypass tray): for European countries

Set the size detection switchover at the bypass tray.

Mode	14-3
B4 (SEF) / 11 x 17 (SEF), B5 (LEF) / 8_1 / 2 x 11 (LEF) /, B5 (SEF) / 8_1 / 2 x 11 (SEF)	0
8K (SEF) / 16 (LEF) / 16K (SEF)	1

*22 Selection of 8k/16k (original glass): for European countries

Set the size detection switchover at the original glass.

Mode	14-4
B4 (SEF) / 11 x 17 (SEF), B5 (LEF) / 8_1 /	0
2 x 11 (LEF) /, B5 (SEF) / 8_1 / 2 x 11	
(SEF)	
8K (SEF) / 16 (LEF) / 16K (SEF)	1

*23 Selection of 8k/16k (DF): for European countries Set the size detection switchover at DF.

Mode	14-5
B4 (SEF) / 11 x 17 (SEF), B5 (LEF) / 8_1 /	0
2 x 11 (LEF) /, B5 (SEF) / 8_1 / 2 x 11	
(SEF)	
8K (SEF) / 16 (LEF) / 16K (SEF)	1

*24 Selection of 8k/16k (PI): for European countries Set the size detection switchover at PI.

Mode	14-6
B4 (SEF) / 11 x 17 (SEF), B5 (LEF) / 8_1 / 2 x 11 (LEF) /, B5 (SEF) / 8_1 / 2 x 11 (SEF)	0
8K (SEF) / 16 (LEF) / 16K (SEF)	1

Mode	15-2	15-1
FS-504/602: 50 sheets	0	0
FS-504/602: 45 sheets	0	1
FS-504/602: 40 sheets	1	0
FS-504/602: 35 sheets	1	1

*26 FN alarm stop SW

Set the operation when the finisher detects "Punch scraps full" etc.

Mode	15-4	15-3
Stops immediately after	0	0
detection		
Stops at a break between	0	1
print set after detection		
No alarm stop	1	0
No alarm stop	1	1

*27 Non-image area erase mode judge level This setting should be changed if auto erase is carried out incorrectly when "Non-image area erase mode" is used.

Mode	16-6	16-5
Standard original	0	0
Dark original	0	1
Corresponds to light interference	1	0
_	1	1

*28 Weekly timer summer time setting

Set the difference between the summer time and the normal time when the weekly timer is used in the countries using the summer time.

Mode	17-3	17-2	17-1	17-0
0 minutes	0	0	0	0
10 minutes	0	0	0	1
20 minutes	0	0	1	0
30 minutes	0	0	1	1
40 minutes	0	1	0	0
50 minutes	0	1	0	1
60 minutes	0	1	1	0
70 minutes	0	1	1	1
80 minutes	1	0	0	0
90 minutes	1	0	0	1
100 minutes	1	0	1	0
110 minutes	1	0	1	1
120 minutes	1	1	0	0
130 minutes	1	1	0	1
140 minutes	1	1	1	0
150 minutes	1	1	1	1

- *29 The density of color portion of tab paper can be changed.
- * The background of tab paper is highlighted basically because it is colored.

Mode	17-6	17-5	17-4
Brightness level 80	0	0	0
Brightness level 40	0	0	1
Brightness level 60	0	1	0
Brightness level 10	0	1	1
Brightness level 120	1	0	0
Brightness level 160	1	0	1
Brightness level 200	1	1	0
Brightness level 255	1	1	1

*30 Fusing temperature switchover

Adjust the fusing temperature when fusing has some problems (insufficient, curling, etc.)

Temperature up: decreases insufficient fusing or wrapping jam at fusing.

Temperature down: decreases paper exit curling or waving.

Mode	19-3	19-2	19-1
Standard	0	0	0
Standard +5°C	0	0	1
Standard +10°C	0	1	0
Standard +15°C	0	1	1
Standard -5°C	1	0	0
Standard -10°C	1	0	1
Standard -15°C	1	1	0
Standard +20°C	1	1	1

*31	Number	of	punch	holes
-----	--------	----	-------	-------

The picture of the punch holes on the operation panel (LCD display) changes according to this setting. The prohibition rule for paper not suitable for punching also changes according to this setting.

*32 Standard value for the speed of the developing

22-2	22-1
0	0
0	1
1	0
1	1
	22-2 0 0 1 1

The default valve varies for each destination

Mode	23-3	23-2
Standard	0	0
Standard -0.3	0	1
Standard +0.3	1	0
Standard +0.6	1	1

*33 Z-fold output number limit (main tray)

sleeve/photo conductor system

Set the largest number of paper exited into the FN main tray when using Z-fold.

Mode	24-5	24-4
50 sheets	0	0
40 sheets	0	1
30 sheets	1	0
20 sheets	1	1

*34 Z-fold + staple number limit (main tray) Set the largest number of paper exited into the FN main tray when using Z-fold + staple.

Mode	24-7	24-6
5 sheets	0	0
8 sheets	0	1
10 sheets	1	0
3 sheets	1	1

*35 Vender CPF signal switchover

*36 Punch unit recognition Specify the installed punch unit.

Mode	25-4
No CPF signal switchover when in	0
using user paper	
CPF signal switchover when in	1
using user paper	

Mode	26-3	26-2
PK-502	0	0
PK-503/504	0	1
PK-505	1	0
Not installed.	1	1

*37 Recycle clutch control (when in printing)

Mode	27-1
Turns ON the recycle clutch to	0
return the recycled toner after each	
printing.	
Turns ON the recycle clutch to	1
return the recycled toner in the fol-	
lowing period after warming up:	
• Up to 900 prints: returns 3	
prints every 90 prints	
• 901-1020: returns 1 print every	
12 prints	
• 1021 and above: returns the	
recycled toner at all times	

*38 Recycle clutch control (idling time during warming up)

Mode	27-6	27-5
Does not return the recy-	0	0
cled toner		
Turns ON the recycle	0	1
clutch to return the recy-		
cled toner for 30 seconds		
Turns ON the recycle	1	0
clutch to return the recy-		
cled toner for 45 seconds		
Turns ON the recycle	1	1
clutch to return the recy-		
cled toner for 60 seconds		

Mode	27-7
Turns ON the recycle clutch to return	0
the recycled toner while in maximum	
density control, gamma correction.	
Turns OFF the recycle clutch not to	1
return the recycled toner while in maxi-	
mum density control, gamma correc-	
tion.	

*40	Staple	number	allowed
-----	--------	--------	---------

*41 Process speed adjustment for fusing

Mode	30-4
The number set with DIPSW15-1 and 2	0
The number set with DIPSW15-1 and	1
2+20sheets	

Mode	33- <mark>3</mark>	33- <mark>2</mark>	33- <mark>1</mark>	33- <mark>0</mark>
0%	0	0	0	0
-0.2%	0	0	0	1
-0.4%	0	0	1	0
-0.6%	0	0	1	1
-0.8%	0	1	0	0
-1.0%	0	1	0	1
-1.2%	0	1	1	0
-1.4%	0	1	1	1
-1.6%	1	0	0	0
+0.2%	1	0	0	1
+0.4%	1	0	1	0
+0.6%	1	0	1	1
+0.8%	1	1	0	0
+1.0%	1	1	0	1
+1.2%	1	1	1	0
+1.4%	1	1	1	1

10.12.5 ISW

See "5. FIRMWARE VERSION UP."

10.12.6 Optional device installation

Store the installation condition of an optional HDD in the main body.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 2] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Option] key.
З.	"Option screen"
	Press the [Installed] or [Not Installed] key to make a selection to decide whether an HDD is installed or not.
4.	Press the [OK] key.
	System Input screen appears.

10.12.7 Trouble reset

After completion of handling of a trouble with the fusing system, release the trouble.

NOTE

• When a trouble occurs with the fusing system, the software DipSW-3-1 (SC ratchet) is set to "1" ("0" for default). This adjustment returns the setting to the default condition (normal operation).

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [System 2] key.
2.	"System Input screen"
	Press the [Trouble Reset] key.
	With the trouble release set, "OK" appears.
З.	Turn OFF and ON the power switch (SW2) and re-start this machine.

10.13 List output

10.13.1 List output

The following lists can be output.

- Machine Management List
- Adjustments List
- Coverage Data List
- Service Parameter
- Protocol Trace (Last)
- Protocol Trace (Error)
- Fax Setting List

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [List Output] key.
2.	"List Output screen"
	Press the key to select the list to be output.
З.	Press Start button.
	Select the list is output.
4.	Press the [OK] key.
4.	Press the [OK] key. The list output screen appears.
4. 5.	Press the [OK] key. The list output screen appears. "List Output screen"
4. 5.	Press the [OK] key. The list output screen appears. "List Output screen" When outputting other lists, repeat Steps 2 to 4.
4. 5. 6.	Press the [OK] key. The list output screen appears. "List Output screen" When outputting other lists, repeat Steps 2 to 4. Press the [END] key.
4. 5. 6.	Press the [OK] key. The list output screen appears. "List Output screen" When outputting other lists, repeat Steps 2 to 4. Press the [END] key. Service Mode screen appears.

10.14 Test mode

10.14.1 Overall halftone (No. 1) pattern

Output the test pattern (No. 1) in overall halftone. The density in halftone can be set in 256 gradations of 0 (white) to 255 (black).

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Test Mode] key.
2.	"Test Mode screen"
	Press the [Full Image Halftone] key.
З.	"Full Image Halftone screen"
	Press the [0 (White)], [70 (Halftone)] or [255 (Black)] key to select the density in halftone.
	When specifying any given density, press the [Manual] key before entering the density with the [+]/[-] key.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select A3 paper and press the Start button.
	A test pattern is output.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Full Image screen appears.
7.	Press the [OK] key.
	Test Mode screen appears.

No.1 **Overall halftone** [Check item] • When density is set to 70 (halftone) If there are white stripes, black stripes and an uneven density, determine whether the fault is with the scanner system or the printer system. • When density is set to 0 (white) If the test pattern is gray background image, determine whether the fault is with the process. • When density is set to 255 (black) If the density is light, determine whether the fault is with the process. Test patterns 57aaf3c013na

10.14.2 Gradation pattern (No. 2)

Output the test pattern (No. 2) of the gradation.

The density can be set in 256 gradations of 0 (white) to 255 (black).

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen" Press the [Test Mode] key.
2.	"Test Mode screen" Press the [Gradation Pattern (No.2)] key.
З.	"Gradation Pattern (NO.2) screen" Enter the density with the [+]/[-] key and press the [Setting] key.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select A3 paper and press the Start button. A test pattern is output.
6.	Press the [END] key. Gradation Pattern (NO.2) screen appears.
7.	Press the [OK] key. Test Mode screen appears.

No.2 Gradation pattern

[Check item]

When fogging appears or density is thin, check the process system and the γ correction to see if which is defective.

Regardless of this test pattern being normal, any trouble is found with the print image, the image processing system or scanner system is considered defective.

Test patterns



10.14.3 Gradation pattern (No. 3)

Output the gradation pattern (No. 3)

The density in halftone can be set in 256 gradations of 0 (white) to 255 (black).

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen" Press the [Test Mode] key.
2.	"Test Mode screen" Press the [Gradation Pattern (No.3)] key.
З.	"Gradation Pattern (NO.3) screen" Enter the density with the [+]/[-] key and press the [Setting] key.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select A3 paper and press the Start button. A test pattern is output.
6.	Press the [END] key. Gradation Pattern (NO.3) screen appears.
7.	Press the [OK] key. Test Mode screen appears.

No.3 Gradation pattern

[Check item]

When any trouble is found with the test pattern, check to see if the 2 lasers are turned on normally.

Test patterns

	57aaf3c015na

10.14.4 Gradation pattern (No. 5)

Output the gradation pattern (No. 5)

The density in halftone can be set in 256 gradations of 0 (white) to 255 (black).

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen" Press the [Test Mode] key.
2.	"Test Mode screen" Press the [Gradation Pattern (No.5)] key.
З.	"Gradation Pattern (NO.5) screen" Enter the density with the [+]/[-] key and press the [Setting] key.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select A3 paper and press the Start button. A test pattern is output.
6.	Press the [END] key. Gradation Pattern (NO.5) screen appears.
7.	Press the [OK] key. Test Mode screen appears.

57aaf3c016na

No.5 Gradation pattern

[Check item]

When any trouble is found with the test pattern, check to see if the 2 lasers are turned on normally.





10.14.5 Beam misalignment check (No. 11)

Output the beam misalignment check pattern (No. 11).

The density in halftone (gradation pattern) can be set in 256 gradations of 0 (white) to 256 (black).

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen" Press the [Test Mode] key.
2.	"Test Mode screen" [Beam Gap Check] key.
З.	"Beam Gap Check screen" When specifying the density, enter the density with the [+]/[-] key and press the [Setting] key.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select A3 paper and press the Start button. A test pattern is output.
6.	Press the [END] key. Beam Gap Check screen appears.
7.	Press the [OK] key. Test Mode screen appears.

No.11 Beam misalignment check

[Check item]

When any trouble is found with the test pattern, check to see if the 2 lasers are turned on normally.





10.14.6 Linearity evaluation pattern (No. 16) output

Output the test pattern (No. 16) of the linearity evaluation.

The density of the line can be set in 256 gradation of 0 (white) to 255 (black).

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen" Press the [Test Mode] key.
2.	"Test Mode screen" Press the [Line Check Pattern] key.
З.	"Line Check Pattern screen" When specifying the density, enter the density with the [+]/[-] key and press the [Setting] key.
4.	Press the [Test Copy] key.
5.	Select A3 paper and press the Start button. A test pattern is output.
6.	Press the [END] key. Line Check Pattern screen appears.
7.	Press the [OK] key. Test Mode screen appears.

No.16 Linearity evaluation pattern

[Check item]

Judge from this test pattern whether the scanner system or the printer system is abnormal. Items that can be checked include main scan magnification, sub scan magnification, image skew, and leading edge timing of the printer system. If the print image is defective despite no abnormality being visible on the test pattern, the scanner system is defective.

Test patterns



10.14.7 Optional test pattern output

Output various types of test patterns and use them for troubleshooting.

NOTE

• Be careful not to output the test pattern of any number not given in this service manual.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Test Mode] key.
2.	"Test Mode screen"
	Press the [Test Pattern Output Mode] key.
З.	"Test Pattern Output Mode screen"
	Press the [Pattern No.] key to select the test pattern number with the [+]/[-] key, and then press the [Set-
	ting] key.
4.	Press the [Set Density] key and enter the print density with the [+]/[-] key. And then press the [Setting] key.
5.	Select A3 paper and press the Start button.
	The test pattern selected in Step 3 is output.
6.	Press the [END] key.
	Test Pattern Output Mode screen appears.
7.	When outputting other test patterns, repeat Steps 3 to 6.
8.	Press the [OK] key.
	Test Mode screen appears.
10.14.8 Running mode

Conduct a test while in the continuous print operation. In this mode, the following items can be selected:

• Intermittent copy mode

After completion of the printing operation for the set print count, the machine changes into the ready state and waits for 0.5 sec. before resuming the same operation.

Paperless running mode

Without detecting paper or jam, the printing operation is made nearly at the same timing as the normal operation. In the same manner as the intermittent mode, after completion of the printing operation for the set print count, the machine changes into the ready state and waits for 0.5 sec. before resuming the same operation.

Paperless mode

Without detecting paper or jam, the printing operation is made nearly at the same timing as the normal operation.

Paperless endless mode

The machine operates with the print count infinitely set automatically. In the same manner as the paperless mode, without detecting paper or jam, the printing operation is made nearly at the same timing as the normal operation.

Running mode

The printing operation is made in the paperless endless mode plus the scanning operation and the auto paper feed tray switching.

This is not used in the field.

A. Procedure

1.	"Service Mode screen"
	Press the [Test Mode] key.
2.	"Test Mode screen"
	Press the [Running Mode] key.
З.	"Running Mode screen"
	Press any of the [Intermittent Copy Mode] to [Paperless Endless Mode] keys, and select a test mode to be
	executed.
4.	Press Start button.
	Start the running test.
5.	Press the Stop button to stop the running test.
6.	Press the [OK] key.
	Test Mode screen appears.

10.15 Security setting

10.15.1 Security setting list

Adjustment/setting item							
Security setting	CE password						
	Administrator password						
	Administrator function expansion	Level 1					
		Level 2					
		Prohibit					
	CE authentication function	Valid					
		Invalid					

10.15.2 Start-up and termination of the security mode

- 1. Display the service mode menu screen.
- 2. Press the copy No. setting button in the following order. Stop $\rightarrow 0 \rightarrow C$
- 3. The security mode menu screen appears.
- Press the key of the item you want to set. The setting screen of each item appears.
- 5. Conduct the necessary operations and press the [OK] key after completion of the operations. This enables the setting made in Step 4 and the security mode menu screen appears.
- Press the [Exit] key. The regular copy screen appears.

10.15.3 CE password

Set a password to enter the service mode.

NOTE

- Be sure to avoid using a name or birthday for a password that other people can easily suspect.
- The CE must not divulge the password to other people.

(1) Procedure

1.	Enter the security mode.							
2.	Press the CE password.							
З.	"CE password setting screen"							
	Enter a password of 8 digits through the alphanumeric keypad. For default, "92729272" have been							
	entered.							
4.	Press the [OK] key to register the data.							
	Prove the [Cancel] key if you want to diable the acting that have been entered							

Press the [Cancel] key if you want to disable the setting that have been entered.

10.15.4 Administrator password

Set a password to enter the administrator setting in the utility mode.

The setting of the administrator password is also available from the administrator setting in the utility mode.

NOTE

• Be sure to avoid using a name or birthday for a password that other people can easily suspect.

(1) Procedure

1.	Enter the security mode.							
2.	Press the administrator password.							
З.	"Administrator password setting screen"							
	Enter a password of 8 digits through the alphanumeric keypad. For default, "12345678" have been							
	entered.							
4.	Press the [OK] key to register the data.							
	Press the [Cancel] key if you want to disable the setting that have been entered.							

10.15.5 Administrator function expansion

Set the scope of the administrator function displayed in the utility mode.

(1) Procedure

1.	Enter the security mode.						
2.	Press the administrator function expansion.						
З.	"Administrator function expansion setting screen"						
	Make a selection from among Level 1/Level 2/Prohibit.						
4.	Press the [OK] key to register the function selected.						
	Press the [Cancel] key if you want to disable the function that have been selected.						

10.15.6 CE authentication function

To improve the security level of the administrator setting in the utility mode, a setting is made so that a password is required when entering the administrator setting.

(1) Procedure

1.	Enter the security mode.
2.	Press the CE authentication function.
З.	"CE authentication function setting screen"
	Press the [Able] key, and then press the [OK] key for determination.
	Press the [Cancel] key or [Disable] key if you want to disable the authentication setting.

11. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT

11.1 Centering adjustment

The mis-centering is automatically corrected in the image processing unit based on the mis-centering information detected in the registration section. Therefore, this adjustment is not necessary in general. This adjustment should be made only when the amount of mis-centering exceeds the auto correction range (\pm 3 mm).

11.1.1 Centering adjustment of the tray 1 and 2 A. Procedure

- Disable (data=1) the Software DIPSW12-3 "Printer mis-centering correction." (See "10.8.3 Miscentering adjustment.")
- 2. Perform copying/printing without automatic correction to check the mis-centering of image.
- 3. Pull out the tray.
- 4. Remove the paper from the tray.
- 5. Stretch the paper guide [1] to the maximum size position.
- 6. Loosen 10 screws [2].
- 7. Move the paper guide complete according to the amount of the mis-centering you checked in step 2 and adjust the center position of it.
- 8. Tighten 10 screws [2].
- 9. Put the paper back in the tray and insert the tray into the main body.
- Make a copy/print and ensure the amount of miscentering is within the auto correction range (± 3 mm).
- 11. Repeat step 3 to 10, if the amount of mis-centering exceeds the auto correction range (± 3 mm).
- 12. Enable (data=0) the Software DIPSW12-3 "Printer mis-centering correction." (See "10.8.3 Miscentering adjustment.")

11.1.2 Centering adjustment of the tray 3 and 4

A. Procedure



- Disable (data=1) the Software DIPSW12-3 "Printer mis-centering correction." (See "10.8.3 Miscentering adjustment.")
- Perform copying/printing without automatic correction to check the mis-centering of image.
- 3. Pull out the tray.
- 4. Remove the paper from the tray.
- 5. Stretch the paper guide [1] to the maximum size position.
- 6. Loosen 2 screws [2].
- 7. Move the paper guide complete according to the amount of the mis-centering you checked in step 2 and adjust the center position of it.
- 8. Tighten 2 screws [2].
- 9. Put the paper back in the tray and insert the tray into the main body.
- Make a copy/print and ensure the amount of miscentering is within the auto correction range (± 3 mm).
- 11. Repeat step 3 to 10, if the amount of mis-centering exceeds the auto correction range (± 3 mm).
- 12. Enable (data=0) the Software DIPSW12-3 "Printer mis-centering correction." (See "10.8.3 Miscentering adjustment.")

11.2 Paper skew adjustment (main body)

Adjust the fitting angle of the registration section if any transfer jitter of the print image occurs in the direction of the sub-scan.

A. Procedure



- Make a copy/print and check any transfer jitter in the sub scan direction.
- 2. Pull out the ADU section.
- Open the mis-centering detection section [1] and loosen 5 screws [2].
- Move the back side of the registration section [3] from side to side using the marking line [4].
- 5. Tighten 5 screws [2] and close the mis-centering detection section [1].
- 6. Push the ADU back into the main body.
- Make a copy/print and ensure the paper skew is within the standard value (less than 0.5%).
- 8. Repeat step 2 to 7, if the paper skew exceeds the standard value.

11.3 Separation pressure adjustment

Perform the separation pressure adjustment when the no feed (a paper is conveyed to the paper feed roller section but stops there) or the double feed occurs at the paper feed.

11.3.1 Separation pressure adjustment of the tray 1, 2, 3 and 4

A. Procedure



- 1. Pull out the tray.
- Remove the feeding unit. (See "3.12.1 Replacing the feed rubber, the feed roller and the separation rubber (trays 1, 2, 3, 4).")
- 3. Turn over the feeding unit [1] and change the fitting position of the spring [2].

NOTE

• The separation pressure is strengthened when the spring is moved to the position [3] and is weakened when the spring is moved to the position [4].

Weak: a double feed jam is improved. Strong: a no feed jam is improved.

Reference

- The spring load changes 10% as the spring is moved one step.
- 4. Install the feeding unit in the tray.
- 5. Insert the tray into the main body.
- Make a copy/print and ensure either no feed or double feed does not occur.
- 7. In case either jam occurs, repeat steps 1 to 6.

11.3.2 Separation pressure adjustment of the bypass tray

A. Procedure





- Remove the bypass tray. (See "6.3.24 Removing/ reinstalling the bypass tray.")
- 2. Remove 2 screws [1] and remove the bottom plate section [2].

3. Change the fitting position of the spring [1].

NOTE

• The separation pressure is strengthened when the spring is moved to the position [3] and is weakened when the spring is moved to the position [4].

Weak: a double feed jam is improved. Strong: a no feed jam is improved.

Reference

- The spring load changes 15% as the spring is moved one step.
- 4. Install the bottom plate section in the bypass tray.
- 5. Attach the bypass tray to the main body.
- 6. Make a copy/print and ensure either no feed or double feed does not occur.
- 7. In case either jam occurs, repeat steps 1 to 6.

Blank page

■ TROUBLESHOOTING

12. JAM CODE

12.1 Jam code list

Classifica-	Jam		Cause	Resulting	Correction														
tion	code			operation															
Bypass tray	J1001 J1002	hen idling During operation	The registration sensor (PS44) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the loop motor (M6) turns ON. At the start of the bypass feed, the reg- istration sensor (PS44) turns ON.	If there is a sheet of paper being printed when a jam occurs, the main body completes	Pull out the paper from the bypass tray and remove jammed paper if any.														
Tray 1	J1101		/hen idling	The paper feed sensor /1 (PS1) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the paper feed clutch /1 (CL3) turns ON.	the paper exit before stopping operations.	Pull out the horizontal conveyance section and remove jammed paper if any. Pull out the tray and remove jammed paper if any.													
	J1102			 (PS6) does not turn ON with the paper feed sensor /1 (PS1) ON within a speci- fied period of time after the pre-registra- tion clutch /1 (CL4) turns ON. The horizontal conveyance sensor /Lt (PS5) or the horizontal conveyance sen- sor /Rt (PS6) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the pre- registration clutch /1 (CL4) turns ON. 															
	J1103 J1104			/hen idling	/hen idling	Vhen idling	/hen idling	/hen idling	Vhen idling	Vhen idling	Vhen idling	/hen idling	/hen idling	hen idling	/hen idling	Vhen idling	/hen idling	/hen idling	The horizontal conveyance sensor /Rt (PS6) turns ON while in idling. The horizontal conveyance sensor /Lt
	J1105	>	(PS5) turns ON while in idling. The paper feed sensor /1 (PS1) turns ON while in idling.		Pull out the tray and remove jammed paper if any.														
Tray 2	J1201	During operation	The paper feed sensor /2 (PS7) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the paper feed clutch /2 (CL5) turns ON.	If there is a sheet of paper being printed when a jam occurs, the main	Pull out the tray and remove jammed paper if any.														
	J1202		The vertical conveyance sensor /1 (PS25) does not turn ON with the paper feed sensor /2 (PS7) ON within a speci- fied period of time after the pre-registra- tion clutch /2 (CL6) turns ON.	body completes the paper exit before stopping operations.	Open the main body vertical conveyance door and remove jammed paper if any.														

Classifica-	Jam		Cause	Resulting	Correction
tion	code			operation	
Tray 2	J1203	When idling	The vertical conveyance sensor /2 (PS26) turns ON while in idling.	_	Open the main body vertical conveyance
	J1205		The paper feed sensor /2 (PS7) turns ON while in idling.		door and remove jammed paper if any. Pull out the tray and remove jammed paper if any.
Tray 3	J1301	During operation	The paper feed sensor /3 (PS13) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the paper feed clutch /3 (CL7) turns ON.	If there is a sheet of paper being printed when a jam	Pull out the tray and remove jammed paper if any.
	J1302 =		The paper feed sensor /3 (PS13) does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after the pre-registration clutch /3 (CL8) turns ON.	occurs, the main body completes the paper exit before stopping operations.	Open the main body vertical conveyance door and remove jammed paper if any.
	J1303	n idling	The vertical conveyance sensor /3 (PS27) turns ON while in idling.	_	
	J1305	When	The paper feed sensor /3 (PS13) turns ON while in idling.		Pull out the tray and remove jammed paper if any.
Tray 4	J1401	When idling During operation	The paper feed sensor /4 (PS19) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the paper feed clutch /4 (CL9) turns ON.	If there is a sheet of paper being printed when a jam occurs, the main	Pull out the tray and remove jammed paper if any.
	J1402		The paper feed sensor /4 (PS19) does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after the pre-registration clutch /4 (CL10) turns ON.	body completes the paper exit before stopping operations.	Open the main body vertical conveyance door and remove jammed paper if any.
	J1403		The vertical conveyance sensor /4 (PS28) turns ON while in idling.	_	Open the main body vertical conveyance door and remove jammed paper if any
	J1405		The paper feed sensor /4 (PS19) turns ON while in idling.		Pull out the tray and remove jammed paper if any.

Classifica-	Jam		Cause	Resulting	Correction																													
tion	code			operation																														
LU	J1501	During operation	The pre-registration sensor (PS107) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the pick-up clutch (CL101) turns ON.	If there is a sheet of paper being printed when a jam occurs, the main body completes the paper exit before stopping operations.	Open the LU upper door and remove jammed paper if any. Open the LU front door and remove jammed paper if any.																													
	J1502		The LU exit sensor (PS106) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the pre-registration clutch (CL102) turns ON. The pre-registration sensor (PS107) does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after the pre-registration clutch (CL102) turns ON. The loop sensor (PS36) does not turn																															
				ON within a specified period of time after the pre-registration clutch (CL102) turns ON.																														
	J1504	idling	The LU exit sensor (PS106) turns ON while in idling.	_																														
	J1505	When	Wher	The pre-registration sensor (PS107) turns ON while in idling.																														
Paper feed conveyance (common to each tray)	J1701	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	ing operation	ing operation	ing operation	ing operation	The registration sensor (PS44) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the loop sensor (PS36) turns ON or the loop motor (M6) turns ON.	If there is aOpen thesheet of paperand pullbeing printedsection,when a jamtration loc	Open the front doors and pull out the ADU section, open the regis- tration loop jam pro-													
Paper feed conveyance (tray 1)	J1702														The loop sensor (PS36) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the horizontal conveyance sensor / Rt (PS6) turns ON.	occurs, the main body completes the paper exit before stopping	cessing section and ADU exit guide plate, remove jammed paper if any.																	
Paper feed conveyance (trays 3/4)	J1703														-	-	-	=	-	_	-		-	-	-	-	-					The loop sensor (PS36) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the vertical conveyance sensor /2 (PS26) turns ON.	operations.	Open the main body vertical conveyance door and remove jammed paper if any.
Paper feed conveyance (tray 2)	J1704																												The loop sensor (PS36) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the pre-registration clutch /2 (CL6) turns ON.					
Paper feed conveyance (tray 3)	J1705		The vertical conveyance sensor /2 (PS26) does not turn ON within a speci- fied period of time after the pre-registra- tion clutch /3 (CL8) turns ON. The vertical conveyance sensor /3 (PS27) does not turn ON within a speci- fied period of time after the pre-registra- tion clutch /3 (CL8) turns ON.																															

12. JAM CODE

Classifica-	Jam		Cause	Resulting	Correction
Paper feed conveyance (tray 4)	J1706	During operation	The vertical conveyance sensor /2 (PS26) does not turn ON within a speci- fied period of time after the pre-registra- tion clutch /4 (CL10) turns ON. The vertical conveyance sensor /3 (PS27) does not turn ON within a speci- fied period of time after the pre-registra- tion clutch /4 (CL10) turns ON. The vertical conveyance sensor /4 (PS28) does not turn ON within the specified period of time after the pre- registration clutch /4 (CL10) turns ON.	If there is a sheet of paper being printed when a jam occurs, the main body completes the paper exit before stopping operations.	Open the main body vertical conveyance door and remove jammed paper if any.
LU	J1708		The main body loop sensor (PS36) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the LU exit sensor (PS106) turns ON.		Open the LU front door and remove jammed paper if any.
Paper feed conveyan ce	J1709	When idling	The paper leading edge sensor (PS43) turns ON while in idling.	_	Open the main body vertical conveyance door and remove jammed paper if any.
	J1710 J1712	-	The registration sensor (PS44) turns ON while in idling. The loop sensor (PS36) turns ON while in idling.	-	Open the front door, pull out the ADU sec- tion and remove jammed paper if any.
Vertical convey- ance door	J1901	During operation	The vertical conveyance door is opened while in printing, so the conveyance door sensor /Up (PS12) or /Lw (PS29) turns OFF.	If there is a sheet of paper being printed when a jam occurs, the main body completes	Close the main body vertical conveyance door.
LU	J1902		The LU front door or the LU upper door is opened while in printing, so the front door open/close sensor (PS110) or the upper door open/close sensor (PS100) turns OFF.	the paper exit before stopping operations.	Close the LU front or upper door.
Drum	J2101		The maximum density sensor detects paper while in printing.		Open the front doors / Lt and /Rt, pull out the
	J2102	When idling	The maximum density sensor detects paper while in idling.	_	ADU section and remove jammed paper if any.

Classifica-	Jam		Cause	Resulting	Correction
tion	code			operation	
Regis- tration convey- ance	J3101	During operation	The paper leading edge sensor (PS43) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the registration clutch (CL1) turns ON.	If there is a sheet of paper being printed when a jam occurs, the main	Open the front doors / Lt and /Rt, pull out the ADU section and remove jammed paper if any.
	J3102		The fusing exit sensor (PS30) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the paper leading edge sen- sor (PS43) turns ON.	body completes the paper exit before stopping operations.	
Fusing/ paper exit	J3201		The paper exit sensor (PS37) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the fusing exit sensor (PS30) turns ON.		
	J3202		The reverse sensor (PS42) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the fusing exit sensor (PS30) turns ON.	-	
	J3203		The reverse sensor (PS42) does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after it turns ON.		
	J3204		The paper exit sensor (PS37) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the reverse sensor (PS42) turns OFF.		
	J3205	-	The paper exit sensor (PS37) does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after the paper exit sensor (PS3) turns ON.		
	J3206	n idling	The paper exit sensor (PS37) turns ON while in idling.	_	
	J3208	Wher	The reverse sensor (PS42) turns ON while in idling.		
	J3209		The fusing exit sensor (PS30) turns ON while in idling.		
	J3210		The reverse/exit sensor (PS46) turns ON while in idling.		
Front door	J5101	During operation	The front door /Lt or /Rt is opened while in printing, so the open/close sensor /1 (PS38) or /2 (PS39) turns OFF.	The main body stop immedi- ately.	Close the front door /R or /Lt.

Classifica-	Jam		Cause	Resulting	Correction																														
tion	code			operation																															
LU	J1501	During operation	During operation	The pre-registration sensor (PS107) does not turn ON within a specified	If there is a sheet of paper	Open the LU upper door and remove																													
				During oper	ng oper	period of time after the feed clutch (CL101) turns ON.	being printed when a jam	jammed paper if any. Open the LU front door																											
	J1502				The LU exit sensor (PS106) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the pre-registration clutch (CL102) turns ON. The pre-registration sensor (PS107) does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after the pre-registration clutch (CL102) turns ON.	occurs, the main body completes the paper exit before stopping operations.	paper if any.																												
		The loop sensor (PS36) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the pre-registration clutch (CL102) turns ON.																																	
	J1504	i idling	The LU exit sensor (PS106) turns ON while in idling.	_																															
	J1505	Wher	The pre-registration sensor (PS107) turns ON while in idling.																																
Paper feed conveyance (common to each tray)	J1701	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	During operation	The registration sensor (PS44) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the loop sensor (PS36) turns ON or the loop motor (M6) turns ON.	If there is aOpen the fromsheet of paperand pull outbeing printedsection, openwhen a jamtration loop	Open the front doors and pull out the ADU section, open the regis- tration loop jam pro-																
Paper feed conveyance (tray 1)	J1702																Duri	Duri	Duri	Duni	Duri	Duri	Dur	Dur	Duri	Duri	Dur	Dur	Dun	Duri	Dur	The loop sensor (PS36) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the horizontal conveyance sensor / Rt (PS6) turns ON.	occurs, the main body completes the paper exit before stopping	cessing section and ADU exit guide plate, remove jammed paper if any.	
Paper feed conveyance (trays 3/4)	J1703																																The loop sensor (PS36) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the vertical conveyance sensor /2 (PS26) turns ON.	operations.	Open the main body vertical conveyance door and remove jammed paper if any.
Paper feed conveyance (tray 2)	J1704																															The loop sensor (PS36) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the pre-registration clutch /2 (CL6) turns ON.			
Paper feed conveyance (tray 3)	J1705		The vertical conveyance sensor /2 (PS26) does not turn ON within a speci- fied period of time after the pre-registra- tion clutch /3 (CL8) turns ON.																																
			(PS27) does not turn ON within a speci- fied period of time after the pre-registra- tion clutch /3 (CL8) turns ON.																																

Classifica-	Jam		Cause	Resulting	Correction
tion	code			operation	
DF	J6209	Ľ	The original conveyance sensor	The DF stops	Open the open/close
		ratic	(PS306) does not turn ON within a	immediately. If	cover and the paper
		bel	specified period of time after the feed	there is paper	feed unit and remove
		ğ	start of the single sided original.	being trans-	jammed paper if any.
		Duri		ferred or having	
	16210		The original conveyance sensor	been trans-	
	00210		(PS306) does not turn ON within a	ferred, the main	
			specified period of time after the	body completes	
			reverse feed start of the back side of	the paper exit	
			the double sided original.	before stopping	
	J6301		The original conveyance sensor	operations.	
			(PS306) does not turn OFF within a		
			specified period of time after it turns ON		
			while in the paper feed of the single		
			sided original.		
	J6302	1	The original conveyance sensor		
			(PS306) does not turn OFF within a		
			specified period of time after it turns ON		
			while in the reverse feed of the back		
			side of the double sided original.		
	J6303	on	The original conveyance sensor		
		erati	(PS306) does not turn OFF within a		
		g	specified period of time after it turns ON		
		ing	while in the reverse feed of the front		
		Du	side of the double sided original.		
	J6304	1	The original exit sensor (PS303) does		
			not turn ON within the specified period		
			of time after the original conveyance		
			sensor (PS306) turns ON.		
	J6305		The original exit sensor (PS303) does		
			not turn OFF within a specified period of		
			time after it turns ON.		
	J6501	ling	The original registration sensor /1	—	
		lbi r	(PS304) turns ON while in idling.		
	J6502	Vhe	The original conveyance sensor		
		>	(PS306) turns ON while in idling.		
	J6504		The original exit sensor (PS303) turns		
			ON while in idling.		
	J6508		The original registration sensor /2		
			(PS305) turns ON while in idling.		
	J6510		The original skew sensor (PS307) turns		
			ON while in idling.		
	J6520		The original conveyance sensor		
			(PS306) turns ON while in idling.		

12. JAM CODE

Classifica-	Jam		Cause	Resulting	Correction
tion	code			operation	
FS	J7101	Ę	The front door, PI upper door, and ZU	The FS/SF/main	Remove jammed paper
		ratic	front door are opened while in printing.	body stop	if any from the FS/SF/
		ope		immediately.	main body.
	J7216	bu	The FNS entrance sensor (PS4) does		
		Dur	not turn ON within a specified period of		
			time after the main body paper exit sen-		
			sor (PS37) turns ON.		
SF			The conveyance sensor (PS701) does		
			not turn ON within a specified period of		
			time after the main body exit sensor		
			(PS37) turns ON.		
FS	J7217		The main tray paper exit sensor (PS6)		
			does not turn ON within a specified		
			period of time after the FNS entrance		
			sensor (PS4) turns ON.		
	J7218		The stacker entrance sensor (PS5)		
			does not turn ON within a specified		
			period of time after the FNS entrance		
			sensor (PS4) turns ON. (while in sta-		
			pling)		
	J7219		The stacker entrance sensor (PS5)		
			does not turn OFF within the specified		
			period of time after the stacker		
			entrance motor (M13) turns ON.		
	J7220		The main tray paper exit sensor (PS6)		
			does not turn ON within a specified		
			period of time after the start of exiting		
	17004		paper (while in stapling).		
	J7221		The main tray paper exit sensor (PS6)		
			does not turn OFF within a specified		
			stapling the paper in a large size)		
	17000		The sub-trau paper suit senser (DC1)		
	J1222		the sub tray paper exit sensor (PST)		
			period of time after the ENS entrance		
			sensor (PS4) turns ON (while in exiting		
			paper in the sub trav)		
	.17223	-	The sub tray paper exit sensor (DS1)		
	01220		does not turn OEE within a specified		
			period of time after it turns ON (while in		
			exiting paper in the sub tray).		
	.17224		The folding pass-through sensor (PS26)		
	51224		does not turn ON after stapling is com-		
			pleted.		
			1		

Classifica-	Jam		Cause	Resulting	Correction
tion	code		Clabb	operation	Controlation
FS	17225	-	The folding paper exit sensor (PS25)	The FS/SE/main	Remove isommed paper
10	01220	atior	does not turn ON within a specified	hody stop	if any from the ES/SE/
		Dera	period of time after the folding knife	immediately	main body
		g o	motor (M19) turns ON	in in incolatory.	main body.
	17006	urin	The folding paper exit concer (BS25)	-	
	51220		doos not turn OEE within a specified		
			poried of time after it turns ON		
	17000				
	J7228		The stacker entrance sensor (PS5)		
			does not turn OFF within a specified		
			period of time after it turns ON.		
	J7229		The main tray paper exit sensor (PS6)		
			does not turn OFF within a specified		
			period of time after it turns ON (while in		
			the non-stapling mode).		
SF			The conveyance sensor (PS701) does		
			not turn OFF within a specified period of		
			time after it turns ON.		
FS	J7230		The main tray paper exit sensor (PS6)		
			does not turn OFF within a specified		
			period of time after it turns ON (while in		
			stapling the paper in a small size).		
PI	J7235		The paper entrance sensor /Lw (PS206)		
			does not turn ON within a specified		
			period of time after the conveyance		
			clutch /Lw (CL202) turns ON.		
ZU	J7238		The leading, trailing, and side edge sen-	The ZU/main	Remove jammed paper
			sors on the paper edge sensor board	body stop	if any from the ZU/main
			(PESB) do not turn ON within a speci-	immediately.	body.
			fied period of time after the main body		
			exit sensor (PS37) turns ON.		
	J7239	1	The leading, trailing, and side edge sen-		
			sors on the paper edge sensor board		
			(PESB) do not turn OFF within a speci-		
			fied period of time after they turn ON.		
	J7240	1	While in the punching mode of the	-	
			paper in a large size, the passage sen-		
			sor (PS1) does not turn ON within a		
			specified period of time after the lead-		
			ing, trailing, and side edge sensors on		
			the paper edge sensor board (PESB)		
			turn ON.		
	J7241		When the 2nd folding starts in the Z-	4	
			folding mode, the passage sensor		
			(PS1) does not turn OFF within a speci-		
			fied period of time after it turns ON.		

Classifica	lam			Populting	Correction
tion	code		Cause	operation	Correction
ZU	J7242	Juring operation	When the 2nd folding is completed in the Z-folding mode, the passage sen- sor (PS1) does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after it turns ON.	The ZU/main body stop immediately.	Remove jammed paper if any from the ZU/main body.
PK	J7243		The punch home sensor (PS301) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the punch motor (M301) turns ON. Or, the paper size sensor (PS305) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the punch registra- tion motor (M302) turns ON.	The FS/main body stop immediately.	Remove jammed paper if any from the FS/main body.
ZU	J7244		The exit sensor (PS9) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the leading, trailing, and side edge sen- sors on the paper edge sensor board (PESB) turn ON.	The ZU/main body stop immediately.	Remove jammed paper if any from the ZU/main body.
	J7245	-	The exit sensor (PS9) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the main body paper exit sensor (PS37) turns ON.		
	J7246	-	The exit sensor (PS9) does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after it turns ON.		
	J7247		Paper remains in ZU after a specified period of time since the main body sent ZU a stop signal.		
FS-602	J7248		The folding pass-through sensor (PS26) does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after it turns ON.	The FS/main body stop immediately.	Remove jammed paper if any from the FS/main body.
PI	J7249	-	The paper entrance sensor /Up (PS201) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the conveyance clutch /Up (CL201) turns ON.		Open the PI upper door and remove jammed paper if any.
	J7250		The FNS entrance sensor (PS4) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the paper entrance sensor / Up (PS201) turns ON.		
	J7251		The FNS entrance sensor (PS4) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the paper entrance sensor / Lw (PS206) turns ON.		

Classifica-	Jam		Cause	Resulting	Correction
tion	code			operation	
ZU	J7260	During operation	The corresponding side edge sensor on the paper edge sensor board (PESB) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the leading, trailing, and side edge sensors on PESB turn OFF. Or, the punch home sensor (PS6) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the punch clutch (CL1) turns ON. The passage sensor (PS1) does not	The ZU/main body stop immediately.	Remove jammed paper if any from the ZU/main body.
	J7262			turn ON within a specified period of time after the leading, trailing, and side edge sensors on the paper edge sen- sor board (PESB) turn ON. The exit sensor (PS9) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after	
	J7263	-	the passage sensor (PS1) turns ON. The conveyance motor (M6) lost syn- chronism.		
	J7264		The punch home sensor (PS6) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the punch clutch (CL1) turns ON.		
FS	J7281		The stapler motor home sensor /Fr (PS31) and clincher motor home sensor /Fr (PS33) do not turn ON within a specified period of time after the stapler motor /Fr (M14) and clincher motor /Fr (M15) turn ON.	The FS/main body stop immediately.	Remove jammed paper if any from the FS/main body.
	J7282		The stapler motor home sensor /Rr (PS30) and clincher motor home sensor /Rr (PS32) do not turn ON within a specified period of time after the stapler motor /Rr (M9) and clincher motor /Rr (M10) turn ON.		
	J7283		The stapler motor home sensor /Rr (PS30), /Fr (PS31), clincher motor home sensor /Rr (PS32), and /Fr (PS33) do not turn ON within a specified period of time after the stapler motor /Rr (M9), /Fr (M14), clincher motor /Rr (M10), and /Fr (M15) turn ON.		

Classifica-	Jam		Cause	Resulting	Correction
tion	code			operation	
FS	J7290	g operation	The FS does not stop within a specified period of time after the main body sends it a stop signal.	The FS/main body stop immediately.	Remove jammed paper if any from the FS/main body.
		Durinç			
	J7301	n idling	The main tray exit sensor(PS6) turns ON while in idling.	_	
SF		Wher	The conveyance sensor (PS701) turns ON while in idling.		
FS-504/ 602	J7302		The stacker entrance sensor (PS5) turns ON while in idling.		
	J7305		The FNS entrance sensor (PS4) turns ON while in idling.		
	J7307		The sub tray paper exit sensor (PS1) turns ON while in idling.		
	J7308		The stacker empty sensor (PS20) turns ON while in an exit jam.	The FS/main body stop immediately.	
FS-602	J7309		The folding pass-through sensor (PS26) turns ON while in idling.		
	J7310		The folding paper exit sensor (PS25) turns ON while in idling.		
PI	J7314		The paper entrance sensor /Lw (PS206) turns ON while in idling.	_	
ZU	J7315		 One of the following sensors turns ON while in idling. Leading, trailing, or side edge sensor on the paper edge sensor board (PESB) Passage sensor (PS1) Exit sensor (PS9) 		
PI	J7317		The paper entrance sensor /Up (PS201) turns ON while in idling.		
ADU	J9201	During operation	The reverse paper exit sensor (PS46) does not turn ON within the specified period of time after the reverse sensor (PS42) turns ON.	If there is a sheet of paper being printed when a jam occurs, the main	Open the front door, pull out the ADU sec- tion and remove jammed paper if any.
	J9202		The reverse paper exit sensor (PS46) does not turn OFF within the specified period of time after the ADU reverse sensor (PS45) turns ON.	body completes the paper exit before stopping operations.	

Classifica-	Jam		Cause	Resulting	Correction
tion	code			operation	
ADU	J9203	When idling	The ADU reverse sensor (PS45) turns ON while in idling.	_	Open the front door, pull out the ADU sec- tion and remove jammed paper if any.
	J9301	During operation	The ADU conveyance sensor /2 (PS48) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the reverse paper exit sensor (PS46) turns OFF.	If there is a sheet of paper being printed when a jam occurs, the main body completes the paper exit before stopping operations.	
	J9302 J9303	hen idling	The ADU conveyance sensor /2 (PS48) turns ON while in idling. The ADU pre-registration sensor (PS50)	_	
	J9401 J9402	During operation W	turns ON while in idling. The ADU deceleration sensor (PS49) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the ADU convey- ance sensor /2 (PS48) turns ON.	If there is a sheet of paper being printed when a jam occurs, the main	
			The ADU pre-registration sensor (PS50) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the ADU decelera- tion sensor (PS49) turns ON again.	body completes the paper exit before stopping operations.	
	J9403	When idling	The ADU deceleration sensor (PS49) turns ON while in idling.	_	1

13.1 Malfunction code list

A. Note for use

Turn OFF/ON the power switch (SW2) of the main body when releasing an abnormal condition.

B. Code list

NOTE

• For codes with "*" in the code column, "Turn ON the power switch again" is displayed on the touch panel. For other codes, "Please call service" is displayed.

Cla	ssification	Code	Causes	Resulting operation	Estimated abnormal parts
Main body	Drive	C-0101	An error detection signal is detected in succession for a specified period of time after the paper feed motor (M1) is turned ON.	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Paper feed motor (M1) Printer control board (PRCB)
		C-0102	An error detection signal is detected in succession for a specified period of time after the LU paper feed motor (M101) is turned ON.		LU paper feed motor (M101) LU drive board (LUDB)
		C-0103	An error detection signal is detected in succession for a specified period of time after the registration motor (M5) is turned ON.		Registration motor (M5) Printer control board (PRCB) ADU drive board (ADUDB)
	Tray 1	C-0201	When the paper lift motor /1 (M16) is ON, an error detection signal of M16 is detected.		Paper lift motor /1 (M16) Printer control board (PRCB) Upper limit sensor /1 (PS2)
		C-0202	When the upper limit sensor /1 (PS2) is OFF, PS2 does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the paper lift motor /1 (M16) turns ON for its lifting oper- ation.	An error code is not displayed on the operation panel. It is dis- played only on the data collec- tion, the list out- put, and CSRC.	
	Tray 2	C-0203	When the paper lift motor /2 (M17) is ON, an error detection signal of M17 is detected.	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Paper lift motor /2 (M17) Printer control board (PRCB) Upper limit sensor /2 (PS8)

Cla	ssification	Code	Causes	Resulting	Estimated abnormal parts
				operation	
ybc	Tray 2	C-0204	When the upper limit sensor /2	An error code is	Paper lift motor /2 (M17)
n bo			(PS8) is OFF, PS8 does not turn	not displayed on	Printer control board (PRCB)
Mai			ON within a specified period of	the operation	Upper limit sensor /2 (PS8)
-			time after the paper lift motor /2	panel. It is dis-	
			(M17) turns ON for its lifting oper-	played only on	
			ation.	the data collec-	
				tion, the list out-	
				put, and CSRC.	
	Tray 3	C-0205	When the paper lift motor /3	The main body	Paper lift motor /3 (M18)
			(M18) is ON, an error detection	stops immedi-	Printer control board (PRCB)
			signal of M18 is detected.	ately to turn OFF	Upper limit sensor /3 (PS14)
				the RL1 (main).	
		C-0206	When the upper limit sensor /3	An error code is	
			(PS14) is OFF, PS14 does not	not displayed on	
			turn ON within a specified period	the operation	
			of time after the paper lift motor /	panel. It is dis-	
			3 (M18) turns ON for its lifting	played only on	
			operation.	the data collec-	
				tion. the list out-	
				put, and CSRC.	
	Trav 4	C-0207	When the paper lift motor /4	The main body	Paper lift motor /4 (M19)
	ind) i	0 0201	(M19) is ON, an error detection	stops immedi-	Printer control board (PBCB)
			signal of M19 is detected	ately to turn OFF	Upper limit sensor /4 (PS20)
			olghai of mito to accordat	the RI 1 (main)	
		C-0208	When the upper limit sensor //	An error code is	
		0 0200	(PS20) is OEE PS20 does not	not displayed on	
			turn ON within a specified period	the operation	
			of time after the paper lift motor /	nanel It is dis-	
			4 (M19) turns ON for its lifting	played only on	
				the data collee	
			operation.	tion the list out	
				nut and CSPC	
		0.0000		The second back.	Device life an etc. (M100)
2	LU	C-0209	when the paper lift motor (M100)	The main body	Paper lift motor (M100)
			is ON, an error detection signal of	stops immedi-	LU drive board (LUDB)
			M100 is detected in succession	ately to turn OFF	Lower limit sensor (PS101)
			for a specified period.	the RL1 (main).	Upper limit sensor (PS109)
		C-0210	When the upper limit sensor	An error code is	
			(PS109) or the lower limit sensor	not displayed on	
			(PS101) is OFF, PS109 or PS101	the operation	
			does not turn ON within a speci-	panel. It is dis-	
			fied period of time after the paper	played only on	
			lift motor (M100) turns ON for its	the data collec-	
			lifting or lowering operation.	tion, the list out-	
				put, and CSRC.	

Cla	ssification	Code	Causes	Resulting operation	Estimated abnormal parts
Main body	Bypass tray	C-0211	When the upper limit sensor / bypass (PS34) or the lower limit sensor /bypass (PS35) is OFF, PS34 or PS35 does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the bypass tray lift motor (M20) turns ON for its lifting or lowering operation.	On the opera- tion panel, not an error code but the jam code J10-1 is displayed. It is displayed only on the data col- lection, the list output, and CSRC.	Bypass tray lift motor (M20) Printer control board (PRCB) Upper limit sensor /bypass (PS34) Lower limit sensor /bypass (PS35)
	Fan abnor- mality	an C-0301 bnor- nality	The SUC_EM signal shows an abnormal condition when a spec- ified period of time elapses after the transfer/separation suction fan (FM3) turns ON. This abnor- mal condition recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM3 is turned OFF and then ON again.	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Transfer/separation suction fan (FM3) ADU drive board (ADUDB) Printer control board (PRCB)
		C-0302	The EM signal shows an abnor- mal condition when a specified period of time elapses after the suction fan /Fr (FM6) turns ON. This abnormal condition recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM6 is turned OFF and then ON again.		Suction fan /Fr (FM6) Printer control board (PRCB)
		C-0303	The EM signal shows an abnor- mal condition when a specified period of time elapses after the paper exit cooling fan (FM8) turns ON. This abnormal condition recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM8 is turned OFF and then ON again.		Paper exit fan (FM8) Printer control board (PRCB)
		C-0304	The EM signal of the ADU cooling fan (FM10) shows an abnormal condition when a specified period of time elapses after FM10 turns ON. This abnormal condition recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM10 is turned OFF and then ON again.		ADU cooling fan (FM10) ADU drive board (ADUDB) Printer control board (PRCB)

Cla	ssification	Code	Causes	Resulting operation	Estimated abnormal parts	
Main body	Fan abnor- mality	C-0305	The EM signal shows an abnor- mal condition when a specified period of time elapses after the paper exit cooling fan /Rr (FM19) turns ON. This abnormal condi- tion recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM8 is turned OFF and then ON again.	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Exhaust fan /Rr (FM19) Printer control board (PRCB)	
FS	FS abnor- mality	C-1001* C-1002*	Serial reception error detection abnormality. Start response error detection abnormality.	The main body and the FS stop immediately to turn OFF the	FNS control board (FNSCB) Connector	
	FS/PK- 503/ 504/505 abnor- mality	C-1003	The communication between FS and PK fails. It shows an abnor- mal condition after 4 retries.	main relay (RL1).	main relay (RL1).	Relay board (RB) FNS control board (FNSCB) Punch drive board (PDB)
	FS abnor- mality	C-1004	The communication fails when the sub-CPU on the FNS control board (FNSCB) receives data.		FNS control board (FNSCB)	
		C-1005	The communication fails when the main-CPU on the FNS control board (FNSCB) receives data.			
		C-1101 (FS-504/ 602)	The shift unit does not reach the shift position or HP after the shift roller motor (M2) starts its operation.		FNS control board (FNSCB) Shift roller motor (M2) Shift roller home sensor (PS18)	
	SF abnor- mality	C-1101	The shift motor (PS702) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the shift motor (M703) starts operations.	The main body and the SF stop immediately to turn OFF the main relay (RL1).	SF control board (SFCB) Shift motor (M703) Shift home sensor (PS702)	
	FS abnor- mality	C-1102 (FS-504/ 602)	The main tray upper limit sensor (PS2) or the stapler paper exit upper limit sensor (PS7) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the main tray lift motor (M3) starts its operation.	The main body and the FS stop immediately to turn OFF the main relay (RL1).	FNS control board (FNSCB) Main tray up down motor (M3) Main tray upper limit sensor (PS2) Stapler paper exit upper limit sensor (PS7)	

Cla	sification	Code	Causes	Resulting operation	Estimated abnormal parts
FS	SF abnor- mality	C-1102	The tray upper limit sensor (PS703) or the tray lower limit sensor (PS704) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the tray lift motor (M702) starts its operation. Or, PS703 does not turn ON within a speci- fied period of time after it turns OFF.	The main body and the FS stop immediately to turn OFF the main relay (RL1).	SF control board (SFCB) Tray up/down motor (M702) Tray upper limit sensor (PS703) Tray lower limit sensor (PS704)
	FS abnor- mality	C-1103	The alignment home sensor /Up (PS8) does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after the alignment motor /Up (M5) starts its operation. Or, PS8 does not turn ON within a specified period of time after it turns OFF.		FNS control board (FNSCB) Relay board (RB) Alignment motor /Up (M5) Alignment home sensor /Up (PS8)
		C-1104	The paper exit roller motor (M7) does not complete the whole one rotation within a specified period of time after it starts its operation.		FNS control board (FNSCB) Paper exit roller motor (M7)
		C-1105	The open/close operation is not completed within a specified period of time after the paper exit motor (M8) starts its operation. The paper exit home sensor (PS12) does not turn ON or OFF.		FNS control board (FNSCB) Paper exit opening motor (M8) Paper exit home sensor (PS12)
		C-1106	The stapler movement motor (M11) does not reach HP within a specified period of time after it starts its operation. Or, it does not pass through HP within a specified period of time after it reaches the standby posi- tion for 2 staples.		FNS control board (FNSCB) Relay board (RB) Stapler movement motor (M11) Stapler movement home sensor (PS11)
	FS- 602 abnor- mality	C-1107	The clincher rotation motor (M4) does not reach HP within a spec- ified period of time after it starts its operation. Or, it does not pass through HP within a specified period of time after it starts its skew rotation.		FNS control board (FNSCB) Relay board (RB) Clincher rotation motor (M4) Clincher rotation home sen- sor (PS14)

Cla	ssification	Code	Causes	Resulting	Estimated abnormal parts
				operation	
S	FS	C-1108	The stapler rotation motor (M6)	The main body	FNS control board (FNSCB)
-	abnor-		does not reach HP within a spec-	and the FS stop	Relay board (RB)
	mality		ified period of time after it starts	immediately to	Stapler rotation motor (M6)
			its operation. Or, it does not pass	turn OFF the	Stapler rotation home sensor
			through HP within a specified	main relay (RL1).	(PS13)
			period of time after it starts its		
			skew rotation.		
		C-1109	The stapler motor home sensor /		FNS control board (FNSCB)
			Fr (PS31) does not turn ON within		Relay board (RB)
			a specified period of time after		Stapler motor /Fr (M14)
			the stapler motor /Fr (M14) starts		Stapler motor home sensor /
			its operation.		Fr (PS31)
		C-1110	The stapler motor home sensor /		FNS control board (FNSCB)
			Rr (PS30) does not turn ON		Relay board (RB)
			within a specified period of time		Stapler motor /Rr (M9)
			after the stapler motor /Rr (M9)		Stapler motor home sensor /
			starts its operation.		Rr (PS30)
	FS-	C-1111	The clincher motor home sensor /		FNS control board (FNSCB)
	602		Fr (PS33) does not turn ON within		Relay board (RB)
	abnor-		a specified period of time after		Clincher motor /Fr (M15)
	mality		the clincher motor /Fr (M15)		Clincher motor home sensor
			starts its operation.		/Fr (PS33)
		C-1112	The clincher motor home sensor /		FNS control board (FNSCB)
			Rr (PS32) does not turn ON		Clincher motor /Rr (M10)
			within a specified period of time		Clincher motor home sensor
			after the clincher motor /Rr (M10)		/Rr (PS32)
			starts its operation.		
		C-1113	The saddle stitching stopper		FNS control board (FNSCB)
			home sensor (PS23) does not		Relay board (RB)
			turn ON within a specified period		Saddle stitching stopper
			of time after the saddle stitching		motor (M18)
			stopper motor (M18) starts its		Saddle stitching stopper
			Or DCO2 does not turn ON within		nome sensor (PS23)
			Or, PS23 does not turn ON within		
			turns OFF		
		0 1114	The alignment home concer () w		ENIS control board (ENISCE)
		0-1114	(DS24) does not turn ON within a		FINS CONTROL DUARD (FINSUB)
			(F324) does not turn ON within a		Alignment motor (Lw (M16)
			alignment motor /I w (M16) starts		Alignment home sensor /Lw
			its operation		(PS24)
		C-1115	The folding knife home concer		ENS control board (ENSOP)
		0-1110	(PS22) does not turn ON within a		Folding knife motor (M10)
			specified period of time after the		Folding knife home sensor
			folding knife motor (M19) starts		(PS22)
			the HP detection.		/

Clas	sification	Code	Causes	Resulting operation	Estimated abnormal parts
FS	FS- 602 abnor- mality	C-1116	The folding transfer motor (M20) does not reach the standard speed within a specified period of time after it starts its operation.	The main body and the FS stop immediately to turn OFF the	FNS control board (FNSCB) Tri-folding gate solenoid (M20)
	PI abnor- mality	C-1124	The tray upper limit sensor /Lw (PS209) or the tray lower limit sensor /Lw (PS210) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the tray lift motor /Lw (M202) starts its operation.	main relay (RL1).	FNS control board (FNSCB) Pl drive board (PIDB) Tray lift motor /Lw (M202) Tray upper limit /Lw (PS209) Tray lower limit /Lw (PS210)
		C-1125	The tray upper limit sensor /Up (PS204) or the tray lower limit sensor /Up (PS205) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the tray lift motor /Up (M201) starts its operation.		FNS control board (FNSCB) Pl drive board (PIDB) Tray lift motor /Up (M201) Tray upper limit sensor /Up (PS204) Tray lower limit sensor /Up (PS205)
		C-1126	The transfer motor (M203) does not reach the standard speed within a specified period of time after it starts its operation.		FNS control board (FNSCB) Conveyance motor (M203)
	PK-503/ 504 abnor- mality	C-1127	The punch registration home sen- sor (PS303) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the punch registration motor (M302) starts its operation. Or, PS303 does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after it turns ON.		FNS control board (FNSCB) Punch drive board (PDB) Punch registration motor (M302) Punch registration home sensor (PS303)
	ZU abnor- mality	C-1130	The 1st stopper home sensor (PS3) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the 1st stopper motor (M2) starts searching home position.		ZU control board (ZUCB) 1st stopper motor (M2) 1st stopper home sensor (PS3)
		C-1131	The 2nd stopper home sensor (PS4) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the 2nd stopper motor (M3) starts searching home position.		ZU control board (ZUCB) 2nd stopper motor (M3) 2nd stopper home sensor (PS4)
	PK-502/ 503/504 abnor- mality	C-1132	The punch home sensor (PS301) does not turn ON within a speci- fied period of time after the punch motor (M301) starts its operation.		FNS control board (FNSCB) PK control board (PKDB) Punch motor (M301) Punch home sensor (PS301)

Classificat	ion Code	Causes	Resulting	Estimated abnormal parts
တ္ ZU abno mality	C-1133	The punch shift home sensor (PS5) does not turn ON within a specified period of time after the punch shift motor (M5) starts searching home position. Or, PS5 does not turn OFF within a speci- fied period of time after it turns ON.	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Punch shift motor (M5) Punch shift home sensor (PS5) ZU control board (ZUCB)
	G-1134	The EM signal of the conveyance motor cooling fan (M10) shows an abnormal condition within a specified period of time after M10 turns ON. This abnormal condi- tion recurs after three retries.		Conveyance motor cooling fan (M10) ZU control board (ZUCB)
	C-1135	The punch motor (M4) does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after it starts its operation.		Punch motor (M4) ZU control board (ZUCB)
	C-1136	The punch switchover switch (MS2) does not change its status from ON to OFF or OFF to ON within a specified period of time after the punch switchover motor (M8) starts its operation.		Punch switchover motor (M8) Punch switchover switch (MS2) ZU control board (ZUCB)
FS abno mality	C-1137 r- y	The gate home sensor (PS16) does not turn ON within a speci- fied period of time after the gate motor (M12) starts its operation. Or, PS16 does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after it turns ON.		FNS control board (FNSCB) Relay board (RB) Gate motor (M12) Gate home sensor (PS16)
	C-1138	FNS conveyance motor (M1) is out of order. PLL does not become Low within a specified period of time after it starts its operation.		FNS conveyance motor (M1) FNS control board (FNSCB)
	C-2101	The lock signal of the charging cleaning motor (M14) is not detected when a specified period of time elapses after it starts the backward operation (from rear to front).		Charging cleaning motor (M14) Printer control board (PRCB)
	C-1139	The registration shutter home sensor (PS307) does not turn OFF within a specified period of time after the registration shutter motor (M303) starts its operation.	-	Registration shutter motor (M FNS control board (FNSCB)

Cla	ssification	Code	Causes	Resulting operation	Estimated abnormal parts
Main body	Wire clean- ing abnor- mality	C-2102 C-2103	The lock signal of the charging cleaning motor (M14) is detected when a specified period of time elapses after it starts the backward operation (from rear to front). Or, the lock signal of M14 is not detected within a specified time after a specified time. When in a retry after the lock	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Charging cleaning motor (M14) Printer control board (PRCB)
			detection, the lock signal of the charging cleaning motor (M14) is not detected when a specified period of time elapses after M14 starts the backward operation (from rear to front).		
		C-2104	The transfer/separation cleaning home sensor (PS52) does not turn ON when a specified period of time elapses after the transfer/ separation cleaning motor (M10) starts the backward operation (from rear to front). Or, PS52 does not turn OFF when a specified period of time elapses after M10 starts the forward operation (from rear to front).		Transfer/separation cleaning motor (M10) ADU drive board (ADUDB) Printer control board (PRCB) Transfer/separation cleaning home sensor (PS52) Transfer/separation cleaning limit sensor (PS53)
		C-2105	Either the transfer/separation cleaning home sensor (PS52) or the transfer/separation cleaning limit sensor (PS53) does not turn its status from ON to OFF or from OFF to ON when a specified period of time elapses after the transfer/separation cleaning motor (M10) starts its operation.		
	Motor abnor- mality	C-2201	An error of the EM signal is detected when a specified period of time elapses after the toner bottle motor (M13) turns ON.		Toner bottle motor (M13) Printer control board (PRCB)
		C-2202	An error of the EM signal is detected when a specified period of time elapses after the develop- ing motor (M3) turns ON.		Developing motor (M3) Printer control board (PRCB)
		C-2203	An error of the EM signal is detected when a specified period of time elapses after the drum motor (M2) turns ON.		Drum motor (M2) Printer control board (PRCB)

Classification		Code	Causes	Resulting operation	Estimated abnormal parts
Main body	EL con- nection abnor- mality	C-2401	The erase lamp (EL) is uncon- nected.	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Erase lamp (EL)
	Fan abnor- mality	C-2301	The EM signal shows an abnor- mal condition when a specified period of time elapses after the developing suction fan (FM4) turns ON. This abnormal condi- tion recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM4 is turned OFF and then ON again.		Developing suction fan (FM4) Printer control board (PRCB)
		C-2302	The EM signal shows an abnor- mal condition when a specified period of time elapses after the cleaner cooling fan (FM5) turns ON. This abnormal condition recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM5 is turned OFF and then ON again.		Cleaner cooling fan (FM5) ADU drive board (ADUDB) Printer control board (PRCB)
		C-2303	The EM signal shows an abnor- mal condition when a specified period of time elapses after the developing cooling fan (FM12) turns ON. This abnormal condi- tion recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM12 is turned OFF and then ON again.		Developing cooling fan (FM12) Printer control board (PRCB)
	High volt- age power	C-2701	The charging ON/OFF operation is repeated five times after an error detection signal of the charging is detected when the charging is ON.		High voltage unit (HV)
	abnor- mality	C-2702	The transfer ON/OFF operation is repeated five times after an error detection signal of the transfer is detected when the transfer is ON.		High voltage unit (HV)
		C-2703	The separation ON/OFF opera- tion is repeated five times after an error detection signal of the sepa- ration is detected when the sepa- ration is ON.		

Classification		Code	Causes	Resulting	Estimated abnormal parts
Main body	Pro- cess abnor- mality	C-2801 C-2803	While in the maximum density correction, the dirt correction of the maximum density sensor is not sufficient. When this condition is detected 10 times in succes- sion, the error code is displayed. While in the maximum density	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Toner control sensor board (TCSB) Printer control board (PRCB)
			correction, a patch for control is not output. (No output is made from the maximum density sen- sor.)		
		C-2804	While in the gamma correction, the dirt correction of the gamma sensor is not sufficient. When this condition is detected 10 times in succession, the error code is dis- played.		
		C-2805	While in the gamma correction, a patch for control is not output. (No output is made from the gamma sensor.)	An error code is not displayed on the operation panel. It is dis-	
		C-2806	A regression error when earrying out a gamma curve operation while in the gamma correction.	played only on the data collec- tion, the list out- put, and CSRC. The control of the main body is made by using a data previously obtained.	
		C-2807	While in the dot diameter correc- tion, the dirt correction of the gamma sensor is not sufficient. When this condition is detected 10 times in succession, the error code is displayed.	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	

Classification		Code	Causes	Resulting	Estimated abnormal parts
				operation	
dy	Pro-	C-2809	While in the dot diameter correc-	An error code is	Toner control sensor board
bc	Cess		tion, the correction is terminated	not displayed on	(TCSB)
lair	abnor-		with an abnormal value.	the operation	Printer control board (PRCB)
2	mality			panel. It is dis-	
				played only on	
				the data collec-	
				tion, the list out-	
				put, and CSRC.	
				The control of	
				the main body is	
				made by using a	
				data previously	
				obtained.	
	Other	C-3401	Fusing error detection 1	The main body	ADU drive board (ADUDB)
	abnorm		Loose connection of the ADU	stops immedi-	Printer control board (PRCB)
	alities		drive board (ADUDB) and the	atelv to turn OFF	
	of the		printer control board (PRCB)	the RL1 (main).	
	fusina		The malfunction of the serial		
	control		communication		
			• The malfunction of the sub-		
			CPU on ADU		
		C-3402	Fusing error detection 2		
		0 0 102	Loose connection of the ADU		
			drive board (ADUDB) and the		
			printer control board (PBCB)		
			The malfunction of the serial		
			The malfunction of the sub		
			CDU on ADU		
			GFU UITADU		

Clas	ssification	Code	Causes	Resulting operation	Estimated abnormal parts
Main body	Fusing high tem- perature abnor- mality	C-3501	Thermistor /1 (TH1) detects a temperature over a specified temperature 5 times in succession in a specified period.	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Printer control board (PRCB) Fusing heater lamp /1 (L2) Fusing heater lamp /2 (L3) Fusing heater lamp /3 (L4) Thermistor /1 (TH1)
		C-3502	 Thermistor /1 (TH1) detects the followings: The temperature of the sensor for detection is over a specified temperature. The temperature of the sensor for compensation is over a specified temperature. The temperature of the middle part of the fusing roller is over a specified temperature. 		 NOTE C-3401 to C-3901 (fusing temperature related abnormalities) occur, be sure to repair defective parts before setting the software DIPSW3-1 to 0. Setting the DIPSW3-1 to 0 with defective
		C-3801	high temperature or a low tem- perature. Thermistor /1 (TH1) does not reach a specified temperature when a specified period of time elapses after the power switch (SW2) is turned ON for the fusing ON control.		parts not repaired may result in a fire.
		C-3802	Thermistor /1 (TH1) does not reach a specified temperature when warming up is completed. Thermistor /1 (TH1) detects a low temperature when a specified period of time elapses after the fusing heater lamp is turned ON for the fusing ON control.		

C-3807

The temperature of heater does not reach the specified temperature during warming up in alarm recovery.

Classification		Code	Causes	Resulting operation	Estimated abnormal parts
Main body	Fusing low tem- perature abnor- mality	C-3901	Thermistor /1 (TH1) does not reach a specified temperature when a specified period of time elapses after the power switch (SW2) is turned ON for the fusing ON control.	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Printer control board (PRCB) Fusing power board (FPB) Fusing heater lamp /1 (L2) Fusing heater lamp /2 (L3) Fusing heater lamp /3 (L4) Thermistor /1 (TH1) Thermistor /2 (TH2)
					 NOTE C-3401 to C-3901 (fusing temperature related abnormalities) occur, be sure to repair defective parts before setting the software DIPSW3-1 to 0. Setting the DIPSW3-1 to 0 with defective parts not repaired may result in a fire.
	Motor	C-4101	The lock signal of the polygon		Polygon motor (M15)
	abnor-		motor (M15) is not detected		Polygon motor drive board
	maiity		when M15 starts or changes its speed.		Printer control board (PRCB)
	Fan abnor- mality	C-4301	The WRFAN1_EM signal shows an abnormal condition when a specified period of time elapses after the polygon cooling fan (FM2) turns ON. This abnormal condition recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM2 is turned OFF and then ON again.		Polygon cooling fan (FM2) Printer control board (PRCB)
	Image pro- cessing abnor- mality	C-4704*	While in the execution of APC, no change is found in the output of the index sensor.	1	Write unit Power connector of the image processing board (IPB) Power connector of the sys- tem control board (SCB) (IPB)
13. MALFUNCTION CODE

Classification		Code	Causes	Resulting operation	Estimated abnormal parts
Main body	Image pro- cessing abnor- mality	C-4705*	While in the image write, the expansion processing of image data from the memory to the printer is not correctly terminated. The output from the page mem- ory to the printer does not termi- nate within a specified period of time.	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Printer control board (PRCB) Image processing board (IPB) System control board (SCB)
		C-4707*	 One of the following APC errors is detected: APC is not applicable. The 12V DC power for the laser drive is not supplied. MPC is wrong. Due to the laser defective, the laser does not light up. Or, the index sensor cannot detect the laser due to the followings: The polygon mirror does not rotate. The position of the index sensor is not correct. The index sensor is defective. 	If there is a sheet of paper being printed, the main body completes the paper exit before stopping operations. Immediately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Write unit Power connector of the image processing board (IPB) Power connector of the sys- tem control board (SCB) (IPB) Printer control board (PRCB)
	Commu- nication abnor- mality	C-5001* C-5002*	Main body drive serial input abnormality 1. The serial data is not received from the main body drive unit within a specified period of time after the power on ACK. Main body drive serial input abnormality 2. The serial data is not received from the main body drive unit within a specified period of time	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Printer control board (PRCB)
		C-5003*	after the power on ACK. Main body drive serial input abnormality 3. The serial data is not received from the main body drive unit within a specified period of time after the power on ACK.		

Classification		Code	Causes	Resulting	Estimated abnormal parts
Main body	Commu- nication abnor- mality	C-5004*	Main body drive serial input abnormality 4. The serial data is not received from the main body drive unit within a specified period of time after the power on ACK.	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Printer control board (PRCB)
		C-5005*	An error is detected while in receiving the drive communica- tion. An reception error interrupt occurs when in receiving a serial data from the drive board. Or, a request for sending the data again is made 3 times due to a checksum error/ID information error and another error is detected again.		Printer control board (PRCB) Drive board
		C-5006*	The image processing board fails to communicate. The initial data is not received from the image processing board (IPB) within a specified period of time after the power is turned ON.		Printer control board (PRCB) Image processing board (IPB)
		C-5007*	An reception error is detected in the serial communication with the image processing board (IPB).		Image processing board (IPB)
	ADU abnor- mality	C-5008*	ADU drive serial input abnormality 1. The serial data is not received from the ADU drive board (ADUDB) with ID=0 within a spec- ified period of time after ACK when the power switch (SW2) is ON.	1	ADU drive board (ADUDB)
		C-5009*	ADU drive serial input abnormality 2. The serial data is not received from the ADU drive board (ADUDB) with ID=7-10 within a specified period of time after ACK when the power switch (SW2) is ON.	1	

13. MALFUNCTION CODE

Classification		Code	Causes	Resulting	Estimated abnormal parts
λ	ADU	C-5013	ADU drive communication abnor-	operation The main body	ADU drive board (ADUDB)
INIAIN DOC	abnor- mality		mality. The communication data with ID=8-10 is not received within a specified period of time after the initial communication is estab- lished.	stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	
	Motor abnor- mality	C-5101	An error of the EM signal is detected in succession for a specified period of time when a specified period of time elapses after the fusing motor (M4) turns ON.		Fusing motor (M4) Printer control board (PRCB)
	Fan abnor- mality	C-5301	The EM signal of the power sup- ply cooling fan /1 (FM16) shows an abnormal condition when a specified period of time elapses after FM16 turns ON. This abnor- mal condition recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM16 is turned OFF and then ON again.		Power supply cooling fan /1 (FM16) DC power supply /1 (DCPS1)
		C-5302	The EM signal shows an abnor- mal condition when a specified period of time elapses after the cooling fan /1 (FM1) turns ON. This abnormal condition recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM1 is turned OFF and then ON again.		Cooling fan /1 (FM1) Printer control board (PRCB)
		C-5303	The EM signal of the power sup- ply cooling fan /2 (FM15) shows an abnormal condition when a specified period of time elapses after FM15 turns ON. This abnor- mal condition recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM16 is turned OFF and then ON again.		Power supply cooling fan /2 (FM15) Printer control board (PRCB)
		C-5304	The EM signal shows an abnor- mal condition when a specified period of time elapses after the IH cooling fan /1 (FM17) turns ON. This abnormal condition recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM1 is turned OFF and then ON again.		IH cooling fan /1 (FM17) Printer control board (PRCB)

Classification		Code	Causes	Resulting operation	Estimated abnormal parts
Main body	Fan abnor- mality	C-5305	The EM signal shows an abnor- mal condition when a specified period of time elapses after the fusing cooling fan (FM18) turns ON. This abnormal condition recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM18 is turned OFF and then ON again.	stops immedi- ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Fusing cooling fan (FM18) ADU drive board (ADUDB)
	Scan- ner abnor- mality	C-6101	The scanner home sensor (PS61) does not turn ON within a speci- fied period of time after the scan- ner motor (M11) turns ON.		Scanner motor (M11) Scanner home sensor (PS61) Scanner drive board (SDB) Printer control board (PRCB)
	Fan abnor- mality	C-6301	The EM signal shows an abnor- mal condition when a specified period of time elapses after the scanner cooling fan (FM9) turns ON. This abnormal condition recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM9 is turned OFF and then ON again.		Scanner cooling fan (FM9) Scanner drive board (SDB) Printer control board (PRCB)
	Image pro- cessing abnor-	C-6701*	Filter coefficient abnormality.	If there is a sheet of paper being printed, the main body completes the paper exit before stopping operations. Immediately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Image processing board (IPB) System control board (SCB) Image controller program
	mality	C-6703*	After negation of SW, the com- pression of images that are read in and their development into the page memory are not terminated within a specified period of time.		Image processing board (IPB) System control board (SCB)
		C-6704*	While in the image read, the com- pression processing from the scanner into the memory does not terminate within a specified period of time. The development from the scanner into the page memory does not terminate within a specified period of time.		Printer control board (PRCB) Image processing board (IPB) System control board (SCB)
		C-6706*	While in the image read, SVV does not turn OFF within a speci- fied period of time and the prepa- ration for scanning the next page cannot be started.		Image processing board (IPB) System control board (SCB)

13. MALFUNCTION CODE

Classification		Code	Causes	Resulting operation	Estimated abnormal parts
A limage pro- cessing abnor- mality	Image pro- cessing abnor- mality	C-6707*	Shading correction abnormality (GA abnormality).	If there is a sheet of paper being printed, the main body completes the paper exit before stopping operations. Immediately to turn OFF the RL1 (main). An error code is not displayed on the operation panel. It is dis- played only on the data collec- tion, the list out- put, and CSRC.	Image processing board (IPB) System control board (SCB) Image controller program
		C-6708*	 AGC adjustment level abnormality. The light blocking cover at the read section and the lens cover are removed. The connector of the CCD board (CCDB) is disconnected. The power cable of the CCDB is unplugged. The IC protector of the CCDB converter board is cut off. The light volume of the exposure lamp is excessive. The exposure lamp does not light up. 		CCD board (CCDB) Exposure lamp (L1)
		C-6709*	The adjustment data evacuated by resolutions is not available. A density conversion gamma curve cannot be created normally.		Image processing board (IPB) System control board (SCB)
		C-6713*	Despite of the MPC not being ter- minated, the initial sampling of the APC is attempted.	If there is a sheet of paper being printed,	Image processing board (IPB) System control board (SCB)
		C-6714*	While executing the APC, the execution of the MPC is attempted.	the main body completes the paper exit before stopping operations. Immediately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	Image controller program
		C-6717*	Sequentially shot page area abnormality. Due to an image area abnormality on the memory, images cannot be developed on the memory.		

Classification	Code	Causes	Resulting	Estimated abnormal parts
Apo Image pro- cessing abnor- mality	C-6719	The scan operation starts before the original skew adjustment is terminated. (The skew adjust- ment is too late.)	An error code is not displayed on the operation panel. It is dis- played only on	Printer control board (PRCB) Original conveyance sensor (PS306) Original skew sensor (PS307)
	C-6720	The print operation starts before the paper mis-centering adjust- ment is terminated. (The mis-cen- tering adjustment is too late.)	the data collec- tion, the list out- put, and CSRC.	Centering sensor (PS66)
	C-6721	The AGC is retried due to the decreased light volume of the exposure lamp. However, no error occurs.		Exposure lamp (L1)
	C-6722	A PWM gamma curve is not cre- ated properly.		Toner control sensor board (TCSB)
Oper- ation panel abnor- mality	C-6801*	The communication between the system control board (SCB) and the operation board /1 (OB1) does not start after the power switch (SW2) turns ON.	The display on the operation panel is not cor- rect.	System control board (SCB) Operation board /1 (OB1)
Fan	C-8301	The EM signal of the cooling fan	The main body	Scanner drive board (SDB)
mality		tion when a specified period of time elapses after FM1 turns ON. This abnormal condition recurs when a specified period of time elapses after FM1 is turned OFF and then ON again.	ately to turn OFF the RL1 (main).	
Commu- nication uew abnor- mality	C-C101*	The printer control board (PRCB) does not answer after a specified period of time when the power switch (SW2) is ON. Printer control board (PRCB)	-	Printer control board (PRCB
	C-C103*	communication error. Operation panel communication	-	Operation board /1 (OB1)
	C-C104	error. When the main power switch (SW2) is ON, a region into which no write was made by the ISW is detected in the printer control program		Printer controller program
	C-C106	When ISW transfers data, the correct header information is not received in a specified period of time.	-	Printer cable Parallel port on PC
Motor abnor- mality	C-8101	The conveyance roller pressure/ release home sensor (PS308) does not turns OFF within a specified period of time after the	•	Scanner drive board (SDB) Conveyance roller pressure release motor (M4) Conveyance roller pressure

13. MALFUNCTION CODE

Field Service Ver1.0 Aug.2005

	Cla	ssification	Code	Causes	Resulting operation	Estimated abnormal parts
	ain body	ISW abnor- mality	C-C107	When ISW transfers data, a checksum error or a header error is detected.	The main body stops immedi- ately to turn OFF	Printer cable Program file corruption
	ž	,	C-C108	When ISW transfers data, the data is not written into the flash ROM correctly.	the RL1 (main).	Printer cable The board to which the data is transferred.
			C-C109	When the main power switch (SW2) is ON, a region into which no write was made by ISW is		FS program
				detected in the FS program.		
		Image	C-D001	Hard disk initialization abnormality.		Image processing board
		pro-		The hard disk is defective, or the		(IPB)
		cessing		connector is poorly connected.		System control board (SCB)
		abnor-	C-D002	The JOB information cannot be		HD-503
		mality		stored on the hard disk.		Image controller program
			C-D003	When in the execution of auto		Hard disk /1 (HD-503)
				deletion of a hard disk JOB, the		
				root can not be opened.		
			C-D004	Hard disk access defective.		
				The hard disk is defective or the		
				connector is connected improp-		
				erly.		
ſ		-	C-E001*	The message queue is insufficient	If there is a	Image processing board
			0	or destroyed.	sheet of paper	(IPB)
			C-E002*	The parameter value exceeds the permissible limit.	being printed, the main body	System control board (SCB)
			C-E003*	The ID of the task that sends the message queue is undefined.	completes the paper exit	Image processing board (IPB)
			C-E004*	The receiving event of the mes- sage is undefined.	operations.	System control board (SCB) Loose contact of EM-701
I			C-E005*	The message to the memory manager is incorrect.	turn OFF the RL1 (main).	
I			C-E006*	Header readout address abnor- mality.		Image processing board (IPB)
			C-E007*	The initialization of expanded memory fails.		System control board (SCB) EM-701
				The expanded memory board may not be installed correctly		
\mathbf{F}			C-D201	System control board (SCB) detects the CPU cooling fan		System control board (SCB) CPU cooling fan (FM20)
ŀ			C-D202	System control board (SCB) detects the HDD cooling fan (FM21) locked.		System control board (SCB) HDD cooling fan (FM21)
			C-D203	System control board (SCB) detects the error of the initial communication with the image processing board (IPB).		System control board (SCB) Image processing board (IPB
43	6		C-C111	After ISW, the program of the main body does not match that of the printer.		Main body program Printer program

C. Function to detach defective sections

For those abnormalities listed in the table below, defective units can be detached temporarily to use other control units manually.

While detached, an error detection is not carried out on these detached units.

There are 2 methods of setting for limited use.

(1) User operation

When an error code occurs, press the HELP key following the message on the LCD and then turn the power switch (SW2) OFF and ON. This allows you to use it temporarily until the main power switch (SW1) is OFF and ON (including an OFF/ON operation by the weekly timer) next time.

(2) DIPSW setting

Turning the main switch OFF and ON after setting the specified software DIPSW bit allows you to make a limited use of it until the bit setting is released next time (this requires the OFF/ON operation of the main power switch (SW1)).

Classifi-	Error code	de Description Control while detached		DIPSW
cation				
Main	C-0201	Paper lift motor /1 abnormality	normality Paper feed in tray /1 is	
body	C-0202	Tray /1 up abnormality	unavailable	DIPSW18-0
	C-0203	Paper lift motor /2 abnormality	Paper feed in tray /2 is	DIPSW18-1
	C-0204	Tray /2 up abnormality	unavailable	DIPSW18-1
	C-0205 Paper lift motor /3 abnormality Paper feed in tray /3 is		Paper feed in tray /3 is	DIPSW18-2
	C-0206	Tray /3 up abnormality	unavailable	DIPSW18-2
	C-0207	Paper lift motor /4 abnormality	Paper feed in tray /4 is	DIPSW19-0
	C-0208	Tray /4 up abnormality	unavailable	DIPSW19-0
LU	C-0102	LU paper feed motor abnormality	The use of LU is unavail-	DIPSW18-3
	C-0209	LU UP/DOWN motor abnormality	able	DIPSW18-3
Main	C-D001 to	HDD abnormality	The use of HDD is unavail-	DIPSW18-7
body	D004		able	
DF	C-8301	DF motor cooling fan abnormality	DF mode unavailable	DIPSW18-4
FS	C-1114 to 1116	Folding, saddle stitching, and tri-fold-	The stapling and folding	DIPSW18-5
		ing abnormality	functions are unavailable.	
PI	C-1124 to 1126	PI abnormality	The use of PI is unavailable	DIPSW18-6
ZU	C-1129 to 1131	ZU folding abnormality	ZU folding unavailable	DIPSW19-4
PK, ZU	C-1003, 1127,	PK, ZU punch shift motor abnormality	Punching function unavail-	DIPSW19-5
	1133		able	

Blank page



14. PARTS LAYOUT DRAWING

14.1 Main body

14.1.1 Switch/sensor

A. Main body rear side



[1] Dehumidification heater switch (SW3)

[2] Humidity sensor (HUM)

B. Main body front surface



- [1] Power switch (SW2)
- [2] Door open/close sensor /1 (PS38)
- [3] Toner supply door sensor (PS40)
- [4] Main power switch (SW1)

- [5] Interlock switch /2 (MS2)
- [6] Door open/close sensor /2 (PS39)
- [7] Interlock switch /1 (MS1)

C. Main body upper surface



- [1] APS sensor /2 (PS64)
- [2] APS sensor /1 (PS63)
- [3] APS sensor /3 (PS65)

- [4] Scanner home sensor (PS61)
- [5] APS timing sensor (PS51)

D. Toner supply section



[1] Toner remaining sensor (PZS)

E. Tray 1, 2



- Paper feed sensor /1 (PS1) (Tray 1)Paper feed sensor /2 (PS7) (Tray 2)
- [2] Paper empty sensor /1 (PS3) (Tray 1)Paper empty sensor /2 (PS9) (Tray 2)
- [3] Upper limit sensor /1 (PS2) (Tray 1) Upper limit sensor /2 (PS8) (Tray 2)
- [4] Remaining paper sensor /1 (PS4) (Tray 1)
 Remaining paper sensor /2 (PS10) (Tray 2)

F. Tray 3, 4



- Paper empty sensor /3 (PS15) (Tray 3)
 Paper empty sensor /4 (PS21) (Tray 4)
- Paper feed sensor /3 (PS13) (Tray 3)Paper feed sensor /4 (PS19) (Tray 4)
- [3] Remaining paper sensor /3 (PS16) (Tray 3) Remaining paper sensor /4 (PS22) (Tray 4)
- [4] Paper size VR /3 (VR3) (Tray 3)Paper size VR /4 (VR4) (Tray 4)

- [5] Paper size sensor /Fr1 (PS17) (Tray 3) Paper size sensor /Fr2 (PS23) (Tray 4)
- [6] Paper size sensor /Rr1 (PS18) (Tray 3)Paper size sensor /Rr2 (PS24) (Tray 4)
- Upper limit sensor /3 (PS14) (Tray 3)
 Upper limit sensor /4 (PS20) (Tray 4)

G. Bypass tray



- [1] Paper size sensor /Rr3 (PS32)
- [2] Paper size sensor /Fr3 (PS31)
- [3] Paper size VR /BP (VR5)
- [4] Upper limit sensor /Bypass (PS34)
- [5] Loop sensor (PS36)
- [6] Paper empty sensor /Bypass (PS33)
- [7] Lower limit sensor /Bypass (PS35)

H. Vertical conveyance section



- [1] Conveyance door sensor /Up (PS12)
- [2] Conveyance door sensor /Lw (PS29)
- [3] Vertical conveyance sensor /4 (PS28)
- [4] Vertical conveyance sensor /3 (PS27)
- [5] Vertical conveyance sensor /2 (PS26)
- [6] Vertical conveyance sensor /1 (PS25)

I. Registration section



[1] Paper leading edge sensor (PS43)

[2] Registration sensor (PS44)

[3] Centering sensor (PS66)

APPENDIX

J. Horizontal conveyance section



- [1] Horizontal conveyance set sensor (PS11)
- [3] Horizontal conveyance sensor /Lt (PS5)
- [2] Horizontal conveyance sensor /Rt (PS6)

K. ADU section



- [1] ADU deceleration sensor (PS49)
- [2] ADU pre-registration sensor (PS50)
- [3] Transfer/separation cleaning home sensor (PS52)
- [4] ADU reverse sensor (PS45)
- [5] ADU conveyance sensor /2 (PS48)

- [6] Reverse/exit sensor (PS46)
- [7] Paper reverse sensor (PS42)
- [8] ADU handle release sensor (PS47)
- [9] Transfer/separation cleaning limit sensor (PS53)

L. Fusing section



- [1] Thermistor /2 (TH2)
- [2] Thermistor /1 (TH1)
- [3] Thermostat /3 (TS3)

- [4] Fusing exit sensor (PS30)
- [5] Thermostat /4 (TS4)

M. Paper exit section



[1] Paper exit sensor (PS37)

14.1.2 Load

A. Main body rear side 1



- [1] Scanner motor (M11)
- [2] Cooling fan /1 (FM1)
- [3] Drum motor (M2)
- [4] Paper exit fan (FM8)
- [5] Fusing motor (M4)
- [6] Power supply cooling fan /1 (FM16)

- [7] Paper feed motor (M1)
- [8] Loop motor (M6)
- [9] Developing suction fan (FM4)
- [10] Developing motor (M3)
- [11] Toner supply motor (M12)

B. Main body rear side 2



[1] HDD cooling fan (FM21)

[2] CPU cooling fan (FM20)



C. Main body front side/upper surface

[1] Cleaner cooling fan (FM5)

[2] Scanner cooling fan (FM9)

D. Main body left side



- [1] Polygon cooling fan (FM2)
- [2] Web solenoid (SD2)
- [3] Suction fan /Fr (FM6)

- [4] Power supply cooling fan /2 (FM15)
- [5] Exhaust fan /Rr (FM19)

E. Writing section



[1] Polygon motor (M15)

F. Photosensitive material section



[1] Toner recycle clutch (CL14)

[2] Drum claw solenoid (SD1)

G. Charger unit



[1] Charging cleaning motor (M14)

H. Toner supply section



[1] Toner bottle motor (M13)

[2] Toner supply motor (M12)

I. Tray 1, 2



- Pre-registration clutches /1 (CL4) (Tray 1) Pre-registration clutches /2 (CL6) (Tray 2)
- [2] Paper feed clutches /1 (CL3) (Tray 1)Paper feed clutches /2 (CL5) (Tray 2)
- [3] Separation clutches /1 (CL21) (Tray 1) Separation clutches /2 (CL22) (Tray 2)

J. Tray 3, 4



- [1] Pre-registration clutches /3 (CL8) (Tray 3) Pre-registration clutches /4 (CL10) (Tray 4)
- Separation clutches /3 (CL17) (Tray 3)
 Separation clutches /4 (CL18) (Tray 4)
- [3] Paper feed clutches /3 (CL7) (Tray 3)Paper feed clutches /3 (CL9) (Tray 4)

K. Bypass tray



[1] Bypass tray lift motor (M20)

L. Vertical conveyance/Horizontal conveyance section/main body right side



- [1] Horizontal conveyance clutch /Lt (CL15)
- [2] Horizontal conveyance clutch /Rt (CL16)
- [3] Vertical conveyance clutch /1 (CL11)
- [4] Vertical conveyance clutch /2 (CL12)
- [5] Paper lift motor /2 (M17)

M. Registration section

- [6] Paper lift motor /1 (M16)
- [7] Paper lift motor /3 (M18)
- [8] Paper lift motor /4 (M19)
- [9] Developing cooling fan (FM12)







- [1] Transfer/separation suction fan (FM3)
- [2] ADU reverse motor (M9)
- [3] ADU cooling fan (FM10)
- [4] ADU lock solenoid (SD9)
- [5] Transfer/separation cleaning motor (M10)
- [6] Registration motor (M5)

- [7] ADU deceleration clutch (CL2)
- [8] IH cooling fan /2 (FM18) (Japan only)
- [9] Reverse/exit solenoid (SD7)
- [10] ADU conveyance clutch (CL13)
- [11] Reverse/exit motor (M8)



O. Paper exit section

[1] Paper exit motor (M7)

[2] Exhaust fan /Rr (FM19)

[3] Suction fan /Fr (FM6)

14.1.3 Boards and others

A. Main body rear side



- [1] Scanner drive board (SDB)
- [2] HD-503
- [3] High voltage unit (HV)
- [4] Transformer /1 (T1)
- [5] Circuit breaker /2 (CBR2)
- [6] Circuit breaker /1 (CBR1)
- [7] Coil /1 (Coil)
- [8] DC power supply /2 (DCPS2)
- [9] Internal heater /1 (HTR1)

- [10] Internal heater /2 (HTR2)
- [11] Noise filter (NF)
- [12] Coil /2 (Coil)
- [13] DC power supply /1 (DCPS1)
- [14] Printer control board (PRCB)
- [15] System control board (SCB)
- [16] IC board (IC-202)
- [17] Image processing board (IPB)

B. Main body front side/upper surface



- [1] CCD board (CCDB)
- [2] Total counter (CNT1)

C. Operation panel section

[3] Speaker (SP)

- [4] L1 inverter (L1 INVB)
- [5] Exposure lamp (L1)

Image: state
- [1] Operation board /1 (OB1)
- [2] OB inverter (OB INVB)

- [3] Operation board /2 (OB2)
- [4] LCD board (LCDB)

D. Writing section



- [1] Index board (INDEXB)
- [2] Laser drive board (LDB)

[3] Polygon motor drive board (PMDB)

E. Photosensitive material section



F. Charger unit



[1] Erase lamp (EL)

G. ADU



[1] Transfer exposure lamp (TSL)

[2] ADU drive board (ADUDB)

H. Fusing section



- [1] Fusing heater lamp /2 (L3)
- [2] Fusing heater lamp /3 (L4)

[3] Fusing heater lamp /1 (L2)

14.2 DF

A. Front side/Upper surface



- [1] Original size VR (VR301)
- [2] Original registration sensor /3 (PS312)
- [3] RADF open/close sensor (PS311)
- [4] Conveyance roller pressure/release motor (M4)
- [5] Exit gate solenoid (SD2)
- [6] Reverse gate solenoid (SD1)
- [7] Pressure roller release solenoid (SD3)

- [8] Cover open/close switch (MS301)
- [9] Original registration sensor /2 (PS305)
- [10] Original registration sensor /1 (PS304)
- [11] Paper exit sensor (PS303)
- [12] Original set sensor (PS302)
- [13] Original size sensor /Lt (PS310)
- [14] Original size sensor /Rt (PS309)

B. Rear side



- [1] Original empty sensor (PS301)
- [2] Original separation motor (M3)
- [3] Original feed motor (M1)
- [4] Original conveyance motor (M2)

- [5] Conveyance roller pressure/release home sensor (PS308)
- [6] Cooling fan (FM1)

C. Rear side



[1] Stamp solenoid (SD4)

- [3] Original skew sensor (PS307)
- [2] Original conveyance sensor (PS306)

14.3 LU



- [1] Tray down switch (SW100)
- [2] Front door interlock switch (MS101)
- [3] Front door open/close sensor (PS110)
- [4] Pick-up solenoid (SD100)
- [5] Upper limit sensor (PS109)
- [6] LU exit sensor (PS106)
- [7] Pre-registration clutch (CL102)
- [8] Paper feed motor (M101)
- [9] LU drive board (LUDB)
- [10] Dehumidification heater (HTR101)
- [11] Lower limit sensor (PS101)

- [12] Remaining paper sensor /4 (PS105)
- [13] Remaining paper sensor /3 (PS104)
- [14] Remaining paper sensor /2 (PS103)
- [15] Remaining paper sensor /1 (PS102)
- [16] Paper lift motor (M100)
- [17] Feed clutch (CL101)
- [18] Upper door open/close sensor (PS100)
- [19] Upper door interlock switch (MS102)
- [20] Pre-registration sensor (PS107)
- [21] Paper empty sensor (PS108)

14.4 SF



- [1] Conveyance cover switch (SW701)
- [2] Conveyance motor (M701)
- [3] SF control board (SFCB)
- [4] Tray lower limit sensor (PS704)
- [5] Tray up/down motor (M702)

- [6] Shift motor (M703)
- [7] Shift home sensor (PS702)
- [8] Tray upper limit sensor (PS703)
- [9] Conveyance sensor (PS701)
- [10] Tray upper limit switch (SW702)

14.5 FS

A. Front side



- [1] Sub tray paper exit sensor (PS1)
- [2] Paper exit home sensor (PS12)
- [3] Gate home sensor (PS16)
- [4] FNS entrance sensor (PS4)
- [5] Registration shutter motor (M303)
- [6] Registration shutter home sensor (PS307)
- [7] Stapler movement motor (M11)
- [8] Door switch (MS1)
- [9] Clincher rotation motor (M4) (FS-602 only)
- [10] Alignment home sensor /Lw (PS24) (FS-602 only)
- [11] Alignment motor /Lw (M16) (FS-602 only)
- [12] Folding knife home sensor (PS22) (FS-602 only)
- [13] Folding knife motor (M19) (FS-602 only)
- [14] Flat stitching stopper release solenoid /Rr (SD8) (FS-602 only)
- [15] Saddle stitching stopper motor (M18) (FS-602 only)

- [16] Clincher rotation home sensor (PS14) (FS-602 only)
- [17] Folding pass-through sensor (PS26) (FS-602 only)
- [18] Saddle stitching stopper home sensor (PS23) (FS-602 only)
- [19] Flat stitching stopper release solenoid /Fr (SD7) (FS-602 only)
- [20] Stacker entrance sensor (PS5)
- [21] Stacker empty sensor (PS20)
- [22] Paper assist solenoid (SD51)
- [23] Paper assist motor (M51)
- [24] Alignment home sensor /Up (PS8)
- [25] Paper exit belt home sensor (PS9)
- [26] Stacker entrance motor (M13)
- [27] Shift roller home sensor (PS18)
- [28] Shift roller motor (M2)
- [29] Main tray paper exit sensor (PS6)
- [30] Sub tray paper full sensor (PS19)
- [31] Paper exit opening solenoid (SD4)
B. Rear side



- [1] Stapler paper exit upper limit sensor (PS7)
- [2] Main tray upper limit sensor (PS2)
- [3] Counter reset sensor (PS15)
- [4] Bypass gate solenoid (SD5)
- [5] Main tray lower limit sensor (PS3)
- [6] Main tray up down motor (M3)
- [7] Tri-folding gate solenoid (M20) (FS-602 only)

- [8] Relay board (RB)
- [9] FNS control board (FNSCB)
- [10] Gate motor (M12)
- [11] FNS conveyance motor (M1)
- [12] Paper exit opening motor (M8)
- [13] Sub tray exit motor (M21)
- [14] Paper exit roller motor (M7)

C. Folding section



- [1] Stapler movement home sensor (PS11)
- [2] Folding paper exit sensor (PS25) (FS-602 only)
- [3] Folding full LED (PS29) (FS-602 only)
- [4] Stapler movement motor (M11)
- [5] Folding full sensor (PS29) (FS-602 only)
- [6] Stapler rotation home sensor (PS13) (FS-602 only)
- [7] Tri-folding gate solenoid (SD6) (FS-602 only)
- [8] Stapler rotation motor (M6) (FS-602 only)
- [9] Alignment motor /Up (M5)

D. Stapler section



- Clincher motor /Rr (M10) (FS-602 only) / Clincher motor /Fr (M15) (FS-602 only)
- Clincher motor home sensor /Rr (PS32) (FS-602 only) /
 Clincher motor home sensor /Fr (PS33) (FS-602 only)
- [3] Stapler motor /Rr (M9) / Stapler motor /Fr (M14)

- [4] Stapler motor home sensor /Rr (PS30) / Stapler motor home sensor /Fr (PS31)
- [5] Cartridge set switch /Rr (SW1) / Cartridge set switch /Fr (SW3)
- [6] Staple empty switch /Rr (SW2) / Staple empty switch /Fr (SW4)

14.6 PI



- [1] PI drive board (PIDB)
- [2] Conveyance motor (M203)
- [3] Transfer clutch /Lw (CL202)
- [4] Registration clutch (CL203)
- [5] Paper empty sensor /Up (PS202)
- [6] Paper size VR /Up (VR201)
- [7] Paper entrance sensor /Up (PS201)
- [8] Tray upper limit sensor /Up (PS204)
- [9] Paper entrance sensor /Lw (PS206)
- [10] PI operation board (PIOB)
- [11] Pick-up solenoid /Lw (SD202)
- [12] Pick-up solenoid /Up (SD201)

- [13] Upper door open/close switch (MS201)
- [14] Tray upper limit sensor /Lw (PS209)
- [15] Paper empty sensor /Lw (PS207)
- [16] Paper size VR /Lw (VR202)
- [17] Paper set sensor /Lw (PS208)
- [18] Paper set sensor /Up (PS203)
- [19] L size sensor /Lw (PS212)
- [20] Tray lift motor /Lw (M202)
- [21] Tray lower limit sensor /Lw (PS210)
- [22] Tray lower limit sensor /Up (PS205)
- [23] Tray lift motor /Up (M201)
- [24] Transfer clutch /Up (CL201)

14.7 PK

14.7.1 PK-502



[3] Punch home sensor (PS801)

14.7.2 PK-503/PK-504



- [1] Punch motor (M801)
- [2] Paper size sensor (PS805)
- [3] Punch scraps box full sensor (PS802)
- [4] Punch home sensor (PS801)

- [5] Punch shift home sensor (PS803)
- [6] Punch shift motor (M802)
- [7] Punch drive board (PDB)
- [8] Punch scraps box set sensor (PS804)

bizhub 750/600

14.7.3 PK-505



- [1] Punch shift home sensor (PS303)
- [2] Punch shift motor (M302)
- [3] Paper size sensor (PS305)
- [4] Punch scraps box full sensor (PS302)
- [5] Punch home sensor (PS301)

- [6] Punch motor (M301)
- [7] Punch encoder sensor (PS306)
- [8] Punch drive board (PDB)
- [9] Punch scraps box set sensor (PS304)

14.8 ZU

A. Punch scraps conveyance/ZU main body section



- [1] Conveyance motor cooling fan (M10)
- [2] Punch shift motor (M5)
- [3] Punch shift home sensor (PS5)
- [4] ZU control board (ZUCB)
- [5] Circuit breaker /2 (CBR2)
- [6] Circuit breaker /1 (CBR1)
- [7] Power relay /1 (RL1)
- [8] Power relay /2 (RL2)

- [9] Noise filter (NF)
- [10] Coil (L)
- [11] DC power supply (DCPS)
- [12] Door switch (MS1)
- [13] Punch scraps box set sensor (PS7)
- [14] Punch scraps full sensor (PS8)
- [15] Punch scraps conveyance motor (M7)

B. Z-folding/conveyance section



- [1] Conveyance motor (M6)
- [2] Conveyance encoder sensor (PS10)
- [3] Gate solenoid /Lw (SD1)
- [4] Registration motor (M1)
- [5] 2nd stopper home sensor (PS4)
- [6] 2nd stopper motor (M3)
- C. Punch section

- [7] Exit sensor (PS9)
- [8] Gate solenoid /Up (SD2)
- [9] Passage sensor (PS1)
- [10] 1st stopper motor (M2)
- [11] 1st stopper home sensor (PS3)



- [1] ZU-601
- [2] ZU-602
- [3] Punch motor (M4)
- [4] Punch clutch (CL1)
- [5] Punch home sensor (PS6)

- [6] Paper edge sensor board (PESB)
- [7] Punch switchover motor (M8)
- [8] Punch switchover switch (MS2)
- [9] Punch home sensor (PS6) (ZU-601)

15. CONNECTOR LAYOUT DRAWING

15.1 Main body

15.1.1 Connector in the board

A. Printer control board



B. Image processing board



C. System control board



APPENDIX

D. Scanner drive board



E. ADU drive board



F. Operation board /1



G. Operation board /2



H. DC power supply /1



I. DC power supply /2



bizhub 750/600

J. High voltage unit



K. L1 inverter



L. Laser drive board



M. OB inverter



APPENDIX

N. Polygon motor drive board



O. Toner control sensor board



P. Index board



Q. CCD board



R. IC board



APPENDIX

bizhub 750/600

15.2 LU

A. LU drive board



15.3 SF



A. FNS drive board



B. Relay drive board



15.5 PI

A. PI drive board



B. PI control board



15.6 PK

A. Punch drive board (PK-502)



B. Punch drive board (PK-503/PK-504)



C. Punch drive board (PK-505)



D. Paper edge sensor (PK-503/PK-504/PK-505)

25 (W : 7 pin)	
r'ı]
	15kjf5c003na

15.7 ZU



16. TIMING CHART

16.1 Main body

A. A4, 2 single sided originals, single sided copy (1 copy), reversed paper exit, paper feed tray 2



57aaf5c800na

bizhub 750/600

B. A4, 2 double sided originals, double sided copy (1 copy), straight paper exit, paper feed tray 2



16.2 DF

A. A4, life size, single sided original, 2 originals





15jaf5c801na

bizhub 750/600

16.3 LU

A. A4, life size, 1-1 mode, 2 originals

200ms Loop amount min380ms Print start signal Loop amount 300ms LU exit sensor (PS106) Pick-up sole-noid (SD100) Pre-registra-tion sensor (PS107) Pre-registra-tion clutch (CL102) Feed clutch (CL101) LT paper feed motor (M101) ltem 15jsf5c800na

16.4 SF

A. Sort, A4, 2 originals, 2 copies, life size



15jpf5c800na

16.5 FS

A. Sort, A4, 2 originals, 3 copies, Single side





16. TIMING CHART

B. 2 flat stitching staples, A4, 11 originals, 2 copies, Single side



APPENDIX

C. Saddle stitching, A4R, 3 originals, 2 copies, Single side





16. TIMING CHART

D. Tri-folding, A4R, 3 originals, 2 copies, Single side



16.6 PI

A. Pl auto paper feeder (lower tray), 2 flat stitching staples, A4, 2 originals, 2 copies, Single side



16.7 PK

	L print start signal
Item Min took prove roll sensor (PSSI) Gala molox MITS THSS entrones sensor (PSSI) HSS entrops MITS Paraton motor (MSSI) Puraton home anaroor (MSSI) Puraton home roll roll of MISI Puraton home roll roll of MISI Baraker entrances anaroor (MISI) Baraker entrances anaroor (MISI) Baraker entrances anaroor (MISI) Baraker entrances anaroor (MISI) Parae extra role motor	

15knf5c800na

APPENDIX

16.7.2 PK-503

A. Punch, 2 flat stitching staples, A4, 2 originals, 3 copies, Single side



16.8 ZU

A. Z-folding + Punch mode, A3, 3 originals, Single side



15kvf5c800na
Blank page



SERVICE MANUAL

Field Service

DF-604

2005.08 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\underline{\land}$ to the left of the revised section. A number within $\underline{\land}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show **A** in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within $\mathbf{\Lambda}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	2005/08 1.0		Issue of the first edition	
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision	

DF-604

OUTLINE

MAINTENANCE

CONTENTS

DF-604

OUTLINE
1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS
MAINTENANCE
2. PERIODIC CHECK
2.1 Procedure for the maintenance of the paper feed section
2.1.1 Replacing the pick-up roller rubber/paper feed roller rubber
2.1.2 Replacing the separation roller/separation roller rubber
2.1.3 Cleaning the paper dust removing pad
2.2 Procedure for the maintenance of the conveyance section
2.2.1 Replacing the conveyance roller pressure/release motor (M4)
2.3 Procedure for the maintenance of the read section
2.3.1 Cleaning the Original conveyance sensor (PS306)/Original skew sensor (PS307) 13
3. OTHER PARTS
3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted
3.2 List of parts to be disassembled and assembled
3.3 Removal procedure of parts to be disassembled and assembled
3.3.1 Removing/reinstalling the DF 16
3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling the cover
3.3.3 Replacing the stamp

USIMENI/SEIIING

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING
4. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT
4.1 Height adjustment
4.2 Paper skew adjustment
4.2.1 Adjustment of the front face of the original
4.2.2 Adjustment of the back face of the original
4.3 Adjustment to prevent false detection by the original detection sensor

Blank page



1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Name	Double sided original auto feeder
Туре	Sheet-through type original auto feeder

B. Functions	5.5 x 8.5				
Original size	Inch: 11 x 17, 8.5 x 14, 8.5 x 11, A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5, A5R, B6R				
	Metric: A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5, A5R, B6R, 11 x 17, 8.5 x 14, 8.5 x 11				
	Maximum original size: 297 x 431.8 mm				
	Minimum original size: 100 x 139.7 mm				
Original stacking capacity	100 sheets, max. (80g/m ² or 20 lbs)				
Original read speed (A4 Single sided copy mode: 75 sheets/min.					
size)	Double sided copy mode: 42 sheets/min.				
Original feed layout Set with the front side up, at center as standard					
Original image read position Dedicated slit glass section					
Resolution 600 dpi					

C. Original

Type of paper	High-quality paper of 50 g/m ² to 200 g/m ²										
Amount of curling	Up to 10 mm with 5 originals overlapped one another										
	a Amoi										
	a Amount of curling: up to 10 mm										
Originals other than those that paper feed and throughput can be guaran- teed	With the following originals, no severe problems are found such as frequent jams and major damage to the originals, although it is not possible to obtain a numeric value indicating reliability that can be specified in product guarantee terms:										
	Recycled paper, straw paper, heat sensitive paper, originals fed in the mixing of perforated original mode, high-quality paper of 35 g/m ² to 50 g/m ² , irregular-sized originals (such as CF originals), coated paper, originals with a rough surface (such as letterhead), folded originals (Z-folded or folded in two)										
Originals not allowed to be	The following originals are not allowed to be used:										
fed	OHP film, blueprint master, label paper, offset master, bonded original, high-quality paper of less than 35 g/m ² or more than 201 g/m ²										
Combination of mixed origi-											
nals			Δ3		B4	B5		Δ5	B5B	A5R	B6B
	Other	A3	~	0	_					_	_
	origi-	A4	0		_	_	_	_	_	_	_
	nals	B4	•	•	\triangle	0	_	_	_	_	_
		B5	۲	۲	0	\triangle	_	_	_	_	_
		A4R	۲	۲	۲	۲	Δ	0	—	—	—
		A5	۲	۲	۲	۲	0	\triangle	_	_	—
		B5R	Х	Х	٥	۲	۲	۲	Δ	—	—
		A5R	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	\triangle	—
		B6R	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	Х	٥	\triangle
	△: Single size O: Same size O: Different size X: Mixing not allowed										
	-: Cannot be set										

D. Maintenance

Maintenance	Same as the main body.
Machine service life	Same as the main body.

E. Machine data

Power source	24V/5.1V DC (supplied from the main body)
Maximum power consump-	53W or less
tion	
Dimensions	W 625 mm x D 576 mm x H 154 mm
Weight	Approx. 12.9 kg

F. Operating environment

Temperature	10°C to 30°C
Humidity	10% RH to 80% RH (with no condensation)

NOTE

• The information herein may be subject to change for improvement without notice.

Blank page

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODIC CHECK

2.1 Procedure for the maintenance of the paper feed section

\triangle Caution:

• Be sure to unplug the power cord of the main body from the power outlet.

2.1.1 Replacing the pick-up roller rubber/paper feed roller rubber

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Pick-up roller rubber: Every 200,000 prints
- Paper feed roller rubber: Every 200,000 prints



- 1. Open the open/close cover [1].
- Remove 2 C-clips [2] and then release 2 bearings
 [3].
- 3. Remove the paper feed roller unit [4].

NOTE

• Be sure to set the paper feed roller shaft [5] to the D-cut [7] of the coupling [6] when installing the paper feed roller unit.





- 4. Remove 2 bearings [1].
- 5. Remove 2 C-clips [2] and 2 bearings [3] and then remove the pick-up roller [4].

- 6. Remove the pick-up roller [2] from the pick-up roller shaft [1].
- 7. Remove the pick-up roller rubber [3] from the pick-up roller.

NOTE

• Be sure to place the arrow mark [4] facing the opposite side of the gear [5] when installing the pick-up roller.







- 8. Remove the C-clip [1] and release 2 bearings [2].
- Remove the spring [3] and remove the paper feed roller [4].

NOTE

- Be sure to place the spring at the correct hook position when installing the paper feed roller.
- 10. Remove the paper feed roller [2] from the paper feed roller shaft [1].
- 11. Remove the paper feed roller rubber [3] from the paper feed roller.

NOTE

- Be sure to place the arrow mark [4] facing the opposite side of the gear [5] when installing the paper feed roller.
- 12. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

Separation roller: Every 600,000 prints

Separation roller rubber: Every 200,000 prints

DF-604

Replacing the separation roller/separation roller rubber

B. Procedure

2.1.2

•

•



- 1. Open the open/close cover [1].
- 2. Open the bearing claw [2] and then remove the separation roller [3].

NOTE

• Be sure to set the shaft to the parallel cut section [4] when installing the separation roller.



- 3. Remove the separation roller rubber [2] from the separation roller [1].
- 4. Remove the C-ring [3].
- 5. Remove the separation roller shaft [4] from the separation roller.
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

2.1.3

•

DF-604

B. Procedure

A. Periodic cleaning cycle



Cleaning the paper dust removing pad

Paper dust removing pad: Every 200,000 prints

[] 15jat2c009na

- 1. Open the open/close cover [1].
- Remove the screw [2] and then remove the paper dust removing pad [3].

- 3. Clean the paper dust removing pad [1] with the blower brush.
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

2.2 Procedure for the maintenance of the conveyance section

2.2.1 Replacing the conveyance roller pressure/release motor (M4)

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Conveyance roller pressure/release motor (M4): Every 630,000 prints

B. Procedure



- Remove the front cover. (See "3.3.2 Removing/ reinstalling the cover.")
- Remove the C-clip [1] and then remove the gear [2].
- 3. Remove the connector [3].
- Remove 2 screws [4] and then remove the conveyance roller pressure/release motor (M4) [5].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

2.3 Procedure for the maintenance of the read section

2.3.1 Cleaning the Original conveyance sensor (PS306)/Original skew sensor (PS307)

A. Periodic cleaning cycle

- Original conveyance sensor (PS306): Every 200,000 prints
- Original skew sensor (PS307): Every 200,000 prints

B. Procedure



- 1. Open the DF.
- Remove 3 screws [1] and then remove the platen guide assembly [2].



- Clean the original conveyance sensor (PS306) [1] and original skew sensor (PS307) [2] with the blower brush.
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3. OTHER PARTS

3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted

A. DF skew adjustment screw

NOTE

• The adjustment of skew by means of the DF skew adjustment 2 screws [1] is not allowed as a rule.



B. Read position positioning plates /Fr and /Rr

(1) Parts not allowed to be removed

Each mounting screw on the read position positioning plates /Fr and /Rr



- [1] Screw not allowed to be removed
- [2] Read position positioning plate /Rr
- [3] Read position positioning plate /Fr

(2) Reason

The read position positioning plates /Fr and /Rr hold in place the slit glass which will be the read position at the DF scanning. Never change their installing position since the scanned image may be skewed if the slit glass is misaligned.

3.2 List of parts to be disassembled and assembled

NOTE

- This list shows the parts which are the parts other than the periodically replaced parts, that are needed to be shown how to disassemble and assemble them. However, they are not required to be disassembled in the normal service except for the cover.
- For the replacement procedure of periodically replaced parts, see "2.1 Procedure for the maintenance of the paper feed section" to "2.3 Procedure for the maintenance of the read section."

No.	Section	Part name	Page referred to
1	DF	DF main body	16
2	Cover	Front cover	24
3		Rear cover	24
4	Paper exit section	Stamp	25

3.3 Removal procedure of parts to be disassembled and assembled

≜Caution:

• Be sure to unplug the power cord of the main body from the power outlet.

3.3.1 Removing/reinstalling the DF

A. Removal procedure



- 1. Remove the main body rear cover.
- 2. Remove 6 connectors [2] connected to the scanner drive board (SDB) [1].

[1]

[2]

1 1 A 3. Remove each 2 screws [1] and remove the stoppers /1 [2] and /2 [3].



[1] [3]

15jaf2c016na



- 4. Open the DF [1] until it is vertical.
- 5. Remove 4 screws [2] and then remove the cable conduit [3].
- 6. Pull out the cable to the upper side of the main body.



- Close the DF and then remove the screw [2] from the fixing plate /1 [1].
- 8. Remove 2 screws [4] from the fixing plate /2 [3].



[5]

15jaf2c019na

- 9. Open the DF [1] until it is vertical.
- 10. Remove 2 screws [2] and then remove the spacer [4] from the fixing plate /2 [3].
- 11. Remove the screw [5] and attachment [6] from each plate while supporting the DF and then remove the DF from the main body.

NOTE

• The DF may fall to the back side when the screw [5] is removed. Be sure to conduct the operations while supporting it.

B. Installation procedure



- With the DF set to the main body, temporarily hold fixing plates /1 and /2 with the screw. (See "A. Removal procedure.")
- Install the attachment and spacer onto the fixing plate /2 and then temporarily hold it with 2 screws. (See "A. Removal procedure.")
- 3. Reinstall the cable conduit and 6 screws by following the removal steps in reverse.
- Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the original stopper plate /Lt [2].

- 5. With the screw [1] removed, close the DF [2] and then remove the screw [3].
- 6. Remove the upper cover /Lt [4].







Install 2 positioning jigs [1] into 2 positioning holes
 [2] and [3].

NOTE

• Make sure that the positioning hole [3] at the rear side is not the installation hole [4] for the original stopper plate /Lt.

- 8. Close the DF and set 2 reference holes [1] to the positioning jig.
- With the positions put together, secure 2 fixing plates /1 and /2 with 3 screws (see "A. Removal procedure").
- 10. Open the DF and tighten the 4 screws that were tightened temporarily.
- 11. Remove 2 positioning jigs and then install the original stopper plate /Lt.
- 12. Close the DF and check to see if each of 2 stopper pieces [2] comes in touch with the slit glass.



13. When the stopper pieces do not get in touch with the slit glass at the same time, make adjustments by turning the adjusting screws A [1] and B [2] alternately.

NOTE

- For the height adjustment, only the adjusting screw A should be used. When a satisfactory adjustment cannot be obtained with it, use the adjusting screw B.
- 14. Repeat the steps 12 and 13 until each of the stopper pieces comes into touch with the slit glass.
- 15. Reinstall the remaining parts by following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• You can change the angle to open up the DF by installing the stoppers upside down.

3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling the cover A. Procedure



- 1. Remove 4 screws [1] and then remove the rear cover [2].
- 2. Remove 5 screws [3] and then remove the front cover [4].
- *3.* Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.3 Replacing the stamp

A. Procedure



- 1. Open the DF.
- 2. Open the platen guide [1].
- 3. Open the stamp cover [2].

DF-604



 Release the spring [1] and then tilt the stamp solenoid mounting plate [2] toward you.



5. Remove the stamp [1].

NOTE

- Never touch the metal part of the stamp with bare hands.
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

DF-604

4.1 Height adjustment

■ ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT

A. Procedure



- 1. Open the DF.
- 2. Remove the screw [1] and then close the DF and remove the screw [3].
- 3. Remove the upper cover /Lt [4].





 When the stopper pieces do not get in touch with the slit glass at the same time, make adjustments by turning the adjusting screws A [1] and B [2] alternately.

NOTE

- For the height adjustment, only the adjusting screw A should be used. When a satisfactory adjustment cannot be obtained with it, use the adjusting screw B.
- 6. Repeat the steps 4 and 5 until each of the stopper pieces comes into touch with the slit glass.
- 7. Reinstall the upper cover /Lt.

 Close the DF and check both stopper pieces [1] get in touch with the slit glass [2].

DF-604

4.2 Paper skew adjustment

NOTE

• Be sure to perform the height adjustment (See "4.1 Height adjustment") before performing the paper skew adjustment.

4.2.1 Adjustment of the front face of the original

A. Procedure



 Make a copy in the single sided original - single sided copy mode, and check the original skew pattern A [4] or pattern B [5] of the image [3] on the copy paper [2] to the sub scan direction [1].



4.2.2 Adjustment of the back face of the original A. Procedure

- 2. Open the open/close cover [1].
- 3. Loosen the screw [2] and release the fixing of the registration pulley mounting plate [3].
- According to the skew pattern, move and secure the registration pulley mounting plate by 1 division in the following direction.

In the case of the pattern A: Move the registration pulley mounting plate to the lower side [4] (direction down towards original feed flow).

In the case of the pattern B: Move the registration pulley mounting plate to the upper side [5] (direction up towards original feed flow).

- Repeat the steps 1 to 4 until the original skew falls into the standard value (0.5% or less).
 Standard value: Paper skew ± 0.5% or less (paper skew against the side parallel to the sub scan direction)
- Make a copy in the double sided original single sided copy mode, and check the original skew pattern A [4] or pattern B [5] of the image [3] on the copy paper [2] to the sub scan direction [1].



- 2. Open the open/close cover [1].
- Loosen the screw [2] and release the fixing of the R-range adjusting plate [3].
- According to the skew pattern, move and secure the R-range adjusting plate by 1 division in the following direction.

In the case of the pattern A: Move the R-range adjusting plate to the left side [4].

In the case of the pattern B: Move the R-range adjusting plate to the right side [5].

5. Repeat the steps 1 to 4 until the original skew falls into the standard value (0.5% or less). Standard value: Paper skew \pm 0.5% or less (paper

standard value. Faper skew $\pm 0.5\%$ of less (paper skew against the side parallel to the sub scan direction)
4.3 Adjustment to prevent false detection by the original detection sensor

When false detection is made by the original size sensors /Rt (PS309) and /Lt (PS310) above the original feed tray due to the angle of incident of external light such as a fluorescent light, change the installation angle of the sensor.

A. Procedure



- 1. Raise the original feed tray [1].
- 2. Remove 5 screws [2] and 2 washers [3] and then remove the original feed tray cover [4].





- 4. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT
- Expand the claws [2] for each sensor holder a little wider and remove the original size sensors /Rt (PS309) [3] and /Lt (PS310) [4].

NOTE

- Be careful not to spread the claw [1] too wide. Otherwise, it may break off.
- 4. Remove 2 screws [5] and then remove each sensor holder [1].

5. Install each original size sensor [1] onto the angled mounting part [3] of the sensor holder [2].

NOTE

- When installing the sensors, be sure to set the positioning holes [4] of each sensors to the projections [5] of the angled mounting parts.
- Be careful that the sensor face does not get damaged, and also be careful not soil it with grimy hands.
- Be sure to check to see if the sensor is securely held by the claw.
- By installing the sensors onto the angled mounting parts, the light acceptance angle of the sensors can be tilted to 10° forward or backward as seen from above.

[1]



[3]

15jaf3c011na

6. When tilting the light acceptance angle of each sensor forward [2], move the sensor holder [2] in parallel and then secure it with 2 screws [5] so that the sensor face [3] gets into the sensor window [4].





- 7. When tilting the light acceptance angle of each sensor backward [1], rotate the sensor holder [2] 180° and then secure it with 2 screws [5] so that the sensor face [3] gets into the sensor window [4].
- 8. Reinstall the original feed tray cover and close the original feed tray.

DF-604

Blank page



SERVICE MANUAL

Field Service

LU-401/402

2005.08 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\underline{\land}$ to the left of the revised section. A number within $\underline{\land}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show **A** in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within $\mathbf{\Lambda}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

LU-401/402

υ	UILINE	
1.	PRODUC	T SPECIFICATIONS
M	IAINTEN	ANCE
2.	PERIODIC	CHECK
	2.1 Proc	edure for the maintenance of the paper feed section
	2.1.1	Cleaning the paper dust removing brush
	2.1.2	Removing and reinstalling the feed roller unit
	2.1.3	Replacing the feed roller and the pick-up roller
	2.1.4	Replacing the separation roller
	2.1.5	Replacing the paper feed clutch and the pre-registration clutch
3.	OTHERS	
	3.1 List o	of parts to be disassembled and assembled
	3.2 Rem	oval procedure of parts to be disassembled and assembled
	3.2.1	Removing and reinstalling the upper door
	3.2.2	Removing and reinstalling the right cover
	3.2.3	Removing and reinstalling the front cover
	3.2.4	Removing and reinstalling the rear cover
	3.2.5	Replacing the LU-401 lift wire
	3.2.6	Replacing the LU-402 lift wire

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT	33
4.1 Feed roller pressure adjustment (LU-402 only)	33
4.2 Separation pressure adjustment	34
4.3 Paper lift plate horizontal adjustment	35
4.3.1 Adjustments for LU-401	35
4.3.2 Adjustments for LU-402	36
4.4 Paper centering adjustment	37
4.5 Paper skew adjustment	38
4.6 Paper feed height (upper limit) adjustment	40
4.7 Pick-up release amount adjustment	41

Blank page

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Type

Side mount type large volume paper feed tray

B. Functions

Maximum tray capacity LU-401		4,000 sheets (for paper of 80 g/m ² or 20 lbs)
	LU-402	4,000 sheets (for paper of 80 g/m ² or 20 lbs)

C. Type of paper

Paper size	LU-401	Inch:	8.5 x 11, A4, 16K, wide paper (up to 314 mm x 223 mm)
		Metric:	A4, B5, 8.5 x 11, 16K, wide paper (up to 314 mm x 223 mm)
	LU-402	Inch:	11 x 17, 8.5 x 14, 8.5 x 11, 8.5 x 14, 8.5 x 11R, A3, B4, A4, A4R, F4, 8K, 16K, wide paper (up to 314 mm x 459 mm)
		Metric:	A3, B4, A4, A4R, F4, 11 x 17, 8.5 x 14, 8.5 x 11, 8.5 x 14, 8.5 x 11R, F4, 8K, 16K, wide paper (up to 314 mm x 459 mm)

D. Maintenance

Maintenance	Same as the main body.
Machine service life	Same as the main body.

E. Machine data

Power source	24V/5V DC, 27.3V AC (supplied from the main body)		
Maximum power consump-	LU-401	82W or less	
tion	LU-402	100W or less	
Weight	LU-401	Approx. 30 kg	
	LU-402	Approx. 42 kg	
Dimensions	LU-401	W 430 mm x D 639 mm x H 690 mm	
	LU-402	W 670 mm x D 639 mm x H 695 mm	

F. Operating environment

Temperature	10°C to 30°C
Humidity	10% RH to 80% RH (with no condensation)

NOTE

• The information herein may be subject to change for improvement without notice.

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODIC CHECK

2.1 Procedure for the maintenance of the paper feed section

▲Caution:

• When connected to the main body, be sure to unplug the power cord of the main body from the power outlet.

2.1.1 Cleaning the paper dust removing brush

A. Procedure



- Remove the upper door [1]. (See "3.2.1 Removing and reinstalling the upper door.")
- Remove 6 screws [2] and then remove the paper feed cover [3].



3. With a flat-blade driver inserted into the projection [2] for lock, release the locks provided at the two positions of the paper dust removing brush [1]. Then tilt it to the pre-registration roller [3] side to remove the paper dust removing brush [1].

NOTE

- When reinstalling it, it can be reinstalled easily if it is inserted after being tiled to the preregistration roller [3].
- 4. Clean the paper dust removing brush with a blower brush.
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

2.1.2 Removing and reinstalling the feed roller unit

A. Procedure





- 1. Open the upper door [1].
- 2. Release the hook [3] of the spring [2] from the paper feed guide plate [4].

MAINTENANCE

LU-401/402

- 3. Remove the C-clips [1], 1 each.
- 4. Slide the bearings [2], 1 each, to the outside.
- Remove the coupling [5] while releasing the notch
 [3] and the arm [4] of the paper feed guide plate, and then remove paper feed roller unit [6].

NOTE

- When removing and reinstalling it, be careful not to damage the upper limit sensor (PS109)
 [7] and the paper empty sensor (PS108) [8].
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

2.1.3 Replacing the feed roller and the pick-up roller

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Feed roller: Every 1,000,000 prints (once for every 500,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)
- Pick-up roller: Every 1,000,000 prints (once for every 500,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)

B. Procedure



- Remove the feed roller unit. (See "2.1.2 Removing and reinstalling the feed roller unit.")
- 2. With the feed roller unit turned over, remove a bearing [1] and the actuator [2].
- 3. Remove 2 C-clips [3] and then remove the connecting bearing [4].



- Slide the connecting bearing [1] and remove the mounting plate [2].
- 5. Remove the C-clip [3].



6. Pull out and remove the feed roller [1] from the shaft [2] and the collar [3].

NOTE

- When reinstalling the feed roller [1], be sure to insert it into the collar [3] from the paint-marked side [4].
- 7. Pull out the pick-up roller [5] from the shaft [7] together with the collar [6].
- 8. Remove the collar [6] from the pick-up roller [5].

NOTE

- When reinstalling the pick-up roller [5], be sure to insert the collar [6] into the groove [8] side before inserting it into the shaft [7].
- 9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

2.1.4 Replacing the separation roller

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Separation roller: Every 1,000,000 prints (once for every 500,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)

B. Procedure

NOTE

• Before starting work, be sure to bring the paper lift plate down to its lower most position in advance by pressing the tray down switch (SW100) with power supplied.



- Remove the feed roller unit. (See "2.1.2 Removing and reinstalling the feed roller unit.")
- 2. Remove 2 screws [1] and then remove the entrance guide plate [2].



3. Remove 2 screws [1] and pull out the front side of the separation roller unit [2] in advance. And then remove the coupling [3] to dismount the separation roller.

NOTE

• When reinstalling it, be sure to engage the coupling [3] for installation and fasten the separation roller unit [2] with screws while pressing it downward.



 Remove 2 C-clips [1] and then, with the shaft [2] and the D cut section [3] set together, remove the separation roller [4] together with the shaft [2].

NOTE

• When removing and reinstalling it, be careful not to damage the transparent protective cover [5].



5. Pull out and remove the separation roller [1] from the collar [2] and the shaft [3].

NOTE

- When reinstalling the separation roller, be sure to insert it into the collar [2] from the paint-marked [4] side.
- Be sure to check to see if the surface of the separation roller is not smeared with grease.
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

2.1.5 Replacing the paper feed clutch and the pre-registration clutch

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Feed clutch (CL101): Every 4,000,000 prints (once for every 2,000,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)
- Pre-registration clutch (CL102): Every 4,000,000 prints (once for every 2,000,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)

B. Procedure





- Remove the upper door. (See "3.2.1 Removing and reinstalling the upper door.")
- 2. Remove 3 screws [1] and the remove the clutch cover [2].

- 3. Remove 2 connectors [1].
- Remove C-clips [2], 1 each, and then remove the feed clutch (CL101) [3] and the pre-registration clutch (CL102) [4].

NOTE

- When reinstalling it, be sure to install it by engaging the stoppers [5] of the clutch with the screw [6] or the metal frame [7].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3. OTHERS

3.1 List of parts to be disassembled and assembled

No.	Section	Part name	Page referred to
1	Cover section	Upper door	13
2		Right cover	13
3		Front cover	14
4		Rear cover	14
5	Up/down section	Lift wire of LU-401	15
6		Lift wire of LU-402	23

3.2 Removal procedure of parts to be disassembled and assembled

A Caution:

• When connected to the main body, be sure to unplug the power cord of the main body from the power outlet.

3.2.1 Removing and reinstalling the upper door

A. Procedure



- 1. Open the upper door [1].
- 2. Release the hook [3] of the spring [2] from the paper feed guide plate [4].
- Remove 2 screws [5] and slide the upper door [1] in the arrow-marked [6] direction. Then remove it upward.
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.2.2 Removing and reinstalling the right cover

A. Procedure



- 1. Open the upper door.
- 2. Remove 5 screws [1] and then remove the right cover [2].
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.2.3 Removing and reinstalling the front cover

A. Procedure



3.2.4 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover





- 1. Open the upper door.
- Remove the right cover. (See "3.2.2 Removing and reinstalling the right cover.")
- 3. Open the front door [1] and remove 6 screws [2].
- 4. Close the front door [1] and remove the front cover [3].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

- 1. Open the upper door.
- Remove the right cover. (See "3.2.2 Removing and reinstalling the right cover.")
- 3. Remove 13 screws [1] (for LU-401) and then remove the rear cover [2].

NOTE

- For LU-402, remove 13 screws [1] and the screw [3], that is, 14 screws in all, and then remove the rear cover [2].
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.2.5 Replacing the LU-401 lift wire

NOTE

• There are 4 kinds of lift wires different in length. And the following wire: /Fr1 [1], /Fr2 [2], /Fr3 [3], / Fr4 [4], and /Rr1 [5], /Rr2 [6], /Rr3 [7], /Rr4 [8], 8 in all, are employed according to the pulleys arranged from inside toward outside. Lift wires of the same length can be used either on the front and rear sides.

Lift wires /Fr1 [1] and /Rr1 [5]: 769.3 mm Lift wires /Fr2 [2] and /Rr2 [6]: 661.0 mm Lift wires /Fr3 [3] and /Rr3 [7]: 1250.3 mm Lift wires /Fr4 [4] and /Rr4 [8]: 1323.6 mm

- When installing the wire, be sure to install the wire end formed of a ball [9] to the wire mounting plate [11] or [12] and the wire end of a cylindrical form [10] to the pulley side.
- For LU-401 and LU-402, the positions on the paper lift plate to which the lift wires /Fr3 [3], /Fr4 [4], /Rr3 [7], /Rr4 [8] are connected are reversed on the right and left sides. Be careful not to mixed the right side with the left side. For LU-401, the lift wires /Fr3 [3] and /Rr3 [7] are connected to the left [11] of the paper lift plate and lift wires /Fr4 [4] and /Rr4 [8] connected to the right [12].



A. Removal procedure

NOTE

• Before starting work, be sure to bring the paper lift plate down to its lower most position in advance by pressing the tray down switch (SW100) with electricity supplied.





- 1. Open the upper door.
- 2. Remove LU from the main body.
- $\ensuremath{\mathcal{S}}.$ Remove the following door and covers.
 - Upper door (See "3.2.1 Removing and reinstalling the upper door.")
 - Right cover (See "3.2.2 Removing and reinstalling the right cover.")
 - Front cover (See "3.2.3 Removing and reinstalling the front cover.")
 - Rear cover (See "3.2.4 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover.")
- Remove 3 screws [1] and then remove the clutch cover [2].
- Remove 5 connectors [1] and 5 clamp [2], and then remove the wiring harness [4] from the paper lift motor mounting plate [3].
- 6. Remove the E-ring [5] and then remove a gear [6].



- 7. Pull out the pin [2] from the shaft [1].
- Remove the E-ring [3] and then remove a bearing [4].
- Remove 4 screws [5] and then remove the paper lift motor assembly [6].

NOTE

• When reinstalling it, be sure to check to see if it gets into the mounting plate securely [8] since the shaft to which it is installed is stepped [7].



10. Remove the E-ring [1].

11. Loosen the lift wire /Rr1 [3] by pressing the rear wire mounting plate /Lt [2] downward and slide the wire end [4] in the arrow-marked direction for removal.

NOTE

- When installing the wire end [4] of the lift wire /Rr1 [3], be sure to mount it into the installation hole provided on the outside of the rear wire mounting plate /Lt [2].
- 12. Remove the pulley /Rr1 [5] from the shaft and then remove the lift wire /Rr1 [3].

NOTE

- When installing it, be sure to wind it 6 turns around the pulley /Rr1 [5] so that the lift wire / Rr1 [3] can be pulled out from above the pulley.
- Be careful that the wire does not overlap each other.
- 13. Loosen the lift wire /Rr2 [7] by pressing downward the rear wire mounting plate /Rt [6] and slide the wire end [8] in the arrow-marked direction for removal.

NOTE

- When installing the wire end [8] of the lift wire /Rr2 [7], be sure to mount it into the installation hole provided on the inside of the rear wire mounting plate /Lt [6]. When the wire end [8] will not get into the installation hole provided on the inside, be sure to rewind closely the lift wire /Rr2 [7] that has been wound around the pulley /Rr2 [9] before installing it.
- 14. Remove the pulley /Rr2 [9] from the shaft and then remove the lift wire /Rr2 [7].

NOTE

- When installing it, be sure to wind it 6 turns around the pulley /Rr2 [9] so that the lift wire / Rr2 [7] can be pulled out from above the pulley.
- Be careful that the wire does not overlap each other.



- 15. Remove the E-ring [1].
- 16. In the same manner as with Step 11 on the rear side, loosen the lift wire /Fr1 [3] by pressing the front wire mounting plate /Lt [2] downward and slide the wire end [4] in the arrow-marked direction for removal.

NOTE

- When installing the wire end [4] of the lift wire /Fr1 [3], be sure to mount it into the installation hole provided on the outside of the front wire mounting plate /Lt [2].
- 17. Remove the pulley /Fr1 [5] from the shaft and then remove the lift wire /Fr1 [3].

NOTE

- When installing it, be sure to wind it 6 turns around the pulley /Fr1 [5] so that the lift wire / Fr1 [3] can be pulled out from above the pulley.
- Be careful that the wire does not overlap each other.
- 18. Loosen the lift wire /Fr2 [7] by pressing downward the front wire mounting plate /Rt [6] and slide the wire end [8] in the arrow-marked direction for removal.

NOTE

- When installing the wire end [8] of the lift wire /Fr2 [7], be sure to mount it into the installation hole provided on the inside of the front wire mounting plate /Rt [6]. When the wire end [8] will not get into the installation hole provided on the inside, be sure to rewind closely the lift wire /Fr2 [7] that has been wound around the pulley /Fr2 [9] before installing it.
- Remove the pulley /Fr2 [9] from the shaft and then remove the lift wire /Fr2 [7].

NOTE

- When installing it, be sure to wind it 6 turns around the pulley /Fr2 [9] so that the lift wire / Fr2 [7] can be pulled out from above the pulley.
- Be careful that the wire does not overlap each other.



- 20. Remove the E-ring [1] and then remove the pulley /Fr3 [2] from the shaft.
- 21. With the lift wire /Fr3 [6] set onto the notch [5] of the pulleys [3] and [4], slide the wire cover [7] and remove the lift wire /Fr3 [6] from the pulleys [3] and [4].
- 22. Pull out downward the wire end [8] of the lift wire / Fr3 [6] from the front wire mounting plate /Lt [9], and remove the lift wire /Fr3 [6].
- 23. Remove the pulley /Fr4 [10] from the shaft. And in the same manner as with Step 21, remove the lift wire /Fr4 [13] from the pulleys [11] and [12].
- 24. Pull out downward the lift wire /Fr4 [13] from the front wire mounting plate /Rt [14] for removal.



- 25. Remove the E-ring [1] and then remove the pulley /Rr3 [2] from the shaft.
- 26. In the same manner as with Step 21, remove the lift wire /Rr3 [5] from the pulleys [3] and [4].
- 27. In the same manner as with Step 22, remove the lift wire /Rr3 [5] from the rear wire mounting plate / Lt [6].
- 28. In the same manner as with Step 23, remove the pulley /Rr4 [7] form the shaft and then remove the lift wire /Rr4 [10] from the pulleys [8] and [9].
- 29. In the same manner as with Step 24, pull out the lift wire /Rr4 [10] from the rear wire mounting plate /Rt [11] for removal.

B. Installation procedure



- *1.* For the removal Step 29 to Step 5, reinstall the parts following the removal steps in reverse.
- 2. Remove the E-ring [1] and then remove the idle gear [2].
- 3. With a driver inserted into the hole [4] of the remaining paper detection gear [3], set it onto the position of the hole [6] of the paper lift motor mounting plate [5].

NOTE

- Be sure to position the 2 holes with the paper lift plate at its lower most position.
- 4. Insert the idle gear [2] into the shaft while taking care that the position of the hole [4] of the remaining paper detection gear [3] does not move, and then remove the E-ring [1].
- 5. For the removal Step 4 to Step 1, reinstall the parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

 After completion of installation, be sure to conduct the "Horizontal adjustment of the paper lift plate." (See "4.3 Paper lift plate horizontal adjustment.")

3.2.6 Replacing the LU-402 lift wire

NOTE

• There are 4 kinds of lift wires different in length. And the following wire: /Fr1 [1], /Fr2 [2], /Fr3 [3], / Fr4 [4], and /Rr1 [5], /Rr2 [6], /Rr3 [7], /Rr4 [8], 8 in all, are employed according to the pulleys arranged from inside toward outside. Lift wires of the same length can be used either on the front and rear sides.

Lift wires /Fr1 [1] and /Rr1 [5]: 1057.3 mm Lift wires /Fr2 [2] and /Rr2 [6]: 692.1 mm Lift wires /Fr3 [3] and /Rr3 [7]: 1321.7 mm Lift wires /Fr4 [4] and /Rr4 [8]: 1303.1 mm

- When installing the wire, be sure to install the wire end formed of a ball [9] to the wire mounting plate [11] or [12] and the wire end of a cylindrical form [10] to the pulley side.
- For LU-401 and LU-402, the positions on the paper lift plate to which the lift wires /Fr3 [3], /Fr4 [4], /Rr3 [7], /Rr4 [8] are connected are reversed on the right and left sides. Be careful not to mixed the right side with the left side. For LU-402, the lift wires /Fr3 [3] and /Rr3 [7] are connected to the left [11] of the paper lift plate and lift wires /Fr4 [4] and /Rr4 [8] connected to the right [12].



MAINTENANCE

A. Removal procedure

NOTE

• Before starting work, be sure to bring the paper lift plate down to its lower most position in advance by pressing the tray down switch (SW100) with electricity supplied.





- 1. Open the upper door.
- 2. Remove LU from the main body.
- $\ensuremath{\mathcal{S}}.$ Remove the following door and covers.
 - Upper door (See "3.2.1 Removing and reinstalling the upper door.")
 - Right cover (See "3.2.2 Removing and reinstalling the right cover.")
 - Front cover (See "3.2.3 Removing and reinstalling the front cover.")
 - Rear cover (See "3.2.4 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover.")
- Remove 3 screws [1] and then remove the clutch cover [2].
- Remove the E-ring [1] and then remove a bearing [2].
- Remove 5 screws [3] and then remove the gear cover [4].

NOTE

• When reinstalling it, be sure to check to see if it gets into the mounting plate securely [6] since the shaft to which it is installed is stepped [5].





- 7. Remove the bearing [1].
- 8. Remove the idle gear [2].
- Remove the E-ring [3] and then remove the gear
 [4] and the pin [5].
- 10. Remove the E-ring [6] and then remove the gear [7] together with 2 bearings [8] provided on either side of the gear [7].

- Remove the E-ring [1] and then remove the gear
 [2] and the pin [3].
- 12. Remove the E-ring [4] and then remove the bearing [5].



- 13. Remove 5 connectors [1].
- Remove the wiring harness [3] from the clamps [2] provided at the 7 positions.
- 15. Remove 6 screws [4] and then remove the paper lift motor assembly [5].

NOTE

• When reinstalling it, be sure to check to see if it gets into the mounting plate [7] securely since the shaft [6] to which it is installed is stepped.



- 16. Remove the E-ring [1].
- 17. Loosen the lift wire /Rr1 [3] by pressing the rear wire mounting plate /Lt [2] downward and slide the wire end [4] in the arrow-marked direction for removal.

NOTE

- When installing the wire end [4] of the lift wire /Rr1 [3], be sure to mount it into the installation hole provided on the outside of the rear wire mounting plate /Lt [2].
- 18. Remove the pulley /Rr1 [5] from the shaft and then remove the lift wire /Rr1 [3].

NOTE

- When installing it, be sure to wind it 6 turns around the pulley /Rr1 [5] so that the lift wire / Rr1 [3] can be pulled out from above the pulley.
- Be careful that the wire does not overlap each other.
- 19. Press downward the rear wire mounting plate /Rt [6] and slide the wire end [8] of the lift wire /Rr2 [7] in the arrow-marked direction for removal.

NOTE

- When installing the wire end [8] of the lift wire /Rr2 [7], be sure to mount it into the installation hole provided on the inside of the rear wire mounting plate /Rt [6]. When the wire end [8] will not get into the installation hole provided on the inside, be sure to rewind closely the lift wire /Rr2 [7] that has been wound around the pulley /Rr2 [9] before installing it.
- 20. Remove the pulley /Rr2 [9] from the shaft and then remove the lift wire /Rr2 [7].

NOTE

- When installing it, be sure to wind it 6 turns around the pulley /Rr2 [9] so that the lift wire / Rr2 [7] can be pulled out from above the pulley.
- Be careful that the wire does not overlap each other.

LU-401/402

27


- 21. Remove the E-ring [1].
- 22. In the same manner as with Step 11 on the rear side, loosen the lift wire /Fr1 [3] by pressing downward the front wire mounting plate /Lt [2] and slide the wire end [4] in the arrow-marked direction for removal.

NOTE

- When installing the wire end [4] of the lift wire /Fr1 [3], be sure to mount it into the installation hole provided on the outside of the front wire mounting plate /Lt [2].
- 23. Remove the pulley /Fr1 [5] from the shaft and then remove the lift wire /Fr1 [3].

NOTE

- When installing it, be sure to wind it 6 turns around the pulley /Fr1 [5] so that the lift wire / Fr1 [3] can be pulled out from above the pulley.
- Be careful that the wire does not overlap each other.
- 24. Loosen the lift wire /Fr2 [7] by pressing downward the front wire mounting plate /Rt [6] and slide the wire end [8] in the arrow-marked direction for removal.

NOTE

- When installing the wire end [8] of the lift wire /Fr2 [7], be sure to mount it into the installation hole provided on the inside of the front wire mounting plate /Rt [6]. When the wire end [8] will not get into the installation hole provided on the inside, be sure to rewind closely the lift wire /Fr2 [7] that has been wound around the pulley /Fr2 [9] before installing it.
- 25. Remove the pulley /Fr2 [9] from the shaft and then remove the lift wire /Fr2 [7].

NOTE

- When installing it, be sure to wind it 6 turns around the pulley /Fr2 [9] so that the lift wire / Fr2 [7] can be pulled out from above the pulley.
- Be careful that the wire does not overlap each other.

LU-401/402

28



- 26. Remove the E-ring [1] and then remove the pulley /Fr3 [2] from the shaft.
- 27. With the lift wire /Fr3 [6] set onto the notch [5] of the pulleys [3] and [4], slide the wire cover [7] and remove the lift wire /Fr3 [6] from the pulleys [3] and [4].
- 28. Pull out downward the wire end [8] of the lift wire / Fr3 [6] from the front wire mounting plate /Lt [9], and remove the lift wire /Fr3 [6].
- 29. Remove the pulley /Fr4 [10] from the shaft. And in the same manner as with Step 27, remove the lift wire /Fr4 [13] from the pulleys [11] and [12].
- 30. Pull out downward the wire end [8] from the front wire mounting plate /Rt [14], and remove the lift wire /Fr4 [13].



- 31. Remove the E-ring [1] and then remove the pulley /Rr3 [2] from the shaft.
- 32. In the same manner as with Step 21, remove the lift wire /Rr3 [5] from the pulleys [3] and [4].
- 33. In the same manner as with Step 22, remove the lift wire /Rr3 [5] from the rear wire mounting plate / Lt [6].
- *34.* In the same manner as with Step 23, remove the pulley /Rr4 [7] form the shaft and then remove the lift wire /Rr4 [10] from the pulleys [8] and [9].
- 35. In the same manner as with Step 24, pull out and remove the lift wire /Rr4 [10] from the rear wire mounting plate /Rt [11].

B. Installation procedure



- 1. For the removal Step 35 to Step 9, reinstall the parts following the removal steps in reverse.
- 2. With a driver inserted into the hole [2] of the remaining paper detection gear [1], set it upon the position of the hole [4] of the paper lift motor mounting plate [3].

NOTE

- Be sure to position the 2 holes with the paper lift plate at its lower most position.
- 3. Insert the idle gear [5] into the shaft while taking care that the position of the hole [2] of the remaining paper detection gear [1] does not move.

NOTE

- While taking note of the direction in which the idle gear [5] is inserted, check to see if it is engaged securely with the gears [6] and [7].
- 4. For the removal Step 7 to Step 1, reinstall the parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

 After completion of installation, be sure to conduct the "Horizontal adjustment of the paper lift plate." (See "4.3 Paper lift plate horizontal adjustment.")

Blank page

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT

4.1 Feed roller pressure adjustment (LU-402 only)

Conduct the feed roller pressure adjustment when there occurs a no feed condition while in the paper feed.

NOTE

- Adjusting the feed roller pressure changes the pick-up release amount. So after completion of adjustment, be sure to check the pick-up release amount.
- Be sure to purchase the paper feed assist plate (P/N: 13FG4062*) separately since it is supplemental part.

A. Procedure



- 1. Open the upper door [1].
- 2. Release the hook [3] of the spring [2] from the paper feed guide plate [4].



- Install the paper feed assist plate [1] to the paper feed roller unit plate [2] with 2 screws [3].
- Make a print and check to see if a no feed condition occurs.

NOTE

- When a no feed condition recurs, increase the number of sheets of paper. When a double feed condition occurs, decrease the number of sheets.
- Up to six paper feed assist plates can be set.
- When a no feed or double feed condition occurs, repeat Steps 3 and 4.
- 6. Check the pick-up release amount. (See "4.7 Pick-up release amount adjustment.")

4.2 Separation pressure adjustment

Conduct the separation pressure adjustment when there occurs a no feed or double feed condition repeatedly.

NOTE

- Adjusting the pressure excessively may result in an adverse effect. So, be careful not to make an excessive adjustment.
- A no feed or double feed condition may be affected by the type of paper used and the operating environment (a no feed condition is apt to occur in a low temperature environment, and a double feed condition seems to occur in a high temperature environment.) So, be sure to take note of these environmental conditions when adjusting the separation pressure.

A. Procedure



- 1. Remove LU from the main body.
- 2. Change the position to which the hook [1] of the spring is attached. The separation pressure can be set in 5 steps. Attaching the hook of the spring to one of the positions arranged in the direction of [2] increases pressure, and attaching it to one of the position arranged in the direction of [3] decreases pressure.

Decrease: This improves a double feed jam.

Increase: This improves a no feed jam.

Reference: Each time one step in the position is changed, the pressure of the spring changes about 10%.

3. Reinstall LU to the main body.

NOTE

 After completion of installation, be sure to make a print and check to see if a no feed jam or double feed jam does not occur.

LU-401/402

4.3 Paper lift plate horizontal adjustment

Conduct the paper lift plate horizontal adjustment when a paper feed jam occurs repeatedly or when the lift wire has been changed.

4.3.1 Adjustments for LU-401

A. Procedure



- Turn ON the main power switch (SW1) and the power switch (SW2) of the main body. After checking from the operating sound of the paper lift motor that the paper lift plate has gone up fully, turn OFF both of the power switches.
- 2. Remove LU from the main body.
- 3. Remove the following covers:
 - Right cover (See "3.2.2 Removing and reinstalling the right cover.")
 - Front cover (See "3.2.3 Removing and reinstalling the front cover.")
 - Rear cover (See "3.2.4 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover.")
- Loosen 2 screws [2] of the adjustment bracket /Fr
 [1] and 2 screws [4] of the adjustment bracket /Rr
 [3].
- Using the marking-off line [5] as a guide, adjust the horizontal level of the paper lift plate [6] with the adjusting screws [7] and [8].
- 6. Tighten up 2 screws [2] and 2 screws [4].
- Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• After completion of installation, be sure to make a print and check to see if a no feed jam or double feed jam does not occur.

4.3.2 Adjustments for LU-402 A. Procedure



- Turn ON the main power switch (SW1) and the power switch (SW2) of the main body. After checking from the operating sound of the paper lift motor that the paper lift plate has gone up fully, turn OFF both of the switches.
- 2. Open the upper door.
- Loosen 2 screws [1] on the front side and 2 screws [2] on the rear side.
- Using the marking-off lines [3] and [4] as a guide, adjust the horizontal level of the paper lift plate [5] with the adjusting screws [6] and [7].
- 5. Tighten up 2 screws [1] and 2 screws [2].
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• After completion of installation, be sure to make a print and check to see if a no feed jam or double feed jam does not occur.

4.4 Paper centering adjustment

In the prints while paper is being fed from LU, conduct this adjustment when the center of image slips off from the center of paper. For centering, an automatic adjustment is made in the image processing unit. However, when there occurs a centering outside the range of automatic adjustment (±3 mm or more), conduct this adjustment.

A. Procedure

- Disable for change the software DIPSW 12-3 "Printer centering adjustment" (data = 1). (See "10.12.4 DipSW setting" in Field Service for the main body.)
- 2. Make a print of the test pattern No. 16 and check the amount of centering with no adjustment made.
- Set about 100 sheets of paper in LU (the amount that does result in the deformation of the guide plate).
- 4. Close the upper door. And after checking from the operating sound of the paper lift motor that the paper lift plate has gone up fully, turn OFF the main power switch (SW1) and the power switch (SW2) of the main body.
- Remove the right cover. (See "3.2.2 Removing and reinstalling the right cover.")
- Open the front door and loosen the screw [2] of the paper width adjustment section [1].
- Open the upper door and loosen 2 screws [4] of the guide plate /Fr [3] and 2 screws [6] of the guide plate /Rr [5].
- Loosen 2 screws [8] of the center positioning bracket [7].
- Using the marking-off lines [9] as a guide, slide the center positioning bracket [7] and tighten up the screw [8].
- 10. Press the guide plates /Fr [3] and /Rr [5] against the paper, tighten up screws [2], [4] and [6], 5 in all.

NOTE

- When pressing the guide plate against the paper, be careful not to apply too much force. Otherwise, the paper feed can be negatively affected, thus resulting in a jam.
- 11. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

- After completion of installation, be sure to make a print and check to see if the amount of centering is inside the specified value.
- After checking that it is inside the specified value, be sure to enable the software DIPSW12-3 (data = 0).

4.5 Paper skew adjustment

Conduct this adjustment when the main body tray and the paper skew have a different inclination. However, all paper supplied is adjusted in the registration section, this has a limited effect on the adjustment. A different position is adjusted when a paper skew occurs in the same inclination for all paper fed from LU and when there occurs an irregular skew for each paper.

A. Pre-arrangement

- 1. Make a consecutive print of the test pattern (No. 16) and check to see if there occurs a skew.
- Depending on the inclination of a skew, conduct either of the following adjustment B and C.
 Skew in the same inclination for the entire LU : Adjustment procedure B
 Irregular skew : Adjustment procedure C

B. Procedure for adjustments when a skew is found in the entire output paper of LU.



- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Loosen 2 screws [1].
- 3. Using the marking-off lines [2] as a guide, adjust the position of the positioning bracket [3].

NOTE

- Be sure to move the positioning bracket [3] in parallel so that it comes to the same position as the marking-off limes [2] in front and rear.
- Make a consecutive print of the test pattern (No. 16) and check to see if there occurs no skew.

C. Procedure for adjustment when there occurs an irregular skew.



- Set about 100 sheets of paper in LU (the amount that does result in the deformation of the guide plate).
- 2. Turn ON the main power switch (SW1) and the power switch (SW2) of the main body. And after checking from the operating sound of the paper lift motor that the paper lift plate has gone up fully, turn OFF both of the switches.
- 3. Open the front door and loosen the screw [2] of the paper width adjustment section [1].
- Open the upper door and loosen 2 screws [4] of the guide plate /Fr [3] and 2 screws [6] of the guide plate /Rr [5].
- Press the guide plates /Fr [3] and /Rr [5] against the paper, tighten up screws [2], [4] and [6], 5 in all.

NOTE

- The size indication of the guide plate is given so that it becomes 2 mm larger than the standard size indication. This clearance of 2 mm may cause a skew depending on the type of paper.
- When pressing the guide plate against the paper, be careful not to apply too much force.
 Otherwise, the paper feed can be negatively affected, thus resulting in a jam.
- Make a consecutive print of the test pattern (No. 16) and check to see if there occurs no skew.

4.6 Paper feed height (upper limit) adjustment

Conduct this adjustment when the following conditions occur:

- When a no feed condition is not improved by conducting the paper feed roller pressure adjustment.
- When there occurs a no feed jam in which a thick paper gets stuck with the entrance guide plate (guide plate of the separation roller section).
- When a double feed jam is not improved by conducting the separation pressure adjustment.

NOTE

 Adjusting the paper feed height (upper limit) changes the pick-up release amount. So, be sure to conduct the pick-up release amount adjustment after this adjustment. (See "4.7 Pick-up release amount adjustment.")

A. Procedure



- Turn ON the main power switch (SW1) and the power switch (SW2) of the main body. And after checking from the operating sound of the paper lift motor that the paper lift plate has gone up fully, turn OFF both of the switches.
- Remove the paper feed roller unit. (See "2.1.2 Removing and reinstalling the feed roller unit.")
- Record a mark [3] for the height of the sensor mounting plate [2] of the upper limit sensor (PS109) [1].
- Remove 2 screws [4], and attach them to the screw holes [5] provided outside. Then tighten them tentatively.
- Adjust the sensor mounting plate [2] vertically while keeping it in a horizontal position, and tighten up the screw [4].

NOTE

- Be sure to install the sensor mounting plate [2] so that it is in a horizontal position.
- Move downward the sensor mounting plate [2] to decrease the paper feed height, and move upward the sensor mounting plate [2] to decrease the paper feed height.
- When there occurs a no feed condition and a convex-curled paper is fed, move downward the sensor mounting plate [2] to increase the paper feed height.
- When there occurs a double feed condition with the edge of fed paper folded and a concave-curled paper is fed, move upward the sensor mounting plate [2] to decrease the paper feed height.
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

 When turning on power with no paper feed roller unit installed, the paper lift plate does not stop at its upper limit position, thus causing damage to the tray.

4.7 Pick-up release amount adjustment

Conduct this adjustment when there occurs a no feed jam repeatedly and when the paper feed height (upper limit) adjustment is made.

A. Procedure



- Turn ON the main power switch (SW1) and the power switch (SW2) of the main body. And after checking from the operating sound of the paper lift motor that the paper lift plate has gone up fully, turn OFF both of the switches.
- Remove the upper door [1]. (See "3.2.1 Removing and reinstalling the upper door.")
- 3. Remove 6 screws [2] and then remove the paper feed cover [3].



- 4. Pull the moving part [2] of the pick-up solenoid (SD100) [1] in the arrow-marked direction. And in this condition, check to see if the clearance [5] between the pick-up roller [3] and the paper lift plate [4] is within the standard value. Standard value: 0.5 to 2.5mm When not within the standard value, conduct an adjustment following Steps 5 and 6.
- Loosen the screw [6]. And then using the marking-off lines [7] as a guide, adjust the position of SD100 [1] and tighten up the screw [6].
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• After completion of installation, be sure to make a print and check to see if a no feed jam or double feed jam does not occur.



SERVICE MANUAL

Field Service

SF-601

2005.08 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\underline{\land}$ to the left of the revised section. A number within $\underline{\land}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show **A** in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within $\mathbf{\Lambda}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

SF-601

OUTLINE	
1. PRODUC	CT SPECIFICATIONS
MAINTEN	IANCE
2. PERIODI	C CHECK
3. OTHERS	8
3.1 List	of parts to be disassembled and assembled 4
3.2 Rem	noval procedure of parts to be disassembled and assembled
3.2.1	Removing and reinstalling the shift tray
3.2.2	Removing and reinstalling the front cover
3.2.3	Removing and reinstalling the rear cover7
3.2.4	Removing and reinstalling SF from the main body9
ADJUST	MENT/SETTING

4. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT 11 4.1 Checking of the operation 11

Blank page



1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Type

Paper exit tray with shift function

B. Functions

Mode	Straight mode	Discharged into the	e shift tray with no processing.
	Shift mode	Shifted 30 mm and	discharged into the shift tray.
Tray capacity	A4, A4R, B5, B5R,	8.5 x 11, 8.5 x 11R	:1250 sheets
(paper weight: 80 g/m ² or	A3, B4, A5, 11 x 1	7, 8.5 x 14	: 500 sheets.
20 lbs)	A5R, B6R, A6R, 5.	5 x 8.5, 5.5 x 8.5R	:100 sheets

C. Type of paper

Type of paper	Same as the main	Same as the main body.	
Paper size	Straight mode	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5, A5R, B6R, A6R, F4	
		11 x 17, 8.5 x 14, 8.5 x 11, 8.5 x 11R, 5.5 x 8.5, 5.5 x 8.5R	
	Shift mode	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5, A5R, F4	
		11 x 17, 8.5 x 14, 8.5 x 11, 8.5 x 11R, 5.5 x 8.5, 5.5 x 8.5R	
Amount of paper curl	[1]		
	a: Amount of ci [1]: 5 sheets of	url: 10 mm or less paper immediately after printing	

D. Maintenance

Maintenance	Same as the main body.
Machine service life	Same as the main body.

E. Machine data

Power source	DC24V (supplied from the main body)		
Maximum power consumption	48VA or less		
Weight	Approx. 15 kg		
Dimensions	When the main tray is drawn out	W 481 mm x D 500 mm x H 603 mm	
	When the main tray is put in	W 387 mm x D 500 mm x H 543 mm	

F. Operating environment

Temperature	10°C to 30°C
Humidity	10% RH to 80% RH (with no condensation)

NOTE

• The information herein may be subject to change for improvement without notice.

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODIC CHECK

There is no periodically replacement parts in SF.

3. OTHERS 3. OTHERS

3.1 List of parts to be disassembled and assembled

No.	Section	Part name	Page referred to
1	Shift tray section	Shift tray	5
2	Cover section	Front cover	6
3		Rear cover	7
4	SF	SF	9

 $\underline{\wedge} \textbf{Caution:}$

• Be sure to unplug the power cord of the main body from the power outlet.

3.2.1 Removing and reinstalling the shift tray

A. Procedure



 Remove the screw [1]. Slide it horizontally so that the claw [3] of the shift tray [2] comes off through the hole [4] and then remove it upward. SF-601



2. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• When reinstalling it, be sure to check to see if the claw [2] of the shift tray is inserted fully into and engaged securely with the groove [1] of the shift plate.

3.2.2 Removing and reinstalling the front cover A. Procedure



- 1. Open the conveyance cover [1] and remove the screw [2].
- 2. Tilt a little the upper section of the front cover [3] in the arrow-marked direction [4] and slide it downward so that the claw [5] comes off through the hole [6]. And then remove the front cover.
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.2.3 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover A. Procedure





- 1. Remove the plastic sheet (transparency) [1].
- Remove 2 screws [2] and then remove the connector cover [3].

 Remove the screw [1] and then remove the claw
 [2] to removing the connector cover mounting plate [3].



- 4. Open the conveyance cover [1] and remove 2 screws [2].
- 5. Tilt the upper section of the rear cover [3] a little in the arrow-marked direction [4] and slide it downward so that the claw [5] comes off through the hole [6]. And then remove the rear cover.
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.2.4 Removing and reinstalling SF from the main body

A. Procedure





- Remove the shift tray. (See "3.2.1 Removing and reinstalling the shift tray.")
- 2. Remove the plastic sheet (transparency) [1].
- 3. Remove 2 screws [2] and then remove the connector cover [3].

- Remove the screw [1] and then remove the claw
 [2] to remove the connector cover mounting plate
 [3].
- 5. Remove 2 connectors [4].



- 6. Remove the screw [1].
- 7. Slide SF [2] a little to release the hook [4] from the hole [3], and then tilt a little the upper section of the unit in the arrow-marked direction [5] to release the lower hole [6] from the claw [7], and remove SF [2].
- 8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

SF-601

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT

4.1 Checking of the operation

The operation of the motor and the sensor can be checked by using the dip switch (SW100) provided on the SF control board (SFCB).

The item of the test operation is selected by the bit 2 and bit 3 of SW100, and the start of the test operation is made by the bit 4.

NOTE

• The bit 1 of the dip switch is not used (with no condition set). Be sure to leave it OFF.

A. Adjustment



 Remove the rear cover [1]. (See "3.2.3 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover.")

NOTE

- After removing the rear cover, be sure to close the conveyance cover [2].
- Plug the power cord of the main body into the power outlet and turn ON the main power switch (SW1) and the power switch (SW2).



3. Use the bits 2 and 3 [2] of the dip switch (SW100) to select the item of the test operation.

Item of test operation	Dip switch	n (SW100)
	2	3
Tray up down motor (M702) drive (down) • Turn ON M702 to bring down the tray and turn OFF M702 when the tray lower limit sensor (PS704) turns ON.	OFF	OFF
Conveyance motor (M701) drive • Turn ON M701 and turn it OFF after driving it for 300 msec.	ON	OFF
 Shift motor (M703) drive Turn ON M703 and, when the shift home sensor (PS702) turns on, turn it OFF to make a shift once to the front or rear side. 	OFF	ON
 Tray up down motor (M702) drive (initial) Turn ON M702 to bring down the tray. A specified period of time after that, rotate the motor in the reverse direction to bring up the tray and then turn OFF M702 when the tray upper limit sensor (PS703) turns ON. 	ON	ON

- Turn OFF the bit 4 [3] of SW100 immediately after turning it ON and check to see if the test operation selected in Step 3 is started.
- After completion of the test operation, turn OFF all the bits of SW100.
- 6. Reinstall the rear cover.



SERVICE MANUAL

Field Service

FS-504/602

2005.08 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\underline{\land}$ to the left of the revised section. A number within $\underline{\land}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show **A** in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within $\mathbf{\Lambda}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

FS-504/602

OUTLINE	
1. PRODUCT SPE	ECIFICATIONS 1
MAINTENANC)E
2. PERIODIC CHE	ECK
2.1 Maintenan	ce procedure of the conveyance section
2.1.1 Repl	acing the paper exit roller (sponge roller)
2.1.2 Repl	acing the intermediate transfer roller (sponge roller)
2.2 Maintenan	ce procedure of the stacker section
2.2.1 Repl	acing the paper assist roller (sponge roller) (FS-504)
2.2.2 Repl	acing the paper assist roller (sponge roller) (FS-602)
2.3 Maintenan	ce procedure of the stapler section
2.3.1 Rem	oving/reinstalling the stapler unit cover (FS-602)
2.3.2 Repl	acing the stapler unit (FS-602)
2.3.3 Repl	acing the stapler unit (FS-504)
3. OTHER PARTS	3
3.1 Items not a	allowed to be disassembled and adjusted
3.2 List of part	ts to be disassembled and assembled 17
3.3 Removal p	procedure of parts to be disassembled and assembled
3.3.1 Rem	oving/reinstalling the upper cover /1
3.3.2 Rem	ioving/reinstalling the upper cover /2 18
3.3.3 Rem	ioving/reinstalling the front door
3.3.4 Rem	oving and reinstalling the rear cover
3.3.5 Rem	oving/reinstalling the left cover
3.3.6 Rem	ioving/reinstalling the main tray
3.3.7 Repl	acing the lift wire
3.3.8 Rem	oving/reinstalling the stacker unit cover (FS-602)
3.3.9 Rem	oving/reinstalling the stacker unit
3.3.10 Rem	oving/reinstalling the paper exit unit

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. MEC	CHANICAL ADJUSTMENT
4.1	Adjusting the bypass gate
4.2	Shift position adjustment
4.3	Adjusting the paper exit solenoid
4.4	Adjusting the mounting position of the paper exit arm
4.5	Adjusting the mounting position of the alignment plate /Up
4.	5.1 Adjusting the mounting position in FS-504
4.	5.2 Adjusting the mounting position in FS-602
4.6	Adjusting the mounting position of the alignment plate /Lw (FS-602)
4.7	Staple position adjustment (flat-stapling) 4
4.	7.1 Adjusting the position in FS-504
4.	7.2 Adjusting the position in FS-602
4.8	Staple position adjustment (flat-stapling) (FS-602)

4.9	Stapler vertical position adjustment (FS-602)	52
4.10	Folding stopper tilt adjustment (FS-602)	55
4.11	Adjusting the folding pressure (FS-602)	57
4.12	Adjusting the tri-folding position (FS-602)	58

FS-504/602

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Name	Flat-stapling finisher (FS-504) Multi folding multi stapling finisher (FS-602)
Туре	Stapling device (FS-504) Multi folding multi stapling device (FS-602)
Stapling method	Incline clinch method
Shifting method	Exit paper shifting method

B. Functions

(1) Functions

Non-sort mode	Exited to the main tray with no processing made.			
Sort/group mode	Exited to the main tray after being shifted for every copy.			
Sub tray mode	Exited to the sub tray with no processing made.			
Stapling mode	Exited to the main tray after being stapled.			
At corner	Parallel or skew depending on the paper size (FS-504)			
	Front parallel/back 45° inclined (FS-602)			
At 2 places	Symmetry at the center with 128 to 160 mm pitches			
Folding/saddle stitching	Exited to the booklet tray with the paper folded into two at its center, or exited			
mode	to the booklet tray with the paper folded into two after being stitched and folded			
	at the center of the paper (FS-602).			
Iri-tolding mode	Exited to the booklet tray after being overlapped up to 3 sheets and being tri-			

(2) Stapling

Max. flat-stapling capacity	FS-504	50 sheets of 60 to 90 g/m ² paper 48 sheets of 90 g/m ² paper + 2 sheets of 200 g/m ² paper 50 sheets of 91 to 105 g/m ² (However, guarantee is not given to
		some paper according to the paper type)
	FS-602	50 sheets of 60 to 80 g/m ² paper 48 sheets of 80 g/m ² paper + 2 sheets of 200 g/m ² paper 50 sheets of 81 to 105 g/m ² (However, guarantee is not given to some paper according to the paper type)
Max. saddle stitching capacity	FS-602	20 sheets of 80 g/m ² paper 19 sheets of 80 g/m ² paper + 1 sheet of 200 g/m ² paper
(3) Folding (FS-602)

Saddle stitching + folding	20 sheets of 80 g/m ² paper		
	19 sheets of 80g/m ² paper + 1 sheet of 200 g/m ² paper		
	16 sheets of 81 to 105 g/m ² paper (some paper type is not supported)		
Folding	1 to 3 sheets of 80 g/m ² paper		
	1 sheet of 81 to 105 g/m ² paper		
Tri-folding	1 to 3 sheets of 80 g/m ² paper		
	1 sheet of 81 to 105 g/m ² paper		

(4) Max. paper capacity

Main tray	Non-sort mode,	3,000 sheets:	A4,	A4R, B5, B5R, 8.5 x	11, 8.5 x 11R, 16K,
(Weighing 80g/m ²)	sort/group mode		16KR		
	(FS-504)	1500 sheets:	ΑЗ,	B4, F4, 8K, 11 x 17,	8.5 x 14, wide
			paper (up to 314 mm x 458 mm)		
		500 sheets:	A5,	A5R, B6, 5.5 x 8.5, 5	5.5 x 8.5R
	Non-sort mode,	2500 sheets: A4, A4R, B5, B5R, 8.5 x 11, 8.5 x 11R, 16K,			
	sort/group mode	16KR			
	(FS-602)	1500 sheets:) sheets: A3, B4, F4, 8K, 11 x 17, 8.5 x 14, wide		
			pap	per (up to 314 mm x 458 mm)	
		500 sheets:	A5,	A5R, B6, 5.5 x 8.5, 5	5.5 x 8.5R
	Stapling mode	1000 sheets			
		No. of sheets	per	A3, 11 x 17	The others
		stapling			
		2 to 9		50 copies	100 copies
		10 to 20		50 copies	50 copies
		21 to 30		30 copies	30 copies
		31 to 40		25 copies	25 copies
		41 to 50		20 copies	20 copies
	Folding/saddle	Saddle stitching: 20 copies in 5 sheets of saddle stitching			
	stitching mode	Folding: 33 copies in 3 sheets of folding			
	(FS-602)				
	Tri-folding mode	50 copies in 1 sheet of folding			
	(FS-602)				
Sub tray (Weighing 80g/m ²)	200 sheets	1			

C. Type of paper

Paper size	A3 wide paper, A3, B4, A4, A4R*, B5, B5R, A5, A5R, B6R, A6R, 11 x 17, 8.5		
	14, 8.5 x 11, 8.5 x 11R*, 5.5 x 8.5, 5.5 x 8.5R		
Applicable paper	Plain paper, recycle paper, high-quality paper, coated paper, special paper		
	(same as the main body)		
Paper weight	50 to 200 g/m ²		
* The mounting position of the tri folding stopper must be changed when changing the paper size			

The mounting position of the tri-folding stopper must be changed when changing the paper size.

NOTE

- · Available paper sizes out of the above are limited only to those to which the main body tray is corresponding.
- In the non-sort mode, all sizes of paper are applicable.
- In the sort/group mode and the stapling mode, A3 wide size paper to B5R and 11 x 17 to 8.5 x 11R are applicable.
- In folding/saddle stitching mode, A3 wide paper, A3, B4, A4R, 11 x 17, and 8.5 x 14 are applicable.
- In the tri-folding mode, A4R and 8.5 x 11R are applicable.

D. Maintenance

Maintenance	Same as the main body.
Machine service life	Same as the main body.

E. Machine data

Power source	24V/5VDC (supplied from the main body)
Maximum power consump-	80VA
tion	
Dimensions	When the main tray is pulled out: W 790.5 mm x D 656 mm x H 990 mm
	When the main tray is set in: W 674.5 mm x D 656 mm x H 990 mm
	When the main tray is removed: W 424 mm x D 656 mm x H 990 mm
Weight	60 kg (65 kg for FS-602)

F. Operating environment

Temperature	10°C to 30°C
Humidity	10% RH to 80% RH (with no condensation)

Blank page

Field Service Ver1.0 Aug.2005

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODIC CHECK

2.1 Maintenance procedure of the conveyance section

∆Caution:

• Be sure to unplug the power cord of the main body from the power outlet.

2.1.1 Replacing the paper exit roller (sponge roller)

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Paper exit roller (sponge roller): Every 250,000 prints

NOTE

• When replacing the paper exit rollers /A (sponge rollers), be sure to replace all 5 pairs of rollers (10 rollers in all).

B. Procedure



Insert a driver into the groove of the sponge roller

 and remove the sponge roller by prizing it open.



- With each of the depressions [1] of a new sponge roller and the shaft brought together, press the sponge roller until it clicks to fit it in securely.
- *3.* Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

FS-504/602

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

2.1.2

•

NOTE

FS-504/602

rollers (4 rollers in all). B. Procedure

Replacing the intermediate transfer roller (sponge roller)

Intermediate transfer roller (sponge roller): Every 250,000 prints



1. Open the front door.

• When replacing the intermediate transfer rollers (sponge rollers), be sure to replace all 2 pairs of

- 2. Remove 2 screws [1] and the bearing [2], and then remove the shaft of the intermediate transfer roller [3].
- MAINTENANCE





3. Insert a driver into the groove of the sponge roller [1] and remove the sponge roller by prizing it open.

- 4. With each of the depressions [1] of a new sponge roller and the shaft brought together, press the sponge roller until it clicks to fit it in securely.
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

· When installing the intermediate transfer roller, be sure to insert the pin at the rear of the shaft of the intermediate transfer roller into the groove.

2.2 Maintenance procedure of the stacker section

2.2.1 Replacing the paper assist roller (sponge roller) (FS-504)

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

Paper assist roller (sponge roller): Every 500,000 prints

B. Procedure



- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Pull out the stacker unit.
- 3. Remove the C-clip [2], and then remove the paper assist roller [1].
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

2.2.2 Replacing the paper assist roller (sponge roller) (FS-602)

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Paper assist roller (sponge roller): Every 500,000 prints

B. Procedure



- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Pull out the stacker unit.
- 3. Open the paper assist section [1], and then lift up the paper assist roller [2].
- 4. Remove the C-clip [3], and then remove the paper assist roller [2].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

2.3 Maintenance procedure of the stapler section

2.3.1 Removing/reinstalling the stapler unit cover (FS-602)

 $\underline{\wedge}$ Caution:

• Be careful not to let FS fall down when removing FS from the main body and pulling out the stacker unit from FS. It may cause the injury.

A. Procedure





- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Pull out the stacker unit [1].

3. Remove 2 screws [1] from the rail stopper, and then pull out the stacker unit [2] further.

NOTE

• Be sure to place a support [3] under the stacker unit to prevent FS from falling down.



2.3.2 Replacing the stapler unit (FS-602)

NOTE

- The stapler unit consists of the clincher section and the stapler section.
- Never move the clincher section and the stapler section in the horizontal direction manually. Otherwise, it may cause the timing belt skipping.
- After the reinstallation, be sure to adjust the stapler position in the vertical direction. (See "4.9 Stapler vertical position adjustment (FS-602).")

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Stapler unit: Every 200,000 staples

B. Procedure



- Turn ON the main body and move the stapler unit to the position for A4 and 1 staple by selecting the finisher adjustment in the service mode, and then turn OFF the main body.
- 2. Open the front door.
- Pull out the stacker unit, and then remove the stapler unit cover. (See "2.3.1 Removing/reinstalling the stapler unit cover (FS-602).")
- Disconnect the connector [1] and remove the screw [2], and then remove the flat-stapling stopper release unit /Fr [3].

- Remove 5 screws [1], and then remove the stapler unit cover [2].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.





- 2. PERIODIC CHECK
- 5. Remove the screw [1], the ground [2], and the clamp [3].
- 6. Remove 4 screws [4], and then remove the clincher /Fr [5] and disconnect the connector [6].

7. Remove the screw [1] and then remove the flat-

flat-stapling stopper release unit /Rr [2], and the remove the wiring harness from the clamp [4].

stapling stopper release unit /Rr [2].*8.* Disconnect the connector [3] on the back of the

MAINTENANCE





 Remove 4 screws [2] from the clincher /Rr [1], and then remove the ground [3].

10. Remove 2 screws [1] and the ball bearing mounting plate [2], and then rotate and remove the clincher /Rr [3] and disconnect the connector [4].

NOTE

• Be careful not to lose the ball bearing stopper spring [5] and the ball.



- 11. Remove the cartridge from the stapler.
- 12. Remove 4 screws [2] from the stapler /Fr [1] and the screw [3] from the ground, and then remove the stapler /Fr [1] and disconnect the connector [4].



16. Remove 2 screws [1], and then remove the mounting plate [3] from the stapler /Rr [2].

17. Reinstall the above parts following the removal



2.3.3 Replacing the stapler unit (FS-504)

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

• Stapler unit: Every 300,000 staples

NOTE

• Be sure not to move the stapler unit in the horizontal direction by hand. Otherwise, it may cause the timing belt skipping.

B. Procedure



1. Open the front door.

steps in reverse.

- 2. Pull out the stacker unit.
- *3.* Remove the cartridge from the stapler.
- Remove 2 screws [2] from the stapler platform /Fr [1], and then remove the stapler platform /Fr [1].

NOTE

- When reinstalling the stapler platform, you can use the screw holes [3] if the screw holes [2] are loose.
- When reinstalling it, be sure not to damage the pet [4].

 [2]
 [1]
 15jkfZc009na

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [3]
 [7]

 [4]
 [6]

 [6]
 Remove 2 screws [1] from the stapler platform /Fr

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [3]
 [7]

 [4]
 [6]

 [6]
 Remove 2 screws [1] from the stapler platform /Fr

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [1]

 [2]
 [2]

 [3]
 [3]

 [4]
 [4]

 [5]
 [6]

 [6]
 <





 Remove the connector cover [1], and then disconnect 2 connectors [2].

MAINTENANCE

 Remove the stapler /Rr [1] by repeating the procedure from steps 4 to 6.

stapler platform /Fr [2].

8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3. OTHER PARTS

3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted

A. The screw not allowed to be removed in the folding stopper

(1) Parts not allowed to be removed

There is a screw in the folding stopper, that is not allowed to be removed.



[1] The screw not allowed to be removed in the folding stopper

NOTE

• For ease of understand, the position of the folding stopper is shown lower than the actual position in the illustration.

(2) Reason

The tilt adjustment of the folding stopper should be made at the slide shaft of the folding stopper. (See "4.10 Folding stopper tilt adjustment (FS-602)"). Never loosen the screw not allowed to be removed in the folding stopper because the tilt of the folding stopper may be changed and the adjustment reference in the slide shaft may be misaligned if the screw is loosen.

3.2 List of parts to be disassembled and assembled

No.	Section	Part name	Page referred to
1	Cover	Upper cover /1	18
2		Upper cover /2	18
3		Front door	19
4		Rear cover	19
5		Left cover	20
6	Main tray section	Main tray	21
7		Lift wire	22
8	Stacker section	Stacker unit cover	28
9		Stacker unit	29
10	Transfer section	Paper exit unit	31

Removal procedure of parts to be disassembled and assembled 3.3

3.3.1 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /1

A. Procedure



- 1. Remove 2 caps [1].
- 2. Open the front door [2] and remove the 5 screws [3], and then remove the upper cover /1 [4].
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /2

NOTE

· Remove optional PI if it is installed.

A. Procedure



- 1. Remove the upper cover /1. (See "3.3.1 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /1.")
- 2. Open the front door [1].
- 3. Remove 2 screws [2] and pull out the sub tray [3], and then remove the upper cover /2 [4].
- 4. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

FS-504/602

3.3.3 Removing/reinstalling the front door

A. Procedure



3.3.4 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover

A. Procedure



- 1. Open the front door [1].
- Remove 2 screws [3] from the lower hinge plate
 [2], and then remove the front door [1].
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

- 1. Remove 6 screws [1], and then remove the rear cover [2].
- 2. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• When reinstalling the rear cover, be sure to hook the notch [3] of the rear cover on the prong [4] of the frame. FS-504/602

3.3.5 Removing/reinstalling the left cover A. Procedure



- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Remove 3 screws [1], and then remove the left cover [2].
- *3.* Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.6 Removing/reinstalling the main tray

$\triangle Caution:$

• After opening the main tray, be sure to unplug the power cord of the main body from the power outlet.

A. Procedure



- Push up the actuator [1] of the main tray upper limit sensor (PS2) with your finger, and then open the main tray [2].
- Turn OFF the main power switch (SW1) and the sub power switch (SW2) of the main body, and then unplug the power cord of the main body from the power outlet.

- 3. Remove 2 screws [1] from the main tray.
- Lift up the main tray [2] and unhook the main tray from the lift stay [3], and then remove the main tray [2].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.7 Replacing the lift wire

▲Caution:

• When the main tray lift motor is removed, the main tray may fall down. When removing the main tray lift motor, be sure to support the main tray with your hand.

NOTE

- The following procedure for replacing the lift wire shows the examples on the rear side. The configuration and winding of the wires on the front side are symmetrical to the rear side.
- The front and rear lift wires are marked as "F" and "R" on their mounting plates respectively. Be sure to check it when reinstalling the lift wires.

A. Procedure

For FS-504



- 1. Remove the following parts.
 - Left cover (See "3.3.5 Removing/reinstalling the left cover")
 - Front cover (See "3.3.3 Removing/reinstalling the front door")
 - Rear cover (See "3.3.4 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover")
 - Main tray (See "3.3.6 Removing/reinstalling the main tray")
- Remove 5 screws [1] to remove the reinforcing metal [2], and then remove the wiring harness from 3 clamps [3] and disconnect the connector [4].

NOTE

 In FS-504 and FS-602, the lift motor is installed up side down so that the position of the connector and the positions of the mounting holes of the reinforcing metal are different. For FS-602





3. Remove 5 screws [1], and then remove the lift motor unit [2].

∆Caution:

• When the lift motor unit [2] is removed, the main tray may fall down. When removing the lift motor unit, be sure to support the main tray with your hand.





 Remove 2 screws [1], and then remove the wire mounting plate [3] of the rear lift wire [2] from the lift stay [4].

5. Loosen 2 screws [2] on the belt tensioner [1].



 Remove the E-ring [1], the gear [2], and the lift pulley /Lw [3], and then remove the lift wire [4].

NOTE

• When removing the lift pulley /Lw, be sure not to let 2 pins [5] fall down.

7. Tighten the wire mounting plate [1] of the new lift wire [4] on the lift stay [2] with 2 screws [3] temporarily.

NOTE

• The lift wire [4] should be placed with the short side [5] to the bottom and the long side [6] to the top.

FS-504/602



8. Fasten the wire end of the lift wire with the inner wire end hole of the lift pulley /Lw [1]. Then, draw the lift wire through the notch [2] and wind it 5.5 turns (for FS504) / a little less than 5 turns (for FS-602) from inside to outside around the lift pulley with no slack, and then insert the lift pulley /Lw [1] into the shaft so that it coincides with the pin [3].

9. Hook the lift wire on the lift pulley /Up [1]. Then, wind the lift wire 1.5 turns (for FS-504) / 2 turns (for FS-602) from inside to outside around the lift pulley Lw [2] with no slack, draw the lift wire through the notch and fasten it with the wire end hole [3].

NOTE

- Be sure to wind the lift wire on the lift pulley / UP without the short side (the side wound in advance) and the long side (the side wound subsequently) are overlapped.
- 10. Insert the pin [1] and the gear [2], and then fasten it with E-ring [3].





11. Use a tension gauge or spring balance to pull up the belt tensioner [1] with a standard force "A" [3] and fasten it with the 2 screws [2]. Standard value [3]: A = 2.5 ± 0.25 kg

12. Loosen the 2 screws [2] on the wire mounting plate [1] at the front to push down the lift stay [3] to the horizontal position, and then remove 4 screws [2] and [5] from both the front and the rear.

NOTE

- Be sure to check the lift stay [3] is in the horizontal position. If it is in the tilt position, the main tray lift motor (M3) or the gear may be damaged due to the excessive force.
- 13. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.





3.3.8 Removing/reinstalling the stacker unit cover (FS-602)

A. Procedure



- 1. Open the front door.
- 2. Remove 5 screws [1], and then remove the stacker unit cover [2].
- *3.* Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

FS-504/602

3.3.9 Removing/reinstalling the stacker unit

∆Caution:

- Be sure to conduct this operation with 2 personnel.
- Be sure to unplug the power cord of the main body from the power outlet.
- Be careful not to let FS fall down when removing FS from the main body and pulling out the stacker unit from FS. It may cause the injury.

A. Procedure





- 1. Remove the following parts.
 - Booklet tray
 - Left cover (See "3.3.5 Removing/reinstalling the left cover")
 - Front cover (See "3.3.3 Removing/reinstalling the front door")
 - Rear cover (See "3.3.4 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover")
- 2. Remove FS from the main body.
- 3. Pull out the stacker unit.
- Disconnect 3 connectors [1] (CN1, CN2, CN3 (FS-602)) from the relay board (RB) [2] on the back of the stacker unit.
- Remove the wiring harness from the 5 clamps [3], and then disconnect the relay connector [4].
- 6. Remove the C-clip [1] and the shaft [2], and then separate the coupling arm [3].





7. Remove 2 screws [1] from the rail stopper, and then pull out the stacker unit [2] further.

NOTE

• Be sure to place a support [3] under the stacker unit to prevent FS from falling down.

8. Remove 2 screws [1], and then lift up the stacker unit [2] and remove it from the guide rails [3].

NOTE

- Be careful of your posture in order not to throw out your back when removing it.
- 9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• When reinstalling the stacker unit [2] to the guide rails [3], be sure to check that the hooks [4] are inserted into the mounting holes [5] securely.

3.3.10 Removing/reinstalling the paper exit unit

A. Procedure







- 1. Remove the following parts.
 - Remove the upper cover /1 or optional PI (See "3.3.1 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /1")
 - Upper cover /2 (See "3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /2")
 - Left cover (See "3.3.5 Removing/reinstalling the left cover")
 - Rear cover (See "3.3.4 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover")
 - Main tray
 - Main paper exit cover
- Remove the screw [3] from the paper exit open/ close link [2] of the paper exit unit [1].
- Remove the clamp [1], the screw [2] securing the ground wire, 2 connectors [3] and 3 screws [4] from the clamp.

- Remove 2 E-rings [1] and 2 bearings from both the front and the rear, and then remove the paper exit unit [3].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

Blank page

Field Service Ver1.0 Aug.200

4.1

FS-504/602





ADJUST







- Remove the rear cover. (See "3.3.4 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover.")
- Disconnect all connectors [2] from the FNS control board (FNSCB) [1], and then remove the wiring harness from the clamp [3].

8. Remove 6 screws [1], and then remove the FNSCB [2] with its mounting plate [3].

9. Loosen 2 screws [2] on the bypass gate solenoid (SD5) [1], and then, by referring to the markings [5], adjust the position of SD5 so that the clearance between the bypass gate [3] and the bypass transfer plate [4] gets to the standard value when SD5 turns OFF.

Standard value: A = 3.2 ± 0.5 mm

10. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

value (30 mm).

4.2

Α.

FS-504/602

Procedure



Shift position adjustment

1. Remove the following parts.

Conduct this adjustment when the shift amount of the paper exited to the main tray is not within a standard

- Remove the upper cover /1 (See "3.3.1 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /1") or optional PI (if installed)
- Upper cover /2 (See "3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /2")
- 2. Turn ON the main body and drive the shift roller motor (M2) via the service mode.
- 3. Turn OFF the main body.
- 4. Both in the home position and the shift position, check to see if the edge of the actuator [5] of the slide gear [4] is in the notch [3] of the slide stay [2] of the shift unit [1].

When the edge of the actuator is in the notch of the slide stay, perform the following adjustment.



- 5. Loosen the screw [2] on the mounting plate [4] of the shift roller home sensor (PS18) [1], and then adjust the position of the mounting plate [4] by referring to the markings [3].
- 6. After completing the adjustment, tighten the screw [2].
- 7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

4.3 Adjusting the paper exit solenoid

Conduct this adjustment when the paper exited to the main tray is misaligned.

A. Procedure



[3] 15jkf3c009na

- 1. Remove the following parts.
 - Remove the upper cover /1 (See "3.3.1 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /1") or optional PI (if installed)
 - Upper cover /2 (See "3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling the upper cover /2")
 - Rear cover (See "3.3.4 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover")
- 2. Turn ON the main body and turn ON the paper exit solenoid (SD4) via the service mode.
- 3. Turn OFF the main body.
- Check to see if the clearance between the plunger [2] of the solenoid and the stopper [3] of the mounting plate is within a standard value when SD4 [1] turns OFF.

Standard value: $A = 6.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ mm}$

When the value is not within the standard value, perform the following adjustment.

 Remove 2 screws [1] from the solenoid mounting plate [3], and then remove the solenoid [2] with the mounting plate [3].



 Loosen 2 screws [1] on the solenoid, and then adjust the position of the solenoid [2] and tighten the screws.

Standard value: A = 6.5 \pm 0.5 mm
4. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT



7. Reinstall the solenoid and the mounting plate [1], and then install the solenoid mounting plate at the position where the paper exit guide [2] contacts with the stopper (rubber) [4] of the paper exit guide stay [3] with 2 screws [5].

NOTE

- There should be more than 1 mm of step between the paper exit guide [2] and the paper guide stay [3].
- 8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

4.4 Adjusting the mounting position of the paper exit arm

Conduct this adjustment when there is problem with the paper exit during the stapling operation.

A. Procedure



- Open the front door, and then pull out the stacker unit.
- Rotate the belt detection gear to align the edge of the actuator [2] of the belt detection gear [1] with the notch [3] of the panel /Rr.



FS-602





- Check to see if the top surface of the paper exit arm is within the extent [2].
 When the position is not within the standard extent, perform the following adjustment.
- Remove 2 screws from the rail stopper, and then pull out the stacker unit further. (See "4.1 Adjusting the bypass gate.")

NOTE

• Be sure to place a support under the stacker unit to prevent FS from falling down.

- 5. Remove the screw [2] from the belt detection gear [1] and adjust the position of the paper exit arm to the standard position, and then adjust the position of the belt detection gear [1] to the position in step 2 and secure it.
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

4.5 Adjusting the mounting position of the alignment plate /Up

4.5.1 Adjusting the mounting position in FS-504

Conduct this adjustment when there is misalignment in the stapled paper bundle.

A. Procedure



- Turn ON the main body, and then turn OFF the main body after the FS initial operation.
- 2. Open the front door, and then pull out the stacker unit.
- Remove 2 screws from the rail stopper, and then pull out the stacker unit further. (See "4.1 Adjusting the bypass gate.")

NOTE

- Be sure to place a support under the stacker unit to prevent FS from falling down.
- Check to see if the actuator [2] of the alignment plate home sensor /Up (PS8) [1] is aligned with the home position.





 Check to see if the distance A between the alignment plate /Up [1] and the panel /Rr [2] is within a standard value.

Standard value: A = 40.3 \pm 0.5 mm (inside to inside)

When the value is not within the standard value, perform the following adjustment.



- Loosen the screw [1] and adjust the distance between the alignment plate /UpRr [2] and the panel /Rr [3] in accordance with the standard value, and the secure it.
- 7. Loosen the screw [4] and adjust the position of the alignment plate /UpFr [5] to make the distance to the alignment plate /UpRr [2] be the standard value.

Standard value: A = $340.6^{+0}_{-0.5}$ mm (inside to inside)

4.5.2 Adjusting the mounting position in FS-602

Conduct this adjustment when there is misalignment in the flat-stapled paper bundle.

A. Procedure



- 1. Turn ON the main body, and then turn OFF the main body after the FS initial operation.
- Open the front door, and then pull out the stacker unit.
- Remove 2 screws from the rail stopper, and then pull out the stacker unit further. (See "4.1 Adjusting the bypass gate.")

NOTE

- Be sure to place a support under the stacker unit to prevent FS from falling down.
- Check to see if the actuator [2] of the alignment plate home sensor /Up (PS8) [2] is aligned with the home position.





5. Check to see if the distance A between the alignment plates /Up [1] is within a standard value. Standard value: A = $340.6^{+0}_{-0.5}$ mm (inside to inside)

When the value is not within the standard value, perform the following adjustment.

6. Loosen 2 screws [1] and adjust the alignment plate /UpRr [2] with the long center marking of the marking lines [3], and then adjust the position of the alignment plate /UpFr [4] by referring the back side to make the distance be the standard value.

4.6 Adjusting the mounting position of the alignment plate /Lw (FS-602)

Conduct this adjustment when there is misalignment in the saddle stitched paper bundle.

A. Procedure



- Check to see if "4.5 Adjusting the mounting position of the alignment plate /Up" has been completed.
- Turn ON the main body and drive the saddle stitching stopper motor (M18) via the service mode.
- *3.* Turn OFF the main body.
- Open the front door, and then pull out the stacker unit.
- Remove 2 screws from the rail stopper, and then pull out the stacker unit further. (See "4.1 Adjusting the bypass gate.")

NOTE

• Be sure to place a support under the stacker unit to prevent FS from falling down.

- Remove the stapler unit cover. (See "2.3.1 Removing/reinstalling the stapler unit cover (FS-602).")
- Check to see if the actuator of the alignment plate home sensor /Up (PS8) is aligned with the home position.
- Check to see if the actuator [3] of the alignment plate home sensor (PS24) [2] for the alignment plate /Lw [1] is aligned with the home position.
- 9. Set the paper that is larger than A4R in the stacker section, and then make the alignment plate /UpRr [1] and the alignment plate /LwRr [2] contact with the paper [3] and check to see if the they are aligned. Also, check to see if the distance A between the alignment plate /LwRr [2] and the alignment plate /LwFr [4] is within a standard value.

Standard value: A = $340.6^{+0}_{-0.5}$ mm (inside to inside)

When the value is not within the standard value, perform the following adjustment.







NOTE

• When setting paper in the stacker, be sure to press the flat-stapling stopper release lever [2] with your finger to avoid the paper is placed on the flat-stapling stopper [1].

10. Loosen the screw [1] and adjust the position of the alignment plate /Lw [2] to make the distance be the standard value.

4.7 Staple position adjustment (flat-stapling)

4.7.1 Adjusting the position in FS-504

Conduct this adjustment when the staple position is not within the standard value.

NOTE

• Be sure not to move the stapler unit in the horizontal direction by hand. Otherwise, it may cause the belt and gear tooth skipping.

A. Procedure



- Perform the stapling operation and check to see if the staple position is within the standard value.
 - The standard value in the 1 staple/one-corner stapling at rear [1]: A = 8.5 ± 3 mm
 - The standard value in the 1 staple/front [2]: $B = 8.5 \pm 3 \text{ mm}$
 - The standard value in the flat-stapling [3]: $C = 8.5 \pm 3 \text{ mm}$

(In the flat-stapling, the edge of the paper and the line connecting 2 staples [4] should be in parallel.)

Conduct the following adjustment when the value is not within the standard value or when they are not in parallel.



- Open the front door, and then pull out the stacker unit.
- Remove 2 screws from the rail stopper, and then pull out the stacker unit further. (See "4.1 Adjusting the bypass gate.")

NOTE

- Be sure to place a support under the stacker unit to prevent FS from falling down.
- 4. Loosen 2 adjusting screws [1] on each of the flatstapling stoppers /Fr and /Rr and 1 adjusting screw [2] on each of the assist stoppers /Fr and / Rr, and then adjust the positions of the flat-stapling stoppers /Fr and /Rr and the assist stoppers /Fr and /Rr.

NOTE

- The heights of the 4 stoppers should be same.
- Loosen the adjusting screw [3] on the rigid stopper, and then adjust the its position to make the height difference with the other stoppers be 0 to -0.5 mm.
- 6. Perform the stapling operation and check to see if the staple position is within the standard value.

4.7.2 Adjusting the position in FS-602

Conduct this adjustment when the staple position is not within the standard value.

NOTE

• Be sure not to move the stapler unit in the horizontal direction by hand. Otherwise, it may cause the belt and gear tooth skipping.

A. Procedure



- Perform the stapling operation and check to see if the staple position is within the standard value.
 - The standard value in the 1 staple/one-corner stapling at rear [1]: A = 8.5 ± 3 mm
 - The standard value in the 1 staple/front [2]: B = 8.5 ± 3 mm
 - The standard value in the flat-stapling [3]: C = 8.5 ± 3 mm

(In the flat-stapling, the edge of the paper and the line connecting 2 staples [4] should be in parallel.)

Conduct the following adjustment when the value is not within the standard value or when they are not in parallel.



- 2. Turn ON the main body and drive the stapler movement motor (M11) to move the stapler unit to the position for A4 and 1 staple/rear with code 75-18 of 47 mode, and then turn OFF the main body.
- 3. Open the front door, and then pull out the stacker unit.
- Remove 2 screws from the rail stopper, and then pull out the stacker unit further. (See "4.1 Adjusting the bypass gate.")

NOTE

- Be sure to place a support under the stacker unit to prevent FS from falling down.
- 5. Remove the stapler unit cover.
- 6. Loosen 2 adjusting screws [1] on the flat-stapling stopper /Fr and 2 adjusting screw [2] on the flatstapling stopper /Rr, and then adjust the positions of the flat-stapling stoppers /Fr and /Rr by referring to the markings [3] and [4].
- 7. Perform the stapling operation and check to see if the staple position is within the standard value.

4.8 Staple position adjustment (flat-stapling) (FS-602)

Conduct this adjustment when the edge of the paper and the staple positions are not in parallel at the saddle stitching.

A. Procedure

NOTE

• Be sure not to move the stapler unit in the horizontal direction by hand. Otherwise, it may cause the belt and gear tooth skipping.



 Check to see if the edge of the paper and the line
 [2] connecting 2 staples [1] should be in parallel [3] and the misalignment L is within the standard value.

Standard value: misalignment L = 1 mm or less When the misalignment is not within the standard value, perform the following adjustment.



- Check to see if "4.5 Adjusting the mounting position of the alignment plate /Up" and "4.6 Adjusting the mounting position of the alignment plate /Lw (FS-602)" have been completed.
- 3. Open the front door, and then pull out the stacker unit.
- Remove 2 screws from the rail stopper, and then pull out the stacker unit further. (See "4.1 Adjusting the bypass gate.")

NOTE

- Be sure to place a support under the stacker unit to prevent FS from falling down.
- 5. Remove the stapler unit cover.
- 6. Loosen 3 screws [2] on the alignment plate /Lw [1].
- 7. Adjust the position of the alignment plate /Lw to the front and the rear if [4] and [5] are the cases respectively.
- 8. Tighten the 3 screws, and then perform the stapling operation and check to see if the saddle stitching position is within the standard value.

4.9 Stapler vertical position adjustment (FS-602)

Conduct this adjustment when there is a problem in clinching of the stapler.

NOTE

• Be sure not to move the stapler unit in the horizontal direction by hand. Otherwise, it may cause the belt and gear tooth skipping.

A. Procedure



- *1.* Perform the stapling operation and check to see if there is one of the following clinching problems.
 - There is the bucking [1] of the staple.
 - The floating of the staple is more than the standard value (L = 1 mm).
 - The bending height of the staple is more than the standard value (L = 0.7 mm).

Conduct the following adjustment when one of the conditions is met.

- Turn ON the main body and move the stapler unit to the position for A4 and 1 staple by selecting the finisher adjustment in the service mode, and then turn OFF the main body.
- 3. Open the front door, and then pull out the stacker unit.
- Remove 2 screws from the rail stopper, and then pull out the stacker unit further. (See "4.1 Adjusting the bypass gate.")

NOTE

- Be sure to place a support under the stacker unit to prevent FS from falling down.
- 5. Remove the stapler unit cover.
- 6. Remove the cartridge.
- 7. Remove the flat-stapling stopper release units /Fr and /Rr. (See "2.3.2 Replacing the stapler unit (FS-602).")
- Remove 4 screws [3] from each of the clincher /Fr
 [1] and the clincher /Rr [2].





9. Install the stapler positioning jig [1] onto the cartridge setting section.



10. Rotate the gears [1] of the staplers downward and adjust the clinchers to the positions where 2 pins [2] of the stapler positioning jigs are inserted into the positioning holes [4] of the clinchers [3], and then rotate the gears [1] downward further to fully insert the pins into the positioning holes.

NOTE

- Be sure to rotate the gears of the staplers carefully because the pins of the stapler positioning jigs may be clogged if they are inserted forcedly.
- 11. Tighten 4 screws on each clinchers. (See step 8.)
- 12. Rotate the gears of the staplers upward to pull out the pins of the jig from the positioning holes of the clinchers, and then lift up and remove the jig.
- 13. Replace the cartridge.
- 14. Check the stapling operation.

4.10 Folding stopper tilt adjustment (FS-602)

Conduct this adjustment when there is misalignment in the edges of the fold paper.



NOTE

- Be sure not to move the stapler unit in the horizontal direction by hand. Otherwise, it may cause the belt and gear tooth skipping.
- Never loosen the screw [1] of the folding stopper. It is prohibited to be removed.
- For ease of understand, the position of the folding stopper is shown lower than the actual position in the illustration.

A. Procedure



 Perform the folding operation on A3 paper and check to see if the misalignment is within the standard value.

Standard value: A = 1 mm or less

When the misalignment is not within the standard value, perform the following adjustment.



- Open the front door, and then pull out the stacker unit.
- Remove 2 screws from the rail stopper, and then pull out the stacker unit further. (See "4.1 Adjusting the bypass gate.")

NOTE

- Be sure to place a support under the stacker unit to prevent FS from falling down.
- 4. Remove the stapler unit cover.
- Loosen 5 screws [2] on the folding stopper [1], and then adjust the tilt of the folding stopper by referring to the markings [3].

NOTE

- Never loosen the screw [4] of the folding stopper. It is prohibited to be removed.
- For ease of understand, the position of the folding stopper is shown lower than the actual position in the illustration.
- Tighten 5 screws [2], and then perform the folding operation and check to see if the misalignment is within the standard value.

4.11 Adjusting the folding pressure (FS-602)

Conduct this adjustment if you want to change the power of the pressure of the folding roller.

A. Procedure



- Remove the rear cover. (See "3.3.4 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover.")
- 2. Open the front door.
- 3. Remove the stacker unit cover.
- Change the mounting position of the each 2 pressure springs [3] at both the front [1] and the rear [2].

The folding pressure is:

A: weak B: normal C: strong

NOTE

• Hook the 4 pressure springs [3] on the hook holes of the same mark.

4.12 Adjusting the tri-folding position (FS-602)

Conduct this adjustment when the 1st folding position or the 2nd folding position is not within the standard value.

A. Procedure



- Check to see if "4.10 Folding stopper tilt adjustment (FS-602)" has been completed.
- Perform the tri-folding operation and check to see if the tri-folding positions are within the standard values.

When the tri-folding positions are not within the standard values, perform the following adjustment.

Folding Standard value		lue	Standard
position	A4R 8.5 x 11F		
а	95 mm	89 mm	±1 mm
b	101 mm	95 mm	±1 mm
С	101 mm	95 mm	±1 mm

- 3. Turn ON the main body, adjust the 1st folding position (standard a) with the "Try-folding position adjustment" of "FNS adjustment" in the service mode, and then perform the tri-folding operation.
- If the 1st folding position a is within the standard, open the front door, and then pull out the stacker unit.
- Open the tri-folding guide plate [1] and loosen 2 screws [2] from the tri-folding stopper, and then adjust the positions of the tri-folding stoppers [4] by referring to the markings [3].
- Tighten 2 screws [2], and then perform the trifolding operation and check to see if the 2nd folding position b is within the standard.



SERVICE MANUAL

Field Service

PI-501

2005.06 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\underline{\land}$ to the left of the revised section. A number within $\underline{\land}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\mathbf{\Lambda}$ in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within **A** represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/06	1.0	_	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

PI-501

OU	ITLIN	E
1. I	PROD	JCT SPECIFICATIONS 1
MA	INTE	ENANCE
2. I	PERIO	DIC CHECK
2	.1 Pr	ocedure for the maintenance of the paper feed section
	2.1.1	Replacing the pick-up roller /Up and the paper feed roller /Up
	2.1.2	2 Replacing the pick-up roller /Lw and the paper feed roller /Lw
	2.1.3	Replacing the separation roller /Up and the torque limiter /Up
	2.1.4	Replacing the separation roller /Lw and the torque limiter /Lw
3. (OTHEF	7 PARTS
З.	.1 Lis	st of parts to be disassembled and assembled7
3.	.2 Re	emoval procedure of parts to be disassembled and assembled
	3.2.1	Removing/reinstalling the covers

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4.	ME	CHANICAL ADJUSTMENT	. 9)
	4.1	PI displacement adjustment (with PK-502 installed)	. 9)
	4.2	PI tilt adjustment (with PK installed)	. 11	1

Blank page



1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Name	Post inserter unit
Туре	Torque limiter separation type seat feeding device

B. Functions

Auto sheet feeding (online operation)	Feeds the sheet to FS automatically under the instruction from the main body.
Manual sheet feeding	Feeds the sheet to FS under the instruction from the operation panel of PI.
(offline operation)	You can select the following 5 post processing modes:
	1 staple/back mode
	 2 staples (flat-stapling) mode
	 Punch mode (when PK-502/503/504/505 is installed on FS)
	 Saddle stitching mode (when installed on FS-602)
	Tri-folding mode (when installed on FS-602)
	Note The tray /Lw only supports the manual sheet feeding. The wide paper is not supported.

C. Type of paper

Paper size	Tray /Up	Metric: A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5, 16K, 16KR
		Inch: 8.5 x 11, 8.5 x 11R, 5.5 x 8.5
	Tray /Lw	Metric: Wide paper (up to 314 x 459 mm), A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5,
		B5R, A5, F4, 8K, 16K, 16KR
		Inch: Wide paper (up to 314 x 459 mm), 11 x 17, 8.5 x 14, 8.5 x
		11, 8.5 x 11R, 5.5 x 8.5
Paper weight	Plain paper	60 to 90 g/m ² of the high-quality paper and the recycle paper
	Special paper	50 to 59 g/m ² of the high-quality paper and the recycle paper
		91 to 200 g/m ² of the high-quality paper and the recycle paper
	Printing paper	50 to 200 g/m ² of the double-sided art paper, mat coated paper,
		high-quality paper
Capacity	Tray /Up, /Lw	200 sheets (128 g/m ²) or 30 mm or less in height
Sheet curling		
		[1]
		↓a
		15//1001pa
	a Curling: 10	mm or less
	[1] 5 sheets	

D. Maintenance

Maintenance	Same as the main body.
Machine service life	Same as the main body.

E. Machine data

Power source	24V/5V DC (supplied from FS)
Maximum power consump-	30VA
tion	
Dimensions	511 (W) x 620 (D) x 220 (H) mm
Weight	Approx. 10.5 kg

F. Operating environment

Temperature	10 to 30°C [18 to 23°C]	
Humidity	10 to 80% RH [40 to 60% RH] (with no condensation)	
* The value within "[" and "]" is applied when using the printing paper		

The value within "[" and "]" is applied when using the printing paper.

Note

• The information herein may be subject to change for improvement without notice.

PI-501

2.1 Procedure for the maintenance of the paper feed section

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODIC CHECK

• Be sure to unplug the power cord of the main body from the power outlet.

2.1.1 Replacing the pick-up roller /Up and the paper feed roller /Up

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Pick-up roller /Up: Every 1,000,000 prints (every 200,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)
- Paper feed roller /Up: Every 500,000 prints (every 100,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)

B. Procedure



- Remove the top cover (see "3.2.1 Removing/reinstalling the covers.")
- Remove 2 C-clips [1], and then slide the bearings
 [2] at the both sides and remove the paper feed roller unit /Up [3].





- 3. Remove the actuator [1], 3 C-clips [2], and 2 bearings [3] from the paper feed unit /Up, and then slide 2 roller shafts [4] to the arrow-marked direction [5] to remove the pick-up roller /Up [6] and the paper feed roller /Up [7] with the one-way clutches [8] and [9].
- Remove the pick-up roller [6] and the paper feed roller [7] from the one-way clutches [8] and [9].

Note

- When reinstalling the pick-up roller and the paper feed roller, insert the one-way clutch [3] from the notch [2] side of the pick-up roller [1]. Also, insert the one-way clutch [6] while aligning with the notch [5] of the paper feed roller [4].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

Note

 Reinstalling the pick-up roller and the paper feed roller with the blue faces of the one-way clutches of the pick-up roller and the paper feed roller face to the front.

2.1.2 Replacing the pick-up roller /Lw and the paper feed roller /Lw

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Pick-up roller /Lw: Every 1,000,000 prints (every 200,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)
- Paper feed roller /Lw: Every 500,000 prints (every 100,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)

B. Procedure



- 1. Pull the release lever [1] and open the top door [2].
- Perform the steps 2, 3, and 4 in "2.1.1 Replacing the pick-up roller /Up and the paper feed roller / Up."
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

2.1.3 Replacing the separation roller /Up and the torque limiter /Up

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Separation roller /Up: Every 500,000 prints (every 100,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)
- Torque limiter /Up: Every 3,000,000 prints (every 600,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)

B. Procedure



- Remove the top cover (see "3.2.1 Removing/reinstalling the covers.")
- Remove 2 C-clips [1], and then slide the bearings [2] at the both sides and remove the paper feed roller unit /Up [3].

MAINTENANCE

PI-501





3. Release hooks [1] at the both sides, and then lift up and remove the separation roller unit /Up [2].

- Remove the C-clip [1] from the separation roller unit /Up, and then remove the separation roller / Up [2] and the torque limiter /Up [3].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

Note

• Install the separation roller with 2 notches [4] face to the front and be aligned with the prong [5].

2.1.4 Replacing the separation roller /Lw and the torque limiter /Lw

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

- Separation roller /Lw: Every 500,000 prints (every 100,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)
- Torque limiter /Lw: Every 3,000,000 prints (every 600,000 prints for actual replacement cycle)

B. Procedure



- 1. Pull the release lever [1] and open the top door [2].
- Perform the steps 2, 3, and 4 in "2.1.3 Replacing the separation roller /Up and the torque limiter / Up."
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3. OTHER PARTS

3.1 List of parts to be disassembled and assembled

No.	Section	Part name	Page referred to
1	Cover	Top cover, rear cover, operation panel cover	8

PI-501

A Caution:

3.2 Removal procedure of parts to be disassembled and assembled

PI-501

• Be sure to unplug the power cord of the main body from the power outlet.

3.2.1 Removing/reinstalling the covers

A. Procedure





- 1. Remove the cap [2] of the top cover [1].
- 2. Remove 4 screws [3], and then remove the top cover [1].

- 3. Remove the screw [1], and then remove the connector cover [2].
- Remove 2 screws [3], and then remove the rear cover [4].

- Remove 2 screws [1] and disconnect the connector [2], and then remove the operation panel assembly [3].
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

■ ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT

4.1 PI displacement adjustment (with PK-502 installed)

Conduct this adjustment when the punch position is displaced when feeding from PI.

NOTE

- In the PI displacement adjustment, adjust the tray /Up, and then adjust the tray /Lw.
- If the slide distance of the side guide plate /Rr is too long, perform the cover sheet tray size adjustment in the Tech. Rep. mode, and then perform the procedure from step 2.

A. Procedure



- Check to see if the PK punch hole vertical position adjustment is completed by feeding the paper from the manual feed tray of the main body.
- Perform the displacement adjustment for the main body trays 1, 2, 3, and 4 by in accordance with the punch hole position.
- *3.* Set 3 sheets of paper in the tray of the PI, and then feed them in the punch mode as samples.
- Fold the sheets in half at the center and check the misalignment of the punch holes.
- Release the hook [1], and then remove the adjustment cover [3] of the side guide plate /Rr [2].
- 6. For the tray /Lw, remove 2 screws [2] from the side guide plate /Rr [1], and then slide the side guide plate /Rr to the front and remove it.





- Z. Loosen 2 adjustment screws [2] on the side guide plate /Rr [1] and slide the side guide plate /Rr twice as long as the misalignment of the punch hole position (for example, if the misalignment is 1.5 mm to the rear, slide 3 mm to the rear).
 1 index: 2 mm
- 8. Fully tighten the adjustment screws [2] to secure the side guide plate /Rr.
- For the tray /Lw, reinstall the side guide plate /Rr with 2 screws.
- 10. Set paper on the tray, and then set the side guide plate /Rr so that the side guide plate /Rr is contacted with the paper in parallel.
- 11. Set 3 sheets of paper in the tray, and then feed them in the punch mode as samples.
- 12. Fold the sheets in half at the center and check the misalignment of the punch holes.
- 13. Repeat step 6 to 12 until the misalignment of the punch holes is corrected.
- 14. Reinstall the adjustment cover of the side guide plate /Rr.
- 15. Set A4R paper on the PI tray, and then perform the cover sheet tray size adjustment in the Tech. Rep. mode.

PI-501

PI-501

4.2 PI tilt adjustment (with PK installed)

Conduct this adjustment if the edge of the paper and the punch hole position of the paper fed from PI is not in parallel.

A. Procedure





- 1. Set 3 sheets of paper in the tray of the Pl, and then feed them in the punch mode as samples.
- Fold the sheets in half and check the tilt of the punch holes.
 - [1]: The front is wider
 - [2]: The back is wider
- 3. Open the front door of FS, and then loosen the screw [2] of the guide plate [1].
- Adjust the guide plate [1] in accordance with the misalignment of the punch holes by referring to the markings [3].

The back is wider: Move to [4] The front is wider: Move to [5]

- 5. Tighten the screw [2].
- 6. Repeat step 1 to 5 until the tilt of the punch holes is corrected.
Blank page



SERVICE MANUAL

Field Service

PK-502/503/504 505

2005.08 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\underline{\land}$ to the left of the revised section. A number within $\underline{\land}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show **A** in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within $\mathbf{\Lambda}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0	—	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

PK-502/503/504/505

ου	TLINE		
1. F	PRODUC	CT SPECIFICATIONS	1
МА	INTER	NANCE	
2. F	PERIODI	IC CHECK	3
2.	1 Maii	ntenance procedure	3
3. (OTHERS	S	4
З.	1 Item	ns not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted	4
З.	2 List	of parts to be disassembled and assembled	6
З.	3 Ren	noval procedure of parts to be disassembled and assembled	7
	3.3.1	Removing/reinstalling the punch unit (PK-502)	7
	3.3.2	Removing/reinstalling the punch unit (PK-503/PK-504/PK-505)	9

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4.	MEC	CHANICAL ADJUSTMENT	11
	4.1	Punch hole position tilt adjustment (PK-502)	11
	4.2	Punch hole position tilt adjustment (PK-503/PK-504/PK-505)	12
	4.3	PK punch hole vertical position adjustment (PK-502)	13
	4.4	Paper size sensor sensitivity adjustment (PK-503/PK-504/PK-505)	14

Blank page



1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Name	Punch unit
Туре	FS-integrated type punching operation device

B. Functions

Punching method	Stops and punches every paper		
No. of holes	PK-502/PK-503: 2 holes		
	PK-504:	4 holes	
	PK-505:	2 holes/3 holes (inch) or 2 holes/4 holes (metric)	
Hole diameter	φ 6.5 mm		
Hole pitch	PK-502/PK-503: 80 mm		
	PK-504:	21, 70, 21 mm	
	PK-505:	80 mm	
Supported mode	Punch mode		
Applicable post processing	Sort, group, stap	ble	
mode			

C. Type of paper

Paper size	PK-502:	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5, A5R, F4, 8K, 16K, 16KR	
	PK-503:	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5, A5R, F4, 8K, 16K, 16KR	
	PK-504: A3, B4, A4, B5, F4		
	PK-505 (2 holes metric):		
	A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5, F4, 8K, 16K, 16KR		
	PK-505 (4 holes metric):		
		A3, B4, A4, B5, 8K, 16K	
	PK-505 (2 holes	inch):	
	, 11 x 17, 8.5 x 14, 8.5 x 11, 8.5 x 11R, 5.5 x 8.5, 5.5 x 8.5		
	PK-505 (3 holes inch):		
		11 x 17, 8.5 x 11	
Supported paper	Recommended	PK-502: Same as the specified paper of the main body	
	general paper	PK-503/PK-504/PK-505: 80 g/m ²	
	Recommended	Same as the specified paper of the main body	
	recycle paper		
	General paper	High-quality paper 60 to 128 g/m ²	
	(i.e. high-quality		
	paper)		
Punch prohibited paper	Label paper, tab paper, transparency film, 2nd base paper, holed paper, and the		
	other paper that may interfere with the operation of the punch unit or the punc		
	blade.		
	d		



D. Maintenance

Maintenance	Same as the main body.
Machine service life	Same as the main body.

E. Machine data

Power source	24V/5VDC (supply from FS)	
Maximum power	PK-502:	20 VA
consumption	PK-503/PK-504:	40 VA
	PK-505:	40 VA
Dimensions	PK-502:	W 68 mm x D 442 mm x H 120 mm
	PK-503/PK-504:	W 130 mm x D 470 mm x H 115 mm
	PK-505:	W 150 mm x D 515 mm x H 135 mm
Weight	PK-502:	Approx. 2 kg
	PK-503/PK-504/PK-505:	Approx. 3 kg

F. Operating environment

Temperature	10°C to 30°C
Humidity	10% RH to 80% RH (with no condensation)

NOTE

• The information herein may be subject to change for improvement without notice.

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODIC CHECK

2.1 Maintenance procedure

Periodically replaced parts are not employed.

3. OTHERS

3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted

A. Screws not allowed to be removed (PK-502)

(1) Parts not allowed to be removed

Never loosen the following screws.



(2) Reason

The specified performance cannot be retained if the screw is loosen.

B. Screws not allowed to be removed (PK-503/PK-504/PK-505)

(1) Parts not allowed to be removed

Never loosen the following screws.

	15kjf2c001na

[1] Punch unit

[2] Screw not allowed to be removed

(2) Reason

The specified performance cannot be retained if the screw is loosen.

3. OTHERS

3.2 List of parts to be disassembled and assembled

No.	Section	Part name	Page referred to
1	Punch unit (PK-502)	Punch unit (PK-502)	7
2	Punch unit (PK-503/PK-504/PK-505)	Punch unit (PK-503/PK-504/PK-505)	9

PK-502/503/504/505

3.3 Removal procedure of parts to be disassembled and assembled

 $\triangle Caution:$

• Be sure to unplug the power cord of the main body from the power outlet.

3.3.1 Removing/reinstalling the punch unit (PK-502)

A. Procedure



 1. Remove the punch scraps box [1].

2. Remove the screw [2], and then remove the punch drive board cover [1].





- 3. Disconnect 2 connectors [4] from the punch drive board (PDB) [1].
- Remove 2 screws [3], and then remove the punch unit [2] from FS.
- *5.* Reinstall the above parts by following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• When reinstalling the punch drive board (PDB), attach the board supports of the punch drive board (PDB) at 4 positions [1] in the figure.

A. Procedure







1. Remove the punch scraps box [1].

punch drive board cover [1].

2. Remove the screw [2], and then remove the MAINTENANCE

3. Disconnect 2 connectors [3] and the relay connector [1] from the punch drive board (PDB) [2].







 Remove 3 screws [2], and then remove the punch unit cover [1].

- 5. Disconnect 2 connectors [2].
- 6. Remove 4 screws [1], and then remove the punch unit [3] from FS.
- 7. Reinstall the above parts by following the removal steps in reverse.

NOTE

• When reinstalling the punch drive board (PDB), attach the board supports of the punch drive board (PDB) at 4 positions [1] in the figure.

PK-502/503/504/505

■ ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT

4.1 Punch hole position tilt adjustment (PK-502)

Conduct this adjustment if the edge of the paper and the punch hole position on the paper are not in parallel.

A. Procedure





- Align the paper on the main body tray with the side guide plate and the rear edge guide plate, and then check the tilt with the platen copy or the service mode (DF is unavailable).
- Conduct the paper tilt adjustment if it is tilted significantly.
- 3. Perform the punch mode printing for 3 sheets of paper in each of the single sided mode and the double sided mode as samples for checking the tilt of the punch hole position.
- 4. Measure the tilt of the punch hole position for the 3 sheets of paper. Tilt of the punch hole position (%) = (A - B)/C
- 5. Open the front door of FS.
- 6. Loosen 2 adjustment screws [2] on PK.
- 7. Move the punch unit [3] in accordance with the tilt of the punch hole position by referring to the markings [1]. 1 index: 0.5%
- 8. Tighten 2 adjustment screws [2].
- 9. Repeat step 3 to 8 until the tilt of the punch hole position is corrected.

4.2 Punch hole position tilt adjustment (PK-503/PK-504/PK-505)

Conduct this adjustment if the edge of the paper and the punch hole position on the paper are not in parallel.

A. Procedure



- Align the paper on the main body tray with the side guide plate and the rear edge guide plate, and then check the tilt with the platen copy or the service mode (DF is unavailable).
- Conduct the paper tilt adjustment if it is tilted significantly.
- 3. Perform the punch mode printing for 3 sheets of paper in each of the single sided mode and the double sided mode as samples for checking the tilt of the punch hole position.
- Measure the tilt of the punch hole position for the 3 sheets of paper.

Tilt of the punch hole position (%) = (A - B)/C



- 5. Open the front door of FS.
- Remove 3 screws [2], and then remove the punch unit cover [1].

- 7. Loosen 4 adjustment screws [1] on PK.
- Move the punch unit [3] in accordance with the tilt of the punch hole position by referring to the markings [2].
 1 index: 0.5%
- Tighten 4 adjustment screws [1].
- *10.* Reinstall the punch unit cover.
- 11. Repeat step 3 to 10 until the tilt of the punch hole position is corrected.

4.3 PK punch hole vertical position adjustment (PK-502)

Conduct this adjustment if the punch hole position on the paper is misaligned from the center of the paper to either the front side or the back side.

NOTE

- The punch hole position tilt adjustment should be conducted before the punch hole vertical position adjustment.
- In the punch hole vertical position adjustment, conduct the adjustment for the manual feed tray, then conduct the punch mode printing from the frequently used tray.
- Conduct the displacement adjustment on the main body tray or PI if there is a difference on the misalignment of the punch hole vertical position between when the paper is fed from the main body tray and when the paper is fed from PI.

A. Procedure





- 1. Align the paper on the main body tray with the side guide plate and the rear edge guide plate.
- 2. Perform the punch mode printing for 3 sheets of paper in each of the single sided mode and the double sided mode as samples for checking the misalignment of the punch hole position.
- 3. Fold the printed paper in half and check the vertical misalignment of each punch hole. Misalignment: (A - B)/2
- 4. Open the front door of FS.
- 5. Loosen 2 adjustment screws [2] on PK.
- 6. Move the punch unit [3] in accordance with the alignment by referring to the markings [1].
 1 index: 1 mm

NOTE

- The adjustable range is ± 5 mm. The pitch between holes is unadjusted.
- 7. Tighten 2 adjustment screws [2].
- 8. Repeat step 3 to 7 until the misalignment of the punch hole vertical position is corrected.

4.4 Paper size sensor sensitivity adjustment (PK-503/PK-504/PK-505)

Conduct this adjustment if the punch hole position on the paper is misaligned from the center of the paper to either the front side or the back side.

A. Procedure



- Check to see if FS is connected with the main body.
- 2. Open the front door.
- 3. Remove the screw [2], and then remove the punch drive board cover [1].

- 4. Turn ON the main body.
- Fully rotate the volumes [3] of the punch drive board (PDB) [1] clockwise, and then rotate each volume counterclockwise until the corresponding LED [2] turns ON.
- 6. Conduct the step 5 for each 5 volumes.
- 7. Turn OFF the main body.
- 8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.



SERVICE MANUAL

Field Service

ZU-601/602

2005.06 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\underline{\land}$ to the left of the revised section. A number within $\underline{\land}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\mathbf{\Lambda}$ in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within **A** represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/06	1.0	_	Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

ZU-601/602

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS
MAINTENANCE
2. PERIODIC CHECK
2.1 Maintenance procedure
2.1.1 Replacing the punch clutch (CL1)5
2.1.2 Replacing the punch scraps conveyance motor (M7)
3. OTHERS
3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted7
3.1.1 Punch section
3.1.2 Z-folding section
3.2 List of parts to be disassembled and assembled9
3.3 Removal procedure of parts to be disassembled and assembled
3.3.1 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover
3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling ZU from the main body
3.3.3 Removing/reinstalling ZU from FS
3.3.4 Removing/reinstalling the punch unit
3.3.5 Removing/reinstalling the Z-folding/conveyance unit
3.3.6 Removing/reinstalling the Z-folding/conveyance unit stopper

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. ME	CHANICAL ADJUSTMENT	19
4.1	Paper edge sensor sensitivity adjustment 1	19
4.2	Gate solenoid /Lw (SD1) adjustment	20
4.3	1st folding skew adjustment	21
4.4	2nd folding skew adjustment	22
4.5	2nd stopper position adjustment	23
4.6	Dip switch (SW1) setting	25

Blank page

OUTLINE

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Туре

Z-folding multi punching device

B. Functions

Punch	Punching method	Reciprocal punching method (punching each paper)
	No. of holes	ZU-601: Swedish 4 holes
		ZU-602: Metric area 2 holes/4 holes (switched automatically
		Inch area 2 holes/3 holes (switched automatically)
	Hole diameter	ZU-601: φ6.5 mm
		ZU-602 (Metric area): φ6.5 mm
		ZU-602 (Inch area): φ8.0 mm
	Hole position	
		$ \begin{array}{c c} b \uparrow & \hline \\ c \uparrow & \hline \\ \hline$
		$\begin{array}{c c} a & a \\ \hline & & \\ b \\ \hline \\ b \\ \hline \\ b \\ \hline \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \hline \\ b \\ \hline \\ \\ \end{array} \\ \hline \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\$
		[3] [4] _{15ktt1e001na}
		Model Type/No. of a (mm) b (mm) c (mm) d *1 type holes *1
		[1] ZU-601 Swedish/ 4 holes 10.5 70 21 Center of the paper
		[2] ZU-602 Inch/2 holes 9.5 70 -
		Metric/ 10.5 80 – 2 holes –
		[3] ZU-602 3 holes 9.5 108 -
		[4] ZU-602 4 holes 10.5 80 -



Maximum tray capacity	The maximum number of sheets for the FS main tray at the		
(80g/m ²)	Z-folding operation		
	 Z folding continu 	ous: Max. 30 shee	ts
	Z-folding/stapling	g: See the table bel	ow
	No. of sheets per staple		No. of set on
	No. of fold sheets	No. of unfold	the main tray
		sheets	
	1 sheets	1 to 40 sheets	20 set
	2 sheets	0 to 30 sheets	10 set
	3 sheets	0 to 20 sheets	4 set
	4 sheets	0 to 10 sheets	3 set
	5 sheets	0 sheet	2 set
	6 to 30 sheets	Stapling not avail	able

C. Type of paper

No punch mode		Same as the main body.		
Punch mode	Paper size	2 holes/ A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, A5, A5R,		
		swedish	16K, 16KR	
		4 holes	11 x 17, 8.5 x 14, 8.5 x 11, 8.5 x 11R,	
			5.5 x 8.5, 5.5 x 8.5R	
		3 holes	A3, B4, A4, B5, 8K, 16K	
			11 x 17, 8.5 x 11	
		4 holes	A3, B4, A4, B5, 8K, 16K	
			11 x 17, 8.5 x 11	
		Comb	ination with the folding/saddle stitching mode is	
	T (not av		
	Type of paper	60 to 90 g	g/m ² of the high-quality paper and the plain paper	
		 Speck paper 	tab paper OUP paper blueprint master and	
		bindin	a-holed paper are not allowed	
Z-folding mode	Paper size			
		8.5 x 14 (f	Foldina)	
		 For B4 	4 paper (including the mix of the paper), the com-	
		binatio	on with the stapling mode is not available.	
	Type of paper	60 to 90 g	g/m ² of the high-quality paper and the plain paper	
		 Specia 	al paper is not supported. Label paper, tab paper,	
		transp	parency film, paper, holed paper, and low stiffness	
		paper	are not supported in Z-folding mode.	
Paper curling				
	[1]			
	15kvt1c001pa			
	a Amount of ourly	10 mm or lo		
	[1] 5 sheets of par	er immedia	tely after the printing	
	[1] a sheets of paper immediately after the printing			

D. Maintenance

Maintenance	Same as the main body.
Machine service life	Same as the main body.

E. Machine data

Power source	100 to 240 VAC (automatic switching) DC5V (supplied from the main body)
Maximum power consump- tion	120 W or less
Dimensions	169 (W) x 660 (D) x 930 (H) mm
Weight	Approx. 38 kg

F. Operational environment

Temperature	10 to 30°C
Humidity	10 to 80% RH (with no condensation)

Note

• The information herein may be subject to change for improvement without notice.

MAINTENANCE

2. PERIODIC CHECK

2.1 Maintenance procedure

A Caution:

· Be sure to unplug the power cords of ZU and the main body from the power outlet.

2.1.1 Replacing the punch clutch (CL1)

Periodically replaced parts/cycle Α.

Punch clutch (CL1): Every 3,000,000 prints (every 1,000,000 punches for actual replacement cycle) .

B. Procedure



- 1. Remove ZU from the main body (See "3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling ZU from the main body.")
- 2. Remove the punch unit (See "3.3.4 Removing/ reinstalling the punch unit.")
- 3. Cut the wiring harness band [1] and 2 wiring harnesses [2].

Note

- · When bind the wiring harness band [1] and [2], face them to the arrow-marked direction [3] to avoid the contact with the conveyance section of the main body.
- 4. Disconnect the connector [4] and remove 2 screws [5], and then remove the punch motor unit [6].

Note

- · When reinstalling the punch motor unit [6], press the punch motor gear [7] to the gear [8]. Be sure to check that the gears rotate smoothly and there is appropriate backlash.
- 5. Remove the C-clip [1], and then remove the punch clutch (CL1) [2].

Note

- When reinstalling CL1 [2], be sure to check the stopper [3] is engaged with a projection [4] of metal plate.
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.



[1]

15kvf2c002na

2.1.2 Replacing the punch scraps conveyance motor (M7)

A. Periodically replaced parts/cycle

Punch scraps conveyance motor (M7): Every 3,000,000 prints (every 1,000,000 punches for actual replacement cycle)

B. Procedure



[1] 0 0 0 [3] [4] 15kv/2c004na

- Remove ZU from the main body (See "3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling ZU from the main body.")
- 2. Disconnect the connector [1].
- 3. Remove 2 screws [2], and then remove the punch scraps conveyance motor unit [3].

Note

• When reinstalling the punch scraps conveyance motor unit [3], be sure to check the worm gear [4] rotates smoothly and there is appropriate backlash.

 Remove 2 screws [1], and then remove the punch scraps conveyance motor (M7) [3] from the mounting plate [2].

Note

- When reinstalling M7 [3], apply grease (Plas Guard No. 2) to the worm gear [4].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3. OTHERS

3.1 Items not allowed to be disassembled and adjusted

- 3.1.1 Punch section
- A. Parts not allowed to be removed
- (1) ZU-601



[1] Retaining rings not allowed to be removed

- [3] Screws not allowed to be removed
- [2] Screws not allowed to be removed

(2) ZU-602



[1] Screws not allowed to be removed

B. Reason

The precision of the punch edges is ensured in the punch unit. The normal punch operation may be affected if it is disassembled. Never loosen or remove these screws and retaining rings.

3.1.2 Z-folding section

A. Parts not allowed to be removed



[1] Screw not allowed to be removed

[2] Conveyance guide plate

B. Reason

The screws position the clearance of the conveyance guide plate. The precision of the Z-folding may be affected if it is disassembled. Never loosen or remove these screws.

3.2 List of parts to be disassembled and assembled

No.	Section	Part name	Page referred to
1	Cover section	Rear cover	10
2	ZU	ZU with FS	10
3		ZU	13
4	Punch section	Punch unit	15
5	Z-folding/conveyance section	Z-folding/conveyance unit	16
6	Z-folding/conveyance section	Z-folding/conveyance unit stopper	17

3.3 Removal procedure of parts to be disassembled and assembled

∆Caution:

Be sure to unplug the power cords of ZU and the main body from the power outlet.

3.3.1 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover

A. Procedure



- Remove the screw [1] and then remove the clamp
 [2] and the power cord [3].
- 2. Loosen the screw [4] and remove 2 screws [5], and then remove the rear cover [6].
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling ZU from the main body





- Remove the power cord and the rear cover (See "3.3.1 Removing and reinstalling the rear cover.")
- 2. Disconnect 2 connectors [1].





- 3. Open the front door.
- Remove 3 screws [1], and then remove the folding front cover [2].

ZU-601/602

- 5. Pull up the lever [1], and then evacuate the entrance guide plate [2] into ZU.
- Remove the screw [3], 2 screws [4], and 2 washer
 [5].

Note

- When reinstalling them, be sure to install the screw [3], and then install the screws [4].
- 7. Loosen 2 screws [7] on the positioning plate [6].



 Slide ZU together with FS to the front to remove the notches [1] of ZU from the pins [2] of the main body and remove metal plate sections [3] of ZU from the stays [4] of the main body.

Note

• When moving FS with ZU, be sure not to deform the supporting plate [5].

ZU-601/602

MAINTENANCE

3.3.3 Removing/reinstalling ZU from FS

▲Caution:

• Be sure to perform this operation with 2 people because ZU is heavy.

A. Procedure



- Remove ZU together with FS from the main body (See "3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling ZU from the main body.")
- 2. Remove the screw [1] and then remove the supporting plate [2].
- 3. Remove the screw [3].
- 4. Remove 2 screws [4], and then remove the positioning plate [5].

Note

• When reinstalling the positioning plate [5], temporarily hold it with the screw [4] and reinstall FS and ZU to the main body, and then fully tighten the screw [4].




 Pull out the retaining lever to the front to release ZU and FS, and then tilt the upper part of ZU [2] and disconnect 2 connectors [3].

6. Lift up ZU [1] with 2 people and remove it from FS [2].

Note

- When reinstalling ZU, be sure that the wiring harness is not caught by the FS and ZU.
- 7. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

ZU-601/602

MAINTENANCE

3.3.4 Removing/reinstalling the punch unit A. Procedure



- Remove ZU together with FS from the main body (See "3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling ZU from the main body.")
- Disconnect the connector [1] and remove the screw [2], and then remove the sensor mounting plate [3].

Note

- When reinstalling the sensor mounting plate, check to see if the actuator [4] is placed in the center of the punch shift home sensor (PS5) [5].
- 3. Cut the wiring harness band [6], and then disconnect the connector [7].

Note

- When bind the wiring harness band [6], be sure to bind it so that the wiring harness [8] passes the wiring harness band [6] from left to right [9] from the view of the rear.
- Be sure to bind the wiring harness band [6] with sufficient length of the wiring harness [8] when the punch unit move to forward.



5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.



3. OTHERS

3.3.5 Removing/reinstalling the Z-folding/conveyance unit

A. Procedure





- Remove ZU together with FS from the main body (See "3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling ZU from the main body.")
- Remove ZU from FS (See "3.3.3 Removing/reinstalling ZU from FS.")
- 3. Remove 4 screws [1], and then remove the top cover [2].

- Pull out the Z-folding/conveyance unit [1] to the front [2].
- 5. Disconnect 3 connectors [3].
- 6. Remove 2 screws [4], and then remove the arm [5].

- When removing the screws [4], be sure to support the arm [5] with your hand. Otherwise it may fall down.
- 7. Replace the Z-folding/conveyance unit [6].



 Remove 4 screws [1], and then remove Z-folding/ conveyance unit [2] to the front [4] by holding the rails [3] at the both sides.

Note

- When placing the Z-folding/conveyance unit, place it on the flat surface with its top or left side down.
- When reinstalling the Z-folding/conveyance unit, be sure to place the rails [3] on the rail holders [5] at 4 positions.
- 9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

3.3.6 Removing/reinstalling the Z-folding/conveyance unit stopper

A. Procedure



- Open the front door, and then pull out the Z-folding/conveyance unit [1].
- Remove 2 stopper screws [2] from left and right rail and then pull out the Z-folding/conveyance unit [1] further.
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

Blank page

ADJUSTMENT/SETTING

4. MECHANICAL ADJUSTMENT

4.1 Paper edge sensor sensitivity adjustment

Conduct this adjustment when replacing the ZU control board (ZUCB) or the paper edge sensor board (PESB).

A. Procedure





 Remove the screw [1], and then remove the board cover [2].

- 2. Turn ON the main power switch (SW1) and the sub power switch (SW2) of the main body.
- Fully rotate the volumes (VR) [1] clockwise and check to see the corresponding LEDs [2] turn OFF, and then rotate VRs [1] counterclockwise slowly and stop rotating when LEDs [2] turn ON.

- Be sure to stop rotating VRs at the positions where LEDs turn ON. Try again if rotating VRs too much.
- The following table shows the correspondence between VRs and LEDs.

VR	LED
VR1	LED2
VR2	LED3
VR3	LED4
VR4	LED5
VR5	LED6

- 4. Conduct this adjustment on every 5 VRs [1].
- 5. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

4.2 Gate solenoid /Lw (SD1) adjustment

Conduct this adjustment when replacing SD1.

A. Procedure



- Remove ZU together with FS from the main body. (See "3.3.2 Removing/reinstalling ZU from the main body.")
- 2. Remove ZU from FS. (See "3.3.3 Removing/reinstalling ZU from FS.")
- Pull out the Z-folding/conveyance unit, and then remove the stopper and pull out the unit further. (See "3.3.6 Removing/reinstalling the Z-folding/ conveyance unit stopper.")
- 4. Loosen 2 screws [3] on the mounting plate [2] of the gate solenoid /Lw (SD1) [1] and adjust the gate /Lw [4] so that the clearance between the gate /Lw [4] and the registration plate [5] gets to the standard value "a", and then tighten the screws [3].

Standard value: a = 3 to 5 mm

- 5. Loosen 2 screws [6] and adjust the gate /Lw [4] so that the clearance between the gate /Lw [4] and the guide plate [5] gets to the standard value "b" while SD1 [1] turns ON and the plunger [7] is pulled, and then tighten 2 screws [6]. Standard value: b = 2 to 4.6 mm
- 6. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

4.3 1st folding skew adjustment

Conduct the 1st folding skew adjustment when the skew of the 1st folding is not within the standard value. Be sure to conduct the 1st Z-folding position adjustment (see "Tech. Rep. mode") because this adjustment effects the 1st folding position.

A. Procedure







- Perform the Z-folding printing operation on A3 or 11 x 17 paper and check to see if the skew of the 1st folding is within the standard value "a". Standard value: a = 2 mm or less When the value is not within the standard value, perform the following procedure.
- 2. Open the front door, and then pull out the Z-folding/conveyance unit.
- 3. Pull out the Z-folding/conveyance unit, and then remove the stopper and pull out the unit further. (See "3.3.6 Removing/reinstalling the Z-folding/ conveyance unit stopper.")
- 4. Remove 4 screws [1], and then remove the conveyance top cover [2].

ZU-601/602

- 5. Loosen 4 screws [1].
- Adjust the 1st stopper assembly [2] by moving the front side of the assembly to right and left by referring to the markings [3], and then tighten the 4 screws [1].

- When the skew pattern is [4], move the front side of the 1st stopper assembly [2] to the left [5].
- When the skew pattern is [6], move the front side of the 1st stopper assembly [2] to the right [7].
- 7. Replace the Z-folding/conveyance unit, and then perform the Z-folding printing operation and check to see if the skew of the 1st folding is within the standard value.
- 8. Repeat steps 5 to 7 until the standard value can be obtained.
- 9. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

4.4 2nd folding skew adjustment

Conduct the 2nd folding skew adjustment when the skew of the 2nd folding is not within the standard value.

NOTE

- Be sure to conduct the "1st folding skew adjustment" before conducting this adjustment.
- Be sure to conduct the "2nd Z-folding position adjustment" (see "Tech. Rep. mode") because this adjustment effects the 2nd folding position.

A. Procedure





- Perform the Z-folding printing operation on A3 or 11 x 17 paper and check to see if the skew of the 2nd folding is within the standard value "a". Standard value: a = 2 mm or less When the value is not within the standard value, perform the following procedure.
- 2. Open the front door, and then pull out the Z-folding/conveyance unit.
- Pull out the Z-folding/conveyance unit, and then remove the stopper and pull out the unit further. (See "3.3.6 Removing/reinstalling the Z-folding/ conveyance unit stopper.")
- 4. Loosen 4 screws [1].
- Adjust the 2nd stopper assembly [3] by moving it vertically by referring to the markings [2], and then tighten the 4 screws [1].

- When the skew pattern is [4], move the back side of the 2nd stopper assembly [2] upward [5].
- When the skew pattern is [6], move the back side of the 2nd stopper assembly [2] downward [7].
- 6. Replace the Z-folding/conveyance unit, and then perform the Z-folding printing operation and check to see if the skew of the 2nd folding is within the standard value.
- 7. Repeat steps 4 to 6 until the standard value can be obtained.
- 8. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

4.5 2nd stopper position adjustment

Conduct this adjustment when the 2nd folding position cannot be adjusted from the Tech. Rep. mode or the skew of the 2nd folding cannot be adjusted by the procedure in "4.4 2nd folding skew adjustment."

NOTE

• Be sure to conduct the "2nd folding skew adjustment" (see "4.4 2nd folding skew adjustment") and "2nd Z-folding position adjustment" (see "Tech. Rep. mode") because this adjustment effects the amount of the 2nd folding skew and the 2nd folding position.

A. Procedure



- Conduct the Z-folding printing operation to move the 2nd stopper to the home position, and then turn OFF the sub power switch (SW2) and the main power switch (SW1) of the main body.
- 2. Open the front door, and then pull out the Z-folding/conveyance unit.
- 3. Check to see if the distance between the 2nd stopper [1] and inside edge of the guide plate [2] is within a standard value.

Standard value: $a = 20 \pm 0.5 \text{ mm}$

When the value is not within the standard value, perform the following procedure.

4. Loosen 2 screw [3] with the hex wrench, and then adjust the distance between the 2nd stopper [1] and the inside of the guide plate [2] so that it gets to the standard value a.

- Be sure not to rotate the actuator [5] of the 2nd stopper home sensor (PS3) [4] during the adjustment. It may be moved from the home position.
- Conduct the following steps 5 to 13 only if you cannot reach to the screws [3] with the hex wrench when they are located in side of the 2nd stopper assembly.



- Rotate the shaft [2] so that you can reach to 2 screws [1] with the hex wrench.
- 6. Loosen 2 screws [1].
- Rotate the shaft [2] so that the actuator [3] is roughly positioned to the home position [5] of the 2nd stopper home sensor [4].

Note

- Never remove the screw [6] from the actuator [3]. At the appropriate position, the anti-rotation pin [7] points upward when the actuator [3] faces to the left.
- Rotate the pulley [8] to move the 2nd stopper [9] to the position within the standard value.
- 9. Loosen 4 screws [10].
- 10. Lift up the shaft [12] upward enough to remove the belt [11] from the pulley [8], and then rotate the pulley [8] without moving the shaft [2] and the 2nd stopper [9] so that the screw [1] faces outside.
- 11. Tighten 2 screws [1].
- 12. Tighten 4 screws [10].

- Before tightening the screws [10], be sure to check the tension is exerted on 2 belts [11].
- *13.* Repeat the steps 1 to 4 to adjust the 2nd stopper to the position within the standard value.

4.6

∧Caution:

A. Procedure

Dip switch (SW1) setting

been unplugged from the power outlet.

Conduct this setting when replacing the ZU control board (ZUCB).

[1]

ZU-601/602

[2]

 Remove the screw [1], and then remove the board cover [2].

- [1] 750/600 N Ē 920 ო S Ē 15kvf3c014nb
- 2. Set the dip switch (SW1) [1] as below.
 - 750/600 Bit 1: OFF Bit 2: ON Bit 3: OFF Bit 4: OFF

•

- 920
 Bit 1: ON
 Bit 2: ON
 Bit 3: OFF
 - Bit 4: OFF

Note

15kvf3c013na

. When changing the setting of SW1, make sure that the power cords of ZU and the main body have

- The setting of SW1 varies with the main body to which ZU is connected. When a wrong setting is made, the main body does not recognize ZU.
- 3. Reinstall the above parts following the removal steps in reverse.

Blank page



SERVICE MANUAL

Field Service

IC-202

2005.08 KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC. Ver. 1.0

Revision history

After publication of this service manual, the parts and mechanism may be subject to change for improvement of their performance.

Therefore, the descriptions given in this service manual may not coincide with the actual machine.

When any change has been made to the descriptions in the service manual, a revised version will be issued with a revision mark added as required.

Revision mark:

- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\underline{\land}$ to the left of the revised section. A number within $\underline{\land}$ represents the number of times the revision has been made.
- To indicate clearly a section revised, show $\mathbf{\Lambda}$ in the lower outside section of the corresponding page.

A number within **A** represents the number of times the revision has been made.

NOTE

Revision marks shown in a page are restricted only to the latest ones with the old ones deleted.

- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 3.0 only are shown with those for Ver. 2.0 deleted.
- When a page revised in Ver. 2.0 has not been changed in Ver. 3.0: The revision marks for Ver. 2.0 are left as they are.

2005/08	1.0		Issue of the first edition
Date	Service manual Ver.	Revision mark	Descriptions of revision

CONTENTS

IC-202

0	UTL	INE	
1.	PRO	DDUCT SPECIFICATIONS.	1
Μ	AIN	TENANCE	
2.	FIRI	MWARE VERSION UP	3
3.	DIS.	ASSEMBLY / REASSEMBLY	4
	3.1	Tools Required	4
	3.2	Removal / Installation of Printer key control board	5

ADJUSTMENT / SETTING

4.	SERVICE MODE	7
5.	Starting and Finishing the Service Mode	7

TROUBLESHOOTING

6.	TRC	DUBLESHOOTING THE PRINTING SYSTEM	. 9
	6.1	Troubleshooting of the print controller and copier	. 9
7.	Data	a Capture	10

Blank Page

1. PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

A. Type

Туре:	Built-in box type for the KONICA MINOLTA Printer/Copier

B. Functions

Resolution	600 x 600 dpi
Gradation	binary
Blank area	PCLXL: 4.23mm (left, right, top and bottom without variation)
	PCL5e: 4.23mm (left, right, top and bottom without variation)
	PS: 4.23mm (left, right, top and bottom without variation)
Printable Area	314 x 458mm (The maximum paper size)
No. of Print	1 to 9999
Continuous Print Speed	bizhub 750: 75 ppm (A4, 8.5 x 11) / (600 x 600 dpi)
	bizhub 600: 60 ppm (A4, 8.5 x 11) / (600 x 600 dpi)
Printer Description Language	PCL5e/PCL6/PostScript3 (compatible)
Compliant OS	Windows 98SE/Me
	Windows NT 4.0 (Service Pack 6a or more)
	Windows 2000 (Service Pack 4 or more)
	Windows XP (Service Pack 1 or more)
	Windows Server 2003
	Mac OS 9.x
	Mac OS X v10.2/v10.3
Printer Driver	PCL printer driver for Windows 98SE/Me/NT 4.0/2000/XP/Server
	2003
	PS printer driver for Windows
	PS printer driver for Windows/Macintosh
	No driver for PCL5e
Network Functions	
Printing Method	Peer-to-Peer (TCP/IP for Windows 98SE/Me), SMB (Windows),
	Pserver (IPX/SPX), lpd/lpr (TCP/IP for Windows NT 4.0/2000), lpd/lpr
	(TCP/IP for UNIX), IPP (TCP/IP), AppleTalk (EtherTalk), NPrinter/
	RPrinter (IPX/SPX), RAW (Port 9100; extensible up to 6 ports)
Dedicated Utilities	Peer to Peer Printing Tool
	EMS Plug-in
	NDPS Gateway
	Direct Print

C. Paper

Paper Size	Same as copier
Paper Type	Same as copier
Paper Weight	Same as copier

D. Maintenance and Life

Maintenance	Same as copier
Machine Service Life	Same as copier

E. Machine Data

CPU	Same as copier
System Memory	Same as copier
Host Interface	Same as copier
Hard Disk Drive	Same as copier
Power	Same as copier
Network Function	
Network Interface	Same as copier
Frame Type	Same as copier
Ethernet Connection	Same as copier
Network Connector	Same as copier
LED	Same as copier

F. Operating Environment

Temperature	Same as copier
Humidity	Same as copier

MAINTENANCE

2. FIRMWARE VERSION UP

Firmware for IC-202 is contained in the copier firmware (MFP Controller). With the updating of MFP controller version, the version of the IC-202 firmware is also updated.

Firmware's version is upgraded by ISW.

See "5. FIRMWARE VERSION UP" in the Field Service for the main body.

IC-202

3

3. DISASSEMBLY / REASSEMBLY

Assembly should be made in reverse order of disassembly unless otherwise noted.

3.1 Tools Required

Standard screwdriver

A Caution

Be sure to unplug the power cable, not only to turn the copier off, before attempting to make servicing.

A Caution

- Before engaging in Disassembly/Reassembly, check to make sure that all the cables are unplugged from the copier.
- There may be occasions when boards are damaged if no appropriate grounding measures are taken. Wear a wrist strap or others during servicing.
- Disassembly/Reassembly should be made on cushioning materials.

1. Turn the Sub and Main power switches OFF of

Remove the back cover/ 2 (8 screws).

the main body, and unplug the power cord from

3.2 Removal / Installation of Printer key control board

- Back cover/ 2 5NBE2E001M
- Cover/ 1 NBF2E002MA
- Cover/ 2 -

3. Remove the cover/ 1 (4 screws).

NOTE

the outlet.

2.

· Remove the screws with the engraved circle marks.

Remove the cover/ 2 (3 screws). 4.



IC-202



5. Remove the printer key control board on the system control board.

NOTE

- You should be careful not to damage the board.
- Assembly should be made in reverse order from disassembly.

■ ADJUSTMENT / SETTING

4. SERVICE MODE

In the service mode, various adjustments / settings are available. See "10. SERVICE MODE" in Field Service for the main body.

5. Starting and Finishing the Service Mode

- 1. Confirm that the normal Copy Mode screen is on the display.
- Press the [Utility/Counter] button. [MetaCount/Utility] screen appears.
- 3. Press the [Details] key. [MetaCount] screen appears.
- Press the keypad in the following order. Stop -> 0 -> 0 -> Stop -> 0 -> 1 [Service Mode menu] screen appears.

NOTE

- If the CE password has been provided, you should enter the password to enter the service mode.
- Press the key of items to be set. Setting screen of each item appears.
- Set items as required and press the [OK] key after completion. Setting is accepted and the [Service Mode menu] screen returns.
- Press the [Exit] key. Normal Copy Mode screen returns.

Blank Page

IC-202

■ TROUBLESHOOTING

6. TROUBLESHOOTING THE PRINTING SYSTEM

This table lists information about the symptoms, possible causes, and remedies for problems that may occur with the printing system (combination of the print controller and copier). It is intended to help engineers find information as quickly as possible, and provide basic solutions.

A Caution

• See the "Copier Service Manual" for information about Error Cord List.

6.1 Troubleshooting of the print controller and copier

Symptoms	Causes	Actions
"Warming up" does not disappear.	Copier is in trouble.	Locate the cause of trouble of the copier.
Printout is defective, or nothing can be printed.	The system board or some boards of the copier are defective.	Put the copier in service mode and per- form test. If it operates properly, system board may be failure.
Print controller does not start.	The printer key control board is inactive. Or printer key control board is not installed.	Check the connector of the controller board. Replace the system board as necessary.
	Software of the print con- troller is defective.	Reinstall the software of the print con- troller.
Test print can be produced but not from the parallel port, USB port.	The parallel port, USB port has something wrong or the cable is wrong or, the problem is on the com- puter side.	Check the cables (internal/external). Perform test using a data generator or a well-proven PC/I/O cable. Replace the system board as necessary.
Test print can be produced and all ports are good, but user jobs cannot be printed.	Some software error has happened.	Print controller's software or application program has something wrong. Save the file, which failed to be printed, in the disk and analyze the problem by suit- able means.

7. Data Capture

If any fault is caused in relation with the printer, acquire the print job data for the fault analysis. Capture data of up to 5 jobs can be saved. When new data is saved, oldest one is deleted.

To enable this function, following conditions should be met.

- Hard disk should have been installed in the main body printer (copier).
- [Administrator Setting] [Security Setting] [Security Details] [Print Data Capture] should be set to [Allow].
- [Administrator Setting] [Network Setting] [FTP Setting] [FTP Server] should be set to [ON].
 - 1. Activate the service mode.
 - (Refer to the steps 1 through 7 of "ADJUSTMENT / SETTING, 5. Starting and Finishing the Service Mode".)
 - Press [System2] [Data Capture] and select [ON]. Selecting [ON] saves the job data transmitted from PC in the copier hard disk.
 - 3. Confirm the IP address of the copier.
 - 4. Connect the Windows PC and copier with the Ethernet cable.
 - Activate the command prompt, specify the IP address of the copier and activate the FTP.
 - Increase of Windows XP [Version 5.1.2000]
 Copyright 1985-2001 Microsoft Corp.
 Crivitip 172.18.0.225
 Connected to 172.18.0.225.
 Connection Closed by remote host.
 220 KONICA MINOLTA FTP server ready._





- 6. Enter User and Password.
- User: capture
- Password: sysadm

7. Display the list of files which can be captured with the [Is] or [dir] command.

IC-202



8. Set the file transfer mode to binary transfer with the [binary] command.

9. Transfer the data to be captured to PC with the [get] or [mget] command.

10. Exit from the command prompt.

NOTE

 If you set [Administrator Setting] - [Security Setting] - [Security Details] - [Print Data Capture] to [Restrict] after acquiring the capture data, the job data saved in the hard disk will be deleted. Blank Page



PARTS GUIDE MANUAL

JULY 2005

bizhub 600 bizhub 750

KONICA MINOLTA BUSINESS TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

INFORMATION FOR PARTS GUIDE MANUAL

To find correct Parts No., refer to the "HOW TO MAKE THE BEST USE OF THIS MANUAL" in the following page.

HOW TO MAKE THE BEST USE OF THIS MANUAL

- 1 When you order, please check the proper figures beforehand that are on Our Parts Guide Manual, and order with the appropriate figures.
- 2 For screws, Nuts, Washers, retaining rings and Pins which are used in this model, one letter is shown on the Standard parts column of Parts list and exploded diagrams.
- 3 In order to maintain safety of the product, some specific parts composed of this product are set up as "essential safety parts".
- 4 The assigned parts number for the "essential safety parts" is indicated as "SP00-****".

When replacing these parts, follow precautions for disassembling and installing which are listed in the Service Manual. Do not use any parts that are not set up as

- 5 she means that there are exclusive parts for each destination. Please check the appropriate destination when you order.
- 6 Revision Mark Marked as ▲ on the illustration shows that the revision has been made.
- 7 All rights reserved. (any reprints or quotations are prohibited.) Use of this parts guide manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

パーツガイドマニュアルのご案内

サービス部品をご発注の際には、下記に示す "パーツガイドマニュアルの 活用にあたって"をご参照の上、正しい部品番号にてお願い致します。

パーツガイドマニュアルの活用にあたって

- 1 部品発注の際には、掲載されている部品番号の桁数を確認し、掲載されている桁数で発注願います。
- 2 この製品に使用されているネジ、ナット、ワッシャー、止め輪、ピンな どは、リストの右側の Standard parts 欄に a,b,c,……で表示し、イラスト にも a,b,c,……表示してあります。
- 3 製品の安全性を維持する為に、製品に使用される特定の部品を「重要保 安部品」として設定しています。
- 4 重要保安部品の部品番号は、"SP00-****" と記載されていますので、部品 交換時は、サービスマニュアル記載の分解・組み立ての注意事項に従っ て作業をして下さい。 また、指定以外の部品は一切使用しないで下さい。
- 5 本文に ♣ が表示されている部品は、仕向け地毎に専用部品がある事を意味しています。 オーダーされる時は、仕向け地を確認して下さい。
- 6 改訂記号について イラスト上に▲印が表示されている部分は、改訂された事を表します。
- 7 版権所有 (無断転載及び無断引用の禁止) 本パーツガイドマニュアルについては、機密保持等その扱いには十分注 意して下さい。万一取り扱いを誤った場合には、法律で処罰されること があります。

SYSTEM OUTLINE



bizhub 600/bizhub 750

GENERAL CONTENTS

No.	Description	Model			
1	MAIN MACHINE	bizhub 600/bizhub 750			
2	DOCUMENT FEEDER	DF-604			
3	SORTER/FINISHER	FS-504			
4	SORTER/FINISHER	FS-602			
5	PAPER FEEDER	LU-401			
6	PAPER FEEDER	LU-402			
7	OTHER OPTION	PI-501			
8	PUNCH UNIT	PK-502			
9	PUNCH UNIT	PK-503			
10	PUNCH UNIT	PK-504			
11	PUNCH UNIT	PK-505			
12	OTHER OPTION	ZU-601			
13	OTHER OPTION	ZU-602			
14	SORTER/FINISHER	SF-601			
15	FAX CONTROLLER	FK-502			
16	OTHER OPTION	EK-701			
17	PRINT CONTROLLER	IC-202			

DIAGRAMS OF MAIN PARTS SECTION



bizhub 600/bizhub 750

CONTENTS

No.	DESCRIPTION	名称	PAGE No.
1	MAIN FRAME	骨格	P1
2	EXTERNAL PARTS	外装	P2 P3 P4
3	OPERATION UNIT	操作部	P5 P6
4	OPTICS UNIT	光学部	P7 P8 P9 P10 P11
5	DRIVING SECTION	駆動部	P12 P13 P14 P15
6	DRUM CARTRIDGE	ト・ラムカートリッシ	P16 P17 P18 P19
7	TRANSFER SEPARATOR CORONA UNIT	転写分離極	P20
8	CHARGING UNIT	帯電極	P21
9	DEVELOPING UNIT	現像ユニット	P22
10	TONER SUPPLY UNIT	トナー補給部	P23 P24 P25
11	REGISTRATION UNIT	レジネトユニット	P26
			P27 P28 P29 P30 P31 P32
12	FIXING UNIT	定着部	P33 P34 P35
			P36 P37 P38 P39
13	PAPER FEED UNIT	給紙部	P40 P41 P42
14	VERTICAL CONVEYANCE UNIT	垂直搬送ユニット	P43 P44
15	MANUAL FEED UNIT	手差しユニット	P45 P46 P47
16	500 SHEET TRAY	500 枚トレイ	P48 P49
17	1000 SHEET TRAY	1000 枚トレイ	P50 P51
18	HORIZONTAL CONVEYANCE	水平搬送	P52
19	1500 SHEET TRAY	1500 枚トレイ	P53 P54
20			P55 P56 P57 P58 P59 P60
20	ADO	ADU	P61 P62
21	CONVEYANCE UNIT	搬送部	P63 P64
22	PAPER EXIT UNIT	排紙部	P65
23	ELECTRIC PARTS	電装	P66 P67 P68
24			P69 P70 P71 P72 P73 P74
	WIRING	束線	P75 P76 P77
			P78 P79
25	WIRING ACCESSORY AND JIGS	配線部品 治具	P80 P81
26	ACCESSORY PARTS	アクセサリーパーツ	P82

INDEX

Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.
000V -18- 1	81-19	00Z9 2132 3	80-31	08AA 8551 0	40-15	14GA 4697 0	82-7	25SA 6207 0	9-11
000V -18- 2	81-19	00Z9 2132 4	80-32	08AA 8551 0	41-18	14GE 4547 0	26-27	25SA 6208 0	9-10
000V 1001 0	81-20	00Z9 2137 0	80-33	08AA 8551 0	43-8	14GE 4547 0	57-1	25SA 6216 0	10-4
000V 1002 0	81-21	00Z9 2191 6	80-34	08AA 8551 0	45-21	14GE 4547 0	65-9	25SA 7717 0	16-18
000V 1003 0	81-22	00Z9 2193 0	80-35	08AA 8551 0	46-18	15AA 8005 0	12-14	25SA 7718 0	16-13
000V 1004 0	81-23	00Z9 2193 1	80-36	08AA 8551 0	47-20	25AA 4010 0	40-19	26MA 7406 0	38-20
000V 1005 0	81-24	00Z9 2194 1	80-37	08AA 8551 0	48-16	25AA 4750 0	61-10	26NA -752 0	67-3
00M6 -2-0 0	81-26	00Z9 2194 2	80-38	08AA 8551 0	49-19	25AA 4952 0	45-27	26NA 4082 0	12-25
00VC -2-0 0	81-27	00Z9 2199 0	81-1	08AA 8551 0	51-6	25AA 5008 0	59-27	26NA 4082 0	26-16
00VD -100 0	81-28	00Z9 2231 0	81-2	08AA 8551 0	52-1	25AA 7553 0	26-3	26NA 4082 0	40-9
00Z9 2001 3	80-1	00Z9 2232 0	81-3	08AA 8551 0	54-6	25AA 7553 0	52-9	26NA 4082 0	41-14
00Z9 2001 6	80-2	00Z9 2241 0	81-4	08AA 8551 0	55-7	25AA 7736 0	45-14	26NA 4082 0	44-4
00Z9 2001 7	80-3	00Z9 2245 0	81-5	08AA 8551 0	56-9	25AA 7773 0	45-11	26NA 4082 0	45-8
00Z9 2001 8	80-4	00Z9 2247 0	81-6	08AA 8551 0	57-16	25BA 7719 1	37-4	26NA 4082 0	52-15
00Z9 2002 0	80-5	00Z9 2451 2	81-7	08AA 8551 0	59-14	25BA 7726 2	15-12	26NA 4082 0	57-8
00Z9 2002 1	80-6	00Z9 2510 3	81-8	08AA 8551 0	60-7	25HA 1521 0	16-28	26NA 4082 0	58-1
00Z9 2002 2	80-7	00Z9 2510 6	81-9	08AA 8551 0	64-13	25SA -620 0	7-10	26NA 4206 1	42-10
00Z9 2002 5	80-8	00Z9 2511 0	81-10	08AA 8551 0	65-7	25SA 1020 0	1-2	26NA 4256 0	42-16
00Z9 2002 6	80-9	00Z9 2625 7	81-11	0900 2041 0	1-4	25SA 1043 1	1-8	26NA 4256 0	43-5
00Z9 2005 1	80-10	00Z9 2625 8	81-12	120A 1052 1	81-29	25SA 1527 0	13-20	26NA 4256 0	52-10
00Z9 2005 4	80-11	00Z9 2625 9	81-13	129X 4835 0	56-14	25SA 1528 0	13-19	26NA 4256 0	60-3
00Z9 2005 7	80-12	00Z9 3000 2	81-14	129X 4836 0	55-8	25SA 1539 0	13-14	26NA 4256 0	65-18
00Z9 2006 2	80-13	0486 4448 0	65-1	129X JG01 1	81-30	25SA 2028 0	17-4	26NA 4544 0	27-11
00Z9 2006 6	80-14	0590 7651 0	40-2	12AA 7708 0	24-22	25SA 2064 0	16-8	26NA 4544 0	49-20
00Z9 2006 7	80-15	07AA 7509 0	28-17	12AJ 7703 1	14-5	25SA 2067 0	16-24	26NA 4544 0	51-2
00Z9 2006 8	80-16	07AA 7509 0	34-20	12AJ 7703 1	15-5	25SA 2518 0	21-9	26NA 4544 0	54-2
00Z9 2007 4	80-17	07BA 1235 1	47-21	12QV 4065 0	12-6	25SA 4096 0	40-10	26NA 5403 0	33-3
00Z9 2009 1	80-18	07BA 5472 1	19-16	12QV 4065 0	13-9	25SA 4096 0	42-6	26NA 5403 0	35-13
00Z9 2009 4	80-19	08AA 7601 0	16-17	12QV 4065 0	34-22	25SA 5369 1	27-9	26NA 5419 0	27-1
00Z9 2009 6	80-20	08AA 7601 0	26-15	12QV 4065 0	45-28	25SA 6142 0	9-8	26NA 7357 0	66-8
00Z9 2010 5	80-21	08AA 7601 0	40-7	12QV 4065 0	52-19	25SA 6142 0	10-5	26NA 7373 1	4-26
00Z9 2010 6	80-22	08AA 7601 0	42-3	12QV 4065 0	58-30	25SA 6146 0	9-13	26NA 8251 3	19-15
00Z9 2011 0	80-23	08AA 7601 0	45-2	12QV 4066 0	12-33	25SA 6147 0	9-3	27LA 8001 0	62-9
00Z9 2012 3	80-24	08AA 7601 0	50-8	12QV 4066 0	42-9	25SA 6154 0	10-8	27LA 8003 0	14-24
00Z9 2012 5	80-25	08AA 7601 0	53-8	12QV 4066 0	57-10	25SA 6155 0	10-6	27LA 8003 0	15-24
00Z9 2110 2	80-26	08AA 7601 0	57-4	12QV 4066 0	58-11	25SA 6165 0	7-18	27LA 8051 0	65-8
00Z9 2110 3	80-27	08AA 7601 0	58-12	13GQ 4551 1	46-15	25SA 6170 0	7-14	27LA 8752 0	5-2
00Z9 2110 4	80-28	08AA 8551 0	4-6	13QA 1017 0	7-25	25SA 6171 0	7-12	3080 6136 0	1-1
00Z9 2130 3	80-29	08AA 8551 0	7-5	13QA 4061 0	58-35	25SA 6186 1	8-7	3920 1565 0	16-2
00Z9 2132 1	80-30	08AA 8551 0	26-30	13QE JG01 0	81-31	25SA 6188 1	8-5	3960 4068 1	45-1

bizhub 600/bizhub 750
									2/9
Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.
3960 4068 1	46-4	5400 7605 0	63-9	55VA 4792 0	51-10	56AA -387 0	64-11	56AA 1547 1	14-22
3960 7724 0	45-25	5400 7606 0	29-3	55VA 4792 0	54-8	56AA -389 1	63-16	56AA 1547 1	15-22
40AA 3027 0	65-26	5400 7606 0	36-8	55VA 6202 0	7-8	56AA -408 0	42-7	56AA 1549 0	14-6
40AA 3229 0	26-14	5400 7705 2	47-15	55VA 7554 0	41-26	56AA -418 0	49-7	56AA 1549 0	15-6
40AA 8501 0	4-7	5440 7720 1	36-34	55VA 7670 0	7-20	56AA -453 0	44-5	56AA 1552 1	14-23
40AA 8803 0	24-18	5520 1225 0	65-21	55VA 7671 0	7-23	56AA -455 0	43-12	56AA 1552 1	15-23
4540 5339 1	36-16	55FA 1210 1	4-17	55VA 7712 0	12-11	56AA -458 0	40-6	56AA 1559 0	12-21
4540 7504 0	36-19	55FA 4032 0	40-18	55VA 7713 0	12-9	56AA -459 0	42-15	56AA 1559 0	13-15
45AA 2040 0	19-11	55FA 4233 0	45-12	55VA 7742 0	64-4	56AA -468 0	45-13	56AA 1701 0	13-2
45AA 2040 0	20-15	55FA 6113 0	10-2	55VA 7743 0	64-3	56AA -469 0	45-6	56AA 1701 0	14-14
45AA 2040 0	21-4	55FA 6114 0	10-3	55VA 7744 0	64-2	56AA -475 1	46-1	56AA 1701 0	15-14
4620 7601 0	61-5	55FA 8052 0	68-5	55VA 7774 0	46-12	56AA -479 0	45-20	56AA 1703 0	16-21
4660 7602 0	24-15	55GA 5365 2	28-26	55VA 7811 0	7-1	56AA -614 1	9-7	56AA 1704 0	20-27
4660 7602 0	25-16	55GA 5365 2	30-14	55VA 7903 0	42-8	56AA -614 1	10-7	56AA 1706 0	48-21
4660 7602 0	28-19	55GA 5365 2	36-28	55VA 7903 0	46-14	56AA -635 0	8-3	56AA 1707 1	63-14
4660 7602 0	35-7	55GA 7551 0	58-14	55VA 7915 0	48-13	56AA -710 0	1-10	56AA 1707 1	64-6
4660 7602 0	46-13	55GA 7552 0	58-16	55VA 8012 1	7-9	56AA -812 0	59-3	56AA 1708 0	1-20
4660 7713 0	47-5	55GA 7655 0	20-9	55VA 8552 0	27-3	56AA -812 0	65-32	56AA 1709 0	52-20
4660 7722 0	45-26	55GA 7768 0	24-8	55VA 8552 0	39-1	56AA -910 0	19-14	56AA 1709 0	58-29
4660 7803 0	22-6	55TA 6111 0	9-1	55VA 8754 2	5-3	56AA 1008 1	1-7	56AA 1710 0	19-12
5000 7501 0	7-19	55TA 6112 0	9-6	55WA 1030 0	1-9	56AA 1030 0	23-6	56AA 1711 0	30-1
5400 1516 2	12-27	55TA 6113 0	9-5	55WA 1031 0	1-14	56AA 1030 0	49-17	56AA 1711 0	35-14
5400 3017 0	22-5	55TA 6132 0	8-1	55WA 3001 0	16-16	56AA 1048 0	66-5	56AA 1712 1	41-4
5400 4056 2	45-5	55TA 6134 1	10-9	55WA 3001 0	22-2	56AA 1055 0	1-6	56AA 1713 0	30-4
5400 4056 2	46-26	55VA 1547 0	12-7	55WA 6115 0	9-12	56AA 1056 0	1-3	56AA 1713 0	35-16
5400 4235 0	47-22	55VA 1554 1	12-31	56AA -034 0	61-23	56AA 1060 0	1-19	56AA 1714 0	20-12
5400 4720 0	51-8	55VA 1554 1	52-21	56AA -040 0	61-9	56AA 1061 0	1-27	56AA 1716 0	21-20
5400 4720 0	54-9	55VA 1554 1	58-24	56AA -058 0	56-12	56AA 1212 0	4-2	56AA 1730 0	43-9
5400 5346 0	29-11	55VA 2068 0	19-1	56AA -118 0	66-7	56AA 1214 0	4-1	56AA 1731 0	20-23
5400 5346 0	36-2	55VA 4061 0	49-3	56AA -149 0	1-5	56AA 1215 0	4-4	56AA 1731 0	42-13
5400 5351 0	29-23	55VA 4061 0	50-10	56AA -149 0	6-3	56AA 1216 0	4-3	56AA 1731 0	46-17
5400 5351 0	36-5	55VA 4061 0	53-10	56AA -217 0	16-3	56AA 1217 0	4-20	56AA 1731 0	49-11
5400 5354 0	36-24	55VA 4093 0	49-1	56AA -253 1	21-12	56AA 1218 0	4-19	56AA 1731 0	50-7
5400 7605 0	12-5	55VA 4093 0	50-13	56AA -254 1	21-14	56AA 1227 0	3-7	56AA 1731 0	53-7
5400 7605 0	13-4	55VA 4093 0	53-13	56AA -255 0	21-22	56AA 1234 0	2-21	56AA 1732 0	12-13
5400 7605 0	14-4	55VA 4212 0	12-2	56AA -264 0	20-5	56AA 1262 0	2-7	56AA 1732 0	24-9
5400 7605 0	15-4	55VA 4212 0	14-3	56AA -267 1	20-4	56AA 1541 1	14-18	56AA 1732 0	32-4
5400 7605 0	45-17	55VA 4212 0	15-3	56AA -306 0	22-16	56AA 1541 1	15-18	56AA 1732 0	38-4
5400 7605 0	58-31	55VA 4212 0	41-24	56AA -333 0	24-29	56AA 1546 0	14-2	56AA 1732 0	46-16
5400 7605 0	62-2	55VA 4689 0	26-1	56AA -383 1	64-9	56AA 1546 0	15-2	56AA 1732 0	65-15

									3/9
Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.
56AA 1733 0	1-22	56AA 1755 0	61-14	56AA 2125 0	18-10	56AA 3241 0	25-9	56AA 4046 0	40-17
56AA 1735 0	61-26	56AA 1758 0	20-3	56AA 2126 0	19-3	56AA 3242 0	25-1	56AA 4048 0	42-2
56AA 1736 0	59-25	56AA 1762 0	1-13	56AA 2503 0	21-21	56AA 3243 2	23-7	56AA 4049 0	40-5
56AA 1739 0	17-14	56AA 1763 0	1-12	56AA 2509 0	21-19	56AA 3244 0	23-11	56AA 4049 0	42-5
56AA 1739 0	20-24	56AA 1764 0	1-11	56AA 2514 1	21-23	56AA 3245 0	23-10	56AA 4051 0	41-8
56AA 1741 0	17-1	56AA 1770 0	64-5	56AA 2515 0	21-8	56AA 3256 0	24-7	56AA 4052 0	40-16
56AA 1742 0	19-8	56AA 1776 0	40-1	56AA 2517 0	21-18	56AA 3259 1	24-5	56AA 4111 0	49-6
56AA 1746 0	27-13	56AA 1776 0	41-21	56AA 2523 0	21-11	56AA 3261 0	23-2	56AA 4112 0	49-5
56AA 1746 0	47-14	56AA 1776 0	42-18	56AA 2530 1	21-2	56AA 3262 0	23-3	56AA 4116 0	48-14
56AA 1746 0	61-25	56AA 1782 1	26-12	56AA 2533 0	21-16	56AA 3263 0	23-9	56AA 4116 0	50-2
56AA 1746 0	63-4	56AA 1783 0	20-21	56AA 2534 0	21-17	56AA 3264 0	23-8	56AA 4116 0	53-2
56AA 1747 0	14-10	56AA 1790 0	30-2	56AA 2538 0	21-5	56AA 3265 0	24-12	56AA 4119 0	48-7
56AA 1747 0	15-10	56AA 1790 0	35-3	56AA 2540 0	21-6	56AA 3266 0	24-11	56AA 4120 0	48-6
56AA 1747 0	22-4	56AA 2003 0	19-6	56AA 2545 0	21-10	56AA 3267 0	25-7	56AA 4123 0	48-22
56AA 1747 0	24-26	56AA 2017 0	18-4	56AA 2604 0	20-11	56AA 3268 0	25-5	56AA 4133 0	48-15
56AA 1747 0	26-22	56AA 2040 0	18-1	56AA 2605 0	20-22	56AA 3270 0	24-3	56AA 4134 0	48-8
56AA 1747 0	59-23	56AA 2043 0	19-13	56AA 2608 2	20-6	56AA 3271 0	23-12	56AA 4135 0	48-3
56AA 1747 0	63-18	56AA 2044 1	19-9	56AA 2609 0	20-13	56AA 3272 0	25-14	56AA 4138 0	49-14
56AA 1748 0	12-4	56AA 2046 0	19-10	56AA 2612 0	20-25	56AA 3273 0	24-27	56AA 4139 0	49-23
56AA 1748 0	14-9	56AA 2051 0	16-19	56AA 2617 0	20-19	56AA 3274 0	24-23	56AA 4139 0	50-15
56AA 1748 0	15-9	56AA 2052 0	16-12	56AA 2618 0	20-18	56AA 3275 1	23-13	56AA 4139 0	53-15
56AA 1748 0	41-20	56AA 2056 0	16-23	56AA 2619 2	20-16	56AA 3276 1	23-14	56AA 4144 0	49-8
56AA 1748 0	44-2	56AA 2070 0	19-4	56AA 2625 0	20-10	56AA 4001 0	41-11	56AA 4145 0	49-13
56AA 1748 0	52-24	56AA 2075 0	18-6	56AA 2628 0	20-14	56AA 4003 2	41-10	56AA 4146 0	48-5
56AA 1748 0	58-23	56AA 2075 0	19-5	56AA 2631 0	20-26	56AA 4007 0	40-8	56AA 4149 1	48-11
56AA 1750 0	25-12	56AA 2076 0	16-9	56AA 2631 0	32-11	56AA 4010 0	41-2	56AA 4156 0	1-16
56AA 1751 0	40-12	56AA 2081 0	16-22	56AA 3042 0	22-15	56AA 4012 0	41-1	56AA 4160 0	48-19
56AA 1752 0	16-11	56AA 2087 0	13-11	56AA 3201 1	25-6	56AA 4017 1	41-16	56AA 4161 0	48-10
56AA 1752 0	24-10	56AA 2096 0	19-7	56AA 3202 0	25-4	56AA 4019 0	41-17	56AA 4161 0	50-4
56AA 1753 0	14-16	56AA 2098 0	19-2	56AA 3203 0	24-1	56AA 4021 0	41-12	56AA 4161 0	53-4
56AA 1753 0	15-16	56AA 2106 1	16-25	56AA 3206 0	24-28	56AA 4023 0	41-19	56AA 4164 0	49-15
56AA 1753 0	18-8	56AA 2107 1	16-14	56AA 3209 0	24-6	56AA 4029 0	40-13	56AA 4165 0	49-16
56AA 1753 0	29-4	56AA 2108 0	19-17	56AA 3213 0	24-24	56AA 4030 0	40-11	56AA 4165 0	51-7
56AA 1753 0	36-9	56AA 2112 0	17-15	56AA 3214 0	24-16	56AA 4031 0	41-15	56AA 4165 0	54-7
56AA 1755 0	29-21	56AA 2113 0	17-13	56AA 3215 1	25-2	56AA 4037 0	41-13	56AA 4166 0	48-17
56AA 1755 0	37-7	56AA 2115 0	17-7	56AA 3216 0	25-8	56AA 4038 0	41-6	56AA 4167 1	49-9
56AA 1755 0	44-7	56AA 2116 0	17-3	56AA 3227 0	25-11	56AA 4039 0	41-3	56AA 4168 0	48-20
56AA 1755 0	57-13	56AA 2119 0	19-18	56AA 3235 1	24-4	56AA 4041 1	42-11	56AA 4169 0	49-12
56AA 1755 0	58-22	56AA 2120 0	19-19	56AA 3239 0	25-10	56AA 4045 0	12-1	56AA 4169 0	51-3
56AA 1755 0	59-1	56AA 2121 0	19-20	56AA 3240 0	25-3	56AA 4045 0	41-9	56AA 4169 0	54-3

Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.
56AA 4174 0	49-24	56AA 4261 0	47-10	56AA 4811 0	65-30	56AA 5104 0	56-4	56AA 5278 0	59-20
56AA 4174 0	52-22	56AA 4264 0	46-23	56AA 4814 0	65-23	56AA 5105 0	61-24	56AA 5303 1	38-13
56AA 4176 0	49-25	56AA 4270 1	46-19	56AA 4815 0	65-34	56AA 5106 0	55-1	56AA 5305 2	36-13
56AA 4176 0	52-5	56AA 4408 2	44-1	56AA 4819 0	65-35	56AA 5107 2	59-22	56AA 5307 1	34-6
56AA 4203 1	45-3	56AA 4415 0	43-2	56AA 4820 0	65-36	56AA 5108 1	60-1	56AA 5312 1	38-8
56AA 4204 0	46-8	56AA 4420 0	43-4	56AA 4822 0	65-20	56AA 5110 2	59-21	56AA 5316 0	38-9
56AA 4205 0	46-9	56AA 4423 1	44-3	56AA 4825 0	65-38	56AA 5111 0	58-20	56AA 5317 2	38-18
56AA 4206 1	46-6	56AA 4424 0	44-6	56AA 4826 0	65-37	56AA 5130 1	57-19	56AA 5318 0	38-16
56AA 4211 1	47-12	56AA 4425 0	43-14	56AA 5013 0	61-20	56AA 5131 1	57-23	56AA 5320 0	32-7
56AA 4216 0	45-9	56AA 4426 0	43-16	56AA 5014 0	56-11	56AA 5138 0	61-3	56AA 5320 0	38-10
56AA 4217 0	45-18	56AA 4443 0	43-7	56AA 5016 0	56-3	56AA 5139 0	55-6	56AA 5324 0	32-9
56AA 4224 1	46-7	56AA 4443 0	52-25	56AA 5021 0	55-9	56AA 5143 0	55-3	56AA 5324 0	38-14
56AA 4226 0	47-11	56AA 4444 0	65-43	56AA 5024 0	56-13	56AA 5145 1	56-5	56AA 5337 0	38-1
56AA 4234 0	47-4	56AA 4508 2	63-17	56AA 5025 0	61-19	56AA 5146 0	60-8	56AA 5339 0	33-6
56AA 4235 0	47-13	56AA 4509 0	63-7	56AA 5038 1	56-10	56AA 5147 0	60-14	56AA 5345 0	33-5
56AA 4237 0	47-19	56AA 4517 0	63-13	56AA 5040 0	60-20	56AA 5148 0	60-15	56AA 5346 1	34-19
56AA 4237 0	48-18	56AA 4521 0	64-7	56AA 5041 0	55-15	56AA 5149 0	60-12	56AA 5347 0	29-16
56AA 4238 0	47-17	56AA 4530 0	64-10	56AA 5042 0	55-17	56AA 5150 0	58-15	56AA 5347 0	37-5
56AA 4242 0	47-6	56AA 4532 0	63-6	56AA 5043 0	60-16	56AA 5152 1	60-13	56AA 5358 2	36-26
56AA 4243 0	45-4	56AA 4533 0	63-15	56AA 5044 0	60-17	56AA 5154 0	60-4	56AA 5359 0	36-21
56AA 4244 0	46-5	56AA 4540 0	63-23	56AA 5045 0	59-31	56AA 5155 0	56-1	56AA 5361 0	36-10
56AA 4245 0	46-2	56AA 4541 0	63-24	56AA 5048 0	60-19	56AA 5155 0	60-11	56AA 5362 0	39-8
56AA 4245 0	56-7	56AA 4544 0	63-22	56AA 5049 0	61-4	56AA 5159 0	59-11	56AA 5363 0	36-20
56AA 4245 0	57-18	56AA 4546 0	63-27	56AA 5051 0	55-12	56AA 5181 0	58-5	56AA 5365 0	36-12
56AA 4245 0	59-10	56AA 4547 0	63-19	56AA 5052 0	55-2	56AA 5226 0	59-8	56AA 5365 0	39-14
56AA 4245 0	65-4	56AA 4548 0	63-20	56AA 5053 0	55-4	56AA 5229 0	59-30	56AA 5366 0	36-25
56AA 4246 0	46-24	56AA 4549 0	63-26	56AA 5062 1	61-17	56AA 5231 1	55-13	56AA 5371 0	34-7
56AA 4250 0	46-21	56AA 4551 0	63-25	56AA 5063 0	61-21	56AA 5232 0	55-14	56AA 5372 1	34-17
56AA 4251 0	45-19	56AA 4610 0	26-2	56AA 5067 0	61-22	56AA 5237 0	60-9	56AA 5373 2	35-4
56AA 4252 0	46-25	56AA 4611 0	26-13	56AA 5068 0	61-13	56AA 5238 0	59-32	56AA 5373 3	28-4
56AA 4253 0	46-10	56AA 4616 0	26-31	56AA 5070 0	61-6	56AA 5240 0	4-23	56AA 5374 1	28-1
56AA 4254 1	46-11	56AA 4620 2	26-25	56AA 5071 0	61-7	56AA 5242 0	59-9	56AA 5374 1	35-9
56AA 4255 0	57-17	56AA 4640 1	26-17	56AA 5073 0	61-8	56AA 5243 1	59-24	56AA 5375 1	28-5
56AA 4255 0	59-5	56AA 4645 0	26-4	56AA 5079 1	61-16	56AA 5244 0	60-6	56AA 5375 1	35-11
56AA 4255 0	65-3	56AA 4685 2	26-21	56AA 5080 0	61-18	56AA 5245 1	59-26	56AA 5378 0	34-5
56AA 4257 0	57-20	56AA 4693 0	26-26	56AA 5092 0	63-2	56AA 5246 0	59-4	56AA 5380 2	35-10
56AA 4257 0	59-17	56AA 4803 2	65-14	56AA 5093 0	63-3	56AA 5247 0	59-28	56AA 5382 0	28-22
56AA 4257 0	65-5	56AA 4804 0	65-16	56AA 5094 0	61-15	56AA 5247 0	60-5	56AA 5382 0	35-8
56AA 4258 0	46-27	56AA 4809 0	65-13	56AA 5101 0	57-22	56AA 5248 0	59-19	56AA 5383 0	28-23
56AA 4259 0	46-22	56AA 4810 0	65-11	56AA 5102 0	55-5	56AA 5249 0	59-29	56AA 5383 0	39-13

^{4/9}

Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.
56AA 5384 0	27-20	56AA 5466 0	38-12	56AA 7706 0	13-16	56AA 7748 0	57-24	56AA 8201 2	41-23
56AA 5384 0	34-14	56AA 5467 1	29-20	56AA 7707 0	13-13	56AA 7749 0	61-11	56AA 8202 1	16-4
56AA 5394 2	33-8	56AA 5467 1	37-9	56AA 7708 1	18-3	56AA 7752 0	14-7	56AA 8307 0	21-3
56AA 5395 1	35-17	56AA 6118 0	9-14	56AA 7709 0	14-21	56AA 7752 0	15-7	56AA 8307 0	64-8
56AA 5402 0	39-2	56AA 6129 0	7-11	56AA 7709 0	15-21	56AA 7753 0	12-8	56AA 8352 1	6-9
56AA 5405 1	39-6	56AA 6129 0	10-1	56AA 7710 0	18-5	56AA 7755 0	58-26	56AA 8401 0	68-2
56AA 5408 0	28-7	56AA 6133 0	8-8	56AA 7711 0	18-7	56AA 7756 0	58-8	56AA 8452 0	68-21
56AA 5408 0	35-6	56AA 6140 0	7-16	56AA 7712 0	14-13	56AA 7757 0	58-6	56AA 8551 0	7-6
56AA 5412 1	36-30	56AA 6141 0	7-13	56AA 7712 0	15-13	56AA 7759 0	40-3	56AA 8552 0	26-7
56AA 5418 0	35-1	56AA 6142 0	7-2	56AA 7713 0	14-1	56AA 7770 0	20-7	56AA 8553 0	8-11
56AA 5419 0	27-2	56AA 6143 1	7-3	56AA 7713 0	15-1	56AA 7771 1	12-16	56AA 8560 0	47-16
56AA 5419 0	34-18	56AA 6144 0	9-2	56AA 7714 0	12-10	56AA 7775 0	22-7	56AA 8560 0	48-9
56AA 5421 0	38-2	56AA 6153 0	7-22	56AA 7716 0	45-24	56AA 7781 0	63-8	56AA 8872 0	6-4
56AA 5422 0	27-21	56AA 6154 0	7-4	56AA 7717 0	45-23	56AA 7783 1	13-1	56AA 9014 1	76-6
56AA 5422 0	30-11	56AA 6157 0	7-15	56AA 7718 0	45-7	56AA 7784 0	26-23	56AA 9024 0	76-5
56AA 5422 0	32-1	56AA 6158 0	8-14	56AA 7719 0	65-31	56AA 7785 0	65-33	56AA 9042 0	76-1
56AA 5422 0	36-22	56AA 7017 0	4-27	56AA 7720 0	65-29	56AA 7786 0	65-28	56AA 9044 0	76-4
56AA 5422 0	39-17	56AA 7019 0	5-28	56AA 7721 0	27-14	56AA 7789 0	21-13	56AA 9054 0	79-1
56AA 5427 0	32-10	56AA 7309 0	68-10	56AA 7722 0	28-2	56AA 7790 0	21-15	56AA 9064 0	77-1
56AA 5427 0	38-15	56AA 7315 0	68-3	56AA 7722 0	34-8	56AA 7791 0	21-7	56AA 9065 1	76-3
56AA 5430 1	39-9	56AA 7316 0	68-20	56AA 7723 1	28-8	56AA 7792 0	25-21	56AA 9066 0	76-2
56AA 5434 0	38-5	56AA 7321 0	68-15	56AA 7723 1	34-13	56AA 7793 0	25-20	56AA 9078 0	77-3
56AA 5435 0	29-6	56AA 7323 0	68-9	56AA 7724 0	24-14	56AA 7794 0	25-15	56AA 9081 0	77-2
56AA 5435 0	36-27	56AA 7327 1	68-8	56AA 7725 0	18-9	56AA 7795 0	25-17	56AA 9089 0	78-1
56AA 5436 0	38-17	56AA 7328 1	68-14	56AA 7726 0	16-15	56AA 7796 0	45-10	56AA 9090 1	78-2
56AA 5437 0	38-3	56AA 7368 0	8-12	56AA 7727 0	25-18	56AA 7797 0	20-17	56AA 9363 0	78-6
56AA 5438 0	38-7	56AA 7504 0	16-7	56AA 7728 0	25-13	56AA 7798 0	65-27	56AA 9370 1	63-5
56AA 5441 0	34-1	56AA 7505 0	46-20	56AA 7729 0	24-19	56AA 7799 0	50-12	56AA 9370 1	78-3
56AA 5442 0	34-2	56AA 7505 0	59-7	56AA 7730 0	24-21	56AA 7799 0	53-17	56AA 9371 1	63-10
56AA 5443 0	34-3	56AA 7506 1	28-18	56AA 7731 0	24-25	56AA 8003 0	1-24	56AA 9371 1	78-4
56AA 5444 0	34-4	56AA 7506 1	34-10	56AA 7732 0	24-20	56AA 8003 0	48-1	56AA 9372 1	63-12
56AA 5447 1	34-9	56AA 7651 0	14-15	56AA 7733 0	24-13	56AA 8006 0	24-17	56AA 9372 1	78-5
56AA 5448 0	34-11	56AA 7651 0	15-15	56AA 7734 0	29-5	56AA 8011 0	14-17	56AA 9714 0	67-5
56AA 5450 0	39-7	56AA 7652 0	14-8	56AA 7734 0	36-1	56AA 8011 0	15-17	56AE -430 0	50-14
56AA 5453 0	37-10	56AA 7652 0	15-8	56AA 7735 0	36-11	56AA 8011 0	61-12	56AE -430 0	53-14
56AA 5455 0	33-7	56AA 7653 0	12-15	56AA 7738 0	44-9	56AA 8054 0	4-25	56AE -742 0	67-1
56AA 5457 3	38-19	56AA 7659 0	44-8	56AA 7743 1	59-2	56AA 8054 0	66-3	56AE 3239 0	25-10
56AA 5458 3	38-11	56AA 7659 0	58-27	56AA 7745 0	58-25	56AA 8055 0	8-9	56AE 4341 0	50-16
56AA 5464 0	34-16	56AA 7660 0	58-28	56AA 7746 0	58-13	56AA 8055 0	59-18	56AE 4341 0	53-16
56AA 5466 0	32-8	56AA 7702 0	15-11	56AA 7747 0	58-17	56AA 8201 2	26-24	56AE 5305 2	36-13

5/9

									6/9
Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.
56AE 8303 0	36-15	56QA -596 0	54-1	56QA 5124 0	59-16	56QA 5737 0	52-12	56QA 8056 0	4-10
56AE 8304 0	36-14	56QA -742 0	67-1	56QA 5126 0	56-8	56QA 5738 0	52-14	56QA 8056 0	64-1
56AE 8305 0	39-16	56QA 1045 0	66-4	56QA 5128 0	56-6	56QA 5741 0	52-7	56QA 8056 0	66-6
56AE 8452 0	68-21	56QA 1047 0	66-12	56QA 5156 0	60-21	56QA 5811 0	50-5	56QA 8057 0	62-15
56AF 8303 0	36-15	56QA 1055 0	66-1	56QA 5182 0	58-32	56QA 5812 0	50-6	56QA 8057 0	68-1
56AF 8304 0	36-14	56QA 1057 0	66-2	56QA 5230 0	60-18	56QA 5815 0	51-1	56QA 9021 0	78-7
56AF 8305 0	39-16	56QA 1118 0	1-23	56QA 5292 0	62-12	56QA 5829 0	50-3	56QA 9026 0	79-3
56AF 8452 0	68-21	56QA 1123 0	1-15	56QA 5294 0	62-4	56QA 5829 0	53-3	56QA 9027 0	79-4
56AF 9033 0	79-2	56QA 1130 0	52-6	56QA 5304 0	39-4	56QA 5844 0	50-11	56QA 9035 0	79-5
56AK 8304 0	36-14	56QA 1519 0	12-24	56QA 5320 0	30-3	56QA 5844 0	53-11	56QA 9046 0	8-10
56AS 8303 0	36-15	56QA 1525 0	13-7	56QA 5320 0	35-15	56QA 5911 0	53-5	56QA 9048 0	79-6
56AS 8304 0	36-14	56QA 1526 0	13-17	56QA 5433 0	32-5	56QA 5912 0	53-6	56QA 9062 0	79-7
56AS 8305 0	39-16	56QA 2004 0	17-10	56QA 5433 0	38-6	56QA 6113 0	7-21	56QA 9063 0	79-8
56BA -126 0	2-12	56QA 2023 0	16-27	56QA 5440 0	29-12	56QA 6114 0	7-17	56QA 9070 0	79-9
56BA -127 0	2-13	56QA 2501 0	21-24	56QA 5440 0	36-3	56QA 7308 0	68-16	56QA 9071 0	79-10
56BA -128 0	2-14	56QA 2601 0	20-8	56QA 5441 0	29-13	56QA 7387 0	68-19	56QA 9072 0	79-11
56BA -142 0	3-10	56QA 4008 0	42-12	56QA 5441 0	36-33	56QA 7388 0	68-17	56QA 9073 0	79-12
56BA -142 0	3-20	56QA 4267 0	46-28	56QA 5442 0	29-14	56QA 7501 0	13-10	56QA 9074 0	79-13
56BA -143 0	3-3	56QA 4272 0	46-3	56QA 5442 0	36-32	56QA 7502 0	13-3	56QA 9075 0	79-14
56BA -143 0	3-21	56QA 4274 0	45-16	56QA 5443 0	36-18	56QA 7504 0	26-35	56QA 9076 0	79-15
56BA 1223 0	3-6	56QA 4418 0	43-1	56QA 5449 0	28-6	56QA 7505 0	26-32	56QA 9730 0	35-5
56BA 1224 0	3-5	56QA 4419 0	43-6	56QA 5449 0	35-12	56QA 7505 0	58-33	56QA 9777 0	62-5
56BA 1231 1	2-6	56QA 4455 0	43-13	56QA 5450 0	34-23	56QA 7506 0	63-11	56QA 9777 0	82-6
56BA 1236 0	2-2	56QA 4603 0	26-29	56QA 5451 0	30-5	56QA 7507 0	57-3	56QA 9785 0	17-9
56BA 4230 1	47-8	56QA 4605 0	26-11	56QA 5451 0	35-2	56QA 7654 0	58-9	56QA 9786 0	16-5
56BA 4403 0	43-11	56QA 4606 0	26-5	56QA 5453 0	29-10	56QA 7655 0	58-7	56QA 9787 0	16-10
56BA 4404 3	43-3	56QA 4609 0	26-28	56QA 5453 0	36-31	56QA 7658 0	58-4	56QA 9788 0	22-17
56GA 3070 0	22-8	56QA 4662 0	26-34	56QA 5454 0	34-12	56QA 7702 0	12-28	56QA 9799 0	55-18
56GA 3071 0	22-1	56QA 4691 0	26-10	56QA 5705 0	52-23	56QA 7703 0	12-29	56RE -147 0	3-22
56GA 4744 0	26-9	56QA 4806 0	65-2	56QA 5706 0	52-13	56QA 7704 0	12-3	56RE -147 0	82-4
56GA 7601 0	42-17	56QA 4808 0	65-12	56QA 5708 0	52-18	56QA 7705 0	12-30	56RE 1203 0	3-14
56GA 7601 0	43-17	56QA 4816 0	65-6	56QA 5711 0	52-11	56QA 7706 0	12-12	56RE 1204 0	3-17
56GA 7601 0	56-2	56QA 4821 0	65-24	56QA 5717 0	52-2	56QA 7707 0	12-26	56RE 1245 0	3-16
56GA 7601 0	60-10	56QA 4823 1	65-25	56QA 5720 0	52-16	56QA 7711 1	13-12	56RE 4414 0	43-10
56GA 7601 0	65-17	56QA 4824 0	65-39	56QA 5721 0	52-4	56QA 7721 0	36-17	56RE 9741 0	82-2
56GA 7603 0	26-33	56QA 4829 0	65-40	56QA 5724 0	52-3	56QA 7739 0	62-3	56UA 1270 0	3-23
56QA -039 0	62-1	56QA 4830 0	65-41	56QA 5727 0	52-8	56QA 7740 0	62-8	56UA 7032 1	5-18
56QA -231 0	16-20	56QA 4831 0	65-22	56QA 5728 0	52-26	56QA 7751 0	12-23	56UA 7035 0	5-12
56QA -386 0	63-1	56QA 5103 0	61-2	56QA 5729 0	52-17	56QA 7752 0	12-22	56UA 7037 0	5-8
56QA -461 0	45-22	56QA 5112 0	58-21	56QA 5731 0	52-27	56QA 7753 0	44-11	56UA 7039 0	5-24

Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.
56UA 7040 0	5-26	57AA -716 0	66-9	57AA 1246 0	3-19	57AA 4035 0	40-4	57AA 5183 0	57-7
56UA 7042 0	5-19	57AA -719 0	67-4	57AA 1249 0	4-5	57AA 4042 0	42-1	57AA 5184 0	55-11
56UA 9730 0	17-18	57AA -901 1	66-15	57AA 1252 0	3-15	57AA 4047 0	41-7	57AA 5279 0	57-21
57AA -067 0	62-19	57AA -902 0	67-6	57AA 1254 0	2-16	57AA 4061 0	41-22	57AA 5281 0	62-7
57AA -121 0	4-28	57AA -903 1	5-13	57AA 1254 0	82-5	57AA 4062 0	41-28	57AA 5284 0	55-10
57AA -125 0	17-11	57AA -904 0	56-15	57AA 1271 0	4-11	57AA 4063 0	41-27	57AA 5288 0	57-9
57AA -129 0	2-5	57AA -905 0	5-17	57AA 1274 0	4-12	57AA 4063 0	44-13	57AA 5296 0	62-14
57AA -132 0	2-15	57AA -906 1	66-14	57AA 1275 0	4-8	57AA 4107 1	48-12	57AA 5298 0	62-13
57AA -138 0	2-10	57AA -909 0	7-7	57AA 1278 0	3-4	57AA 4125 0	48-2	57AA 5305 0	28-16
57AA -145 0	3-13	57AA -912 1	66-16	57AA 1279 0	2-8	57AA 4136 0	48-4	57AA 5312 0	27-24
57AA -150 0	12-17	57AA -951 0	66-18	57AA 1280 0	2-3	57AA 4142 0	49-2	57AA 5313 0	27-25
57AA -199 0	2-11	57AA -952 0	66-17	57AA 1282 0	3-2	57AA 4163 0	49-18	57AA 5315 1	27-23
57AA -200 0	16-1	57AA -PM2 5	82-8	57AA 1283 0	3-1	57AA 4173 0	49-22	57AA 5317 0	27-22
57AA -213 0	18-2	57AA 1009 0	68-18	57AA 1284 0	4-13	57AA 4231 0	47-3	57AA 5318 0	27-26
57AA -222 0	17-17	57AA 1059 0	68-6	57AA 1285 0	4-9	57AA 4232 0	47-7	57AA 5319 0	27-6
57AA -223 0	17-12	57AA 1062 0	66-11	57AA 1512 0	12-32	57AA 4233 0	47-1	57AA 5320 0	27-5
57AA -250 0	21-1	57AA 1065 0	66-10	57AA 1542 0	12-19	57AA 4240 0	47-2	57AA 5320 0	39-3
57AA -260 0	20-20	57AA 1066 0	66-13	57AA 1560 0	14-25	57AA 4241 0	47-9	57AA 5321 0	27-7
57AA -300 1	22-14	57AA 1071 0	1-25	57AA 1560 0	15-25	57AA 4427 0	43-15	57AA 5322 0	27-4
57AA -301 0	22-3	57AA 1126 0	1-26	57AA 1590 0	13-6	57AA 4461 0	44-10	57AA 5326 0	28-20
57AA -320 0	23-5	57AA 1131 0	1-17	57AA 1701 0	49-4	57AA 4550 0	63-21	57AA 5329 0	28-21
57AA -366 0	26-18	57AA 1132 0	1-18	57AA 1701 0	50-9	57AA 4602 0	26-8	57AA 5330 0	30-10
57AA -380 0	64-12	57AA 1201 0	3-11	57AA 1701 0	53-9	57AA 4615 0	26-6	57AA 5332 0	28-14
57AA -400 0	42-14	57AA 1202 0	3-8	57AA 2003 0	17-6	57AA 4827 0	65-44	57AA 5333 0	28-12
57AA -403 0	40-14	57AA 1205 0	3-18	57AA 2004 0	17-5	57AA 4832 0	65-10	57AA 5334 0	28-25
57AA -405 0	41-29	57AA 1206 0	3-12	57AA 2006 0	17-2	57AA 5030 0	58-34	57AA 5336 0	30-12
57AA -410 1	49-21	57AA 1209 0	2-1	57AA 2008 0	17-8	57AA 5032 0	56-18	57AA 5339 0	30-16
57AA -524 0	27-16	57AA 1210 0	2-4	57AA 2020 1	18-11	57AA 5076 0	62-6	57AA 5340 0	30-9
57AA -530 0	27-17	57AA 1211 0	4-14	57AA 2022 0	16-26	57AA 5085 0	62-16	57AA 5352 0	28-27
57AA -543 0	29-22	57AA 1212 0	4-24	57AA 2025 0	16-6	57AA 5086 0	55-19	57AA 5355 0	32-2
57AA -544 0	29-18	57AA 1213 0	4-15	57AA 2634 0	20-2	57AA 5088 0	55-20	57AA 5358 0	32-3
57AA -598 0	50-17	57AA 1220 0	3-9	57AA 2635 0	20-1	57AA 5090 0	56-16	57AA 5359 0	27-19
57AA -598 0	53-18	57AA 1225 0	4-22	57AA 3009 0	22-19	57AA 5109 0	61-1	57AA 5360 0	27-18
57AA -617 0	8-2	57AA 1225 0	48-24	57AA 3012 0	22-20	57AA 5113 0	57-12	57AA 5364 0	32-12
57AA -618 0	8-13	57AA 1226 0	4-21	57AA 3013 0	22-21	57AA 5114 0	59-6	57AA 5371 0	28-24
57AA -630 1	8-16	57AA 1226 0	48-23	57AA 3026 0	22-18	57AA 5115 0	57-14	57AA 5386 0	29-2
57AA -633 0	8-6	57AA 1227 0	4-18	57AA 3201 0	24-30	57AA 5116 0	57-15	57AA 5391 0	29-1
57AA -650 1	11-1	57AA 1228 0	4-16	57AA 3230 0	23-4	57AA 5117 0	58-18	57AA 5392 0	31-12
57AA -700 0	5-1	57AA 1232 0	2-22	57AA 3233 0	24-2	57AA 5118 0	58-19	57AA 5393 0	31-11
57AA -715 0	68-12	57AA 1233 0	2-9	57AA 3251 0	23-1	57AA 5144 0	60-2	57AA 5394 0	31-1

7/9

									8/9
Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.
57AA 5401 0	31-10	57AA 7053 0	5-15	57AA 7722 0	28-9	57AA 9016 0	69-4	57AA 9729 0	65-19
57AA 5402 0	31-5	57AA 7054 0	5-14	57AA 7722 0	34-25	57AA 9020 0	72-5	57AA 9740 0	3-24
57AA 5403 0	31-8	57AA 7055 0	3-26	57AA 7738 0	44-12	57AA 9022 0	69-1	57AA 9742 0	59-15
57AA 5404 0	31-9	57AA 7060 0	5-16	57AA 7741 0	58-3	57AA 9023 0	69-9	57AA 9743 0	55-16
57AA 5408 0	31-3	57AA 7061 0	5-25	57AA 7742 0	58-2	57AA 9025 0	69-6	57AA 9776 0	33-9
57AA 5409 0	27-10	57AA 7062 0	5-4	57AA 7744 0	59-12	57AA 9028 0	69-3	57AA 9778 0	38-21
57AA 5410 0	27-12	57AA 7063 0	5-11	57AA 7748 0	59-13	57AA 9030 0	69-7	57AA 9781 0	51-9
57AA 5411 0	27-8	57AA 7064 0	5-10	57AA 7751 0	57-6	57AA 9031 0	69-8	57AA 9781 0	53-12
57AA 5414 0	31-6	57AA 7065 0	5-22	57AA 7772 0	41-25	57AA 9034 0	73-1	57AA 9782 0	17-16
57AA 5417 0	28-10	57AA 7066 0	5-23	57AA 7776 0	22-9	57AA 9036 0	69-2	57AA 9783 0	31-4
57AA 5417 0	34-24	57AA 7067 0	5-9	57AA 7777 0	22-10	57AA 9050 0	71-4	57AA 9784 0	5-29
57AA 5842 0	50-1	57AA 7068 0	5-21	57AA 7778 0	22-11	57AA 9051 0	72-1	57AA 9784 0	82-1
57AA 5842 0	53-1	57AA 7306 0	68-7	57AA 7779 0	22-12	57AA 9060 0	49-10	57AA 9787 0	48-27
57AA 5845 0	51-4	57AA 7307 0	68-4	57AA 7780 0	22-13	57AA 9060 0	73-2	57AA 9788 0	47-18
57AA 5845 0	54-4	57AA 7357 0	67-2	57AA 7782 0	13-5	57AA 9061 0	73-3	57AA 9790 0	48-25
57AA 5848 0	51-5	57AA 7378 0	68-13	57AA 8008 0	13-18	57AA 9067 0	71-3	57AA 9790 0	82-3
57AA 5948 0	54-5	57AA 7379 0	68-11	57AA 8008 0	14-20	57AA 9079 0	69-5	57AA 9791 0	4-34
57AA 6152 0	7-24	57AA 7503 0	28-15	57AA 8008 0	15-20	57AA 9080 0	78-8	57AA 9792 0	4-35
57AA 6166 0	8-15	57AA 7506 0	65-42	57AA 8008 0	25-19	57AA 9082 0	73-4	57AA 9793 0	4-36
57AA 6170 0	8-4	57AA 7659 0	57-5	57AA 8203 0	12-20	57AA 9085 0	73-5	57AA 9794 0	4-37
57AA 7001 0	3-25	57AA 7701 0	14-19	57AA 8203 0	42-4	57AA 9086 0	70-4	57AA 9795 0	23-15
57AA 7010 0	5-6	57AA 7702 0	14-11	57AA 8203 0	57-11	57AA 9088 0	74-1	57AA 9796 0	48-26
57AA 7011 0	5-5	57AA 7703 0	14-12	57AA 8203 0	58-10	57AA 9091 0	74-2	57AA JG01 0	81-16
57AA 7015 0	5-7	57AA 7705 0	13-8	57AA 8301 0	9-9	57AA 9361 0	74-3	57AA JG02 0	81-17
57AA 7016 0	6-1	57AA 7706 0	28-13	57AA 8351 0	9-4	57AA 9363 0	74-4	57AA JG03 0	81-18
57AA 7017 0	5-20	57AA 7707 0	27-15	57AA 8451 1	68-22	57AA 9366 0	74-5	57AE -131 0	4-29
57AA 7030 0	4-31	57AA 7708 0	29-9	57AA 8452 0	31-7	57AA 9368 0	74-6	57AE -320 0	23-5
57AA 7031 0	4-30	57AA 7709 0	29-15	57AA 8453 1	67-7	57AA 9712 0	20-28	57AE -530 0	33-1
57AA 7032 0	4-32	57AA 7710 0	29-17	57AA 8461 0	28-28	57AA 9718 0	62-11	57AE -543 0	37-8
57AA 7034 0	4-33	57AA 7711 0	29-7	57AA 8801 0	30-13	57AA 9720 0	45-15	57AE -544 0	33-2
57AA 7035 0	6-13	57AA 7711 0	36-4	57AA 8802 0	30-7	57AA 9721 0	26-19	57AE -716 0	66-9
57AA 7042 0	6-6	57AA 7712 0	29-8	57AA 8804 0	30-6	57AA 9722 0	26-20	57AE -719 0	67-4
57AA 7043 0	6-5	57AA 7712 0	36-29	57AA 8806 0	30-8	57AA 9723 0	62-10	57AE -952 0	66-17
57AA 7043 0	6-11	57AA 7713 0	29-19	57AA 9001 0	70-2	57AA 9724 0	39-18	57AE -PM2 5	82-8
57AA 7044 0	6-8	57AA 7713 0	37-3	57AA 9002 0	70-5	57AA 9725 0	32-6	57AE 1062 0	66-11
57AA 7046 0	6-7	57AA 7715 0	12-18	57AA 9003 0	70-3	57AA 9726 0	31-2	57AE 5282 0	62-18
57AA 7047 0	6-2	57AA 7717 0	36-6	57AA 9004 0	71-1	57AA 9726 0	34-21	57AE 5283 0	62-17
57AA 7049 0	6-10	57AA 7718 0	36-7	57AA 9005 0	70-1	57AA 9727 0	28-3	57AE 5306 0	39-5
57AA 7050 0	6-12	57AA 7721 0	28-11	57AA 9006 0	1-21	57AA 9727 0	35-18	57AE 5470 0	37-1
57AA 7051 0	6-14	57AA 7721 0	34-15	57AA 9006 0	71-2	57AA 9728 0	57-2	57AE 5471 0	39-15

Parts No.	Page No.	Parts No.	Page No.
57AE 5474 0	33-4	57AG 7010 0	5-6
57AE 5477 0	39-12	57AG 7011 0	5-5
57AE 5479 0	38-22	57AK -530 0	33-1
57AE 7010 0	5-6	57AK -719 0	67-4
57AE 7011 0	5-5	57AK -742 0	67-1
57AE 7504 0	39-10	57AK -952 0	66-17
57AE 7701 0	15-19	57AK 7010 0	5-6
57AE 8451 1	68-22	57AK 7011 0	5-5
57AE 8801 0	37-2	57AN -530 0	33-1
57AE 8804 0	37-6	57AN -544 0	33-2
57AE 9003 1	75-1	57AN -952 0	66-17
57AE 9008 1	75-2	57AN 9718 0	62-11
57AE 9034 0	72-2	57AS -530 0	33-1
57AE 9361 0	72-4	57AS -544 0	33-2
57AE 9362 0	71-5	57AS -742 0	67-1
57AE 9368 0	75-4	57AS 9718 0	62-11
57AE 9718 0	62-11	57BA -906 1	66-14
57AE JG01 0	81-15	57BA 1201 0	3-11
57AF -320 0	23-5	57BA 7741 0	58-3
57AF -530 0	33-1	57BA 7742 0	58-2
57AF -544 0	33-2	57BA 9004 0	71-1
57AF -700 0	5-1	57BE -530 0	33-1
57AF -719 0	67-4	57BF -530 0	33-1
57AF -952 0	66-17	57BK -530 0	33-1
57AF 1279 0	2-19	57BN -530 0	33-1
57AF 1280 0	2-17	57BS -530 0	33-1
57AF 7361 0	2-18	65AA 4010 0	41-5
57AF 7362 0	2-20	7050 K002 0	81-25
57AF 8451 1	68-22	SP00 -001 0	39-11
57AF 8453 1	67-7	SP00 -002 1	36-23
57AF 8871 0	5-27	SP00 -020 0	30-15
57AF 8872 0	66-19		
57AF 8873 0	66-20		
57AF 9031 0	72-3		
57AF 9082 0	75-5		
57AF 9361 1	75-3		
57AF 9718 0	62-11		
57AF 9774 0	56-17		
57AF 9774 0	68-23		
57AG -952 0	66-17		

MAIN FRAME



MA	N FRAME						Page. 1
Key	Part No.	De	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	3080 6136 0	STEPPED SCREW	段付きネジ		С	2	a-00Z1 9304 1
2	25SA 1020 0	READ SUPPORT RUBBER	読み取り支持ゴム		D	2	C-00Z1 9406 1
3	56AA 1056 0	COOLING SEAL 2	冷却シール 2		С	2	d-00Z1 9320 1
4	0900 2041 0	SPRING HANGER SCREW	バネ掛けネジ		С	2	e-00Z1 6406 1
5	56AA -149 0	EARTH SPRING ASSY	アースハネ部組		C	6	f-00Z2 5308 1
6	56AA 1055 0	COOLING SEAL 1	「冷却ンール」		C	1	g-0021 9306 1 h-0071 9408 1
1	56AA 1008 1		クリーナー冷却ダクト			1	11 0021 0100 1
8	255A 1043 1					12	
9 10	55WA 1050 0				B	2	
10	56AA -710 0		国教部はっ		D	2	
12	5644 1763 0		調整部材		D	2	
12	5644 1762 0		御金町物		D	2	
14	55WA 1031 0				C	1	
15	560A 1123 0	TRAY POSITIONING SPRING	トレイ位置決めバネ		C C	1	
16	56AA 4156 0	TRAY STOPPER	トレイ空き当てストッパ		C C	2	
17	57AA 1131 0	CONVEYANCE PROTECTION COVER L	搬送保護カバーを		Č	1	
18	57AA 1132 0	CONVEYANCE PROTECTION COVER R	搬送保護カバー右		Č	1	
19	56AA 1060 0	BOTTOM PLATE COVER PART	底板カバー部材		D	2	
20	56AA 1708 0	TERMINAL ROCKING SPRING	端子揺動バネ		С	4	
21	57AA 9006 0	PAPER FEED CONTROL WIRING	給紙制御束線		D	4	
22	56AA 1733 0	SLIDE SHAFT	スライド軸		С	4	
23	56QA 1118 0	TRAY STOPPER STOPPER	トレイ突き当てストッパ		D	1	
24	56AA 8003 0	CASSETTE DRIVING MOTOR	カセット駆動モータ		В	1	
25	57AA 1071 0	MAIN BODY LIFTING HANDLE	本体持ち上げ把手		С	1	
26	57AA 1126 0	WIRING PROTECTION COVER	東線保護カバー		С	1	
27	56AA 1061 0	BOTTOM PLATE COVER PART REAR	底板カバー部材 奥		I	1	
							-
						1	1
I							4



Key Part No. Description Destinations 1 57AA 1209 0 SIDE COVER LEFT 側面カバー 左 2 56BA 1236 0 EXTERNAL AUXILIARY PART/LEFT カ * イソウホシ * ョフ * サ * イ/ヒタ * リ 3 57AA 1280 0 SIDE COVER 側面蓋 4 57AA 1210 0 REAR COVER 背面カバー 5 57AA 129 0 SIDE COVER & ASSY 側面茄	Class D C C	QTY	Standard parts a-00Z1 4406 2
1 57AA 1209 0 SIDE COVER LEFT 側面カパー 左 2 56BA 1236 0 EXTERNAL AUXILIARY PART/LEFT カ゛イソウホシ゛ョフ゛サ゛イ/ヒタ゛リ 3 57AA 1280 0 SIDE COVER 側面蓋 4 57AA 1210 0 REAR COVER 背面カパー 5 57AA 129 0 SIDE COVER A ASSY 側面並	D C C	1	a-00Z1 4406 2
2 56BA 1236 0 EXTERNAL AUXILIARY PART/LEFT カ・イソウホシ・ョフ・サ・イ/ヒタ・リ 3 57AA 1280 0 SIDE COVER 側面蓋 4 57AA 1210 0 REAR COVER 背面カバー 5 57AA - 129 0 SIDE COVER & ASSY 側面面カバー A 部組	C C	2	
3 57AA 1280 0 SIDE COVER 側面蓋 A,B,F1,G2 4 57AA 1210 0 REAR COVER 背面カバー 5 57AA - 129 0 SIDE COVER A ASSY 側面カバー A 部組	С	2	b-00Z1 8406 2
4 57AA 1210 0 REAR COVER 5 57AA - 129 0 SIDE COVER A ASSY	-	1	C-00Z1 8306 2
5 57AA -1290 SIDE COVER A ASSY 側面カバー A 部組	D	1	0-00Z1 9406 1
	С	1	
6 56BA 1231 1 OZONE GUIDE DUCT オソ [*] ンアンナイタ [*] クト ?	С	1	
7 56AA 1262 0 TRAY SLIDE SHEET トレイスライドシート	D	1	
8 57AA 1279 0 OZONE REGULATING PART 1 オゾン規制部材 1 A,B,F1,G2	С	1	
9 57AA 1233 0 EXTERNAL COVER PART REAR 外装カバー部材 奥	D	1	
10 57AA -138 0 CASSETTE AUXILIARY SHEET ASSY カセット補助シート部組	С	1	
11 57AA -199 0 CONNECTOR COVER ASSY コネクタカバー部組	С	1	
12 56BA -126 0 SIDE COVER/B ASSY ソクメンカハ゛ー/ B フ゛クミ ?	С	1	
13 56BA -127 0 SIDE COVER/C ASSY ソクメンカハ゛ー/ C フ゛クミ ?	С	1	
14 56BA - 128 0 SIDE COVER/D ASSY ソクメンカハ゛ー/ D フ゛クミ ?	С	1	
15 57AA -132 0 EXTERNAL AUXILIARY PART R ASSY 外装補助部材 右部	С	1	
16 57AA 1254 0 ACCESSARIES HOLDING PANEL 付属品ホルダーパネル	С	1	
17 57AF 1280 0 OZONE REGULATING PART 2 オゾン規制部材 2 C.D1.D3.E.F2.G1.H.I.J.	С	1	
K K	_		
18 57AF 7361 0 EXTERNAL EARTH PART UPPER 外装アース部材 上 C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,H,I,J, K	D	1	
19 57AF 1279 0 OZONE REGULATING PART 1 オゾン規制部材 1 C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,H,I,J,	С	1	
20 57AF 7362 0 EXTERNAL EARTH PART LOWER 外装アース部材 下 C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,H,I,J,	D	1	
K K			
21 56AA 1234 0 OZONE SEALING PAD オゾンシールパッド	С	1	
22 57AA 1232 0 OZONE GUIDE PLATE オゾン案内板	D	1	
			_
		_	_



P 3

							. ager e
Key	Part No.	De	escription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA 1283 0	PAPER EXIT TRAY 2	排紙皿 2	A	С	1	a-00Z1 4406 2
2	57AA 1282 0	PAPER EXIT TRAY 1	排紙皿 1	A	С	1	b-00Z1 9406 2
3	56BA -143 0	EXTERNAL OPEN/SHUT HINGE/F ASS	カ゛イソウカイヘイヒンシ゛/ F フ゛クミ		D	1	C-00Z1 9406 1 d-00Z2 5308 1
4	57AA 1278 0	LEVER DETECT MATERIAL	レバー検知部材	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	e-00Z2 5308 1 f-00Z2 5312 1 f-00Z2 5306 1
5	56BA 1224 0	EXTERNAL LOCKING PLATE	カ゛イソウロックイタ ?		D	3	
6	56BA 1223 0	EXTERNAL LOCKING COVER	カ゛イソウロックカハ゛ー ?		С	3	
7	56AA 1227 0	EXTERNAL LOCKING PART	外装ロック部材		С	1	
8	57AA 1202 0	FRONT DOOR LEFT	前面扉 左		С	1	
9	57AA 1220 0	TONER SUPPLY COVER	トナー補給カバー		С	1	
10	56BA -142 0	EXTERNAL OPEN/SHUT HINGE/E ASS	カ゛イソウカイヘイヒンシ゛/ E フ゛クミ		D	1	
11	57AA 1201 0	FRONT DOOR RIGHT	前面扉 右	{bizhub 750}	С	1	
11	57BA 1201 0	FRONT DOOR RIGHT	前面扉 右	{bizhub 600}	C	1	
12	57AA 1206 0	READ COVER LEET	読み取りカバー 左	(Ċ	1	
13	57AA -145 0	ORIGINAL STOPPER PLATE LEFT A	原稿字き当て板 左部		Č	1	
14	56RE 1203 0	READ COVER /ERONT			C C	1	
15	57AA 1252 0	ORIGINAL STOPPER PLATE REAR			C C	1	
16	56RE 1245 0				Č	1	
17	56RE 1204 0				C	1	
19	57AA 1205 0		コミドリ ガバー ノオリ		C	1	
10	57AA 1205 0				C	1	
19	56PA 1420					1	-
20	50DA -142 0	EXTERNAL OPEN/SHUT LINGE/E ASS			D	1	
21	50BA -145 U	EXTERINAL OPEN/SHUT HINGE/F ASS	$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{1}{$		D	1	
22	50RE -147 0		ワーキング ナーノ ル			1	
23	56UA 1270 0		回走イン			5	
24	57AA 9740 0		トナー注息フヘル		C C	1	
25	57AA 7001 0	OPERATION UNIT COVER UPPER			C	1	
26	57AA 7055 0	OPERATION SEAL	操作部シール		С	2	
							-
					1	1	1
1							
1							
1							
1							
						1	1
1							



Ρ4

Page. 4

Kev	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	5644 1214 0	SWITCH CONNECTING ACTUATOR	- スイッチ連結アクチェ 々		C	3	a-0072 4414 1
2	56AA 1212 0	SWITCH GUIDE PART	スイッチガイド部材		C	3	b-00Z2 5308 1
3	56AA 1216 0	CONTACT PRESSING SPRING 1			Č	2	c-00Z1 6435 1
1	56AA 1215 0				C	2	d-00Z1 9304 1
5	57AA 1249 0	TONER ALIXILIARY COVER	トナー補助カバー		C	1	e-00Z1 8306 1
6	0844 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサー		B	3	h-0072 5414 1
7	4044 8501 0	DOOR SWITCH	ドアースイッチ		B	2	
8	57AA 1275 0	OPERATION UNIT LOCK PART LEFT	操作部ロック部材 左		C.	1	
9	57AA 1285 0	OPERATION UNIT FARTH SPRING LEFT			C C	1	
10	560A 8056 0	DEVELOPING COOLING FAN			C C	1	
11	57AA 1271 0	OPERATION UNIT COVER COVER	操作部カバー萎		C.	1	
12	57AA 1274 0	OPERATION UNIT LOCK PART RIGHT	操作部ロック部材 右		č	1	
13	57AA 1284 0	OPERATION UNIT EARTH SPRING RIGHT	操作部アースバネ 右		Ċ	1	
14	57AA 1211 0	OPERATION UNIT COVER LOWER	操作部カバー下		Ċ	1	
15	57AA 1213 0	TRAY COVER LEFT	トレイカバー 左		č	1	
16	57AA 1228 0	TRAY COVER HANDLE LEFT	トレイカバー把手を		C	1	
17	55FA 1210 1	MAGNET CATCH X	$\overline{\gamma}$		Ċ	2	
18	57AA 1227 0	TRAY COVER HANDLE RIGHT	トレイカバー把手右		Č	1	
19	56AA 1218 0	CONTACT PRESSING SPRING 3	接点押圧バネー3		Č	1	
20	56AA 1217 0	CONTACT PRESSING SPRING 2			Č	1	
21	57AA 1226 0	TRAY COVER HANDLE	トレイカバー把手		C	2	
22	57AA 1225 0	CASSETTE COVER	カセットカバー		Ċ	2	
23	56AA 5240 0	LOCKING SPRING	ロックバネ		D	1	
24	57AA 1212 0	TRAY COVER RIGHT	トレイカバー 右		Č	1	
25	56AA 8054 0	FAN MOTOR 1	7 = 7 = 7 = 7		B	1	
26	26NA 7373 1	DUST PROOF SEAL 5	防塵シール 5	Α	D	4	
27	56AA 7017 0	OPERATION UNIT FARTH PLATE LOWER	操作部アース板下		D	2	
28	57AA -121 0	CLEANER SUCTION COVER ASSY	クリーナーサクションカバー部組		Č	1	
29	57AF -131 0	CLEANER DUCT ASSY	クリーナーダクト部組	B C D1 D3 E E1 E2 G1 G	Ċ	1	
				2,H,I,J,K	-	-	
30	57AA 7031 0	OPERATION UNIT SUPPORT BLOCK LEFT	操作部支持ブロックを		D	1	
31	57AA 7030 0	OPERATION UNIT SUPPORT BLOCK RIGHT	操作部支持ブロック 右		D	1	
32	57AA 7032 0	OPERATION UNIT REGULATING PLATE	操作部規制板		D	2	
33	57AA 7034 0	OPERATION UNIT REGULATING SCREW	操作部規制ネジ		С	2	
34	57AA 9791 0	PAPER INDICATION LABEL 1	給紙表示ラベル 1		С	1	
35	57AA 9792 0	PAPER INDICATION LABEL 2	給紙表示ラベル 2		С	1	
36	57AA 9793 0	PAPER FEED INDICATION LABEL 3	給紙表示ラベル 3		С	1	
37	57AA 9794 0	PAPER FEED INDICATION LABEL 4	給紙表示ラベル 4		С	1	
L							-
	1						
	1						
—	1						-
	1						
-	1						
	1						

OPERATION UNIT



OPERATION UNIT

						AP (
Key	Part No.	Des	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA -700 0	OPERATION UNIT	操作部ユニット	A,B,F1,G2	I	1	a-00Z2 5308 1
1	57AF -700 0	OPERATION BOARD	操作部ユニット	C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,H,I,J,	I	1	b-00Z2 5306 1
				K			C-00ZZ 5310 1
2	27LA 8752 0	TOUCH KEY BOARD	タッチキー基板		С	1	
3	55VA 8754 2	INDICATION BOARD	表示基板		С	1	
4	57AA 7062 0	OPERATION UNIT BUTTON B	操作部ホタン B		C	1	_
5	57AA 7011 0	OPERATION UNIT SHEET LEFT	操作部シートを		С	1	
5	57AE 7011 0	OPERATION SHEET LEFT	操作部シート 左	B,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G2,	С	1	
-	5740 7044 0				0		
5	57AG 70110	OPERATION UNIT SHEET REFT	操作部ンートを中国	J	C		
5	57AK 7011 0			H		1	
6	57AA 7010 0		探作部ンート 白		C	1	-
6	57AE 7010 0	OPERATION SHEET RIGHT	操作部ンート 石	B,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G2,	C	1	
6	57AC 7010 0		場佐邨シート 左 市国		C	1	
6	57AK 7010 0				C	1	
7	57AK 7010 0				C	1	
2 2	57AA 7015 0				C	1	
0	500A 7037 0				C	1	-
9	57AA 7067 0				C	1	
10	57AA 7004 0		採1F 印小ダン 0 温佐朝ギタン 0		C	1	
10	57 AA 7003 0		保1日のホッシー 5 協佐 如 ギャン・ 5		C	1	
12	500A 7035 0		保1日の小ダン P 場応其に 1 初知			1	
13	57AA -903 T		「保存を扱う」の私			1	-
14	57AA 7054 0				C	1	
10	57AA 7053 0				C	1	
10	57AA 7000 0		1余11日の小グノー			1	
10	57 AA -905 0	OPERATION BOARD 2 ASST	保存 基本 こう			1	
10	56LIA 7042 0				C C	1	
20	500A 7042 0				C	1	
20	5744 7017 0				C	1	
21	57AA 7000 0				C	2	
22	5744 7005 0				C	1	
23	56UA 7000 0				C C	1	
25	570A 7053 0				C	1	
20	56110 7040 0				C	1	
20	57AF 8871 0		保住 フェライトコア			1	
21	5/74 00/10	OF ERATION TERRITE CORE		K	D	· ·	
28	56AA 7019 0	OPERATION UNIT SEAL REAR	操作部シール 奥		С	1	
29	57AA 9784 0	POWER SOURCE INDICATING LABEL	「 雷源表示ラベル 2		C C	1	
20	01101010				Ũ		
							-
	1						
					1	1	1
1	1						
							1



OPERATION UNIT

-		_		• <i>a a</i>			
Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA 7016 0	OPERATION UNIT COVER B	操作部カバー B		С	1	a-00Z6 7040 6
2	57AA 7047 0	OPERATION UNIT LOCK LEVER	操作部ロックレバー		С	1	b-00Z1 9304 1
3	56AA -149 0	EARTH SPRING ASSY	アースバネ部組		С	1	c-00Z2 5306 1
4	56AA 8872 0	FERRITECORE 2	7 + 5 + 1 = 7	C D1 D3 E E2 G1 H L I	-	1	d-00Z2 5310 1
•	00/01/00/20		<i>y</i> <u>y</u>	K			
5	57AA 7043 0	OPERATION UNIT LOCK WIRE	操作部ロックワイヤー		С	2	
6	5744 7042 0				Č	2	
7	5744 7046 0				Č	2	
<i>'</i>	57AA 7040 0				C	4	
0	57AA 7044 0					4	
9	56AA 8352 1		表示点灯 機		C	1	
10	57AA 7049 0	LEVER TENSION SPRING	レハーテンジョンハネ		C	1	
11	57AA 7043 0	OPERATION UNIT LOCK WIRE	操作部ロックワイヤー		С	2	
12	57AA 7050 0	LEVER COVER	レバーカバー		С	1	
13	57AA 7035 0	OPERATION UNIT TENSION SPRING	操作部テンションバネ		С	2	
14	57AA 7051 0	WIRE LOCK SCREW	ワイヤーロックネジ		С	2	
							1
I							
I							
							4
I							
I							
I							
I							
I							
							1
I							
I							
						1	L



OPTICS UNIT

<u> </u>							1 490.1
Key	Part No.	Desc	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	55VA 7811 0	READING DRIVE BELT 174L	読取駆動ベルト 174 L		С	1	a-00Z1 9304 1
2	56AA 6142 0	ADF DETECTING ACTUATOR	ADF 検知アクチェタ		С	1	b-00Z1 9306 1
3	56AA 6143 1	ADF DETECTION SPRING	ADF 検知バネ		С	1	C-00Z1 9406 1
4	56AA 6154 0	READ EARTH PART RIGHT REAR	読み取りアース部材 右後		С	1	e-00Z6 7040 6
5	08AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサー		В	1	f-00Z1 8412 1
6	56AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサー		В	1	g-00Z1 9408 1
7	57AA -909 0	SCANNER DRIVE BOARD ASSY	スキャナー駆動基板部組		I	1	h-00Z1 9404 1
8	55VA 6202 0	MOTOR FIXING PART	モータ固定部材		С	1	I-00Z2 5306 1
9	55VA 8012 1	OPTICS DRIVING MOTOR	光学駆動モータ		В	1	k-0074 7406 3
10	25SA -620 0	PULLEY MOUNTING PLATE CAULKING FRON	プーリー取付板カシメ 前		D	4	m-00Z1 9405 1
		Т					n-00Z4 7408 3
11	56AA 6129 0	OPTICS IDLING PULLEY	光学アイドラープーリ		С	4	p-00Z1 6406 1
12	25SA 6171 0	SPRING FIXING PLATE	バネ固定板		D	2	
13	56AA 6141 0	MOTOR AUXILIARY RUBBER	モータ補助ゴム		С	1	
14	25SA 6170 0	WIRE GUIDE ROLLER	ワイヤーガイドコロ		С	2	
15	56AA 6157 0	WIRE TENSION SPRING	ワイヤーテンションバネ		С	1	
16	56AA 6140 0	MOTOR AUXILIARY SCREW	モータ補助ネジ		С	1	
17	56QA 6114 0	READ DRIVING WIRE REAR	読み取り駆動ワイヤー 奥		С	1	
18	25SA 6165 0	DRIVE PULLEY	駆動プーリ		С	2	
19	5000 7501 0	READ DRIVING SHAFT HOLDER	読み取り駆動軸受		С	2	
20	55VA 7670 0	READING DRIVE PULLEY 1 38T	読取駆動プーリ 1 38 T		С	1	
21	56QA 6113 0	READ DRIVING WIRE FRONT	読み取り駆動ワイヤー 前		C	1	
22	56AA 6153 0	READ EARTH SPRING RIGHT REAR	読み取りアースバネ 右後		С	1	
23	55VA 7671 0	READING DRIVE PULLEY 2 76T	読取駆動プーリ 2 76 T		В	1	
24	57AA 6152 0	READ EARTH PLATE RIGHT REAR	読み取りアース板 右後ろ		D	1	
25	13QA 1017 0	HINGE HOLDING SCREW	ヒンジ押さえネジ		Ċ	1	
		<u> </u>				ļ	
	1	1					

OPTICS UNIT



OPT	TICS UNIT						Page. 8
Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	55TA 6132 0	LENS EARTH SPRING	レンズアースバネ		С	7	a-00Z1 9404 1 b-00Z1 6408 1
2	57AA -617 0	QUIDE RAIL F ASSY	刀イトレール削部組 「		D	1	d-00Z1 9304 1
4	57AA 6170 0	GLASS STOPPER PART	「「「「「「」」」、「」、「」、「」、「」、「」、「」、「」、「」、「」、「」、		C	2	e-00Z2 5310 1
5	25SA 6188 1	CORD HOLDER	コード押え		D	1	r-00Z1 9406 1 a-00Z1 8316 1
6	57AA -633 0	ORIGINAL GLASS 1 ASSY	原稿ガラス 1部組		С	1	h-00Z1 8318 1
7	25SA 6186 1	CORD GUIDE PART	コードガイド部材		D	1	
8	56AA 6133 0	GLASS HOLDER	ガラス押さえ		С	2	
9	56AA 8055 0	FAN MOTOR 2	ファンモータ 2		В	1	
10	5600A 9040 0				B	2	-
12	56AA 7368 0	KEY COUNTER INNER COVER	キーカウンター中蓋		D	1	
13	57AA -618 0	GUIDE RAIL R ASSY	ガイドレール奥部組		D	1	
14	56AA 6158 0	WIRE REGURATION SHEET	ワイヤー規制シート		D	2	
15	57AA 6166 0	GLASS PROTECTION SHEET 2	ガラス保護シート 2		С	2	
16	57AA -630 1	CCD UNIT	CCD ユニット		I	1	
							-
							_
							4
						ļ	4

OPTICS UNIT



bizhub 600/bizhub 750

P 9

OPT	FICS UNIT						Page. 9
Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12	55TA 6111 0 56AA 6144 0 25SA 6147 0 57AA 8351 0 55TA 6113 0 55TA 6112 0 56AA -614 1 25SA 6142 0 57AA 8301 0 25SA 6208 0 25SA 6207 0 55WA 6115 0	REFLECT MIRROR 1 POWER SOURCE PROTECTION SHEET MIRROR HOLDER 2 LAMP STARTER MIRROR SUPPORT PART REFLECT MIRROR 2 SIDE GUIDE PLATE ASSY OPTICS SLIDE PART EXPOSURE LAMP MIRROR POSITIONING PLATE 4 MIRROR POSITIONING PLATE 3 READ MIRROR 1	反射鏡 1 電源保護シート ミラー押え ミラーガス 2 ランプ点灯器 ミラー支持部材 反射鏡 2 側面ガイド部組 光学スライド部材 露光ランプ ミラー位置決め板 ミラー位置決め板 3 読み取りミラー 1		D C C I D C C C I D C C	1 1 1 3 2 1 2 1 1 1 1	a-00Z2 5308 3 b-00Z1 9306 1 c-00Z1 9304 1 d-00Z1 6306 1 e-00Z5 8030 3 f-00Z1 9303 1
13 14	25SA 6146 0 56AA 6118 0	MIRROR HOLDER 1 CORD HOLDER PART B	ミラー押え 1 コード押え部材 B		D C	1	



OPTICS UNIT

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 6129 0	OPTICS IDLING PULLEY	光学アイドラープーリ		С	4	a-00Z6 7040 6
2	55FA 6113 0	MIRROR POSITION PLATE	ミラー位置決め板		D	1	b-00Z1 9404 1
3	55FA 6114 0	MIRROR POSITION PLATE 2	ミラー位置決め板 2		D	1	d-0021 0400 1
4	25SA 6216 0	CORD GUIDE PULLEY 2	コードガイドプーリ 2		С	2	e-00Z5 8030 3
5	25SA 6142 0	OPTICS SLIDE PART	光学スライド部材		С	2	f-00Z1 6306 1
6	25SA 6155 0	MIRROR HOLDER 4	ミラー押え 4		С	2	
7	56AA -614 1	SIDE GUIDE PLATE ASSY	側面ガイド部組		С	1	
8	25SA 6154 0	MIRROR HOLDER 3	ミラー押え 3		С	2	
9	55TA 6134 1	READING MIRROR 2	読取ミラー 2		С	2	
I							
					1		1



OP	FICS UNIT					I	^{>} age. 11
Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA -650 1	WRITE UNIT	書込みユニット			1	



P 12

Page. 12

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 4045 0	PAPER FEED COUPLING PART			C	4	a-0071 9406 1
2	55VA 4212 0	SHAFT STOPPER	軸ストッパー		č	2	b-00Z6 7060 6
3	56QA 7704 0	CONVEYANCE DRIVE GEAR 2 31T			Č	1	c-00Z7 1320 6
4	56AA 1748 0	PIN B			Č	11	d-00Z1 8406 1
5	5400 7605 0	BALLBEARING	駆動軸受		B	16	e-0026 8080 3 f-0076 7040 6
6	12QV 4065 0	SPACER	スペーサー		D	4	1 0020 7 040 0
7	55VA 1547 0	BELT GUIDE PLATE	ベルトガイドプレート		Ċ	5	
8	56AA 7753 0	PAPER FEED DRIVING BELT 1 336	給紙駆動ベルト 1 3361		Č	1	
9	55VA 7713 0	PAPER FEED DRIVING GEAR C 63T 36T	給紙駆動歯車 C 63 T 36 T		B	1	
10	56AA 7714 0	PAPER FEED DRIVING GEAR 23T			Č	1	
11	55VA 7712 0	PAPER FEED DRIVING GEAR B			C C	1	
12	560A 7706 0	CONVEYANCE DRIVING GEAR 4 30T			Č	2	
13	56AA 1732 0				Č	1	
14	1544 8005 0	DC BRUSHRESS MOTOR 40	$DC \overline{J} = \overline{J} + \overline{J}$		C	1	
15	56AA 7653 0	PAPER FEED DRIVING PULLEY 36T			Č	5	
16	5644 7771 1	CONVEYANCE DRIVING GEAR 1.24T			0 C	1	
10	5744 -150 0		》 《 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			1	
18	57AA 7715 0	CONVEYANCE INPUT GEAR 23T			C	1	
10	5744 15/2 0				C	1	
20	5744 8203 0		「「「「「」」」、ファックノンファートを発展した。		C C	2	
20	5644 1559 0		「「「「」」「「」」、「「」」、「」」、「」、「」、「」、「」、「」、「」、「」			5	
22	560A 7752 0		12 クログランティング		C	1	
22	560A 7751 0				C	1	
23	560A 1519 0	RELT TENSION SPRING	1111111111111111111111111111111111111		C	1	
24	26NA 4082 0		シャーシンコンハイ		C	2	
20	2010A 4002 0		和朳川り和文		C	2	
20	50QA 1101 0				B	2	
28	560A 7702 0	CONVEYANCE DRIVING GEAR 45T			C	2	
20	560A 7703 0		「 」 」 」 」 」 」 」 」 」 」 」 」 」 」 」 」 」 」		C	1	
29	560A 7705 0	CONVETANCE DRIVE GEAR 1201			C	1	
31	55VA 1554 1		カリーナーカップリング部材		C	2	
32	5744 1512 0		クラッチ担制部材		C	2	
33	1201/ 4066 0	SHAFT POSITIONING PART	サラフラス前前的		C		
55	1200 4000 0				U		
							1



Page. 13

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 7783 1	TONER COLLECTING GEAR 4 22T	トナー回収ギア 4 22 T		С	1	a-00Z6 7060 6
2	56AA 1701 0	FIXING COUPLING SPRING	定着カップリングバネ		С	1	b-00Z1 9406 1
3	56QA 7502 0	DRUM ROTARY SHAFT HOLDER 2	ドラム回転軸受 2		С	1	c-00Z1 8404 1
4	5400 7605 0	BALL BEARING	駆動軸受		В	5	d-00Z1 8406 1
5	57AA 7782 0	TONER COLLECTION GEAR 3 27T	トナー回収ギア 3 27 T		Ċ	1	f=00Z1 0314 1
6	57AA 1590 0	DRUM ROTATION PLATE			D	4	a-00Z4 7406 3
7	560A 1525 0		ドラムカラー		D	2	h-00Z6 7050 6
ģ	57AA 7705 0		ドラム取動 歩声 2 79 T		C	1	
0	1201/ 4065 0	SDACED				6	
9	12QV 4005 0				D	0	
10	50QA 75010				U Q	2	
11	56AA 2087 0	TERMINAL FIXING SCREW			C	1	
12	56QA 7711 1	DRUM DRIVING GEAR 1 111 251			C	1	
13	56AA 7707 0	TONER COLLECTING GEAR 2 46T	トナー回収ギア 2 46 T		С	1	
14	25SA 1539 0	DRIVE POSITION PIN D4X33	駆動位置決めビン D4X33		С	1	
15	56AA 1559 0	DRUM COUPLING COLLAR	ドラムカップリングカラー		D	1	
16	56AA 7706 0	TONER COLLECTING GEAR 1 61T 21T	トナー回収ギア 1 61 T 21 T		С	1	
17	56QA 1526 0	DRUM COUPLING COLLAR	ドラムカップリングカラー		D	1	
18	57AA 8008 0	DC BRUSHLESS MOTOR 15	DC ブラシレスモータ 15		С	1	
19	25SA 1528 0	DRUM EARTH SPRING	ドラムアースバネ		С	1	
20	25SA 1527 0	EARTH SHAFT HOLDER	アース軸受		C	1	



Page. 14

Key	Part No.	Des	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 7713 0	BY PASS FEED DRIVING GEAR 2 28T	手差し駆動ギア 2 28 T	A	С	1	a-00Z6 7060 6
2	56AA 1546 0	HIGH VOLTAGE GUIDE PART	高圧ガイド部材	A	Ċ	1	b-00Z1 9406 1
3	55VA 4212 0	SHAFT STOPPER	軸ストッパー	A	C C	1	c-00Z7 1320 6
1	5400 7605 0	BALL BEARING	取動軸容	Δ	B	8	d-00Z6 7040 6
5	124 7703 1	GEAR 2 42T			C	1	e-00Z1 9306 1
6	56AA 1540 0		困手 と キとう		0	1	1-0021 6406 1
7	50AA 1349 0				C	1	
<i>'</i>	50AA 7752 0	BT FASS FEED DRIVING BELT T 192L		A	C	1	
8	56AA 7652 0	BY PASS FEED DRIVING PULLEY 2 261		A	C	1	
9	56AA 1748 0	PINB		A	C	6	
10	56AA 1747 0	PIN B 3X12		A	С	1	-
11	57AA 7702 0	FIXING DRIVE GEAR 2 27T	定着駆動歯車 2 2 7 T	A	В	1	
12	57AA 7703 0	FIXING INPUT GEAR 36/39T	定着入力歯車 36/39 T	A	В	1	
13	56AA 7712 0	BY PASS FEED DRIVING GEAR 1 36T	手差し駆動ギア 1 36 T	A	С	1	
14	56AA 1701 0	FIXING COUPLING SPRING	定着カップリングバネ	A	С	1	
15	56AA 7651 0	BY PASS FEED DRIVING PULLEY 1 15T	手差し駆動プーリ 1 15 T	Α	С	1	
16	56AA 1753 0	PIN A D2X10	ピン A D 2 X 1 0	A	С	1	
17	56AA 8011 0	PAPER EXIT DRIVING MOTOR	排紙駆動モータ	A	В	1	
18	56AA 1541 1	DEVELOPING COUPLING PART	現像カップリング部材	A	С	1	
19	57AA 7701 0	FIXING DRIVE GEAR 1 64T	定着駆動歯車 1 6 4 T	А	В	1	
20	57AA 8008 0	DC BRUSHLESS MOTOR 15	DC ブラシレスモータ 15	А	Ċ	1	
21	56AA 7709 0	DEVELOPING DRIVING GEAR 64T	現像駆動歯車 64 T	A	C	1	
22	56AA 1547 1	CONTACT SPRING		A	C C	1	
22	56AA 1552 1		读点	^	0	1	
24	271 A 8003 0				C	1	
24	27 LA 0003 0		して ノブノレスモーチ 30		C	1	
25	57AA 1500 0	ELECTRIC MOUNTING SCREW	电表取り行けホン	A	C	2	-
-							
							-
L							4
L							4
L							4
L							
DRIVING SECTION



DRIVING SECTION

Key	Part No.	Des	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 7713 0	BY PASS FEED DRIVING GEAR 2 28T	手差し駆動ギア 2 28 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	a-00Z6 7060 6
2	56AA 1546 0	HIGH VOLTAGE GUIDE PART	高圧ガイド部材	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2.H.I.J.K	С	1	c-00Z7 1320 6 d-00Z6 7040 6
3	55VA 4212 0	SHAFT STOPPER	軸ストッパー	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	e-00Z1 9306 1 f-00Z1 8406 1
4	5400 7605 0	BALL BEARING	駆動軸受	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	В	8	
5	12AJ 7703 1	GEAR 2 42T	歯車 2 42 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
6	56AA 1549 0	PULLEY GUIDE PLATE	プーリガイド板	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	-
7	56AA 7752 0	BY PASS FEED DRIVING BELT 1 192L	手差し駆動ベルト 1 192 L	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2.H.I.J.K	С	1	
8	56AA 7652 0	BY PASS FEED DRIVING PULLEY 2 26T	手差し駆動プーリ 2 26 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2.H.I.J.K	С	1	
9	56AA 1748 0	PIN B	ピン B	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	6	
10	56AA 1747 0	PIN B 3X12	ピン B 3 X 1 2	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
11	56AA 7702 0	FIXING DRIVING GEAR 2 22T	定着駆動歯車 2 2 2 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	-
12	25BA 7726 2	FIXING INPUT GEAR 50T 36T	定着入力歯車 50 T 36 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2.H.I.J.K	В	1	
13	56AA 7712 0	BY PASS FEED DRIVING GEAR 1 36T	手差し駆動ギア 1 36 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.LJ,K	С	1	
14	56AA 1701 0	FIXING COUPLING SPRING	定着カップリングバネ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.LJ,K	С	1	
15	56AA 7651 0	BY PASS FEED DRIVING PULLEY 1 15T	手差し駆動プーリ 1 15 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
16	56AA 1753 0	PIN A D2X10	ピン A D 2 X 1 0	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	
17	56AA 8011 0	PAPER EXIT DRIVING MOTOR	排紙駆動モータ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	В	1	
18	56AA 1541 1	DEVELOPING COUPLING PART	現像カップリング部材	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
19	57AE 7701 0	FIXING DRIVE GEAR 1 70T	定着駆動歯車 1 70 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	В	1	
20	57AA 8008 0	DC BRUSHLESS MOTOR 15	DC ブラシレスモータ 15	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
21	56AA 7709 0	DEVELOPING DRIVING GEAR 64T	現像駆動歯車 64 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2.H.I.J.K	С	1	
22	56AA 1547 1	CONTACT SPRING	接点バネ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.LJ,K	С	1	
23	56AA 1552 1	CONTACT SHAFT	接点軸	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.LJ,K	D	1	
24	27LA 8003 0	DC BRUSHLESS MOTOR 30	DC ブラシレスモータ 30	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
25	57AA 1560 0	ELECTRIC MOUNTING SCREW	電装取り付けネジ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	2	



Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA -200 0	DRUM CARTRIDGE UNIT	ドラムカートリッジユニット		С	1	a-00Z6 7040 6
2	3920 1565 0	SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER C	滑り軸受 C		С	1	b-00Z2 5308 1
3	56AA -217 0	CLUTCH CONNECTING GEAR ASSY	クラッチ連結歯車部組		С	1	c-00Z1 9308 1
4	56AA 8202 1	CLEANER CLUTCH	クリーナークラッチ		В	1	
5	56QA 9786 0	GUIDE LABEL 2	ガイドラベル 2		D	1	
6	57AA 2025 0	CLEANER COOLING DUCT	クリーナー冷却ダクト		С	1	
7	56AA 7504 0	DRUM ROTARY SHAFT HOLDER 2	ドラム回転軸受 2		С	1	
8	25SA 2064 0	TONER COLLECTION BLOCK B	トナー回収ブロック B		С	1	
9	56AA 2076 0	TONER AGITATING SHEET	トナー撹拌シート		С	1	
10	56QA 9787 0	GUIDE LABEL 3	ガイドラベル 3		D	1	
11	56AA 1752 0	PIN A D3X10	ピン A D3X10		С	2	
12	56AA 2052 0	TONER RECYCLING SCREW 1	トナーリサイクルスクリュー 1		D	1	
13	25SA 7718 0	TONER CONVEYANCE GEAR B 26T	トナー搬送歯車 B 26 T		С	1	
14	56AA 2107 1	DRUM FIXING COUPLING 2	ドラム固定カップリング 2		D	1	
15	56AA 7726 0	TONER RECYCLING GEAR 17T	トナーリサイクル歯車 17 T		С	2	
16	55WA 3001 0	DEVELOPING SHAFT HOLDER	現像軸受		С	2	
17	08AA 7601 0	DRUM DRIVING SHAFT HOLDER	ドラム駆動軸受		С	3	
18	25SA 7717 0	TONER CONVEYANCE GEAR A 38T	トナー搬送歯車 A 38 T		С	1	
19	56AA 2051 0	TONER RECYCLING BLOCK	トナーリサイクルブロック		С	1	
20	56QA -231 0	TONER COLLECTING PIPE	トナー回収パイプ		С	1	
21	56AA 1703 0	OPEN CLOSE SPRING	開閉バネ		С	1	
22	56AA 2081 0	TONER RECYCLING SCREW 2	トナーリサイクルスクリュー 2		С	1	
23	56AA 2056 0	TONER SLIDE COVER	トナースライドカバー		С	1	
24	25SA 2067 0	TONER CONVEYANCE SHAFT HOLDER	トナー搬送軸受		С	1	
25	56AA 2106 1	DRUM FIXING COUPLING	ドラム固定カップリング		D	1	
26	57AA 2022 0	CLEANER COOLING SHEET	クリーナー冷却シート		С	1	
27	56QA 2023 0	CLEANER SUCTION SEAL	クリーナーサクションシール		D	1	
28	25HA 1521 0	SPACER E	スペーサー E		С	1	
I							4
I							4
							4
L		1					



Page. 17

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 1741 0	BLADE ROTARY SCREW	ブレード回転ネジ		С	1	a-00Z1 9306 1
2	57AA 2006 0	CLEANER AUXILIARY SEAL	クリーナー補助シール		С	1	b-00Z1 9304 1
3	56AA 2116 0	HINGE	ヒンジ		С	2	c-00Z2 5308 1
4	25SA 2028 0	BLADE POSITION BLOCK	ブレード位置決めブロック		С	2	e-00Z1 9308 1
5	57AA 2004 0	BLADE SUPPORT SPACER	ブレード支点スペーサー		С	2	f-00Z1 6310 1
6	57AA 2003 0	BLADE TENSION PLATE	ブレードテンション板		D	1	g-00Z6 7040 6
7	56AA 2115 0	BLADE FULCRUM SHAFT HOLDER	ブレード支点軸受		С	1	h-00Z1 6308 1
8	57AA 2008 0	CLEANER BLADE	クリーナーブレード		A	1	
9	56QA 9785 0	GUIDE LABEL 1	ガイドラベル 1		D	1	
10	56QA 2004 0	DEVELOPING BASE PART	現像基準部材		С	2	
11	57AA -125 0	DRUM COVER ASSY	ドラムカバー部組		С	1	
12	57AA -223 0	CLEANER COVER ASSY	クリーナー蓋部組		D	1	
13	56AA 2113 0	BLADE RELEASE CAM	ブレード解除カム		С	1	
14	56AA 1739 0	STANDARD SCREW	基準ネジ		С	2	
15	56AA 2112 0	BLADE RELEASE LEVER	フレード解除レバー		D	1	-
16	57AA 9782 0	DRUM CAUTION LABEL	トラム注意ラベル		С	1	
17	57AA -222 0	BLADE SUPPORT PLATE CAULKING	フレート文持基板カシメ		D	1	
18	56UA 9730 0	LESER CAUTION LABEL 1	レーザー注意ラベル 1		С	1	



Page. 18

Key	Part No.	Des	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 2040 0	SHAFT POSITIONING PART	軸位置決め部材		С	2	a-00Z1 6306 1
2	57AA -213 0	COLLECTING ROLLER ASSY	回収ローラ部組		Α	1	b-00Z6 7060 6
3	56AA 7708 1	CLEANER IDLING GEAR 21T	クリーナーアイドラー歯車 21 T		С	1	c-00Z6 7030 6
4	56AA 2017 0	CONTACT PRESSING SPRING	接点押圧バネ		С	1	
5	56AA 7710 0	SEPARATION DRIVING GEAR 26T 18T	分離駆動歯車 26 T 18 T		С	1	f-00Z2 5308 1
6	56AA 2075 0	SEPARATION FULCRUM SHAFT HOLDER	分離支点軸受		С	2	
7	56AA 7711 0	SEPARATION IDLING GEAR 40T	分離アイドラー歯車 40 T		С	1	
8	56AA 1753 0	PIN A D2X10	$l^2 \nu A D 2 X 10$		Ċ	1	
9	56AA 7725 0	SEPARATION ROCKING GEAR 41T	→ 分離揺動歯車 41 T		Č	1	
10	56AA 2125 0	SHAFT STOPPER 5	軸ストッパー 5		Ċ	1	
11	57AA 2020 1	DEVELOPING COOLING SEAL RIGHT	現像冷却シール右		C	1	
					-	-	
				1			1
				1			1
L			1				4
L							4
L							4
L							



Page. 19

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	55VA 2068 0	SEPARATION POSITIONING SCREW	分離位置決めネジ		С	2	a-00Z2 4308 3
2	56AA 2098 0	SEPARATION PRESSING SPRING	分離押圧バネ		C	3	b-00Z2 4306 1
3	56AA 2126 0	SPACER	スペーサー		D	1	c-00Z6 7020 6
4	56AA 2070 0	DRUM SEPARATING CLAW	ドラム分離爪		A	3	d-00Z6 7040 6
5	56AA 2075 0	SEPARATION FULCRUM SHAFT HOLDER	分離支点軸受		c	2	e-0021 9304 1 f-0072 5308 1
6	56AA 2003 0	SEPARATION GUIDE PART	分離ガイド部材		C	1	a-00Z1 1304 1
7	56AA 2096 0	SOLENOID RELEASE SPRING	ソレノイド解除バネ		C.	1	3
8	56AA 1742 0	SEPARATE SCREW	分離えジ		Č	1	
0	5644 2044 1	BOCKING CAM			Č	1	
10	56AA 2046 0		協動力ム			2	
10	JOAA 2040 0		アトッパー			1	
10	45AA 2040 0	STOPPER PART	ヘトッハロタ		A	1	
12	50AA 1710 0	SEPARATION ROCKING SPRING	万種活動ハイ		C		
13	56AA 2043 0	RELEASE CAM			C	1	
14	56AA -910 0	TONER CONTROL SENSOR ASSY	トナー制御センサ部組		С	1	
15	26NA 8251 3	PAPER FEED SOLENOID	給紙ソレノイド		С	1	
16	07BA 5472 1	PAPER HOLDING CLAW	紙押え爪		С	5	
17	56AA 2108 0	FIXING PART	固定部材		С	5	
18	56AA 2119 0	SEPARATION GUIDE SEAL 1	分離ガイドシール 1		D	1	
19	56AA 2120 0	SEPARATION GUIDE SEAL 2	分離ガイドシール 2		D	1	
20	56AA 2121 0	SEPARATION GUIDE SEAL 3	分離ガイドシール 3		D	2	

TRANSFER SEPARATOR CORONA UNIT



TRANSFER SEPARATOR CORONA UNIT

Page. 20

Key	Part No.	Des	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA 2635 0	PRESSURE SPRING	圧着バネ		С	2	a-00Z6 7030 6
2	57AA 2634 0	POWERING SPRING	給電バネ		Č	3	b-00Z1 8306 1
3	56AA 1758 0	ADJUSTING SCREW	調整ネジ		C	3	c-00Z2 5308 1
4	56AA -267 1	SEPARATION CLEANING ASSY	分離清掃部組		A	1	d-00Z1 1206 1
5	56AA -264 0	TRANSFER CLEANING ASSY	転写清掃部組		A	1	f-0026 7020 6
6	56AA 2608 2	SEPARATING BRIDGE	分離ブリッジ		С	1	q-00Z1 9306 1
7	56AA 7770 0	CLEANING GEAR 1 14T 14T	清掃歯車 1 14 T 14 T		C	1	ň-00Z6 1050 1
8	56QA 2601 0	SLIDE BLOCK	スライドブロック		Ċ	1	i-00Z6 7040 6
9	55GA 7655 0	TRANSFER GUIDE SHAFT HOI DER 2	転写ガイド軸受 2		č	4	
10	56AA 2625 0	TRANSEER GUIDE ROLLER	転気ガイドコロ		Č	2	
11	56AA 2604 0	SPARK PREVENTING PLATE FRONT			C C	1	
12	56AA 1714 0	WIRE TENSION SPRING	ロイヤーテンションバネ		Č	3	
13	5644 2609 0	DISCHARGING WIRE	放電ワイヤー		Δ	3	
14	56AA 2628 0	ELECTRODE EIXING SCREW	電極固定なジ			2	
15	1544 2020 0		電池回たれる		Δ	2	
16	45AA 2040 0		ムボジハ印付		A	1	
17	56AA 7707 0				C	1	
10	56AA 2619 0		/月加密平 4 14 14 重物連提ジョンント		C	1	
10	56AA 2617 0		电1空/11 ボンゴインド 重塩注目パウ			∠ 1	
19	50AA 2017 U		电修用市へで			1	
20	57AA -260 0		転与汀離悭ユーツト		В	1	-
21	50AA 1763 U		転与押んゴム		A	3	
22	56AA 2605 0	SPARK PREVENTING PLATE REAR	洛雷防止板 奥		C	1	
23	56AA 1731 0	PIN			C	2	
24	56AA 1739 0	STANDARD SCREW	基準不ジ		C	1	
25	56AA 2612 0	TRANSFER GUIDE SHAFT HOLDER			C	4	_
26	56AA 2631 0	SPACER 5			С	2	
27	56AA 1704 0	WIRE CLEANING SPRING	ワイヤー清掃バネ		С	3	
28	57AA 9712 0	HIGH VOLTAGE CAUTION LABEL	高圧注意ラベル		С	1	
1							
]
1							
1							
	ł		1				1
							-
I							
I							



CHARGING UNIT

Key	Part No.	Desc	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA -250 0	CHARGING CORONA UNIT	- 一帯雷極ユニット		В	1	a-00Z2 5308 1
2	56AA 2530 1	PCL COVER	PCL J/		c	1	b-00Z2 4205 1
3	56AA 8307 0	PCL	PCL		В	1	c-00Z6 7020 6
4	45AA 2040 0	STOPPER PART	ストッパ部材		А	2	d-00Z1 1B06 1
5	56AA 2538 0	CHARGE SLIDE PART	帯電スライド部材		A	1	
6	56AA 2540 0	CHARGE CLEANING BASE PLATE	带電清掃基板		А	1	
7	56AA 7791 0	CHARGE CLEANING GEAR 4 28T	带電清掃歯車 4 28 T		С	1	
8	56AA 2515 0	ELECTRODE CLEANING JOINT	電極清掃ジョイント		С	1	
9	25SA 2518 0	CHARGING SLIDE COLLAR	帯電スライドカラー		C	1	
10	56AA 2545 0	CHARGE SLIDE COLLAR 2	帯電スライドカラー 2		С	1	
11	56AA 2523 0	CHARGE TENSION SPRING	帯電テンションバネ		В	1	
12	56AA -253 1	CHARGE CLEANER UPPER BLOCK ASSY	帯電清掃ブロック上部組		А	1	
13	56AA 7789 0	CHARGE CLEANING GEAR 2 15T	带電清掃歯車 2 15 T		С	1	
14	56AA -254 1	CHARGE CLEANER LOWER BLOCK ASSY	帯電清掃ブロック下部組		A	1	
15	56AA 7790 0	CHARGE CLEANING GEAR 3 18T	帯電清掃歯車 3 18 T		С	1	
16	56AA 2533 0	SPARK PREVENTING PART FRONT	落雷防止部材 前		С	1	
17	56AA 2534 0	SPARK PREVENTING PART REAR	落雷防止部材 奥		С	1	
18	56AA 2517 0	ELECTRODE CLEANING SPRING	電極清掃バネ		C	1	
19	56AA 2509 0	CHARGE WIRE	帯電ワイヤー		А	1	
20	56AA 1716 0	CHARGING CONTROL SPRING	帯電制御バネ		С	2	
21	56AA 2503 0	CHARGE CONTROL PLATE	帯電制御プレート		A	1	
22	56AA -255 0	CHARGE CLEANING MOTOR ASSY	帯電清掃モータ部組		В	1	
23	56AA 2514 1	ELECTRODE CLEANING JOINT FRONT	電極清掃ジョイント 前		С	1	
24	56QA 2501 0	CHARGE SEAL	帯電シール		I	1	
							-
							-
							-
							-

DEVELOPING UNIT



DEVELOPING UNIT

Page. 22

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56GA 3071 0	DEVELOPING STOPPER ROLLER B	現像突き当てコロ B		C.	1	a-0076 7040 6
2	55W/A 3001 0	DEVELOPING SHAFT HOLDER	現像軸受		Ċ	6	b-00Z6 7060 6
3	5744 -301 0	DEVELOPING COVER ASSY	 現像 美 部 組		Č	1	c-00Z6 7020 6
1	5644 1747 0				Č	1	d-00Z1 6310 1
5	5400 3017 0	SPEWING PREVENTIVE FELT			C C	1	e-00Z1 9306 1 f-00Z2 5310 1
6	4660 7803 0	BALL BEARING	ボールベアリング		B	1	a-00Z6 0040 6
7	56AA 7775 0	DEVELOPING DRIVING GEAR 36T	現像駆動歯車 36 T		С	1	ň-00Z2 5308 1
8	56GA 3070 0	DEVELOPING STOPPER ROLLER A	現像突き当てコローA		Ċ	1	j-00Z1 8304 5
9	57AA 7776 0	DEVELOPING INPUT GEAR 36/23T	現像入力歯車 36/23 T		B	1	
10	57AA 7777 0	DEVELOPING AGITATING GEAR 23T			B	1	
11	57AA 7778 0	DEVELOPING IDLING GEAR 21T	現像アイドラー歯車 21 T		B	1	
12	57AA 7779 0	SCREW GEAR LEFT 23/26T	スクリュー歯車 左 23/26 T		B	1	
13	5744 7780 0	SCREW GEAR RIGHT 26T	スクリュー歯車 右 26 T		B	1	
14	5744 -300 1				B	1	
15	5644 3042 0	SCATTER PREVENTING PAD NO 3	歌歌店 レパッド 3号		C	1	
16	56AA -306 0	DEVELOPING COVER PART ASSY	現像カバー部材部組		<u> </u>	1	-
17	560A 0788 0		ガイドラベル、ハ			2	
18	5744 3026 0		1月後 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		C	1	
10	57 AA 3020 0		「現像パイマフ バラー		C	1	
20	57AA 3009 0		「玩像ハイノスハイ」 現ტバイアフピン 奥		C	1	
20	57AA 3012 0		現像パイプスレン 突		С С	1	
21	37 AA 3013 0	DEVELOPING DIAS SPRING REAR			C	1	
							1
							1
							1
							1



Page. 23

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA 3251 0	LEVER	レバー		С	1	a-00Z1 8404 1
2	56AA 3261 0	TONER SUPPLY LOCKING PART	トナー補給ロック部材		C	1	b-00Z2 5308 1
3	56AA 3262 0	TONER SUPPLY LOCKING SPRING	トナー補給ロックバネ		С	1	c-00Z6 7040 6
4	57AA 3230 0	CARTRIDGE PRESSING PART	カートリッジ押圧部材		D	1	e-0072 4308 3
5	57AA -320 0	TONER SUPPLY UNIT	トナー補給ユニット	A	I	1	f-00Z2 5310 1
5	57AE -320 0	TONER SUPPLY UNIT	トナー補給ユニット	B,G2	I	1	g-00Z1 8405 1
5	57AF -320 0	TONER SUPPLY UNIT	トナー補給ユニット	C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,H,I	I	1	
0	50.4.4.000.0			,J,K	5		
6	56AA 1030 0		スフイトレール A		D	2	
/	56AA 3243 2		カートリッシホルター部内			1	
0	56AA 3264 U				С С	1	-
9 10	5644 3203 0				C	1	
11	5644 3244 0				Č	1	
12	5644 3271 0		ゴノノ 印 / 7		C	4	
13	56AA 3275 1	LOCKING PART C			C C	1	
14	56AA 3276 1	LOCKING SPRING C	$\Box = 2 $		C C	1	
15	57AA 9795 0	TONER INDICATION LABEL	トナー表示ラベル		Č	1	
					-	-	
							-
							-
							-
							4
							1
							1



Page. 24

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 3203 0	TONER SUPPLY MAIN BODY LOWER	トナー補給本体 下		D	1	a-00Z6 7040 6
2	57AA 3233 0	TONER SUPPLY OPEN CLOSE COVER	トナー補給開閉蓋		С	1	b-00Z2 5308 1
3	56AA 3270 0	SCREW SHAFT HOLDER	スクリュー軸受		С	1	c-00Z1 9304 1
4	56AA 3235 1	TONER SUPPLY OPEN SHUT SPRING	トナー補給開閉バネ		С	1	0-00Z2 4308 3
5	56AA 3259 1	TONER SUPPLY BLOCK B	トナー補給ブロック B		C	1	E-0021 9300 1
6	56AA 3209 0	TONER SUPPLY SCREW	トナー補給スクリュー		D	1	
7	56AA 3256 0	TONER SUPPLY BLOCK A	トナー補給ブロック A		С	1	
8	55GA 7768 0	TONER AGITATOR GEAR A 25T	トナー 攪拌 歯車 A 25 T		В	1	
9	56AA 1732 0	PIN A D2X12	$l^{2} \lambda A D 2 X 1 2$		Ċ	1	
10	56AA 1752 0	PIN A D3X10	$l^2 \nu A D 3 X 10$		Ċ	1	
11	56AA 3266 0	TONER CONVEYING SEAL	トナー搬送シール		C	5	
12	56AA 3265 0	TONER CONVEYING SHAFT HOLDER	トナー搬送軸受		Č	5	
13	56AA 7733 0	SCREW GEAR 15T			C.	1	
14	5644 7724 0	SCREW INPLIT GEAR 15T			Č	1	
15	4660 7602 0	PAPER FEED SHAFT HOLDER	絵紙送り出し軸受		B	2	
16	56AA 3214 0		和私区 7日 0 和文		C	1	
17	5644 8006 0				B	1	
18	1044 8803 0	REMAIND DETECTING SENSOR	1 が 高裕 と グ		C	1	
10	40AA 0003 0	IDLING GEAR C 51T 15T	茂重快和ビノリ		C	1	
20	56AA 7722 0				C	1	
20	50AA 7732 0				C	1	
21	10AA 7700 0				C	2	
22	12AA 7700 U					1	
23	56AA 3274 0	TONER SEALING SHEET A			D	1	
24	56AA 3213 U					1	
25	56AA 7731 0	TONER SUPPLY INPUT GEAR 301			C	1	
26	56AA 1747 0				C	2	
27	56AA 3273 0				C	1	
28	56AA 3206 0	AGITATING SCREW LEFT	現件人 クリュー 左		D	1	
29	56AA -333 0	SCREW RIGHT	スクリュー 石		D	1	
30	57AA 3201 0	LUCK PART	ロック部材		C	1	
-							
ļ							



		-					- 3
Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 3242 0	MAIN BODY COVER UPPER	本体カバーと		С	1	a-00Z2 4308 3
2	56AA 3215 1	TONER SEALING PART A	トナーシール部材 A		C	1	b-00Z2 5308 1
3	56AA 3240 0	TONER SUPPLY SLEEVE FRONT	トナー補給スリーブ前		Ċ	1	c-00Z1 8304 1
4	56AA 3202 0				Č	1	d-00Z6 7040 6
5	56AA 3268 0	TONER SEALING PART D			Č	2	e-00Z1 9306 1
6	56AA 3201 1				<u> </u>	1	
7	56AA 3267 0				C C	1	
0	56AA 2216 0				C	1	
0	50AA 3210 0				C	1	
9	50AA 3241 0		トリー補和スリーノー突		C	1	
10	50AA 3239 U	CARTRIDGE DRIVING PART	ガートリック駆動部材	А,С,Л 1,Л3,Е,Е 1,Е2,С 1,П	C	1	
10	56AE 3239 0	CARTRIDGE DRIVING PART	カートリッジ駆動部材	B,G2	С	1	
11	56AA 3227 0	DRIVE RELEASE SPRING	駆動解除バネ		С	1	
12	56AA 1750 0	PIN	ピン		С	2	
13	56AA 7728 0	IDLING GEAR B 44T 16T	アイドラー歯車 B 44 T 16 T		С	1	
14	56AA 3272 0	EARTH PLATE A	アース板 A		С	1	
15	56AA 7794 0	IDLING GEAR G 20T	アイドラー歯車 G 20 T	B.C.D1.D3.E.F1.F2.G1.G	С	1	
-				2,H,I,J,K	-		
16	4660 7602 0	PAPER FEED SHAFT HOLDER	給紙送り出し軸受		В	2	
17	56AA 7795 0	CARTRIDGE GEAR 33T	カートリッジ歯車 33 T		С	1	
18	56AA 7727 0	IDLING GEAR A 53T 14T	アイドラー歯車 A 53 T 14 T		С	1	
19	57AA 8008 0	DC BRUSHLESS MOTOR 15	DC ブラシレスモータ 15		С	1	
20	56AA 7793 0	IDLING GEAR F 15T 20T	アイドラー歯車 F 15 T 20 T		C	1	
21	56AA 7792 0	IDLING GEAR E 30T	アイドラー歯車 E 30 T		C	1	
					-		
							1



REGISTRATION UNIT

Page. 26

Key	Part No.	Desc	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	55VA 4689 0	DRIVEN RUBBER	 従動ゴム		B	1	a-0076 7040 6
2	56AA 4610 0	REGISTRATION PAPER FEED ACTUATOR	レジスト給紙アクチェタ		c C	1	b-00Z1 9304 1
3	25AA 7553 0	SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER			č	2	c-00Z2 5308 1
4	56AA 4645 0	REGISTRATION FEEDING SPRING	レジスト送り出しバネ		C.	2	d-00Z4 7306 3
5	56QA 4606 0	TRANSFER GUIDE HANDLE	転写ガイド把手		č	1	f-00Z6 7080 6
6	57AA 4615 0	REGISTRATION STOPPER PART	レジスト突き当て部材		Č	1	g-00Z6 7060 6
7	56AA 8552 0	CONVEYANCE PHOTO SENSOR	搬送フォトセンサ		В	1	ň-00Z1 8306 1
8	57AA 4602 0	CASING	センサケーシング		D	1	i-00Z6 7020 6
9	56GA 4744 0	ADU DRIVEN ROLLER S			B	2	j-00Z1 9306 1
10	56QA 4691 0	REGISTRATION PRESSING SPRING UPPER	レジスト押圧バネート		Č	3	
11	56QA 4605 0	REGISTRATION ENTRANCE PLATE	レジスト進入板		D	1	
12	56AA 1782 1	PREVENTING RUBBER	防止ゴム		Č	1	
13	56AA 4611 0	REGISTRATION OPEN SHUT SCREW	レジスト開閉ネジ		Ċ	2	
14	40AA 3229 0	MAGNET CATCH	マグネットキャッチ		Č	2	
15	08AA 7601 0	DRUM DRIVING SHAFT HOLDER	ドラム駆動軸受		č	2	
16	26NA 4082 0	PAPER FEED SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER	給紙滑り軸受		C	1	
17	56AA 4640 1	REGISTRATION POSITIONING PLATE	レジスト位置決め板		D	1	
18	57AA -366 0	REGISTRATION CLEANER ASSY	レジスト清掃部組		Č	2	
19	57AA 9721 0	JAM RELEASE LABEL 2	ジャム解除ラベル 2		Ċ	1	
20	57AA 9722 0	JAM RELEASE LABEL 3	ジャム解除ラベル 3		c	1	
21	56AA 4685 2	CONVEYANCE DRIVING ROLLER T	 搬送駆動ローラ T		Č	1	1
22	56AA 1747 0	PIN B 3X12	ピン B 3 X 1 2		C	1	
23	56AA 7784 0	DRIVING GEAR 30T	駆動ギア 30 T		Ċ	1	
24	56AA 8201 2	PAPER FEED DRIVING CLUTCH	給紙駆動クラッチ		B	1	
25	56AA 4620 2	REGISTRATION DRIVING BASE PLATE	レジスト駆動基板		D	1	
26	56AA 4693 0	CLUTCH FIXING PART	クラッチ固定部材		D	1	1
27	14GE 4547 0	ROTARY KNOB	回転ノブ		D	1	
28	56QA 4609 0	REGISTRATION ENTRANCE SHEET	レジスト進入シート		D	1	
29	56QA 4603 0	REGISTRATION ROLLER	レジストローラ		С	1	
30	08AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサー		В	1	
31	56AA 4616 0	PRESSING SPRING LOWER	センサ押圧バネー下		С	1]
32	56QA 7505 0	PAPER FEED SLIDE BEARING	給紙滑り軸受		С	1	
33	56GA 7603 0	SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER	滑り軸受		С	4	
34	56QA 4662 0	REGISTRATION GUIDE SPRING	レジストガイドバネ		С	1	
35	56QA 7504 0	REGISTRATION SLIDE BEARING	レジスト滑り軸受		С	1	
							1
							4
							4
							1



Kov	Part No	Παεσ	rintion	Destinations	Class	ΟΤΥ	Standard parts
Ney				Destinations	01035	4	
1	20NA 5419 0		正有刀イトイン	A	C	1	a-0021 9306 1 b-0071 9406 1
2	56AA 5419 0	NEUTRALIZING BRUSH	「际電ノフン	A	C	1	c-00Z1 9304 1
3	55VA 8552 U	PHUTU SENSUR	ノオトセンザ	A	C	1	d-00Z1 1310 1
4	57AA 5322 0	PAPER EXIT DETECTION SPRING	排紙検知ハネ	A	C	1	e-00Z6 2030 1
5	57AA 5320 0		排紙アクナエダ	A	C	1	f-00Z5 1030 1
6	57AA 5319 0		排紙センサノロック	A	C	1	g-002670606 h-007253081
1	57AA 5321 0	PAPER DETECTION CAM	紙検知刀ム	A	C	1	i-00Z1 9410 1
8	5/AA 5411 0	PAPER DETECTION SPRING		A	C	1	j-00Z1 8406 1
9	25SA 5369 1	SENSOR HOLDER PART	センサ押さえ部材	A	C	1	k-00Z6 1080 1
10	57AA 5409 0	SUPPORT PART LOWER	センサ支持部材下	A	D	1	m-00ZA A001 5
11	26NA 4544 0	REGISTRATION UNIT FIXED SCREW	レジスト固定ネジ	A	С	1	n-00Z1 6306 1
12	57AA 5410 0	PRESSURE KNOB	上者ノフ	A	С	1	
13	56AA 1746 0	PIN A		A	С	1	
14	56AA 7721 0	PAPER EXIT IDLING GEAR 1 25T	排紙アイドラー歯車 1 25 T	A	В	1	
15	57AA 7707 0	FIXING IDLING GEAR A 24/14 T	定着アイドラーギア A 24/14 T	A	В	1	
16	57AA -524 0	ROLLER LOWER ASSY	ローラ下部組	A	A	1	
17	57AA -530 0	FIXING UNIT	定着ユニット	A	I	1	
18	57AA 5360 0	OPEN CLOSE BLOCK REAR	開閉ブロック 奥	A	D	1	
19	57AA 5359 0	OPEN CLOSE BLOCK FRONT	開閉ブロック 前	A	D	1	
20	56AA 5384 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE LEVER	排紙案内レバー	A	С	1	
21	56AA 5422 0	FIXING SCREW 2	固定ネジ 2	A	С	1	
22	57AA 5317 0	PRESSURE CAM FRONT	圧着カム 前	A	С	1	
23	57AA 5315 1	PRESSURE SPRING	圧着バネ	A	С	2	
24	57AA 5312 0	PRESSURE LEVER FRONT	圧着レバー前	A	D	1	
25	57AA 5313 0	PRESSURE LEVER REAR	圧着レバー奥	A	D	1	
26	57AA 5318 0	PRESSURE CAM REAR	圧着カム奥	A	С	1	
-							
							1



Kov	Part No.	Description		Destinations	Class	ΟΤΥ	Standard parts
Ney	F all NU.			Destinations	Ciass	4	
1	56AA 53/4 1	PAPER EXIT PRESSING SPRING FRONT	排紙押圧ハネ	A	C	1	a-0026 /040 6 b-0071 9304 1
2	56AA 7722 0	PAPER EXIT DRIVING GEAR 1 241		A	в	1	c-0071 9306 1
3	5/AA 9/2/ 0		ンヤム所际フヘル 8	A	C O	1	d-00ZA A001 5
4	56AA 5373 3	PAPEREXITENTRANCEPLATE UPP	排紙進人板/上	A	С	1	e-00Z1 8406 1
5	56AA 5375 1	PAPER EXIT PRESSING SPRING REAR	排紙押圧ハネ 奥	A	C	1	f-00Z6 7060 6
6	56QA 5449 0	PAPER EXIT RELEASE HANDLE	排紙解除把手	A	C	1	g-00Z1 6310 1 b-00Z3 8306 1
7	56AA 5408 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE PLATE LOWER	排紙カイド板 下	A	D	1	11-0023 0300 1
8	56AA 7723 1	PAPER EXIT DRIVING GEAR 2 18T	排紙駆動歯車 2 18 T	A	В	1	
9	57AA 7722 0	PAPER EXIT IDLING GEAR 2 25T	排紙アイドラー歯車 2 25 T	A	В	1	
10	57AA 5417 0	SPRING REAR	バネ 奥	A	С	1	
11	57AA 7721 0	PAPER EXIT IDLING GEAR 1 25T	排紙アイドラー歯車 1 25 T	A	В	1	
12	57AA 5333 0	GEAR FIXING BLOCK	ギア固定ブロック	A	С	1	
13	57AA 7706 0	FIXING DRIVE GEAR 60T	定着駆動歯車 60 T	A	В	1	
14	57AA 5332 0	INSULATING SLEEVE	断熱スリーブ	A	Α	2	
15	57AA 7503 0	FIXING ROLLER BEARING UPPER	定着転がり軸受 上	A	Α	2	
16	57AA 5305 0	FIXING ROLLER UPPER	定着ローラー上	A	Α	1	
17	07AA 7509 0	METAL 1	軸受 1	A	В	4	
18	56AA 7506 1	FIXING PAPER EXIT SHAFT HOLDER	定着排紙軸受	A	С	2	
19	4660 7602 0	PAPER FEED SHAFT HOLDER	給紙送り出し軸受	A	В	2	
20	57AA 5326 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE PART	排紙案内部材	A	С	1	
21	57AA 5329 0	FIXING PAPER EXIT ROLLER	定着排紙ローラ	A	С	1	
22	56AA 5382 0	POSITIONING LEVER	位置決めレバー	A	С	1	
23	56AA 5383 0	REGULATING SPRING 1	規制バネ 1	A	С	1	
24	57AA 5371 0	PAPER PRESSING ROLLER	紙押圧ローラ	A	Α	1	
25	57AA 5334 0	ROLLER FIXING PART	ローラ固定部材	A	А	1	
26	55GA 5365 2	WIRING HOLDING PART	東線ホルダー部材	A	С	2	
27	57AA 5352 0	ELECTRIC MOUNTING SCREW FRONT	電装取り付けネジ 前	A	C	2	
28	57AA 8461 0	FIXING COIL 1	定着コイル 1	A	Ĩ	1	
-							
	1						
<u> </u>							
I							



Key	Part No.	Description		Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA 5391 0	FIXING LIFTING SCREW	- 定着持ち上げネジ	A	С	2	a-00Z1 8304 1
2	57AA 5386 0	FIXING LIFTING COVER LOWER	定着持ち上げカバー下	A	C	1	b-00ZA A001 6
3	5400 7606 0	FIXING CLEANING SHAFT HOLDER A	定着清掃軸受 A	A	С	2	c-00Z6 7040 6
4	56AA 1753 0	PIN A D2X10	ピン A D 2 X 1 0	A	C	2	d-00Z6 0030 6
5	56AA 7734 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR 1 18T	定着清掃歯車 1 18 T	A	B	1	f-00Z1 9304 1
6	56AA 5435 0	SOLENOID PULLING SPRING	ソレノイド引張りバネ	Α	С	1	g-00Z1 9406 1
7	57AA 7711 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR D 44/11T	定着清掃ギア D 44/11 T	A	В	1	ň-00Z6 7060 6
8	57AA 7712 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR E 27/11T	定着清掃ギア E 27/11 T	A	В	1	
9	57AA 7708 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR A 27/16T	定着清掃ギア A 27/16 T	A	В	1	
10	56QA 5453 0	HOLDING SPRING	押えバネ	A	С	1	
11	5400 5346 0	ROCKING CLAW	揺動爪	A	C	1	
12	56QA 5440 0	ROCKING LEVER	揺動レバー	A	Č	1	
13	56QA 5441 0	SOLENOID PULLING SPRING	ソレノイド引張りバネ	A	C	1	
14	56QA 5442 0	STOPPER PART	ストッパ部材	A	D	1	
15	57AA 7709 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR B 21T	定着清掃ギア B 21 T	A	B	1	
16	56AA 5347 0	FIXING FULCRUM SHAFT	定着支点軸	A	D	2	
17	57AA 7710 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR C 15T	に 定着清掃ギア C 15 T	A	B	1	
18	57AA -544 0	UPPER PLATE ASSY	天板部組	A	D	1	
19	57AA 7713 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR F 29T	定着清掃ギア F 29 T	A	B	1	
20	56AA 5467 1	FIXING CLEANING SCREW	定着清掃ネジ	A	C.	2	
21	56AA 1755 0	PINA		A	C C	1	
22	57AA -543 0	WFB UNIT	ウェブユニット	A	Ā	1	
23	5400 5351 0	REGULATE CLAW	1月11日 1月1日 1月11日 1月11111111	A	C C	1	
20	0100 0001 0				0		
L							



FIXING UNIT Page. 30								
Key	Part No.	Des	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts	
1	56AA 1711 0	JAM DETECTING SPRING	ジャム検知バネ	A	С	2	a-00ZA A001 5	
2	56AA 1790 0	FIXING PAPER EXIT SCREW	定着排紙ネジ	A	С	2	c-00Z1 9304 1	
3	56QA 5320 0		定着川 ト	A	A	3	d-00Z1 6306 1	
4	56AA 1713 0			A	C	3	e-00Z2 5308 1	
6	5744 8804 0	TEMPERATURE SENSOR 2	足相排私似 上		B	1	r-0021 6308 1 g-0071 8406 1	
7	5744 8802 0	TEMPERATURE SENSOR E	温度 ビンサービー		B	1	h-00Z1 8306 1	
8	5744 8806 0	TEMPERATURE SENSOR 5	温度センサーち	Δ	B	1	i-00Z6 2030 1	
9	57AA 5340 0	MOUNTING PLATE A	センサ取り付け板 A	A	D	1	j-00ZA A001 6	
10	57AA 5330 0	COVER	センサカバー	A	D	1	m-00Z3 8306 1	
11	56AA 5422 0	FIXING SCREW 2	固定ネジ 2	Α	С	1		
12	57AA 5336 0	MOUNTING PLATE MIDDLE	センサ取り付け板 中	A	D	2		
13	57AA 8801 0	TEMPERATURE SENSOR C	温度センサ C	A	В	1		
14	55GA 5365 2	WIRING HOLDING PART	東線ホルダー部材	A	С	6		
15	SP00 -020 0	THERMOSTAT 57AA88420	サーモスタット	A	I	1		
16	57AA 5339 0	FUSE INSULATING SPACER	ヒューズ断熱スペーサー	A	С	1		
							_	
							_	
							1	
							4	
							1	
							4	
	1							





Q

Kev	Part No.	Description		Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA 5394 0		「定差カバー」を	Δ	C	1	a-0072 5308 1
2	57AA 9726 0	JAM RELEASE LABEL 7	こっかい ユー	A	C C	1	b-00Z1 9308 1
3	5744 5408 0	ROTATION KNOB FRONT		Δ	C	1	c-00Z1 4408 2
1	5744 9783 0		固体にするスリ	Δ	Č	1	d-00ZA A001 6
5	57AA 5/03 0				C	1	e-00Z2 5306 1
6	57AA 5414 0	POWER SOURCE DUCT ERONT	<u> 定</u> 宿 福 切 バ 前 雷 酒 ダ ク ト 前	A	C	1	a-0071 6308 1
7	5744 8452 0	HEATER POWER SOURCE 1	モルシント	Δ	U U	1	9 0021 0000 1
, 0	5700 5403 0		こ ノ 電源 「 前面取り付け振 ∧			2	
0	57AA 5403 0	FRONT MOUNTING PLATE B			D	2	
10	5700 5401 0		前面取り付け版 B 完美給電力バニ 山		D	1	
10	5744 5303 0		定省相電ガバー 中	Δ	D	1	
12	5744 5392 0		定着カバー英前		C	1	
12	57 AA 5532 0			7	U		
I							



FIXING UNIT Pag							Page. 32
Key	Part No.	Des	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2	56AA 5422 0 57AA 5355 0	FIXING SCREW 2 FIXING PAPER EXIT COVER	固定ネジ 2 定着排紙カバー	A	C C	1 1	a-00Z1 9406 1 b-00Z1 9304 1
3	57AA 5358 0	LEVER SPRING	レバーバネ	A	С	1	c-00Z6 7040 6 d-00Z1 6408 1
4	56AA 1732 0	PIN A D2X12	ビン A D 2 X 1 2 ジャム解除レバー	A	C	1	
6	57AA 9725 0	JAM RELEASE LABEL 6	ジャム解除ラベル 6	A	C	1	
7	56AA 5320 0	FIXING MOUNTING SHAFT FRONT	定着取り付け軸前	A	D	2	
8	56AA 5466 0	PAPER EXIT ROLLER		A	C	2	
9 10	56AA 5324 0 56AA 5427 0	FIXING CLAW UPPER		A	A	6	
11	56AA 2631 0	SPACER 5	スペーサー 5	A	C	2	
12	57AA 5364 0	OPEN CLOSE SPRING	開閉バネ	A	С	2	
							-
							-
							-


Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AE -530.0	EUSING UNIT	「定着コニット	B G2{bizbub 750}	1	1	a-007A A000 8
1	57AE -530 0	FUSING UNIT	「定着ユニット	C/bizbub 750}	i	1	b-00Z2 5308 3
1	57PE 520.0			B C2(bizhub 600)		1	c-00Z1 9306 1
	57BE -530 0						d-00Z1 9406 1
1	57BF -530 0	FIXING UNIT	「定有ユニット	C{biznub 600}	1	1	
1	57AN -530 0	FIXING UNIT	定着ユニット 	D1,D3,E,F2,G1,I,J,K{bi zhub 750}	I	1	
1	57AK -530 0	FIXING UNIT	定着ユニット 台湾	H{bizhub 750}		1	
1	57AS -530 0	FIXING UNIT	定着ユニット	F1{bizhub 750}	1	1	
1	57BN -530 0	FIXING UNIT	定着ユニット	D1 D3 E E2 G1 L LK/bi	i	1	
•				zhub 600}			
1	57BK -530 0	FIXING LINIT	定善っ ニット 台湾	H/bizbub 600}	1	1	
1	57BS 520.0					1	
	5785-5500				1 D	1	
2	57AE -544 0		大极印祖	B,G2	D		
2	57AF -544 U	UPPER PLATE ASSY	大板部組		D	1	
2	57AN -544 0	UPPER PLATE ASSY	大板部組	D1,D3,E,F2,G1,I,J,K{bi zhub 750}	D	1	
2	57AS -544 0	UPPER PLATE ASSY	天板部組	F1,H{bizhub 750}	D	1	
3	26NA 5403 0	MOUNT SCREW	取り付けネジ	B.C.D1.D3.E.F1.F2.G1.G	С	1	
-				2,H,I,J,K	-		
4	57AE 5474 0	FIXING COVER FRONT	定着カバー前	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	
				2,H,I,J,K			
5	56AA 5345 0	FIXING ENTRANCE PLATE UPPER	定着進入板上	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	D	1	
6	56AA 5339 0	GUIDE PART A	ガイド部材 A	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	
7	56AA 5455 0	PROTECTION SEAL 1	保護シール 1	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	D	1	
				2,H,I,J,K	-		
8	56AA 5394 2	FIXING HEAT INSULATE SHEET A	定着断烈シート A 	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
9	57AA 9776 0	FIXING COVER LABEL	定着カバーラベル	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	
				2,11,1,0,10			
					ļ	ļ	4
I							
I							
I							



FIX	ING UNIT	IG UNIT Page. 34								
Key	Part No.	D	escription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts			
1	56AA 5441 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE PART 1	排紙ガイド部材 1	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	a-00Z1 9406 1 b-00Z1 9306 1			
2	56AA 5442 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE PART 2	排紙ガイド部材 2	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2.H.I.J.K	С	1	c-00Z6 7040 6 d-00ZA A000 8			
3	56AA 5443 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE PART 3	排紙ガイド部材 3	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H1,J,K	С	1	e-00Z6 7060 6 f-00ZA A001 5			
4	56AA 5444 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE PART 4	排紙ガイド部材 4	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.I,J,K	С	1				
5	56AA 5378 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE PLATE	排紙ガイド板	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1				
6	56AA 5307 1	PAPER EXIT CONVEYING ROLLER UPPER	排紙搬送ローラ 上	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	A	1				
7	56AA 5371 0	FIXING PAPER EXIT ROLLER	定着排紙ローラ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2.H.I.J.K	С	1				
8	56AA 7722 0	PAPER EXIT DRIVING GEAR 1 24T	排紙駆動歯車 1 24 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2.H.I.J.K	В	1				
9	56AA 5447 1	DRIVE STOPPER ROLLER	駆動突き当てコロ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.I,J,K	С	1				
10	56AA 7506 1	FIXING PAPER EXIT SHAFT HOLDER	定着排紙軸受	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	2				
11	56AA 5448 0	DRIVE PROTECTION SPACER	駆動保護スペーサー	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	5				
12	56QA 5454 0	ROTARY KNOB H	回転ノブ H	B,C,D103,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2 H L J K	D	1				
13	56AA 7723 1	PAPER EXIT DRIVING GEAR 2 18T	排紙駆動歯車 2 18 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H1,J,K	В	1				
14	56AA 5384 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE LEVER	排紙案内レバー	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1				
15	57AA 7721 0	PAPER EXIT IDLING GEAR 1 25T	排紙アイドラー歯車 1 25 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	В	1				
16	56AA 5464 0	SHAFT HOLDER REGULATING PLATE	軸受規制板	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	D	2				
17	56AA 5372 1	PAPER EXIT DRIVEN ROLLER UPPER	排紙従動ローラ 上	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2 H L I K	D	1				
18	56AA 5419 0	NEUTRALIZING BRUSH	除電ブラシ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2 H I,J K	С	1				
19	56AA 5346 1	FIXING ENTRANCE PLATE LOWER	定着進入板下	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2.H.I.J.K	D	1				
20	07AA 7509 0	METAL 1	軸受 1	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	В	4				
21	57AA 9726 0	JAM RELEASE LABEL 7	ジャム解除ラベル 7	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1]			
22	12QV 4065 0	SPACER	スペーサー	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2 H I,J K	D	2				
23	56QA 5450 0	INSULATING PART	断熱部材	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1				
24	57AA 5417 0	SPRING REAR	バネー奥	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1				
25	57AA 7722 0	PAPER EXIT IDLING GEAR 2 25T	排紙アイドラー歯車 2 25 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	В	1				
1										



FIX	ING UNIT			FIXING UNIT Page. 35							
Key	Part No.	0	Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts				
1	56AA 5418 0	FIXING PAPER EXIT PLATE LOWER	定着排紙板下	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,L,J,K	D	1	a-00ZA A000 8 b-00Z1 9306 1				
2	56QA 5451 0	FIXING PAPER EXIT PLATE UPPER	定着排紙板 上	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1	c-00Z6 7040 6 d-00Z1 9304 1				
3	56AA 1790 0	FIXING PAPER EXIT SCREW	定着排紙ネジ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2 H L J K	С	2	e-00Z1 9406 1				
4	56AA 5373 2	PAPER EXIT ENTRANCE PLATE UPPER	排紙進入板 上	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2 H L J K	С	1					
5	56QA 9730 0	JAM RELEASE LABEL 6	ジャム解除ラベル 6	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1					
6	56AA 5408 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE PLATE LOWER	排紙ガイド板 下	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	D	1					
7	4660 7602 0	PAPER FEED SHAFT HOLDER	給紙送り出し軸受	2,11,1,3,1 B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H1,LK	В	2					
8	56AA 5382 0	POSITIONING LEVER	位置決めレバー	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1					
9	56AA 5374 1	PAPER EXIT PRESSING SPRING FRONT	排紙押圧バネ 前	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1					
10	56AA 5380 2	PAPER EXIT GUIDE PART RIGHT	排紙ガイド部材 右	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1					
11	56AA 5375 1	PAPER EXIT PRESSING SPRING REAR	排紙押圧バネ 奥	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1					
12	56QA 5449 0	PAPER EXIT RELEASE HANDLE	排紙解除把手	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1					
13	26NA 5403 0	MOUNT SCREW	取り付けネジ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	2					
14	56AA 1711 0	JAM DETECTING SPRING	ジャム検知バネ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2 H L J K	С	2					
15	56QA 5320 0	FIXING CLAW LOWER	定着爪下	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H1,J,K	А	3					
16	56AA 1713 0	SEPARATING SPRING LOWER	分離バネー下	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	3					
17	56AA 5395 1	FIXING HEAT INSULATE SHEET B	定着断熱シート B	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1					
18	57AA 9727 0	JAM RELEASE LABEL 8	ジャム解除ラベル 8	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H1,J,K	С	1					
							-				
							-				
							-				



FIX	ING UNIT						Page. 36
Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 7734 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR 1 18T	定着清掃歯車 1 18 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	В	1	a-00Z1 9306 1
2	5400 5346 0	ROCKING CLAW	摇動爪	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	c-00Z6 7040 6 d-00Z6 7060 6
3	56QA 5440 0	ROCKING LEVER	揺動レバー	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H1,JK	С	1	e-00Z6 8300 3 f-00Z1 6306 1
4	57AA 7711 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR D 44/11T	定着清掃ギア D 44/11 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	В	1	g-002A A000 8 h-00Z1 8304 1 i-00Z1 8406 1
5	5400 5351 0	REGULATE CLAW	規制爪	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	1002104001
6	57AA 7717 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR G 27T	定着清掃ギア G 27 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	В	1	
7	57AA 7718 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR H 25/15T	定着清掃ギア H 25/15 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H1,JK	В	1	
8	5400 7606 0	FIXING CLEANING SHAFT HOLDER A	定着清掃軸受A	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H1,JK	С	2	
9	56AA 1753 0	PIN A D2X10	ピン A D 2 X 1 0	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
10	56AA 5361 0	TERMINAL PEDESTAL 3	端子台 3	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
11	56AA 7735 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR 2 19T	定着清掃歯車 2 19 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,L,J,K	В	1	
12	56AA 5365 0	TERMINAL PLATE 3	端子板 3	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,L,J,K	С	1	
13	56AE 5305 2	FIXING ROLLER UPPER	定着ローラ 上	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,L,J,K{bizhub 750}	А	1	
13	56AA 5305 2	FIXING ROLLER UPPER	定着ローラ 上	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K{bizhub 600}	А	1	
14	56AE 8304 0	FIXING LAMP 2	定着ランプ 2	B,G2	В	1	
14	56AF 8304 0	FIXING LAMP 2	定着ランプ 2	C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,I,J,K	В	1	
14	56AK 8304 0	FIXING LAMP 2	定着ランプ 2	Н	В	1	
14	56AS 8304 0	FIXING LAMP 2	定着ランプ 2	F1	В	1	
15	56AE 8303 0	FIXING LAMP 1	定着ランプ 1	B,G2,H	В	1	
15	56AF 8303 0	FIXING LAMP 1	定着ランプ 1	C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,I,J,K	В	1	
15	56AS 8303 0	FIXING LAMP 1	定着ランプ 1	F1	В	1	
16	4540 5339 1	HEAT INSULATE SLEEVE	断熱スリーブ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	A	2	
17	56QA 7721 0	FIXING DRIVING GEAR FRONT	定着駆動歯車 前	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	В	1	
18	56QA 5443 0	FIXING DRIVE SPACER REAR	定着駆動スペーサー 奥	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1	
19	4540 7504 0	BALL BEARING	ボールベアリング	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	A	2	
20	56AA 5363 0	TERMINAL PLATE 1	端子板 1	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
21	56AA 5359 0	TERMINAL PEDESTAL 1	端子台 1	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
22	56AA 5422 0	FIXING SCREW 2	固定ネジ 2	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	2	
23	SP00 -002 1	THERMOSTAT	サーモスタット	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	A	1	
24	5400 5354 0	FUSE MOUNTING PLATE	ヒューズ取付板	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
25	56AA 5366 0	TERMINAL PLATE 4	端子板 4	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	1

Key	Part No.	Des	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
26	56AA 5358 2	LAMP MOUNTING PLATE REAR	ランプ取り付け板 奥	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	D	1	
27	56AA 5435 0	SOLENOID PULLING SPRING	ソレノイド引張りバネ	2, H, I, J, K B, C, D1, D3, E, F1, F2, G1, G 2 H L, I K	С	1	
28	55GA 5365 2	WIRING HOLDING PART	東線ホルダー部材	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.I.J.K	С	6	
29	57AA 7712 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR E 27/11T	定着清掃ギア E 27/11 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	В	1	
30	56AA 5412 1	FIXING HANDLE	定着把手	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	
31	56QA 5453 0	HOLDING SPRING	押えバネ	2,⊓,1,3,K B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2 H L L K	С	1	
32	56QA 5442 0	STOPPER PART	ストッパ部材	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1	
33	56QA 5441 0	SOLENOID PULLING SPRING	ソレノイド引張りバネ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	
34	5440 7720 1	FIXING DRIVE GEAR B 50T	定着駆動歯車 B 50 T	2,⊓,1,3,K B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	В	1	
							•
							-
					1		



FIXING UNIT Page. 3								
Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts	
1	57AE 5470 0	SUPPORT PART MIDDLE	センサ支持部材中	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1	a-00Z1 6306 1 b-00Z1 6308 1	
2	57AE 8801 0	TEMPERATURE SENSOR C	温度センサ C	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2.H,I,J,K	В	1	c-00Z1 9306 1 d-00Z1 9304 1	
3	57AA 7713 0	FIXING CLEANING GEAR F 29T	定着清掃ギア F 29 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	В	1	e-00Z1 6310 1 f-00Z6 7060 6	
4	25BA 7719 1	FIXING IDLER GEAR BLACK 19T	定着アイドラー歯車 黒 19 T	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2.H.I,J,K	В	1	g-00Z6 7040 6 h-00Z1 9406 1	
5	56AA 5347 0	FIXING FULCRUM SHAFT	定着支点軸	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	2		
6	57AE 8804 0	TEMPERATURE SENSOR 2	温度センサ 2	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	В	1		
7	56AA 1755 0	PIN A	ピン A	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.I.J.K	С	1		
8	57AE -543 0	WEB UNIT	ウェブユニット	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	А	1		
9	56AA 5467 1	FIXING CLEANING SCREW	定着清掃ネジ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	2		
10	56AA 5453 0	FIXING EARTH SPRING	定着アースバネ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1		
<u> </u>							-	
							-	
							-	
<u> </u>								



FIX	IXING UNIT Page. 38								
Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts		
1	56AA 5337 0	JAM PROCESSING COVER	ジャム処理カバー	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	a-00ZA A000 8 b-00Z6 7030 6		
2	56AA 5421 0	FIXING SCREW 1	固定ネジ 1	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.I,J,K	С	1	c-00Z1 9306 1 d-00Z6 7040 6		
3	56AA 5437 0	PAPER EXIT RELEASE PLATE A	排紙解除板 A	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,L,J,K	D	1	e-00Z1 9406 1 f-00Z1 6406 1		
4	56AA 1732 0	PIN A D2X12	ピン A D 2 X 1 2	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.I,J,K	С	3	g-0021 9303 1		
5	56AA 5434 0	FIXING RELEASE SPRING	定着解除バネ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1			
6	56QA 5433 0	JAM RELEASE LEVER	ジャム解除レバー	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H1,J,K	С	1			
7	56AA 5438 0	PAPER EXIT RELEASE PLATE B	排紙解除板 B	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1			
8	56AA 5312 1	RELEASE PLATE 2	解除板 2	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.I,J,K	D	1			
9	56AA 5316 0	LOCKING CLAW FRONT	ロック爪 前	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	2			
10	56AA 5320 0	FIXING MOUNTING SHAFT FRONT	定着取り付け軸 前	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	2			
11	56AA 5458 3	PRESSING PLATE 2	押 圧板 2	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1			
12	56AA 5466 0	PAPER EXIT ROLLER	排紙コロ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	2			
13	56AA 5303 1	FIXING PAPER EXIT PLATE RIGHT	定着排紙板 右	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1			
14	56AA 5324 0	SEPARATING SPRING UPPER	分離バネー上	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	6			
15	56AA 5427 0	FIXING CLAW UPPER	定着爪上	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	А	6			
16	56AA 5318 0	FIXING PAPER EXIT PLATE LEFT	定着排紙板 左	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H1,1,K	D	1			
17	56AA 5436 0	FIXING LOCKING SPRING	定着ロックバネ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.I,J,K	С	2			
18	56AA 5317 2	FIXING ROCKING CAM	定着首振りカム	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1			
19	56AA 5457 3	PRESSING PLATE 1	押圧板 1	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1			
20	26MA 7406 0	SPACER A	スペーサー A	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1			
21	57AA 9778 0	FIXING OPEN SHUT LABEL	定着開閉ラベル	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2.H.I.J.K	С	1			
22	57AE 5479 0	FIXING INSULATING PART 2	定着断熱部材 2	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.I,J,K	С	1			
							4		
							1		





FIXING UNIT Page. 39								
Key	Part No.		Description	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts	
1	55VA 8552 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	a-00Z1 9306 1	
2	56AA 5402 0	MOUNTING PART	センサ取り付け部材	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H1,J,K	С	1	c-00Z1 9410 1 d-00Z6 7070 6	
3	57AA 5320 0	PAPER EXIT ACTUATOR	排紙アクチェタ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	e-00Z1 6306 1 f-00Z1 8304 1	
4	56QA 5304 0	PRESSURE SPRING	圧着バネ	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2 H L I K	С	2	g-00Z6 7060 6 h-00ZA A000 8 i-00Z1 9408 1	
5	57AE 5306 0	FUSING ROLLER LOWER	定着ローラ 下	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	А	1	j-00Z2 4310 1 k-00Z1 8406 1	
6	56AA 5405 1	PRESSURE CAM FRONT	圧着カム 前	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	m-00Z6 1080 1	
7	56AA 5450 0	PIN 1	ピン 1	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H.I.J.K	D	1		
8	56AA 5362 0	TERMINAL PEDESTAL 4	端子台 4	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1		
9	56AA 5430 1	PRESSURE CAM REAR	圧着カム 奥	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1		
10	57AE 7504 0	FIXING ROLLER BEARING LOWER	定着転がり軸受 下	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	А	2		
11	SP00 -001 0	THERMOSTAT 2	サーモスタット 2	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2.H.I,J.K	A	1		
12	57AE 5477 0	FIXING LEVER	定着レバー	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1		
13	56AA 5383 0	REGULATING SPRING 1	規制バネ 1	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1		
14	56AA 5365 0	TERMINAL PLATE 3	端子板 3	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	2		
15	57AE 5471 0	TERMINAL PEDESTAL 2	端子台 2	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1		
16	56AE 8305 0	FIXING LAMP 3	定着ランプ 3	B,G2,H	В	1		
16	56AF 8305 0	FIXING LAMP 3	定有フンノ 3 中美ニンプ 2	C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,I,J,K	В	1		
10	56AA 5422 0	FIXING LAWF 3	正相 ノノノ 3 国宝 えい ク		Б С	2		
17	5744 9724 0		回たイン 2	2,H,I,J,K B C D1 D3 E E1 E2 G1 G	C	1		
	5177 3124 0			2,H,I,J,K	0	1		



Page. 40 Standard parts Key Part No. Description Destinations Class QTY 1 56AA 1776 0 COLLAR カラー С 2 a-00Z6 7040 6 b-00Z1 9306 1 2 0590 7651 0 PULLEY 1 15T プーリー 1 15 T С 2 c-00Z7 1214 6 3 56AA 7759 0 PAPER FEED ROCKING BELT 111L 給紙首振りベルト 111 L С 1 d-00Z6 7060 6 С 57AA 4035 0 ROCKING HANDLE 首振り把手 4 1 e-00Z1 9304 1 5 56AA 4049 0 SHAFT STOPPER 4 軸ストッパ 4 С 3 56AA -458 0 PAPER FEED OSCILLATE ROLLER ASSY 給紙首振りローラー部組 В 6 1 ドラム駆動軸受 С 6 7 08AA 7601 0 DRUM DRIVING SHAFT HOLDER 給紙首振り板 8 56AA 4007 0 PAPER FEED ROCKING PLATE D 1 9 26NA 4082 0 PAPER FEED SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER 給紙滑り軸受 С 1 25SA 4096 0 重送防止ゴム 10 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION RUBBER А 1 紙残検アクチェタ С 11 56AA 4030 0 PAPER QUANTITY ACTUATOR 1 PIN B ピン Β 12 56AA 1751 0 С 2 13 56AA 4029 0 PAPER FEED ROCKING SHAFT 給紙首振り軸 D 1 57AA -403 0 FEEDING ASSY 送り出し部組 С 14 1 08AA 8551 0 15 PHOTO SENSOR フォトセンサー В 2 16 56AA 4052 0 SENSOR EARTH SPRING センサアースバネ С 1 56AA 4046 0 SENSOR ADJUSTMENT PLATE センサ調整板 D 17 1 55FA 4032 0 カップリング С 18 COUPLING 1 19 25AA 4010 0 FEEDING ROLLER B 送り出しローラー B в 1

PAPER FEED UNIT



Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 4012 0	PAPER FEED HOLDING SCREW	☆ 絵紙押えネジ		D	1	a-0076 7040 6
2	56AA 4010 0	WIRING PROTECTION COVER	東線保護カバー		D	1	b-00Z6 7060 6
3	5644 4039 0		カム板		Č	1	c-00Z1 9306 1
1	56AA 1712 1	SEPARATE SPRING LIPPER	ンー(A) 分離バネート		č	1	d-00Z2 5308 1
5	6544 4010 0				D	1	e-0026 7030 6
6	5644 4038 0				C	1	1-0020 1030 1
7	5744 4047 0		本 い か い う つ う う う う う う う う う う う う う う う う う		C C	1	
0	57 AA 4047 0				C	1	
0	50AA 4051 0		が止いて		C	1	
9	56AA 4045 0		お私力 ツノリノク 部内 公共 ガンドロート			1	
10	50AA 4003 2	PAPER FEED GUIDE PLATE UPPER	粘拭ノ1ト 板 上		D	1	
10	56AA 4001 0		和秋平体		C	1	
12	56AA 4021 0	AD WOTING DUATE	入り山刀1ト板 削		C	1	
13	56AA 4037 0		調発放		D	1	
14	26NA 4082 0	PAPER FEED SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER	お秋冷り軸文		C	2	
15	56AA 4031 0	SENSOR MOUNTING PLATE	センサ取付け板		D	1	
16	56AA 4017 1	PAPER FEED DETECTING ACTUATOR	給紙検知アクチェタ		C	1	
17	56AA 4019 0	SENSOR PRESSING SPRING	センサ押圧パネ		С	1	
18	08AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサー		В	1	
19	56AA 4023 0	PAPER FEED REGISTRATION ROLLER	給紙レジストローラ		С	1	
20	56AA 1748 0	PIN B	<u>ピシ B</u>		С	2	
21	56AA 1776 0	COLLAR	カラー		С	2	
22	57AA 4061 0	SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER	滑り軸受		С	2	
23	56AA 8201 2	PAPER FEED DRIVING CLUTCH	給紙駆動クラッチ		В	2	
24	55VA 4212 0	SHAFT STOPPER	軸ストッパー		С	2	
25	57AA 7772 0	PAPER FEED REVERSE GEAR 1 9/22T	給紙逆転歯車 1 9 / 2 2 T		С	1	
26	55VA 7554 0	PAPER FEED SHAFT HOLDER B	給紙軸受 B		В	1	
27	57AA 4063 0	GEAR CUSHION G	ギアクッション G		С	2	
28	57AA 4062 0	CLUTCH HOLDER 2	クラッチ押さえ 2		D	1	
29	57AA -405 0	PAPER FEED INPUT SHAFT ASSY	給紙入力軸部組		D	1	
							1



Key	Part No.	Descr	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA 4042 0	MULTI FEED PREVENTING SPRING	重送防止バネ		С	1	a-00Z2 5308 1
2	56AA 4048 0	PAPER FEED PRESSING SPRING			C	1	b-00Z6 7030 6
3	08AA 7601 0	DRUM DRIVING SHAFT HOLDER	ドラム駆動軸受		Ċ	5	c-00Z6 7040 6
4	5744 8203 0				Č	1	d-00Z6 7060 6
5	5644 1019 0		前ならいパーム		Č	1	e-00Z/ 1110 6
6	2554 4006 0				^	1	1-0021 0300 1
7	200A 4090 0					1	
<i>'</i>	50AA -400 U				Б	1	
8	55VA 7903 0	PAPER FEED REVERSAL GEAR C 141			В	2	
9	12QV 4066 0				C R	1	
10	26NA 4206 1	BY PASS FEED CONVEYING GEAR 211			В	1	_
11	56AA 4041 1	TORQUE LIMITTER	トルクリミッタ		В	1	
12	56QA 4008 0	MULTI FEED PREVENTING PLATE	重送防止极		С	1	
13	56AA 1731 0	PIN	ビシ		С	1	
14	57AA -400 0	PAPER FEED UNIT	給紙ユニット		S	1	
15	56AA -459 0	ENTRANCE GUIDE ASSY	入りロガイド部組		D	1	
16	26NA 4256 0	BY PASS FEED DRIVEN ROLLER	手差し従動ローラ		С	2	
17	56GA 7601 0	SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER 2	滑り軸受 2		С	4	
18	56AA 1776 0	COLLAR	カラー		С	1	
<u> </u>							4
							4
L			l				4
]



bizhub 600/bizhub 750

P 43

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56QA 4418 0	LOCK SPRING/UPPER	ロックハ゛ネ/ウエ		С	1	a-00Z1 9406 1
2	56AA 4415 0	SHAFT FIXING PART	軸固定部材		С	2	b-00Z2 5308 1
3	56BA 4404 3	CONVEYANCEGUIDEPLATE RIGHT	搬送ガイド板/右		С	1	c-00Z1 8306 1
4	56AA 4420 0	LOCKING CLAW	ロック爪		С	2	e-00Z1 9306 1
5	26NA 4256 0	BY PASS FEED DRIVEN ROLLER	手差し従動ローラ		С	6	f-00Z6 7030 6
6	56QA 4419 0	LOCK SPRING LOWER	ロックハ゛ネ/シタ		С	1	g-00Z7 1112 6
7	56AA 4443 0	CONVEYANCE PRESSING SPRING 1	搬送押圧バネ 1		С	3	
8	08AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサー		В	6	
9	56AA 1730 0	PIN	ピン		С	1	
10	56RE 4414 0	DOOR OPEN/SHUT LEVER	ト゛アー カイヘイ レハ゛ー		С	1	
11	56BA 4403 0	PAPER FEED CONVEYING DOOR	キュウシハンソウトヒ゛ラ		С	1	
12	56AA -455 0	SENSOR ASSY	センサー部組		В	6	
13	56QA 4455 0	CONVEYANCE EARTH SPRING	搬送アースバネ		С	1	
14	56AA 4425 0	MOUNTING PART	センサ取り付け部材		C	4	
15	57AA 4427 0	PAPER DETECTION ACTUATOR	紙検知アクチェタ		Č	4	
16	56AA 4426 0	PRESSING SPRING	センサ押圧バネ		C	4	
17	56GA 7601 0	SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER 2	2 · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		Ċ	12	
	000/(/00/0				Ũ		
-							
							4
I							4
							4



Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 4408 2	PAPER FEED CONVEYING ROLLER	給紙搬送ローラ		С	3	a-00Z1 9306 1
2	56AA 1748 0	PIN B	ピン B		С	3	b-00Z6 7060 6
3	56AA 4423 1	DOOR LOCKING PART	ドアーロック部材		С	2	d-00Z6 1030 1
4	26NA 4082 0	PAPER FEED SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER	給紙常り軸受		C	6	e-00Z1 8306 1
с 6	5644 -455 U	DOOR POSITIONING PART	粘核ノイト 印名 上印祖			2	
7	5644 1755 0				C	2	
8	56AA 7659 0	ADU CONVEYING PULLEY 1 32T	ADU 搬送プーリ 1 32 T		C C	3	
9	56AA 7738 0	CONVEYANCE GEAR 21T	搬送ギア 21 T		č	1	
10	57AA 4461 0	PULLEY HOLDER BLACK	プーリ押さえ クロ		С	3	
11	56QA 7753 0	CONVEYANCE CONNECTING BELT 292L	搬送連結ベルト 292 L		С	1	
12	57AA 7738 0	CONVEYANCE GEAR 21T	搬送ギア 21 T		С	2	
13	57AA 4063 0	GEAR CUSHION G	ギアクッション G		С	4	
							-
-							
							-
							1
							4
						İ	1
							4



Page. 45

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	3960 4068 1	STOPPER RING	・ 止め輪		B	2	a-0071 8304 1
2	0844 7601 0	DRUM DRIVING SHAFT HOLDER	ドラム取動軸受		C	4	b-00Z1 9305 3
3	5644 4203 1	BY PASS FEED GUIDE PLATE LIPPER	- シニ 非 ジェ キャック キャック キャック キャック キャック キャック キャック キャック		D	1	c-00Z1 9306 1
4	5644 4243 0		「上しの「「仮」上		C	2	d-00Z4 7404 3
5	5400 4056 2		紙がすてわり		Δ	1	e-002670306
6	5644 -469 0	PAPER CON ROLLER ASSY	紙牌はローラー部組		B	1	a-0026 7040 6
7	5644 7718 0	BY PASS FEED CONVEYING GEAP 1 19T			C	1	h-00Z1 1B04 1
2 2	26NIA 4082 0		テ左し派送困事 「「3」		C	3	
0	2010A 4002 0		和私行り祖父			1	
10	56AA 7706 0	RV DASS EEED IDLING GEAD 18T	私区り山し版 手羊 マイドニー歯市 10 T		C	1	
10	25AA 7730 0	CONVEYANCE IDI ED DIGHT 24T			C	1	
12	25AA 1113 0				^	1	
12	56AA 468 0					1	
10	25AA -400 U		医り山しローリー A 砂租 一般学习ノビュー		Б	1	
14	23AA 7730 0				D C	1	
10	57AA 9720 0				C	1	
10	50QA 4274 U		ローフーフェの			1	
10	5400 7605 0		^影 别判文 壬辛」於何如 廿		Б	2	
10	50AA 4217 0		于左し快和即村			1	
19	50AA 4251 U	PAPER STOPPER ROLLER				1	
20	56AA -479 U	MUTUR ASST	モーター部組		В	1	
21	06AA 6551 0	PHUTU SENSOR	フォトセンサー		В	2	
22	56QA -461 U				D	1	
23	56AA 7717 0	BY PASS FEED INPUT GEAR B 281	于左し入力圏単 B 28			1	
24	56AA 7716 U	BY PASS FEED INPUT GEAR A 241	手左し入力圏単 A 24		C	1	
25	3960 7724 0	TONER SUPPLY GEAR A 421 131			C	1	
26	4660 7722 0	DOUBLE STEPPED GEAR 341 171			C	1	
27	25AA 4952 0	PAPER EXIT IDLER GEAR 311	排紙アイトフー圏単 31 1		C	1	
28	12QV 4065 0	SPACER	x~- y -		D	6	
	1				1		1



P 46

Page. 46

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA -475 1	DOUBLE FEED PREVENTIVE ROLLER	サバキローラー		В	1	a-00Z1 9306 1
2	56AA 4245 0	PREVENTING RUBBER	防止ゴム		С	1	b-00Z6 7040 6
3	56QA 4272 0	PAPER GUIDE SHEET	紙案内シート		С	2	C-00Z1 9304 1
4	3960 4068 1	STOPPER RING	止め輪		В	2	e-00Z6 7020 6
5	56AA 4244 0	BY PASS FEED PRESSING SPRING	手差し押圧バネ		С	1	
6	56AA 4206 1	MULTI FEED MOUNTING PLATE	重送取り付け板		С	1	
7	56AA 4224 1	MULTI FEED PRESSING SPRING	重送押圧バネ		С	1	
8	56AA 4204 0	BY PASS FEED GUIDE PLATE LOWE	手差しガイド板下		D	1	
9	56AA 4205 0	BY PASS FEED AUXILIARY PLATE	手差し補助板		D	1	
10	56AA 4253 0	CONVEYANCE GUIDE PLATE LOWER	搬送ガイド板 下		D	1	
11	56AA 4254 1	ENTRANCE GUIDE PART	入りロガイド部材		С	1	
12	55VA 7774 0	MANUAL FEED UP DOWN GEAR A 45T	手差し昇降歯車 A 45 T		В	1	
13	4660 7602 0	PAPER FEED SHAFT HOLDER	給紙送り出し軸受		В	2	
14	55VA 7903 0	PAPER FEED REVERSAL GEAR C 14T	給紙逆転歯車 C 14 T		В	1	
15	13GQ 4551 1	TORQUE LIMITTER	トルクリミッタ		С	1	
16	56AA 1732 0	PIN A D2X12	ピン A D 2 X 1 2		С	1	
17	56AA 1731 0	PIN	ピン		С	1	
18	08AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサー		В	2	
19	56AA 4270 1	PAPER GUIDE SHEET FRONT	紙案内シート 前		С	1	
20	56AA 7505 0	CLEANER SHAFT HOLDER	クリーナー軸受		С	4	
21	56AA 4250 0	CONVEYANCE DRIVEN ROLLER LOWE	搬送従動コロー下		С	2	
22	56AA 4259 0	CONVEYANCE PRESSING SPRING 1	搬送押圧バネ 1		С	2	
23	56AA 4264 0	STOPPER SHEET	突き当てシート		С	2	
24	56AA 4246 0	OPEN SHUT PLATE	開閉板		D	1	
25	56AA 4252 0	CONVEYANCE GUIDE PLATE UPPER	搬送ガイド板 上		D	1	
26	5400 4056 2	PAPER SUPPLY RUBBER	紙補給ゴム		A	1	
27	56AA 4258 0	PAPER DETECTING ACTUATOR B	紙検知アクチェタ B		С	1	
28	56QA 4267 0	SPRING B	センサバネ B		С	1	
l							



Page. 47

1 17AA 4233 0 WHIND FROTECTION COVER 兼積環境カイー C 1 3 57AA 423 0 BY PASS INFER FRONT HABK # INF C 1 4 56A 423 0 BY PASS INFER TED TRAY FALL MSL C 1 5 56A 773 0 PUDE LICE C 1 C 1 5 76A 423 0 BY PASS INFER TRAY FALL MSL C 1 C 1 6 76A 423 0 BY PASS INFER TRAY FALL MSL C 1 C 1 7 774 423 0 BY PASS INFER TRAY FALL MSL C 1 C 1 7 774 423 1 BY PASS INFER TRAY FALL MSL C 1 C 1 7 774 425 1 FALL MSL FALL MSL C 1 C 1 10 60A 4251 0 DATES INFERS INFERT HBL 177 1 HBL 177 1 E C 1 13 60A 4251 0 PACK REAR 7.9.7 2 A C	QTY Standard parts
2 DYAA 2200 PAPER REGULATING PARTE FRONT High # "in" C 1 3 STAA 230 BY ASS PARER FED TRAY 7.97. #"o" C 1 4 BKAA 234.0 BY ASS PARER FED TRAY 7.97. #"o" C 1 4 BKAA 234.0 BY ASS PARER FED TRAY 7.97. #"o" C 1 5 STAA 240.0 SUDE HISSINFRY TRAY 7.97. #"o" C 1 6 STAA 240.0 SUDE HISSINFRY TRAY 7.97. **o. **o. **o. **o. **o. **o. **o. **	1 a-0071 9306 1
3 GYA 42310 BY PASS PAPER FEED TRAY # 24: K&dii C 1 4 SAA 42310 RCX FRONT 7 9 7 11 C 1 5 4580 713.0 PNION 14T C 7 27 14 C 1 6 658A 42420 SLIDE HOLDER 27 7 1478 2.3 C 1 7 57AA 2320 BY PASS SUPPRY ITAY # 24: K&dii C 1 9 57AA 2320 BY PASS SUPPRY ITAY # 24: K&dii C 1 9 57AA 2320 BY PASS SUPPRY ITAY # 24: K&dii C 1 9 57AA 2320 BY PASS SUPPRY ITAY # 24: K&dii C 1 9 57AA 2320 BY PASS SUPPRY ITAY # 24: K&dii C 1 10 55AA 2310 CYPER SHUT SUPPRS SHAFT ## 54: K# 48 D 1 11 56AA 2320 PAPER LIFTING FALL RE RAR 10 7 4 ## 52: K# 54 C 1 12 56A 2320 PAYER BUFT UFT VOLME 12: K 2: X 2: X C 1 <td>1 b-00Z2 5308 1</td>	1 b-00Z2 5308 1
4 500A 4234 0 PACK FRONT 500 7 million	c-00Z2 5308 2
5 6007730 PNNON HAT E ± ± v 1 A T C 1 6 56A 4220 SUB HOLDER 27 (1783) C 1 7 57A 4220 SUP RASS SUPPLY TRAY 7 ± ± ± v ± u ± u ± u ± u ± u ± u ± u ± u	d-00Z6 7020 6
6 BOAA 222 0 SUPE HOLDER スライド神文 マー 1 7 87AA 222 0 BY PASS SUPPLY TRAY Feb. Medua C 1 8 BSBA 423 1 BY PASS FEED DAPER FEED COVER Ft [*] '> + x → 2'> + 2	e-002670406
7 57AA 422 0 EV PASS SUPPLY TRAY *差 L HÁtem C 1 8 56A 422 0 EV PASS SUPPLY TRAY *差 L HÁtem C 1 9 57A 422 10 PAPER RECULATING PLEE REAR BIR X b y X C 1 10 56A 428 0 PAPER RECULATING PLATE REAR BIR X b y X C 1 11 56A 428 0 PAPER RECULATING PLATE REAR BIR X b y X D 1 12 56A 428 0 PAPER RECULATING PLATE BKEMILY SUPPER D 1 13 56A 428 0 PAPER RECULATING YOLUNE # 2 x A D 1 14 56A 428 0 PIN A 2 x A C 1 15 560 705 2 PAPER IFT UP GEAR A12 T HEH 1/# a A 1 2 T C 1 16 56A 458 0 PIN N E ± 2 x C 1 17 56A 428 0 PIN N E ± 2 x C 1 18 57A 978 0 MANUAL FEE LLABEL # 2 x A x C 1 19 56A 458 0 PIN N E ± 2 x C 1 19 56A 458 0 PIN N E ± 2 x C 1 20 56A 558 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE E ± 2 x <	1 g-00Z1 8306 1
B SBBA 42001 DV-PASS FEED PAPER FEED COVER デザ・シキュウシカハ・ー C 1 9 57AA 4210 PAPER REQUATING PLATE REAR 展開ストッパ C 1 10 55AA 4210 PAPER REQUATING PLATE REAR 展開ストッパ C 1 11 55AA 4210 PAPER REDITARY STOPPER SHAFT BKR 21.57K D 1 12 55AA 4211 PAPER REDITARY STOPPER SHAFT BKR 21.57K D 1 13 55AA 4211 PAPER LIFTING PLATE BKR 21.57K C 1 14 55AA 6201 SCE CETECTING VOLUME C × A C 1 14 55AA 6201 SCE FECTING ACTUATOR A KKR 21.74K C 1 17 55AA 6230 SCE FECTING ACTUATOR A KKR 27.74K C 1 18 57AA 7780 PANUAL FEED LABEL 1 FE 2.57AL 1 KKR 27.74K C 1 19 55AA 4230 DVER 0ETECTING ACTUATOR A KKR 27.74K 24.75V C 1 10 08AA 42510 DOUGEL FEED PREVENTION PLATE	1 h-00Z1 1B04 1
9 57AA 42410 PAPER REGULATING PLATE REAR 紙飯板 C 1 10 56AA 42610 OPEN SHUTSTOPPER 開催ストッパ C 1 11 56AA 42610 OPEN REUTING PLATE KMEX トッパ D 1 12 56AA 42610 PAPER FED TRAY STOPPER SHAFT KMEX トッパ D 1 13 56AA 42610 PAPER FED TRAY STOPPER SHAFT KMEX トッパ D 1 13 56AA 42610 PAPER FED TRAY STOPPER SHAFT KMEX トッパ D D 1 14 56AA 4280 PLA PLATE KHEX Ly 74 D D 1 15 56AA 4280 PLATE KHEX Ly 74 L C 1 15 56AO 705.2 PAPER LIFT UP GEAR A12T KHEX Ly 74 L C 1 16 56AO 4280 Stop 776.2 PAPER LIFT UP GEAR A12T KHEX Ly 74 C 1 17 56AA 4280 PHON C T 774 % % 74 % % C 1 20	i-00Z2 4308 1
10 50A.4 2810 OPEN SHUTSTOPPER INDEX > y7 C 1 11 50A.4 2810 OPER FLED TRAY STOPPER SHAFT Kills 2 / y7 D 1 12 50A.4 2111 PAPER LIFTING PLATE Kills 2 / y7 K D 1 13 50A.4 2310 RACK REAR -y7 K C 1 14 50A.4 231 RACK REAR -y7 K C 1 16 50A.723 RACK REAR -y7 K C 1 16 50A.4237 RACK REAR -y7 K C 1 17 50A.42370 PAPER LIFT UP GEAR A 12T Kill 1 / Kill 4 / LI 4 / Kill A / LI 2 / T B 1 18 50A.42370 STZE DETECTING VOLUME +7.428/07.97.97.9 C 1 19 50A.42370 PAPER UFECTING CULATOR A K 58/07.97.97.97.9 C 1 21 076A.123.51 MAGNET CATCH -7.47.97.97.97.9 C 1 22 5400.423.50 DOUBLE FEED PREVE	1
11 58AA 4226 0 PAPER FEED TRAY STOPPER SHAFT 総価工人シン協 D 1 12 58AA 4226 0 PAPER LETING PLATE 総価工人シン協 D 1 13 58AA 4235 0 RACK REAR フック 集 C 1 14 58AA 1740 PNA ビンA C 1 15 5400 7705 2 PAPER LETIO GERA 12T 株台工行電車 A 12 T C 1 16 58A0 4238 0 PAPER LETIO GERA 12T 株台工行電車 A 12 T C 1 16 58A0 4238 0 PAPER LETION GERA 12T 株台工行電車 A 12 T C 1 17 58A4 4237 0 PAPER UETING VOLME サイズ電数 A 12 T C 1 18 57A4 780 MANALAL FEED LABEL 1 甲基 12 T 小 1 E C 1 19 58A4 4237 0 PAPER DETECTING VOLUME サイズ電力 T C 1 C 1 21 076A 1237 0 MAINET CAYCH アダネットー C 1 1 22 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 型送防止	1
12 BRAA 42111 PAPER LIFTING PLATE BRA 42111 D 1 13 SRAA 42101 PAPER LIFTING PLATE D'Y Z C 1 14 SRAA 4230 PLAK REAR D'Y Z C 1 15 SRAA 4230 PLAK REAR D'Y Z C 1 16 SRAA 4230 PLAK D'Y Z K#b L'f # A 1 2 T B 1 16 SRAA 4230 PLINA D'Y Z K#b L'f # A 1 2 T B 1 17 SRAA 4230 PLINTU GEAR A 12T K#b L'f # A 1 2 T C 1 17 SRAA 4230 PLINTU GEAR A 12T K#b L'f # A 1 2 T C 1 18 SRAA 4230 PLINTUR GEAR A 12T K#b L'f # A 1 2 T C 1 18 SRAA 4230 PLINTUR GEAR A 12T FAB 57% 1 C 1 19 SRAA 4230 PLAK ACTURRA FAE 57% 1 RAB 22 C 1 20 ORA 8510 PHOTO SENSOR 74 × 1 + 2 × 7 C 1 2 21 ORA 8510 PHOTO SENSOR 74 × 1 + 2 × 7 C 1 22 SHO 42350 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE X K L X + 2 × 7 C 1 22 SHO	1
13 SBAA 4235 0 PACK REAR フック 単 14 SBAA 4740 PINA ピンA C 1 15 S400 7705 2 PAPER LIFT UP GEAR A 12T KHE LIFUIt at A 12T C 1 15 S400 7705 2 DETECTING VOLUME サイズ検護市リューム C 1 17 S6AA 4238 0 PINION C 1 B 1 18 S7AA 7870 PINION C 1 C 1 18 S6AA 4238 0 PINION FC TACK TRAK C 1 19 S6AA 4237 0 PAPER DETECTING VOLUME ビーナン C 1 C 1 19 S6AA 4237 0 PAPER DETECTING ACTURD A K& 477 7 7 x 5 A C 1 C 1 19 S6AA 4235 0 PAPER DETECTING ACTURD A K& 477 7 7 x 5 A C 1 C 1 22 S400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 東波市止着 C 1 C 1 12 Interestreate	1
14 58AA 1746 0 PINA C 1 15 580A 7050 2 PAPER LIFT UP GEARA 12T 助臣上伊羅 A 12 T B 1 16 58AA 8860 0 SIZE DETECTING VOLUME サイズ酸サポリューム C 1 17 58AA 4230 0 PINON ビニナン C 1 18 57AA 9788 0 MANUAL FEED LABEL 1 サイズ酸サポリューム C 1 19 58AA 4230 0 PINON ビニナン C 1 19 58AA 4230 0 PINON C 1 C 1 19 58AA 4230 0 PINON ビニナン C 1 C 1 19 58AA 4230 0 PINON ビニナン FEL 57.0.1 C 1 C 1 10 08AA 851 0 PHOTO SENOR フォトセンサー A C 1 C 1 22 540 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 並送防止坂 C 1 C 1 12 540 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 並送防止坂 C 1 C 1 12 540 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE C 1 C 1 12 540 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION FLATE	1
15 5400 700 2 PAPER LIFT UP GEAR A 12T 損損 上げ置車 A 1 2 T 1 15 56A6 8500 512 DETECTING VOLUME サイズ類がリューム C 1 17 56A6 4238 0 PINION C 1 18 57A6 978 0 MNUAL, FEED LABEL 1 ビーナッ C 1 19 56A6 4237 0 PAPER DETECTING ACTUATOR A 損損 知道 クチェタ A C 1 19 58A6 4237 0 PAPER DETECTING ACTUATOR A 損損 知道 クチェタ A C 1 10 08A6 851 0 PAPER DETECTING ACTUATOR A 損損 知道 クチェタ A C 1 10 08A6 851 0 PAPER DETECTING ACTUATOR A 損損 知道 クチェタ A C 1 21 076A 1235 1 MAGNET CATCH マグネットキャッチ C 1 22 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 型送防止板 C 1 23 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 型送防止板 C 1 24 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 型送防止板 C 1 25 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE ロー C 1 26 1 1 1 1 1 1 27 1 1 1 <td< td=""><td>1</td></td<>	1
16 56AA 85900 SIZE DETECTING VOLUME サイズ除類ポリューム C 1 17 56AA 4280 PINON ビーオン C 1 18 57AA 97880 MANUAL FEED LABEL 1 日本 C 1 19 56AA 4270 PAPER DETECTING ACTUATOR A 日本 C 1 19 56AA 4270 PAPER DETECTING ACTUATOR A 日本 C 1 19 56AA 4270 PAPER DETECTING ACTUATOR A 日本 日本 C 1 20 08AA 85510 PHOTO SENSOR フォトセンサー C C 1 21 076A 12351 MASNET CATCH マグネットキャッチ C C 1 22 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 単成防止版 C 1	1
17 56AA 4238 0 PINON C 1 18 57AA 978 0 MANUAL FEEL LABEL 1 非主しライル 1 C 1 19 56AA 4237 0 PAPER DETECTING ACTUATOR A 指統ロアクチェタ A C 1 10 10404 551 0 PHOTO SENSOR 7+トセンサー B 2 21 07BA 1235 1 MAONET CATCH マグネットキャッチ C 1 22 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE マグネットキャッチ C 1 21 07BA 1235 1 MAONET CATCH マグネットキャッチ C 1 22 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 東送防止板 C 1 22 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 東送防止板 C 1 23 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 東送防止板 C 1 24 1 1 1 1 1 1 25 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 東送防止板 C 1 25 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 東送防止板 C 1 26 1 1 1 1 1 1 27 1 1 1 1 1 1 <	1
18 19 57A 9786 0 19 MANUAL FEED LABEL 1 ##2.57.0.1 ##2.57.0.1 ##2.57.0.1 第 C 1 19 56A 85510 PHOTO SENSOR PAPER DETECTING ACTUATOR A ##2.57.0.1 77.7.1.54.9.7.7.4 ##2.57.0.1 ##2.57.0.1 77.7.1.54.9.7.7.4 C 1 21 07BA 12351 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE アクネットキャッチ ##2.54.9.7.5 C 1 22 500 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE アクネットキャッチ ##2.54.0.0 C 1 21 07BA 12351 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE アクネットキャッチ ##2.54.0.0 C 1 22 500 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE アクネットキャッチ ##2.54.0.00 C 1 22 500 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE アクネットキャッチ ##2.54.0.00 C 1 23 10 1000000000000000000000000000000000000	1
19 SGAA 4237 0 PAPER DETECTIVICACTUATOR A 紙袋板 アクテェタ A C 1 20 BGAA 4237 0 PAPER DETECTIVICACTUATOR A 紙袋板 アクテェタ A B 1 20 BGAA 4237 0 PAPER DETECTIVICACTUATOR A 紙袋板 アクテェタ A B 1 21 07BA 1235 1 MAGNET CATCH アクチェシチー B C 1 22 9400 4235 0 MOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE マグネットキャッチ C 1 22 9400 4235 0 MOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE マグネットキャッチ C 1 23 9400 4235 0 MOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE マグネットキャッチ C 1 24 Image: State Stat	1
20 DBAA 85510 PHOTO SENSOR フォトセンチー B 2 21 UTBA 12551 MGNET CATCH フォトセンチー C 1 22 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 単法的よ社 第 C 1 22 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 単法的よ社 第 C 1 21 UTBA 12551 MGNET CATCH マネットキャッチ E C 1 22 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 単法的よ社 第 C 1 C 1 23 UTBA 12551 MGNET CATCH T T C 1 24 UTBA 12551 MGNET CATCH T T C 1 24 UTBA 12551 MGNET CATCH T T T T 25 MGNET CATCH T T T T T 25 MGNET CATCH T T T T T 26 MGNET CATCH T T T T	1
21 078A 1235 1 MAGNET CATCH マグネットキャッチ C 1 22 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 単述防止板 C 1	2
22 5400 4235 0 DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION PLATE 並防止板 C 1 I	1
	1
Image: Section of the section of th	
Image: selection of the se	
Image: Section of the section of th	
Image: Section of the section of th	
Image: Section of the section of th	
Image: state in the state	
Image: Section of the section of th	
Image: Sector sector	
Image: Section of the sec	
Image: state in the state	
Image: Section of the section of th	
	I

500 SHEET TRAY

Page. 48

Key	Part No.	Description		Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 8003.0	CASSETTE DRIVING MOTOR	- カヤット駆動モータ		B	1	a-0076 7020 6
2	57AA 4125 0	SLIDE HANDLE	スライド 押手		C C	1	b-00Z2 5310 1
3	5644 /135 0		太少11111 给知其板		Č	1	c-00Z1 9306 1
4	574441360	PROTECTION COVER			Č	2	d-00Z6 7040 6
5	5644 4146 0		トレイスライド畑さえ		Č	2	e-00Z2 5308 1
6	5644 4120 0		トレイガイドカラーを		0 C	3	a-0071 9310 1
7	56AA 4120 0				C	3	h-00Z1 9320 1
0	50AA 4119 0		トレイガイトガノー 石 検知ギマー25 エ		C	4	i-00Z1 9406 1
0	50AA 4134 U	DETECTING GEAR 331				1	j-00Z1 9304 1
9	56AA 4161 0		リイス快和小リューム			1	
10	56AA 4161 U				U L	1	
11	56AA 4149 1				D	1	
12	57AA 4107 1	TRAY SLIDE SIDE PLATE LEFT	トレイスフィト側板左		C	1	
13	55VA 7915 0	CASSETTE PINION 141			C	1	
14	56AA 4116 0	TRAY SLIDE PART			С	1	
15	56AA 4133 0	ADJUSTING PLATE LOWER	調整板下		D	1	
16	08AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサー		В	2	
17	56AA 4166 0	PROTECTION SHEET	センサ保護シート		С	1	
18	56AA 4237 0	PAPER DETECTING ACTUATOR A	紙検知アクチェタ Α		С	2	
19	56AA 4160 0	TRAY SLIDE COVER MIDDLE	トレイスライドカバー 中		С	2	
20	56AA 4168 0	PROTECTION SHEET 2	センサ保護シート 2		С	1	ļ
21	56AA 1706 0	SWITCH FIXED SPRING	スイッチ固定バネ		С	1	
22	56AA 4123 0	TRAY SLIDE COVER	トレイスライドカバー		С	1	
23	57AA 1226 0	TRAY COVER HANDLE	トレイカバー把手		С	1	
24	57AA 1225 0	CASSETTE COVER	カセットカバー		С	1	
25	57AA 9790 0	PAPER FEED INDICATING SHEET	給紙表示シート		С	1	
26	57AA 9796 0	PAPER SUPPLY LABEL	紙補給ラベル		С	1	
27	57AA 9787 0	PAPER GUIDE LABEL	紙案内ラベル		С	1	
				1		İ	1
							1
							4



500 SHEET TRAY

Page. 49

Key	Part No.	De	scription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	55VA 4093 0	DOUBLE FEED PREVENTIVE PLATE	重送防止板		С	1	a-00Z2 5308 1
2	57AA 4142 0	PULLEY GUIDE PART	プーリガイド部材		Ċ	1	b-00Z6 7060 6
3	55\/A 4061.0				Č	4	c-00Z6 7040 6
1	5744 1701 0	WIRE PULLEY			C	4	d-00Z1 8406 1
5	5644 /112 0				C	2	e-00Z1 9306 1
6	5644 4112 0				0 C	2	1-0022 5310 1 a-0076 7030 6
7	5644 419 0				Č	1	h-00Z5 1030 1
<i>'</i>	50AA -410 U		私升陸地の祖			1	
0	50AA 4144 U		トレイチロリミック		В	1	
9	50AA 4107 1					1	
10	57AA 9060 0	PAPER FEED WIRING 1			D	1	
11	56AA 1731 0				C	1	
12	56AA 4169 0	SHAFT GUIDE COVER	=====================================		D	1	
13	56AA 4145 0	EARTH SPRING	アースパネ		С	1	
14	56AA 4138 0	PAPER GUIDE PART	紙案内部材	A	D	2	
15	56AA 4164 0	SCREW PLATE	ネジ板	A	D	1	
16	56AA 4165 0	PROTECTION COVER	センサ保護カバー		С	1	
17	56AA 1030 0	SLIDE RAIL A	スライドレール A		D	2	
18	57AA 4163 0	PULLEY GUIDE PART REAR	プーリガイド部材 奥		С	1	
19	08AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサー		В	1	
20	26NA 4544 0	REGISTRATION UNIT FIXED SCREW	レジスト固定ネジ		С	1	
21	57AA -410 1	500 SHEET TRAY	500枚 トレイ		S	1	
22	57AA 4173 0	TRAY POSITIONING SPRING LOWER	トレイ位置決めバネー下		Ċ	1	
23	5644 /139 0				Ċ	1	
24	5644 /17/ 0		トレイロックピン			2	
25	5644 4176 0				D	2	
20	30AA 4170 U	TRAT LOCKING ROLLER	FD109910		D	2	
						L	1


1000 SHEET TRAY

Key	Part No.	Descr	iption	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA 5842 0	PULLEY GUIDE PART	プーリガイド部材		D	1	a-00Z6 7060 6
2	56AA 4116 0	TRAY SLIDE PART	トレイスライド部材		С	1	b-00Z6 7040 6
3	56QA 5829 0	BOTTOM PLATE POSITIONING PAD	底板位置決めパッド		D	6	C-0021 9304 1 d-0071 9306 1
4	56AA 4161 0	TRAY SLIDE PART REAR	トレイスライド部材 奥		С	1	e-00Z1 9310 1
5	56QA 5811 0	LCT UP DOWN WIRE RIGHT FRONT	LCT 昇降ワイヤー 右前		С	2	f-00Z1 8304 1
6	56QA 5812 0	LCT UP DOWN WIRE RIGHT REAR	LCT 昇降ワイヤー 右後		С	2	
7	56AA 1731 0	PIN	ピン		С	1	
8	08AA 7601 0	DRUM DRIVING SHAFT HOLDER	ドラム駆動軸受		С	4	
9	57AA 1701 0	WIRE PULLEY	ワイヤープーリ		С	4	
10	55VA 4061 0	WIRE HOLDER A	ワイヤー押え A		С	4	
11	56QA 5844 0	GEAR PROTECTION COVER	キア保護カバー		D	1	
12	56AA 7799 0	LCT REGULATING GEAR 24T			С	1	
13	55VA 4093 0	DOUBLE FEED PREVENTIVE PLATE	重送防止板		С	1	
14	56AE -430 0	LCT UP DOWN SHAFT ASSY			С	1	
15	56AA 4139 0	PULLEY			C	2	
16	56AE 4341 0	LCT REGULATING PLATE			D	1	
17	57AA -598 0	PULLEY GUIDE PART REAR ASSY	フーリカイト部材 奥部組		D	1	
							1
							1



1000 SHEET TRAY Page. 51 Standard parts QTY Key Part No. Description Destinations Class a-00Z1 9304 1 b-00Z1 9306 1 c-00Z1 8304 1 d-00Z6 7040 6 紙ガイド軸 右 1 56QA 5815 0 PAPER GUIDE SHAFT RIGHT D 1 2 26NA 4544 0 REGISTRATION UNIT FIXED SCREW レジスト固定ネジ С 2 3 56AA 4169 0 SHAFT GUIDE COVER 軸案内カバー D 1 2 57AA 5845 0 PROTECTION COVER 保護カバー С 4 57AA 5848 0 EXTERNAL PROTECTION PART RIGH 外装保護部材 右 5 D 1 6 08AA 8551 0 PHOTO SENSOR フォトセンサー В 1 7 56AA 4165 0 PROTECTION COVER センサ保護カバー С 1 5400 4720 0 PAPER REGULATING CLAW 紙規制爪 С 2 8 9 57AA 9781 0 PAPER SUPPLY LABEL 2 紙補給ラベル 2 С 1 10 55VA 4792 0 STOPPER RUBBER ストッパーゴム С 2

HORIZONTAL CONVEYANCE



HORIZONTAL CONVEYANCE

Page. 52

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	08AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサー		В	2	a-00Z1 9304 1
2	56QA 5717 0	PRESSURE SPRING	センサ オウアツ ハ゛ネ		Ċ	2	b-00Z2 5308 1
3	560A 5724 0	PAPER DETECTION ACTUATOR	新権和アクチェク		Ĉ	2	c-00Z6 7060 6
4	560A 5721 0	SWING SPRING REAR	私(スル) ノブエア センサビ動バネ 歯		Ċ	1	d-00Z6 7030 6
5	5644 1176 0		レンク語動へれて			2	e-00Z6 /040 6
6	560A 1130 0					2	1-0021 9306 1 a-0071 9306 1
7	50QA 1130 0				D	2	g-002 1 3000 1
<i>'</i>	50QA 5741 0				D	2	
8	56QA 5727 0				D	1	
9	25AA 7553 0	SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER	消り軸文 エーーー		C	8	
10	26NA 4256 0	BY PASS FEED DRIVEN ROLLER	手走し従動ローフ		C	4	
11	56QA 5711 0	SUPPORT BLOCK	文点フロック		D	2	
12	56QA 5737 0	JAM PROCESSING HANDLE	ジャム処理把手		С	1	
13	56QA 5706 0	CONVEYANCE DRIVE ROLLER LEFT	搬送駆動ローラ 左		С	1	
14	56QA 5738 0	PAPER FEED CONVEYANCE HANDLE	給紙搬送把手		С	1	
15	26NA 4082 0	PAPER FEED SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER	給紙滑り軸受		С	4	
16	56QA 5720 0	CONVEYANCE GUIDE SPRING REAR	搬送案内バネー奥		С	1	
17	56QA 5729 0	EARTH PLATE LOWER	アース板下		D	1	
18	56QA 5708 0	CONVEYANCE PRESSING SPRING RIGHT	搬送押圧バネー右		С	1	
19	12QV 4065 0	SPACER	スペーサー		D	2	
20	56AA 1709 0	PRESSURE SPRING	押圧バネ		С	2	
21	55VA 1554 1	CLEANER COUPLING PART	クリーナーカップリング部材		C	2	
22	56AA 4174 0	TRAY LOCKING PIN	トレイロックピン		D	1	
23	560A 5705 0	CONVEYANCE DRIVE ROLLER RIGHT	「おけん」		Č	1	
24	5644 1748 0	PIN B			C	2	
25	5600 4443 0		し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し し		C C	1	
20	560A 5729 0				00	1	
20	50QA 5726 0				D	1	
27	56QA 5731 0	EARTH PLATE REAR	アース板奥		D	1	
 							1
I	1						1



1500 SHEET TRAY

Key	Part No.	Desci	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA 5842 0	PULLEY GUIDE PART	. プーリガイド部材		D	1	a-00Z6 7060 6
2	56AA 4116 0	TRAY SLIDE PART	トレイスライド部材		С	1	b-00Z6 7040 6
3	56QA 5829 0	BOTTOM PLATE POSITIONING PAD	底板位置決めパッド		D	6	c-00Z1 9304 1
4	56AA 4161 0	TRAY SLIDE PART REAR	トレイスライド部材 奥		С	1	d-00Z1 9306 1
5	56QA 5911 0	LCT UP DOWN WIRE LEFT FRONT	LCT 昇降ワイヤー 左前		Ċ	2	f-00Z1 9310 1
6	56QA 5912 0	LCT UP DOWN WIRE LEFT REAR	LCT 昇降ワイヤー 左後		С	2	
7	56AA 1731 0	PIN	ピン		С	1	
8	08AA 7601 0	DRUM DRIVING SHAFT HOLDER	ドラム駆動軸受		С	4	
9	57AA 1701 0	WIRE PULLEY	ワイヤープーリ		С	4	
10	55VA 4061 0	WIRE HOLDER A	ワイヤー押え A		С	4	
11	56QA 5844 0	GEAR PROTECTION COVER	ギア保護カバー		D	1	
12	57AA 9781 0	PAPER SUPPLY LABEL 2	紙補給ラベル 2		С	1	
13	55VA 4093 0	DOUBLE FEED PREVENTIVE PLATE	重送防止板		С	1	
14	56AE -430 0	LCT UP DOWN SHAFT ASSY	LCT 昇降軸部組		С	1	
15	56AA 4139 0	PULLEY	プーリ		С	2	
16	56AE 4341 0	LCT REGULATING PLATE	LCT 規制板		D	1	
17	56AA 7799 0	LCT REGULATING GEAR 24T	LCT 規制歯車 24 T		С	1	
18	57AA -598 0	PULLEY GUIDE PART REAR ASSY	プーリガイド部材 奥部組		D	1	
							4
							-
	1						1



1500 SHEET TRAY

Kov	Part No	Doso	rintion	Destinations	Class	ΟΤΧ	Standard parts
Ney				Destinations	Class		
1	26NA -596 U	PAPER GUIDE SHAFT LEFT ASSY DECISTRATION UNIT EIVED SODEW	ベルコト 翔 左前祖 レジスト 国史 さジ			1	a-0021 9304 1 b-0071 9306 1
2	20NA 4044 0		レンスト回足イン			2	c-00Z1 8304 1
3	50AA 4109 U		判朱 1 / /				d-00Z6 7040 6
4	5744 5045 U					2 1	
6	0844 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR			B	1	1
7	5644 4165 0	PROTECTION COVER	レンサー		C	1	
8	55\/A 4792 0		マトッパーゴム		Č	2	
q	5400 4720 0	PAPER REGULATING CLAW			Ċ	2	
J	0400 4720 0				U	2	
							_
							1
							4
					l		4
							1



							uge: 00
Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 5106 0	ADU PAPER EXIT PLATE RIGHT	ADU 排紙板 右		D	1	a-00Z1 9304 1
2	56AA 5052 0	SLIDE RAIL D	スライドレール D		D	1	b-00Z1 9308 1
3	56AA 5143 0	EXIT OPEN SHUT SPRING FRONT	出口開閉バネー前		С	1	C-0020 7000 0 d 0071 0306 1
4	56AA 5053 0	ADU MOUNTING COLLAR	ADU 取り付けカラー		С	2	e-00Z1 9312 1
5	56AA 5102 0	ADU ENTRANCE PLATE LEFT	ADU 進入板 左		D	1	f-00Z1 8406 3
6	56AA 5139 0	ENTRANCE OPEN SHUT SPRING FRONT	入り口開閉バネ 前		С	1	g-00Z2 5308 1
7	08AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサー		В	1	1-00Z1 8406 1
8	129X 4836 0	GUIDE SHAFT HOLDER B	ガイド軸受 B		С	1	1-0020 1030 1
9	56AA 5021 0	SHAFT REGULATING PLATE	軸規制板		D	1	
10	57AA 5284 0	PROTECTION COVER RIGHT	保護カバー 右		С	1	
11	57AA 5184 0	STOPPER CUSHION A	ストッパクッション A		С	1	
12	56AA 5051 0	SLIDE RAIL C	スライドレール C		D	1	
13	56AA 5231 1	BOTTOM PLATE CLICK PLATE LEFT	底板クリック板 左		D	1	
14	56AA 5232 0	HOLDING PLATE	押え板		D	1	
15	56AA 5041 0	EARTH SPRING 1	アースバネ 1		D	1	
16	57AA 9743 0	JAM RELEASE LABEL C	ジャム解除ラベル C		D	1	
17	56AA 5042 0	EARTH SPRING 2	アースバネ 2		D	1	
18	56QA 9799 0	JAM PROCESSING LABEL	ジャム処理ラベル		D	1	
19	57AA 5086 0	CAM REGULATING PART	カム規制部材	A	С	1	
20	57AA 5088 0	CAM REGULATING SPRING	カム規制バネ	A	С	1	



					1	-	
Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 5155 0	ADU DRIVEN ROLLER	ADU 従動コロ		С	3	a-00Z1 9304 1
2	56GA 7601 0	SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER 2	滑り軸受 2		С	6	b-00Z6 7040 6
3	56AA 5016 0	ADU LIFTING BELT LEFT 520L	ADU 持ち上げベルト 左 520 L		С	1	c-00Z6 7030 6
4	56AA 5104 0	ADU ENTRANCE PLATE LOWER	ADU 進入板 下		D	1	0-00Z1 0400 1 0-00Z1 0306 1
5	56AA 5145 1	ENTRANCE PRESSING SPRING	入り口押圧バネ		С	2	f-0071 9308 1
6	56QA 5128 0	PRESSING SPRING 4	センサ押圧バネ 4		C	1	1 0021 0000 1
7	56AA 4245 0	PREVENTING RUBBER	防止ゴム		C	1	
8	56QA 5126 0	PAPER EXIT REVERSE ACTUATOR	排紙逆転アクチェタ		Ċ	1	
9	08AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトヤンサー		B	1	
10	56AA 5038 1		トンジ持ち上げブロック		C.	1	
11	5644 5014 0	ADU STOPPER CUSHON 2	ムロロ 空き当てクッション 2		C C	2	
12	5644 -058 0	WIRING COVER ASSY	」 「京都会」 「「市場」 「一部組		D	1	
13	5644 5024 0				D	2	
14	1207 4835 0				C	1	
14	129A 4033 U				C I	1	
10	57AA -904 0		ADO 絶到 季 校 印 祖		1	1	
10	57AA 5090 0	BOARD PROTECTION PART	奉 仮 休 護 前 材		C D	1	
17	57AF 9774 0				D	1	
18	57AA 5032 0	WIRING GUIDE PLATE L	R線条内板 L		D	1	
-							
I							
							1
I							



ADU Page. 57 Key Part No. Description Destinations Class QTY Standard parts 1 14GE 4547 0 ROTARY KNOB 回転ノブ D 1 a-00Z1 9304 1 b-00Z1 9306 1 2 57AA 9728 0 JAM RELEASE LABEL 9 ジャム解除ラベル 9 С 1 c-00Z6 7060 6 3 56QA 7507 0 **DRIVING SHAFT HOLDER 8** 駆動軸受 8 С 2 d-00Z6 7040 6 08AA 7601 0 DRUM DRIVING SHAFT HOLDER ドラム駆動軸受 С 4 1 e-00Z1 8304 1 5 57AA 7659 0 ADU CONVEYANCE PULLEY 3 20T ADU搬送プーリ 3 20 T С 2 f-00Z1 8306 1 57AA 7751 0 ADU CONVEYANCE BELT 3 322L ADU搬送ベルト 3 322L С 6 1 С 2 7 57AA 5183 0 **BELT HOLDING COLLAR 3** ベルト押さえカラー 3 給紙滑り軸受 С 8 26NA 4082 0 PAPER FEED SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER 3 9 57AA 5288 0 SHAFT HOLDER HOLDING PART 軸受押さえ部材 С 1 12QV 4066 0 軸位置決め部材 С 10 SHAFT POSITIONING PART 1 搬送駆動クラッチ С 11 57AA 8203 0 CONVEYANCE DRIVE CLUTCH 1 12 57AA 5113 0 ADU REVERSE ROLLER LEFT ADU 逆転ローラ 左 С 1 13 56AA 1755 0 PIN A ピン A С 3 ADU CONVEYANCE ROLLER 1 57AA 5115 0 ADU 搬送ローラ 1 С 14 1 15 57AA 5116 0 ADU CONVEYANCE ROLLER 2 ADU 搬送ローラ 2 С 1 16 08AA 8551 0 PHOTO SENSOR フォトセンサー В 3 56AA 4255 0 MOUNTING PART センサ取り付け部材 С 17 3 С 18 56AA 4245 0 PREVENTING RUBBER 防止ゴム 3 19 56AA 5130 1 ADU PAPER EXIT ACTUATOR ADU 排紙アクチェタ С 2 20 56AA 4257 0 PAPER CONVEYING SPRING 1 紙搬送バネ 1 С 3 21 WIRING PROTECTION PART L 束線保護部材 L 57AA 5279 0 D 1 D 22 56AA 5101 0 ADU GUIDE PLATE UPPER ADUガイド板 上 1 23 56AA 5131 1 ADU PAPER EXIT ACTUATOR 2 ADU 排紙アクチェタ 2 С 1 24 56AA 7748 0 PAPER EXIT REVERSING GEAR 1 19T 排紙逆転歯車 1 19 T С 1



ADU Page. 58 Part No. Key Description Destinations Class QTY Standard parts 26NA 4082 0 PAPER FEED SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER 給紙滑り軸受 С 2 a-00Z6 7060 6 b-00Z6 7040 6 2 57AA 7742 0 ADU DRIVE GEAR D 23/36T ADU 駆動歯車 D 23/36 T {bizhub 750} С 1 c-00Z6 7080 6 2 57BA 7742 0 ADU DRIVE GEAR D 29/36T ADU 駆動歯車 D 29/36 T {bizhub 600} С 1 d-00Z1 9304 1 3 57AA 7741 0 ADU DRIVE GEAR C 23/35T ADU 駆動歯車 C 23/35 T {bizhub 750} С 1 3 57BA 7741 0 ADU DRIVE GEAR C 23/32T ADU 駆動歯車 C 23/32 T {bizhub 600} С 1 CONVEYANCE DRIVING PULLEY 3 23T 22T 4 56QA 7658 0 搬送駆動プーリ 3 23 T 22 T С 1 С 5 BELT HOLDING COLLAR 2 56AA 5181 0 ベルト押さえカラー 搬送駆動ベルト 2 315 L 6 56AA 7757 0 CONVEYANCE DRIVING BELT 2 315L С 1 7 56QA 7655 0 **CONVEYANCE DRIVING PULLEY 2 23T** 搬送駆動プーリ 2 23 T С 1 8 56AA 7756 0 CONVEYANCE DRIVING BELT 1 225L 搬送駆動ベルト 1 225 L С 1 9 56QA 7654 0 CONVEYANCE DRIVING PULLEY 1 23T 29T 搬送駆動プーリ 1 23T 29T С 1 10 57AA 8203 0 CONVEYANCE DRIVE CLUTCH 搬送駆動クラッチ С 1 11 12QV 4066 0 SHAFT POSITIONING PART 軸位置決め部材 С 1 08AA 7601 0 DRUM DRIVING SHAFT HOLDER ドラム駆動軸受 С 12 2 13 56AA 7746 0 **REGISTRATION DRIVING GEAR 2 27T** レジスト駆動歯車 2 27 T С 2 14 55GA 7551 0 REGISTRATION SHAFT HOLDER LOWER レジスト軸受 下 В 2 ADU レジストバネ С 15 56AA 5150 0 ADU REGISTRATION SPRING 2 55GA 7552 0 REGISTRATION SHAFT HOLDER UPPER レジスト軸受 上 в 2 16 17 56AA 7747 0 ADU CONVEYING GEAR 4 34T ADU 搬送歯車 4 34 T С 1 18 57AA 5117 0 ADU CONVEYANCE ROLLER 3 ADU 搬送ローラ 3 С 1 С 19 57AA 5118 0 ADU CONVEYANCE ROLLER 4 ADU 搬送ローラ 4 1 С 20 56AA 5111 0 ADU REGISTRATION ROLLER UPPER ADU レジストローラ 上 1 56QA 5112 0 ADU REGISTRATION ROLLER LOWER ADU レジストローラ 下 21 С 1 22 56AA 1755 0 PIN A ピン A С 2 PIN B ピン Β 23 56AA 1748 0 С 1 24 55VA 1554 1 CLEANER COUPLING PART クリーナーカップリング部材 С 1 56AA 7745 0 25 ADU CONVEYING GEAR 3 34T ADU 搬送歯車 3 34 T С 1 26 56AA 7755 0 ADU CONVEYING BELT 1 210L ADU 搬送ベルト 1 210 L С 1 27 С 56AA 7659 0 ADU CONVEYING PULLEY 1 32T ADU搬送プーリ 1 32 T 1 56AA 7660 0 28 ADU CONVEYING PULLEY 2 32T ADU搬送プーリ 2 32 T С 1 29 56AA 1709 0 PRESSURE SPRING 押圧バネ С 1 スペーサー 30 12QV 4065 0 SPACER D 4 5400 7605 0 BALL BEARING 駆動軸受 В 31 10 32 56QA 5182 0 **BELT HOLDING COLLAR 2** ベルト押えカラー 2 С 4 33 56QA 7505 0 PAPER FEED SLIDE BEARING 給紙滑り軸受 С 4 34 57AA 5030 0 BOARD PROTECTION COVER 基板保護カバー С 1 13QA 4061 0 GEAR SPACER 35 ギアスペーサー С 2



Kev	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 1755 0	PIN A	ピン A		С	2	a-00Z2 5310 1
2	56AA 7743 1	ADU REVERSING GEAR 1 19T	ADU 逆転歯車 1 19 T		С	1	b-00Z6 7040 6
3	56AA -812 0	ADU DRIVING ASSY	ADU 駆動部組		В	1	c-00Z1 9304 1
4	56AA 5246 0	OPEN SHUT SPRING	開閉バネ		С	1	0-00Z2 5308 1 e-00Z1 9306 1
5	56AA 4255 0	MOUNTING PART	センサ取り付け部材		C	1	f-00Z1 9318 1
6	57AA 5114 0	ADU REVERSE ROLLER RIGHT	ADU 逆転ローラ 右		С	1	
7	56AA 7505 0	CLEANER SHAFT HOLDER	クリーナー軸受		С	3	
8	56AA 5226 0	BOTTOM PLATE LOCKING SPRING	底板ロックバネ		C	1	
9	56AA 5242 0	BOTTOM PLATE LOCKING CLAW	底板ロック爪		Č	2	
10	56AA 4245 0	PREVENTING RUBBER	防止ゴム		C	1	
11	56AA 5159 0	ADU GUIDE SHEET 2	ADUガイドシート 2		D	1	
12	57AA 7744 0	ADU REVERSE GEAR 3 35T	ADU 逆転歯車 3 35 T		С	1	
13	57AA 7748 0	ADU REVERSE GEAR 4 19T	ADU 逆転歯車 4 19 T		C	1	
14	08AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサー		В	1	
15	57AA 9742 0	JAM RELEASE LABEL B	ジャム解除ラベル B		D	1	
16	56QA 5124 0	ADU REVERSING ACTUATOR	ADU 逆転アクチェタ		С	1	
17	56AA 4257 0	PAPER CONVEYING SPRING 1	紙搬送バネ 1		Č	1	
18	56AA 8055 0	FAN MOTOR 2	ファンモータ 2		B	1	
19	56AA 5248 0	FAN MOUNTING PLATE	ファン取り付け板		Ċ	1	
20	56AA 5278 0	WIRING GUIDE PART	東線ガイド部材		Ċ	2	
21	56AA 5110 2	ADU OPEN SHUT PART			C	1	
22	56AA 5107 2	ADU GUIDE PART MIDDLE			D	1	
23	56AA 1747 0	PIN B 3X12	r^{2} B 3 X 12		Č	2	
24	56AA 5243 1	BOTTOM PLATE GUIDE PLATE	底板ガイド板		č	1	
25	56AA 1736 0	WIRE ROTARY SHAFT	ワイヤー回転軸		Č	2	
26	56AA 5245 1	PULLEY MOUNTING PLATE	プーリ取り付け板		D	2	
27	25AA 5008 0	WIRE PULLEY	ワイヤープーリ		Č	2	
28	56AA 5247 0	OPEN SHUT WIRE	開閉ワイヤー		č	2	
29	56AA 5249 0	OPEN SHUT SPRING RIGHT			Č	1	
30	56AA 5229 0	BOTTOM PLATE OPEN SHUT COLLAR	底板開閉カラー		D	1	
31	56AA 5045 0	EARTH SPRING 5	アースバネ 5		D	1	
32	56AA 5238 0	LOCKING PART A	ー ロック部材 A		С	1	
					-		
-							
							-
<u> </u>							-
							1





ADU Page. 60 Standard parts Key Part No. Description Destinations Class QTY ADUガイド部材 下 1 56AA 5108 1 ADU GUIDE PART LOWER С 1 a-00Z1 9304 1 b-00Z2 5308 1 2 57AA 5144 0 ADU CONVEYANCE SPRING 4 ADU 搬送バネ 4 С 1 c-00Z6 7040 6 3 26NA 4256 0 BY PASS FEED DRIVEN ROLLER 手差し従動ローラ С 2 d-00Z6 7030 6 56AA 5154 0 ADU GUIDE PLATE LEFT ADU ガイド板 左 D 4 1 e-00Z1 9306 1 5 56AA 5247 0 OPEN SHUT WIRE 開閉ワイヤー С 2 56AA 5244 0 WIRE MOUNTING PLATE ワイヤー取り付け板 D 6 1 PHOTO SENSOR В 7 08AA 8551 0 フォトセンサー 1 ADU REVERSING SPRING ADU 逆転バネ 8 56AA 5146 0 С 1 9 56AA 5237 0 ADU SPRING ADU センサバネ С 1 56GA 7601 0 SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER 2 滑り軸受 2 С 10 18 ADU DRIVEN ROLLER ADU 従動コロ С 11 56AA 5155 0 7 12 56AA 5149 0 ADU CONVEYING SPRING 3 ADU 搬送バネ 3 С 2 13 56AA 5152 1 ADU GUIDE COVER ADU ガイドカバー С 1 56AA 5147 0 ADU CONVEYING SPRING 1 ADU 搬送バネ 1 С 14 1 15 56AA 5148 0 ADU CONVEYING SPRING 2 ADU 搬送バネ 2 С 1 16 56AA 5043 0 EARTH SPRING 3 アースバネ 3 D 1 56AA 5044 0 EARTH SPRING 4 アースバネ 4 D 17 1 56QA 5230 0 BOTTOM PLATE LIFTING BLOCK LOWER 底板持ち上げブロック 下 18 D 1 19 56AA 5048 0 COVER PART センサカバー部材 D 1 56AA 5040 0 20 SPRING STICKING SEAL バネ貼りシール D 1 21 56QA 5156 0 ADU GUIDE SHEET 3 ADUガイドシート 3 D 1



ADU Page. 61 Key Part No. Description Destinations Class QTY Standard parts 1 57AA 5109 0 PAPER EXIT OPEN CLOSE PART L 排紙開閉部材 L С 1 a-00Z6 7030 6 b-00Z1 9406 1 2 56QA 5103 0 ADU ENTRANCE PART RIGHT ADU進入部材 右 С 1 c-00Z1 9306 1 3 56AA 5138 0 PAPER EXIT OPEN SHUT SPRING 排紙開閉バネ С 1 d-00Z1 9304 1 56AA 5049 0 PAPER EXIT FULCRUM SHAFT HOLDER 排紙支点軸受 С 2 4 e-00Z7 1316 6 5 4620 7601 0 DRIVING SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER A 駆動滑り軸受 Α С 2 f-00Z7 1310 6 56AA 5070 0 LEVER LOCKING PART レバーロック部材 С q-00Z1 9410 1 6 1 h-00Z6 7040 6 С 7 56AA 5071 0 LEVER LOCKING SPRING レバーロックバネ 1 i-00Z6 7080 6 ソレノイド引張りレバー 8 56AA 5073 0 SOLENOID PULLING LEVER С 1 j-00Z4 7404 3 9 56AA -040 0 ADU CONNECTING SOLENOID ASSY ADU 連結ソレノイド部組 в 1 k-00Z6 7060 6 25AA 4750 0 10 CARRIAGE LOCK CLAW B 架台ロック爪 B С 1 m-00Z6 1080 1 排紙逆転歯車 2 19 T PAPER EXIT REVERSING GEAR 2 19T 11 56AA 7749 0 С 1 12 56AA 8011 0 PAPER EXIT DRIVING MOTOR 排紙駆動モータ в 1 13 56AA 5068 0 TRANSFER LIFTING LEVER 転写持ち上げレバー С 2 ピン A 56AA 1755 0 PIN A С 14 1 15 56AA 5094 0 HIGH VOLTAGE COVER PLATE 高圧カバー板 D 1 16 56AA 5079 1 LEVER DETECTING ACTUATOR レバー検知アクチェタ С 1 56AA 5062 1 架台位置決め部材 С 17 CARRIAGE POSITIONING PART 1 С 18 56AA 5080 0 LEVER SUPPORT SHAFT HOLDER レバー支持軸受 1 19 56AA 5025 0 ADU EARTH PLATE B ADUアース板 B D 1 20 56AA 5013 0 ADU STOPPER CUSHON 1 ADU 突き当てクッション 1 С カムストッパ部材 С 21 56AA 5063 0 CAM STOPPER PART 1 С 22 56AA 5067 0 CAM STOPPER SPRING カムストッパバネ 1 56AA -034 0 CARRIAGE PULLING SHAFT ASSY 架台引張り軸部組 D 23 1 24 56AA 5105 0 ADU PAPER EXIT PART LEFT ADU 排紙部材 左 С 1 25 56AA 1746 0 PIN A ピン A С 3 SHAFT POSITIONING PART 26 56AA 1735 0 軸位置決め部材 С 1



						-	
Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56QA -039 0	EXIT SOLENOID ASSY	排紙ソレノイド部組		С	1	a-00Z1 4406 2
2	5400 7605 0	BALL BEARING	駆動軸受		В	4	b-00Z1 9410 1
3	56QA 7739 0	REGISTRATION DRIVING GEAR 1 29T 77T	レジスト駆動歯車 1 29 T 77 T		С	1	d-00Z1 9330 1
4	56QA 5294 0	SOLENOID PULLING SPRING	ソレノイド引張りバネ		С	1	e-00Z6 7060 6
5	56QA 9777 0	CONVEYANCE INDEX LABEL	搬送指標ラベル		D	1	f-00Z1 9306 1
6	57AA 5076 0	CARRIAGE PULLING LEVER	架台引っ張りレバー		С	1	g-00Z6 7040 6
7	57AA 5281 0	ADU COVER FRONT	ADU カバー 前		С	1	n-0021 9308 1
8	56QA 7740 0	CONVEYANCE DRIVING GEAR 1 24T 67T	搬送駆動歯車 1 24 T 67 T		С	1	
9	27LA 8001 0	DC BRUSHLESS MOTOR 20	DC ブラシレスモータ 20		С	1	
10	57AA 9723 0	JAM RELEASE LABEL 4	ジャム解除ラベル 4		С	1	
11	57AA 9718 0	INSTRUCTION CAUTION LABEL REAR	取扱い注意ラベル 奥	A	С	1	
11	57AE 9718 0	INSTRUCTION CAUTION LABEL REAR	取扱い注意ラベル奥	B,G2	С	1	
11	57AF 9718 0	INSTRUCTION CAUTION LABEL REAR	取扱い注意ラベル 奥	C	С	1	
11	57AN 9718 0	INSTRUCTION CAUTION LABEL REAR	取扱い注意ラベル奥	D1,D3,E,F2,G1,I,J,K	С	1	
11	57AS 9718 0	INSTRUCTION CAUTION LABEL REAR	取扱い注意ラベル 奥	F1,H	С	1	
12	56QA 5292 0	SOLENOID PRESSING LEVER	ソレノイド押圧レバー		С	1	
13	57AA 5298 0	BOARD COOLING PAD	基板冷却パッド	A	С	1	
14	57AA 5296 0	BOARD COOLING DUCT LEFT	基板冷却ダクト 左	A	С	1	
15	56QA 8057 0	INTERNAL COOLING FAN	機内冷却ファン		С	1	
16	57AA 5085 0	WIRING SLIDE SPACER	東線スライドスペーサー	A	С	3	
17	57AE 5283 0	ADU AUX COVER RIGHT	ADU 補助カバー 右	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	С	1	
				2,H,I,J,K	-		
18	57AE 5282 0	ADU AUX COVER LEFT	ADU 補助カハー 左	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
19	57AA -067 0	WIRING MOUNTING PLATE CAULKING	束線取付板 カシメ		D	1	
							4
							4



CONVEYANCE UNIT

Page. 63

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56QA -386 0	CONVEYANCE MAIN BODY UPPER ASSY	搬送本体 上部組		D	1	a-00Z6 7060 6
2	56AA 5092 0	HIGH VOLTAGE POWERING PART 2	高圧給電部材 2		С	1	b-00Z6 0060 6
3	56AA 5093 0	HIGH VOLTAGE POWERING SHAFT	高圧給電軸		D	3	c-00Z2 5308 1
4	56AA 1746 0	PIN A	ピン A		С	4	e-00Z1 9306 1
5	56AA 9370 1	HIGH VOLTAGE LEAD WIRE A	高圧リード線 A		D	1	f-00Z1 6306 1
6	56AA 4532 0	CONVEYANCE DRIVING ROLLER	搬送駆動ローラ		С	2	g-00Z6 7040 6
7	56AA 4509 0	CONVEYANCE BELT 239L	搬送ベルト 239 L		В	2	h-00Z1 9304 1
8	56AA 7781 0	CONVEYANCE DRIVING GEAR 31T	搬送駆動歯車 31 T		С	1	
9	5400 7605 0	BALL BEARING	駆動軸受		В	2	
10	56AA 9371 1	HIGH VOLTAGE LEAD WIRE B	高圧リード線 B		D	1	
11	56QA 7506 0	DRIVING SHAFT HOLDER 6	駆動軸受 6		С	2	
12	56AA 9372 1	HIGH VOLTAGE LEAD WIRE C	高圧リード線 C		D	1	
13	56AA 4517 0	POWERING SHAFT	給電軸		D	3	
14	56AA 1707 1	ELECTRODE LIFT UP SPRING	電極持ち上げバネ		С	2	
15	56AA 4533 0	CONVEYANCE DRIVEN ROLLER	搬送従動ローラ		С	2	
16	56AA -389 1	CONVEYANCE DACT REAR ASSY	搬送ダクト 奥部組		С	1	
17	56AA 4508 2	POWERING BLOCK	給電ブロック		С	1	
18	56AA 1747 0	PIN B 3X12	ピン B 3 X 1 2		С	2	
19	56AA 4547 0	CONVEYANCE ROCKING SPRING	搬送首振りバネ		D	1	
20	56AA 4548 0	CONVEYANCE EARTH PLATE MIDDLE	搬送アース板 中		D	1	
21	57AA 4550 0	CONVEYANCE AUXILIARY LEVER	搬送補助レバー		С	1	
22	56AA 4544 0	CONVEYANCE AUXILIARY CAM	搬送補助カム		D	1	
23	56AA 4540 0	DRIVING PULLEY MIDDLE	駆動ブーリー中		D	1	
24	56AA 4541 0	CONVEYANCE AUXILIARY BELT	搬送補助ベルト		С	1	
25	56AA 4551 0	CONVEYANCE DRIVEN SHAFT HOLDER	搬送従動軸受		C	1	
26	56AA 4549 0	CONVEYANCE AUXILIARY COLLAR	搬送補助カラー		D	5	
27	56AA 4546 0	CONVEYANCE AUXILIARY SHAFT HOLDER	搬送補助軸受		D	2	
							-
							-
							-
	1	1					1

CONVEYANCE UNIT



CONVEYANCE UNIT

Key	Part No.	Desci	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56QA 8056 0 55VA 7744 0	DEVELOPING COOLING FAN CLEANING GEAR 5 46T 20T	・ 現像冷却ファン 清掃歯車 5 46 T 20 T		CB	1	a-00Z1 9335 1 b-00Z6 1040 1
3	55VA 7743 0	CLEANING GEAR 4 33T 17T	清掃歯車 4 33 T 17 T		В	1	c-00Z6 7040 6
4	55VA 7742 0	CLEANING GEAR 3 38T	清掃歯車 3 38 T		В	1	d-00Z1 8306 1
5	56AA 1770 0	SPACER B	スペーサー B		С	1	f-00Z1 1B04 1
6	56AA 1707 1	ELECTRODE LIFT UP SPRING	電極持ち上げバネ		С	2	
7	56AA 4521 0	PTL COVER	PTL カバー		С	1	
8	56AA 8307 0	PCL	PCL		В	1	
9	56AA -383 1	CLEANING MOTOR ASSY	清掃モータ部組		В	1	
10	56AA 4530 0	PROTECTION SHEET	保護シート		С	1	
11	56AA -387 0	TSL COVER ASSY	TSL カバー部組		С	1	
12	57AA -380 0	CONVEYANCE UNIT	搬送ユニット		S	1	
13	08AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR	フォトセンサー		В	2	
							-
							-
							-
							-

PAPER EXIT UNIT



P 65

PAPER EXIT UNIT

Key	Part No.	Des	cription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	0486 4448 0	NEUTRALIZING BRUSH	 除雷ブラシ		B	1	a-0076 7020 6
2	560A 4806 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE PLATE UPPER	排紙ガイド板 ト		D	1	b-00Z7 1114 6
3	56AA 4255 0		カンサ取り付け部材		C	1	c-00Z1 9304 1
4	56AA 4245 0				Č	1	d-00Z1 8304 1
5	56AA 4257 0	PAPER CONVEYING SPRING 1	新掘ゴム		C	1	e-00Z6 /030 6
6	560A 4816 0	PAPER DETECTING ACTUATOR UPPER	紙版2:11-1		C C	1	a-00Z1 8330 1
7	08AA 8551 0	PHOTO SENSOR			B	1	h-00Z6 7040 6
8	27I A 8051 0	MAIN BODY FAN MOTOR	本体ファンモータ		B	2	i-00Z1 8306 1
g	14GE 4547 0	ROTARY KNOB			D	1	j-00Z6 6030 6
10	57AA 4832 0	PAPER EXIT UPPER CUSHION	排紙 トクッション		D	1	
11	56AA 4810 0	PAPER EXIT EARTH PLATE LOWER	排紙アース板 下		C.	2	
12	56QA 4808 0	PAPER EXIT DRIVING ROLLER	排紙駆動ローラ		Č	1	
13	56AA 4809 0	PAPER EXIT DRIVING ROLLER FRONT	北紙取動ローラ 前		C.	1	
14	56AA 4803 2	PAPER EXIT ENTRANCE PLATE LEET	排紙准入板		D	1	
15	56AA 1732 0	PIN A D2X12	$H^{2} \lambda = D^{2} \lambda + 1^{2}$		C C	2	
16	5644 4804 0	PAPER EXIT ENTRANCE PLATE RIGHT			C C	1	
17	56GA 7601 0	SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER 2	予心 に 2		C C	4	
18	26NA 4256 0	BY PASS FEED DRIVEN ROLLER			C	2	
10	5744 9729 0				Č	1	
20	5644 4822 0	PAPER EXIT DRIVEN SPRING LOWER			C	1	
20	5520 1225 0				C	1	
22	5604 4831 0				Č	4	
22	5644 4814 0				C	4	
23	5604 4821 0				C	2	
25	560A 4823 1		排紙ガイド塩			1	
20	1000A 4023 1				D C	1	
20	40AA 3027 0				C	1	
21	56AA 7786 0		赤松彫動困年 エ とっ		C	1	
20	56AA 7720 0				C	1	
29	56AA 4811 0		排紙アーフ版			1	
31	5644 7719 0	PAPER EXIT DRIVING GEAR 24T			C	1	
32	5644 -812 0	ADU DRIVING ASSY			B	1	
33	5644 7785 0	PAPER EXIT INPLIT GEAR 24T			C	1	
34	56AA 4815 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE SHEET UPPER	非紙ガイドシート ト		C	4	
35	5644 4819 0	PAPER EXIT DRIVING SHEET			C C	1	
36	5644 4820 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE SHEET LOWER	排紙ガイドシート 下		C	2	
37	56AA 4826 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE SHEET 2	排紙室内シート 2		č	1	
38	5644 4825 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE SHEET 1			C C	1	
30	5604 4824 0	PAPER EXIT GUIDE PLATE LOWER	排紙ガイド板 下			1	
40	560A 4829 0	PAPER EXIT REGULATING RUBBER	排紙規制ゴム			4	
41	560A 4830 0	SLIDE SPACER	スライドスペーサー		D	4	
42	57AA 7506 0	PAPER EXIT DRIVE SHAFT HOLDER	排紙取動軸受		C C	4	
43	56AA 4444 0	SHAFT FARTH PLATE	支持アース板		č	1	
44	57AA 4827 0	PAPER EXIT FARTH PLATE 1	排紙アース板 1		C.	1	
	017014021 0				U		
 							
I							
I							
	1			1			



		_				1	<u> </u>
Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56QA 1055 0	PAPER EXIT COOLING DUCT REAR	排紙冷却ダクト 奥		D	1	a-00Z1 9306 1
2	56QA 1057 0	OZONE FILTER S	$t = \frac{1}{2} \int $		Ā	1	b-00Z1 6306 1
3	5644 8054 0	FAN MOTOR 1	$7 \tau \tau = -2$		B	1	c-00Z1 9406 1
4	560A 1045 0		まれな 全却 ダクト 山		D	1	d-00Z1 9304 1
5	56AA 1045 0		言心の クロノント 中		C	1	e-00Z2 5410 1
5	560A 9056 0				0	1	T-00ZA A000 7
7	50QA 6050 0		現象/ロロノアノ またたんし 南部知			1	
1	00AA - 1 10 U	WRITE COOLING DUCT REAR ASST	音込の市本ダクトの奥部祖		D		
8	26NA 7357 0	CONTACT FIXING SCREW A	按点回正イン A		C	1	
9	57AA -716 0	SOLENOID MOUNTING PLATE ASSY	ソレノイト取付板部組	A	C	1	
9	57AE -716 0	SOLENOID MOUNTING PLATE ASSY	ソレノイド取付板部組	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	С	1	
10	57AA 1065 0	SOLENOID CONNECTING SPRING	ソレノイド連結バネ		С	1	
11	57AA 1062 0	SOLENOID CONNECTING PART	ソレノイド連結部材	А	Ċ	1	
11	57AF 1062 0	SOLENOID CONNECTION MATERIAL	ソレノイド連結部材	B C D1 D3 E E1 E2 G1 G	Ċ	1	
				2.H.I.J.K	Ũ		
12	56QA 1047 0	WRITE COOLING SHEET MIDDLE	書込み冷却シートの中	, , , - ,	D	1	
13	57AA 1066 0	SOLENOID POSITIONING PART	ソレノイド位置決め部材	A	Č	1	
14	57AA -906 1	SYSTEM CONTROL UNIT	システム制御コニット	{bizbub 750}	1	1	
14	57RA 006 1		システム制御コニット	(bizhub 600)	i i	1	
14	57 DA -900 1		フスノム前仰ユークト		1	1	
10	57AA -901 1		回移前御ユーット また如何				
10	57AA -912 1	PARAMETER MEMORY BUARD ASSY	ハフメーダメモリー基板部組		C .	1	
17	57AA -952 0	SYSTEM CONTROL OF ASSY	システム制御 CF 部組	A		1	
17	57AE -952 0	SYSTEM CONTROL OF ASSY	システム制御 CF 部組	B,G2	I	1	
17	57AF -952 0	SYSTEM CONTROL CF ASSY	システム制御 CF 部組	C,F1	I	1	
17	57AG -952 0	SYSTEM CONTROL CF ASSY	システム制御 CF 部組 中国	J	I	1	
17	57AK -952 0	SYSTEM CONTROL CF ASSY	システム制御 CF 部組 台湾	Н	I	1	
17	57AN -952 0	SYSTEM CONTROL CF ASSY	システム制御 CF 部組	D1,D3,E,F2,G1,I,K	I	1	
18	57AA -951 0	IMAGE CONTROL BOARD CF ASSY	画像制御 C F 部組			1	
19	57AF 8872 0	FERRITE CORE 2	フエライトコア 2	C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,H,I,J,	D	1	
20	57AF 8873 0	FERRITE CORE 3	フェライトコア 3	C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,H,I,J,	D	1	
				ĸ			
				<u> </u>			-
							-
				1		<u> </u>	1



1.1.3 0.1.4.1 0.000 FUND PLATE X63Y 0.1.4.1 0.000 0.011 0.000 1 1974-742.0 0.000 FUND PLATE X53Y	OTY Standard parts
1 Deck-r42 OUTUPE FAIL REARY (CAR)	Gin Stanuaru parts
1 0xc. 742 0xcl. 742	1 a-00Z1 9406 1
1 Direct 74:0 Under Finite Finite Asy -1 -1 Direct 74:0 Under Finite Finite Asy -1 -1 -0:000 </td <td>c-00Z1 6408 1</td>	c-00Z1 6408 1
2 CTAR 720 SWITCLOWER ARTS' Image: Constraint of the sector of the s	d-00Z1 8406 5
3 SMA 7520 POWER SOURCE ASSY Car 22 / 0 / 1 mm CO 103, EF2,G1,J,K I I 4 STA-710 AC POWER SOURCE ASSY AC TRASH A A I I I 4 STA-710 AC POWER SOURCE ASSY AC TRASH A A I I I 4 STA-710 AC POWER SOURCE ASSY AC TRASH A C TRASH A I </td <td></td>	
4 SYAC : 780 AC POWER SUIRCE ASSY AC 電道時間 BF 102 I I I 4 SYAC : 780 AC POWER SUIRCE ASSY AC 電道時間 CDIDAE/2G1/J,LK I <tdi< td=""> I <</tdi<>	
4 1074 - 7100 AC POWER SOURCE ASSY A C 電話時後 CDIDX EF2.01,J,K 1 <th1< th=""> <th1< th=""> 1 <t< td=""><td></td></t<></th1<></th1<>	
4 CPAK-F100 AC POWER SOURCE ASY A C 電話M = 36 H. LOCATIONAL I <thi< th=""> I <thi< th=""> I <thi< td=""><td></td></thi<></thi<></thi<>	
6 SPAA 974 0 CORD LABLE D D T B G2 D T 7 SYAA 9483 1 DC POWER SOURCE 2 DC Q THE CONTROLUNIT J) > 5401 = y + DC Q THE CONTROLUNIT DC	
6 57AA-9020 57AA-9020 Definities controluting public source public	
7 57AR 94531 DC POWER SOURCE 2 DC \$287 2 ABF 102 H 1 1 1 7 57AF 94531 DC POWER SOURCE 2 DC \$287 2 ABF 102 H I	1
7 57AF 84531 DC POWER SOURCE 2 D C 0 28 P 2 C D D D SE F2,G1,J,JK I I I I I IIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIIII	1
IndicationIndicationIndicationIndicationIndicationImage: SectionImage: Section<	1
Image: Second second	
Image: selection of the	
Image: selection of the	
Image: series of the series	
Image: series of the series	
Image: Second second	
Image: Second second	
III	
Image: A set of the set of t	
Image: state in the state	
Image: Second second	
Image: selection of the	
II	
Image: series of the series	
\sim <td></td>	
$ \begin{bmatrix} & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & & $	
\cdot <t< td=""><td></td></t<>	
\square <td></td>	
Image: state in the state	
$ \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$	
Image: Note of the second s	
	<u> </u>
	+
	+



bizhub 600/bizhub 750

P 68
ELECTRIC PARTS

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56QA 8057 0	INTERNAL COOLING FAN	機内冷却ファン		С	2	a-00Z1 9306 1
2	56AA 8401 0	HIGH VOLTAGE POWER SOURCE	高圧電源		В	1	D-00Z1 9406 1
3	56AA 7315 0	WIRING PROTECTION PART	束線保護部材		С	1	
4	57AA 7307 0	FAN MOUNTING COVER	ファン取り付けカバー		С	1	
5	55FA 8052 0	MAIN BODY FAN MOTOR	本体ファンモータ		В	1	
6	57AA 1059 0	OZONE FILTER M	オゾンフィルターM		A	1	
7	57AA 7306 0	FAN MOUNTING DUCT	ファン取り付けダクト		D	1	
8	56AA 7327 1	CONTACT SPRING /1	セツテン ハ゛ネ /1		С	5	
9	56AA 7323 0	CONTACT SHAFT A	接点軸 A		D	5	
10	56AA 7309 0	HIGH VOLTAGE GUIDE PART LOWER	高圧ガイド部材 下		С	1	
11	57AA 7379 0	DEVELOPING SUCTION COVER	現像サクション蓋		С	1	
12	57AA -715 0	TONER FILTER ASSY	トナーフィルター部組		A	1	
13	57AA 7378 0	DEVELOPING SUCTION COVER	現像サクションカバー		С	1	
14	56AA 7328 1	CONTACT SPRING 2	接点バネ 2		С	1	
15	56AA 7321 0	CONTACT SHAFT	接点軸		D	1	
16	56QA 7308 0	HIGH VOLTAGE GUIDE PART UPPER	高圧ガイド部材 上		С	1	
17	56QA 7388 0	OZONE REGULATING PART 2	オゾン規制部材 2		D	3	
18	57AA 1009 0	DEVELOPING SUCTION DUCT	現像サクションダクト		С	1	
19	56QA 7387 0	DEVELOPING SUCTION SHEET	現像サクションシート		D	1	
20	56AA 7316 0	HIGH VOLTAGE GUIDE COVER	高圧ガイドカバー		С	1	
21	56AA 8452 0	POWER SOURCE TRANSFORMER	電源トランス	Α	C	1	
21	56AF 8452 0	POWER SOURCE TRANSFORMER	電源トランス	B F1 G2 H	Č	1	
21	56AF 8452 0	POWER SOURCE TRANSFORMER	電源トランス	C D1 D3 E E2 G1 L LK	Č	1	
22	5744 8451 1	DC POWER SOURCE 1		Δ	U U	1	
22	57AE 9451 1					1	
22	57AE 8451 1				1	1	
22	57AF 0774 0			C,D1,D3,E,F2,C1,L,K		1	
23	5/AF 9//4 0	EARTHLADELF		C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,I,J,K	D	1	
l							



```
Page. 69
```

Key	Part No.	Descri	iption	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	57AA 9022 0 57AA 9036 0 57AA 9028 0 57AA 9016 0 57AA 9079 0 57AA 9025 0 57AA 9025 0 57AA 9031 0	CONVEYANCE UNIT CONTROL WIRING SYSTEM POWER SOURCE WIRING ADU SIGNAL WIRING LASER CONTROL WIRING PROCESS DETECTION WIRING CONVEYANCE DRIVE WIRING AC POWER SOURCE WIRING AC RELAY WIRING	 搬送部制御東線 システム電源東線 A D U 信号東線 レーザー制御東線 プロセス検知東線 搬送駆動東線 A C 電源東線 A C 中継東線 	ABF1.G2	D D D D D D D	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
9	57AA 9023 0	REGISTRATION WIRING	レジスト東線 		D	1	



W	R	Ν	G
---	---	---	---

Key	Part No.	Descr	iption	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2 3 4 5	57AA 9005 0 57AA 9001 0 57AA 9003 0 57AA 9086 0 57AA 9002 0	IMAGE CONTROL WIRING MAIN BODY WIRING POWER SOURCE WIRING POWER SOURCE RELAY WIRING ADU CONNECTING WIRING	画像制御束線 本体束線 電源束線 電源中継束線 ADU 連結束線	A	D D D D D	1 1 1 1	



```
Page. 71
```

Key	Part No.	Description		Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 1 2 3 4	57AA 9004 0 57BA 9004 0 57AA 9006 0 57AA 9067 0 57AA 9050 0	MAIN BODY WIRING A MAIN BODY WIRING A PAPER FEED CONTROL WIRING PAPER FEED WIRING L DC INTERLOCK WIRING	本体束線 A 本体束線 A 給紙制御束線 給紙束線 L DC インターロック束線	{bizhub 750} {bizhub 600}	D D D D	1 1 1 1	
5	57AE 9362 0	FIXING RELAY WIRING 1	定着中継東線 1	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1	



	_						- 0 -
Key	Part No.	Descr	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2	57AA 9051 0 57AE 9034 0	DC POWER SOURCE WIRING 1 FIXING CONNECTING WIRING 1	DC 電源束線 1 定着連結束線 1	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	D D	1 1	
3	57AF 9031 0	AC RELAY WIRING	AC 中継束線	2,п,1,3,к C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,H,I,J, К	D	1	
4 5	57AE 9361 0 57AA 9020 0	FIXING POWERING WIRING 2 ADU CONTROL WIRING	定着給電束線 2 ADU 制御束線	B,F1,G2,H	D D	1 1	



CN805

CN810

bizhub 600/bizhub 750

P 73

```
Page. 73
```

Key	Part No.	Description		Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2	57AA 9034 0 57AA 9060 0 57AA 9061 0	FIXING CONNECTING WIRING 1 PAPER FEED WIRING 1	定着連結束線 1 給紙束線 1	A	D D	1 1	
3 4 5	57AA 9081 0 57AA 9082 0 57AA 9085 0	OPERATION UNIT WIRING 1 OPERATION UNIT WIRING 3	和和和来称 2 操作部束線 1 操作部束線 3	A,B,F1,G2	D D D	1 1	



Key	Part No.	Descr	iption	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2 3 4 5	57AA 9088 0 57AA 9091 0 57AA 9361 0 57AA 9363 0 57AA 9366 0	MOTOR DRIVE WIRING Y LAMP RELAY WIRING FIXING POWER SUPPLY WIRING 2 FIXING POWER SUPPLY WIRING 2 DC INTERLOCK WIRING 2	モータ駆動束線 Y ランプ中継束線 定着給電束線 2 定着給電束線 2 DCインターロック束線 2	AA	D D D D D	1 1 1 1	
6	57AA 9368 0	FIXING CONNECTING WIRING 2	定看連結束線 2	A	D	1	



Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AE 9003 1	POWER SOURCE WIRING	電源 束線	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	D	1	
2	57AE 9008 1	FIXING POWER SUPPLY WIRING 1	定着給電束線 1	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D	1	
3 4	57AF 9361 1 57AE 9368 0	FIXING POWER SUPPLY WIRING 2 FIXING CONNECTING WIRING 2	定着給電束線 2 定着連結束線 2	C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,I,J,K B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G	D D	1 1	
5	57AF 9082 0	OPERATION WIRING 1	操作部束線 1	2,H,I,J,K C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,H,I,J, K	D	1	



P 76

```
Page. 76
```

Key	Part No.	Descr	Description			QTY	Standard parts
1 2 3 4 5	56AA 9042 0 56AA 9066 0 56AA 9065 1 56AA 9044 0 56AA 9024 0 56AA 9014 1	APS WIRING 1 PAPER FEED RELAY WIRING 1 BY PASS FEED WIRING 2 RELAY WIRING A ADU DRIVING WIRING TONER SUPPLY WIRING	APS東線 1 給紙中継束線 1 手差し束線 2 センサ中継束線 A ADU駆動束線 トナー補給車線		D D D D D	1 1 1 1 1 1	
Ū			Т / Imeu/лел		U		





WIF	VIRING Page. 77									
Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts			
1 2 3	56AA 9064 0 56AA 9081 0 56AA 9078 0	BY PASS FEED WIRING 1 PAPER EXIT WIRING 3 PAPER EXIT WIRING 1	手差し束線 1 排紙束線 3 排紙束線 1		D D D	1 1 1				



Page. 78

Key	Part No.	Descr	iption	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1 2 3 4 5	56AA 9089 0 56AA 9090 1 56AA 9370 1 56AA 9371 1 56AA 9372 1	DRUM WIRING DRUM WIRING 1 HIGH VOLTAGE LEAD WIRE A HIGH VOLTAGE LEAD WIRE B HIGH VOLTAGE LEAD WIRE C	ドラム束線 ドラム束線 1 高圧リード線 A 高圧リード線 B 高圧リード線 C		D D D D D	1 1 1 1	
6 7 8	56AA 9363 0 56QA 9021 0 57AA 9080 0	FIXING RELAY WIRING 2 PAPER EXIT CONTROL WIRING MOTOR DRIVE WIRING X	定着中継束線 2 排紙制御束線 モータ駆動束線 X	B,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,G1,G 2,H,I,J,K	D D D	1 1 1	



Page. 79

Key	Part No.	Desc	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	56AA 9054 0	INDEX DETECTING WRING	インデックスケンチソクセン		D	1	
2	56AF 9033 0	AS RELAY WIRING 3	A C 中継束線 3	C,D1,D3,E,F2,G1,I,J,K	D	1	
3	56QA 9026 0	RELAY WIRING S	センサ中継束線 S		D	1	
4	56QA 9027 0	CONVEYANCE RELAY WIRING	搬送中継束線		D	1	
5	56QA 9035 0	HEATER RELAY WIRING	ヒータ中継束線		D	1	
6	56QA 9048 0		LD 「駆動果緑 公如吉伯 - 2		D	1	
0	56QA 9062 0		h 机 宋 禄 5 她 学 埃 知 古 娘		D	1	
o Q	560A 9003 0	HIGH VOLTAGE LEAD WIRE 1	城区快和木塚 宮田リード線 1			1	
10	560A 9071 0	HIGH VOLTAGE LEAD WIRE 2			D	1	
11	56QA 9072 0	HIGH VOLTAGE LEAD WIRE 3	高圧リード線 3		D	1	
12	56QA 9073 0	HIGH VOLTAGE LEAD WIRE 4	高圧リード線 4		D	1	
13	56QA 9074 0	HIGH VOLTAGE LEAD WIRE 5	高圧リード線 5		D	1	
14	56QA 9075 0	HIGH VOLTAGE LEAD WIRE 6	高圧リード線 6		D	1	
15	56QA 9076 0	HIGH VOLTAGE LEAD WIRE 7	高圧リード線 7		D	1	

P 80



Key	Part No.	1	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts	
1	00Z9 2001 3	SUPER SADDLE MSS-2 10/1	ミニスーハ゜ーサト゛ル MSSー2		D	1	
2	00Z9 2001 6	WIRE SADDLE LWSS-2N 10/1	ワイヤーサト ル LWSS-2N		D	1	
3	00Z9 2001 7	WIRE SADDLE LWS-2218D 10/1	ワイヤーサト゛ル LWS-2218D		D	1	
4	00Z9 2001 8	WIRE SADDLE LWS-2111Z 10/1	ワイヤーサト ゙ル LWS-2111 Z		D	1	
5	00Z9 2002 0	WIRE SADDLE LWS-1211Z 10/1	$\nabla T = \nabla T $		D	1	
6	00Z9 2002 1	WIRE SADDLE LWS-0711 10/1	ワイヤーサト ル LWS-0711		D	1	
7	00Z9 2002 2	WIRE SADDLE LWS-0511 10/1	ワイヤーサト * ル LWS-0511		D	1	
8	0079 2002 5	BUSHING SB-4025	フ [*] ッシンク [*] SB-4025		D	1	
9	0079 2002 6	BUSHING SB-2718	3/2 $3/2$		Č	1	
10	0079 2005 1	CARD SPACER KGES 8			D	1	
11	0079 2005 4	ELAT CABLE CLAMP ECR 30 VO	7 = 7 = 7 = 7 = 7 = 7 = 7 = 7 = 7 = 7 =		D	1	
12	0079 2005 7	WIRE SADDLE RWS-2T-VO 10/1	BWS = 2 T = VO D = T + b = 10 / 1		D	1	
13	0079 2006 2	SADDI E MSBS-1207	S = # S = # S = (MSBS = 1207)		C C	1	
14	0079 2006 6	WIRE SADDLE WS-1NLVO 10/1	$ \nabla T = \frac{1}{2} \nabla T = \frac{1}{$		D	1	
15	0029 2000 0	WIRE SADDLE WS-2NLV0 10/1	$\nabla A = \pi V $		D	1	
16	0029 2000 7	WIRE SADDLE WS 3N VO			D	1	
10	0029 2000 8					1	
10	0029 2007 4					1	
10	0029 2009 1		エッシットル			1	
19	0029 2009 4				l l	1	
20	0029 2009 6				I	1	
21	0029 2010 5				D	1	
22	0029 2010 6	LOCKING WIRE SADDLE LWS 2025S	ロッキングリイヤーサトル LWS 2025 S		D	1	
23	0029 2011 0	MINI SADDLE MS 0909			D	1	
24	00Z9 2012 3	MINI DOUBLE BOAR POST WPCS 10S 4			D	1	
25	00Z9 2012 5	DOUBLE WIRE SADDLE DWS 1S	タフルワイヤーサドル DWS 1 S		D	1	
26	00Z9 2110 2	NYLON CLAMP	ナイロン クランフ (HP-2 N)		С	1	
27	00Z9 2110 3	NYLON CLANP	ナイロンクランフ°(HP-3N)HEYM		С	1	
28	00Z9 2110 4	NYLON CLAMP	ナイロンクランフ ° (HP―4 N)		С	1	
29	00Z9 2130 3	WIRE SADDLE	ワイヤーサト゛ル(WSー3 N)RICH		С	1	
30	00Z9 2132 1	WIRE SADDLE LWS-1N	ワイヤー サト゛ル (LWSー1 N)		С	1	
31	00Z9 2132 3	LOCKING WIRE SADDLE 10PC	LWS-3 NS ロッキンク ゙ワイヤサト ゙ル		С	1	
32	00Z9 2132 4	LOCKING WIRE SADDOLE LWS-4N	ロッキンク゛ ワイヤー サト゛ル (LW		С	1	
33	00Z9 2137 0	EDGE SADDLE 10/1SET	エッシ゛サト゛ル(D―820)		С	1	
34	00Z9 2191 6	MINI CLAMP UAMS-05S-0	ミニクランフ ° (UAMS-05 S-0)		С	1	
35	00Z9 2193 0	MINI CLAMP	ミニクランフ゜		С	1	
36	00Z9 2193 1	MINI CLAMP MSB-1607 10/1SET	ミニ クランフ (MSB-1607)		С	1	
37	00Z9 2194 1	MINI CLAMP MSC-1609 10/1SET	ミニ クランフ ° (MSC-1609)		С	1	
38	00Z9 2194 2	MINI CLAMP MSC-1611 10/1SET	ミニ クランフ [°] (MSC-1611)		С	1	
	1						



P 81

Key	Part No.	De	Description		Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	00Z9 2199 0	MINICLAMP 10/1 SET	ミニクランフ°(10/1 SET)		С	1	
2	0079 2231 0	SK BINDER	SK = 131 PW		Č	1	
3	0070 2232 0	SK BINDER 10/1SET	$SK \gamma^* A \gamma A = (SKB - 80 M7)$		Č	1	
3	0029 2232 0		3KN + JJ = (3KB - 80 MZ)			1	
4	0029 2241 0		クッククハ フト 08432 DENI		В	1	
5	0029 2245 0	WIRING BAND 1 Y 23M			D	1	
6	0029 2247 0	WIRING BAND SG PS100	結束ハント SG PS100		D	1	
7	00Z9 2451 2	FLEXIBLE BUSH	シーサーイフッシュ(CE 012)		С	1	
8	00Z9 2510 3	LOCKING CIRCUIT BOARD SUPPORT	ロッキンク゛サホ゜ート KGLS―03		С	1	
9	00Z9 2510 6	LOCKING CIRCUIT BOARD SUPPORT	ロッキンク * サホ ° ート KGLS-06		С	1	
10	00Z9 2511 0	LOCKING CIRCUIT BOARD SUPPORT	ロッキンク * サーキット LCBS 1001		С	1	
11	00Z9 2625 7	EDGE SUDDLE EDS-1717U	(EDS-1717 U) エッシ゛サト゛ル		С	1	
12	00Z9 2625 8	EDGE SUDDLE EDS-1208U	エッシ゛サト゛ル (EDS-1208 U)		С	1	
13	0079 2625 9	EDGE SUDDLE EDS-2323U	(EDS-2323U) エッシ゛サト゛ル		C	1	
14	0070 3000 2	RELAY CONNECTOR 175694-3 10/1	$f_{1} - f_{2$		D	1	
15	57AE IC01 0				5	1	
15	STAE JOUT U	THERMOSTAT PS JIG OFFER	リーモスダッド位置次の冶具 エ	2,H,I,J,K	3	'	
16	57AA JG01 0	THERMOSTAT PS JIG UPPER	サーモスタット位置決め治具 上	A	S	1	
17	57AA JG02 0	TEMPERATURE PS JIG UPPER	温度センサ位置決め治具 上	А	S	1	
18	57AA JG03 0	TEMPERATURE PS JIG LOWER	温度センサ位置決め治具下	А	S	1	
19	0001/ -18- 1		$\Delta U = 2 \lambda \Delta^* \Lambda^* \lambda + (30 - 2 \lambda)$		Δ	1	
15	0000 10 1			K	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~		
19	000V -18- 2	CLEANING PAD	クリーニンク゛ハ゜ット. (30マイ. コク	A	Α	1	
20	000V 1001 0	GLOVES	ポリエチレン手袋		S	1	
21	000V 1002 0	DUST BAG	ダストバッグ		S	1	
22	000V 1003 0	DEVE COLLECTING SHEET	デベ回収シート		S	1	
23	000V 1004 0	COLLECTING HAND BAG	回収用手提げ袋		S	1	
24	000V 1005 0	COTTON SWAB	綿棒	A,C,D1,D3,E,F1,F2,H,I,	S	1	
				J,K			
25	7050 K002 0	OPTICS PS GAUGE	コウカ゛クイチキメシ゛ク゛		S	1	
26	00M6 -2-0 0	DOOR SWITCH JIG 2/1SET	ト゛ア スイッチシ゛ク゛(2/1セット)		S	1	
27	00VC -2-0 0	DRUM COVER	ト゛ラム カハ゛ー		С	1	
28	00VD -100 0	BLOWER BRUSH	フ゛ロワー フ゛ラシ		в	1	
29	120A 1052 1	PS IIG 2PCS/SET	PF 2 2 2 9 P 2 5 3 F 位置決め治具		S	1	
30	120X IG01 1	STAPLER PS IIG			S	1	
31	130E IG01 0	STAPLER PS IIG	スティプラー位置決め治目		S	1	
01					U	·	
Ļ							
<u> </u>							
<u> </u>							
					1		

P 82

	6	11	16	21	26	31	36
2	7	12	17	22	27	32	37
3	8 ♣	13	18	23	28	33	38
4	9	14	19	24	29	34	39
5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40

ACCESSORY PARTS

14	D	-		Desite it	01	071	
Кеу	Part No.	Desci	ription	Destinations	Class	QTY	Standard parts
1	57AA 9784 0	POWER SOURCE INDICATING LABEL	電源表示ラベル 2		С	1	
2	56RE 9741 0	GLASS CLEANING LABEL	カ゛ラスセイソウ ラヘ゛ル		D	1	
3	57AA 9790 0	PAPER FEED INDICATING SHEET	給紙表示シート		С	1	
4	56RE -147 0	WORKING TABLE	ワーキンク゛テーフ゛ル		С	1	
5	57AA 1254 0	ACCESSARIES HOLDING PANEL	付属品ホルダーパネル		С	1	
6	56QA 9777 0	CONVEYANCE INDEX LABEL	搬送指標ラベル		D	1	
7	14GA 4697 0	SOLENOID SET PART A	ソレノイドセット部材 A		С	1	
8	57AA -PM2 5	PM PARTS KIT 250K	PM パーツキット25万	Δ	Ā	1	
8	57AF -PM2 5	PM PARTS KIT 250K	PM n - y + y + 255	B C D1 D3 E E1 E2 G1 G	A	1	
Ŭ				2.H.I.J.K			
				_, , , , , , , .			
					1		1
<u> </u>						ļ	

MAINTENANCE LIST

• The items with no Page/Key numbers are not handled as spare parts.

No.	Section	PM Parts Description	Maintenance (Cvcle (K=1.000)	Parts No.	Destinations	Page/Key	Note
			QTY	Replace		2000	. ugentej	
1	EXTERNAL SECTION		1	250K	574410590		P68-6	
2			1	250K	560410570		P66-2	
3		TONER FILTER ASSY	1	250K	5744-7150		P68-12	
4	DRIVING SECTION		3	2000K	574482030		P12-20	
5	DRIVING SECTION	BY PASS FEED DRIVING GEAR/1	1	5000K	564477120		P15-13	
6			1	250K	5744 2130		D18 2	
7			1	250K	5744-2130		D17.9	
°			1	250K	377720000		1 17-0	
0			3	500K	- 56AA20700		D10 /	
9 10			1	500K	JUAA20700		F 13-4	
11			1	2000K	- 26NIA 02E12		D10 15	
10			1	2000K	2010A02010		P 19-13	
12		TONER CONTROL SENSOR ASST		2000K	50AA-9100		P19-14	
14	CHARGING SECTION		1	250K	564425030		P 13-3	
14	CHARGING SECTION		1	250K	56AA25000		P21-21	
10			1	250K	50AA25090		P21-19	
10			1	250K	50AA25400		F21-0	
10			1	250K	50AA25500		PZ1-0	
10		CHARGING CLEANING BLOCK/UP	1	250K	50AA-2531		P21-12	
19			1	250K	45AA20400		P21-4	
20		CHARGING CLEANING BLOCK/LW	1	250K	56AA-2541		P21-14	
21			1	2500K	57AA-2500		P21-1	
22	DEVELOPING SECTION	DEVELOPING UNIT	1	2500K	57AA-3001		P22-14	
23	PAPER FEED SECTION	DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION RUBBER	4	125K	25SA40960		P40-10/P42-6	
24		DOUBLE FEED PREVENTION RUBBER	4	125K	25SA40960		P40-10/P42-6	
25		PICK-UP ROLLER	4	800K	56AA-4580		P40-6	
26		PAPER FEED REGULATING BLOCK	4	5000K	56AA40380		P41-6	
27		PAPER FEED ROLLER	4	5000K	25AA40100		P40-19	
28		PAPER FEED DRIVING CLUTCH	2	2000K	56AA82012		P41-23	
29		CONVEYANCE DRIVE CLUTCH	1	2000K	57AA82030		P42-4	
30	BYPASS TRAY SECTION	LOOP ROLLER	1	5000K	56AA42510		P45-19	
31		BY PASS FEED INPUT GEAR A 24T	1	5000K	56AA77160		P45-24	
32		BY PASS FEED INPUT GEAR B 28T	1	5000K	56AA77170		P45-23	
33		PAPER SUPPLY RUBBER	1	70K	540040562		P46-26	
34		PAPER DELIVERY RUBBER	1	140K	55FA42330		P45-12	
35	TRANSFER/SEPARATION	DISCHARGING WIRE	3	500K	56AA26090		P20-13	
36		TRANSFER CLEANING ASSEMBLY	1	500K	56AA-2640		P20-5	
37		SEPARATION CLEANING ASSEMBLY	1	500K	56AA-2671		P20-4	
38		C-CLIP	2	500K	45AA20400		P20-15	
39		TRANSFER HOLDING RUBBER	3	500K	56AA17830		P20-21	
40		TRANSFER SEPARATION CHARGE UNIT	1	2000K	57AA-2600		P20-20	
41	REGISTRATION SECTION	PAPER FEED DRIVING CLUTCH	1	2000K	56AA82012		P26-24	
42		PAPER FEED SLIDE SHAFT HOLDER	1	2500K	26NA40820		P26-16	
43		REGISTRATION ROLLER	1	2500K	56QA46030		P26-29	
44	ADU	REGISTRATION SHAFT HOLDER UPPER	2	2500K	55GA75520		P58-16	
45		REGISTRATION SHAFT HOLDER LOWER	2	2500K	55GA75510		P58-14	
46		ADU REGISTRATION ROLLER LOWER UP	1	2500K	56AA51110		P58-20	
47		ADU REGISTRATION ROLLER LOWER LW	1	2500K	56QA51120		P58-21	
48		TRANSFER EXPOSURE LAMP UNIT	1	2500K	56AA-3870		P64-11	
49		CONVEYANCE DRIVE CLUTCH	2	2000K	57AA82030		P57-11/P58-10	

Section PM Parts Description Maintenance Cycle (K=1,000) Parts No. Destinations Page/Key Note No. QTY Replace 50 FUSING SECTION WEB UNIT 250K 57AE-5430 B.C.D1.D3.E.F1 P37-8 FIXING CLAW UPPER 250K 56AA54270 B,C,D1,D3,E,F1 P38-15 51 6 FIXING ROLLER UPPER (BIZHUB 750) 56AE53052 B,C,D1,D3,E,F1 P36-13 52 500K 53 FIXING ROLLER UPPER (BIZHUB 600) 500K 56AA53052 B.C.D1.D3.E.F1 P36-13 54 500K 454053391 B,C,D1,D3,E,F1 P36-16 INSULATING SLEEVE 2 55 FIXING ROLLER BEARING UPPER 2 500K 454075040 B.C.D1.D3.E.F1 P36-19 B,C,D1,D3,E,F1 56 ROLLER LOWER ASSY 500K 57AE53060 P39-5 57 FIXING CLAW LOWER 500K 56QA53200 B,C,D1,D3,E,F1 P35-15 3 58 PAPER PRESSING ROLLER 500K 56AA53071 B,C,D1,D3,E,F1 P34-6 59 METAL 1 1000K 07AA75090 B,C,D1,D3,E,F1 P34-20 60 FIXING DRIVIMG GEAR FRONT 2000K 56QA77210 B,C,D1,D3,E,F1 P36-17 57AE88040 B.C.D1.D3.E.F1 61 **TEMPERATURE SENSOR 2** 2500K P37-6 62 56AA77220 B.C.D1.D3.E.F1 P34-8 PAPER EXIT DRIVING GEAR 1 24T 5000K B.C.D1.D3.E.F1 63 PAPER EXIT DRIVING GEAR 2 18T 5000K 56AA77231 P34-13 64 FIXING INPUT GEAR 1000K 25BA77262 B,C,D1,D3,E,F1 P15-12 65 SOLENOID MOUNTING PLATE ASSY 3000K 57AE-7160 B,C,D1,D3,E,F1 P66-9 66 FIXING ROLLER BEARING LOWER 500K 57AE75040 B,C,D1,D3,E,F1 P39-10 2 67 FIXING LAMP 1 1000K 56AE83030 B,G2,H P36-15 C,D1,D3,E,F2,G P36-15 68 FIXING LAMP 1 1000K 56AF83030 69 FIXING LAMP 2 1000K 56AE83040 B,G2 P36-14 70 FIXING LAMP 2 1000K 56AF83040 C,D1,D3,E,F2,G P36-14 71 FIXING LAMP 3 1000K 56AE83050 B,G2,H P39-16 72 FIXING LAMP 3 1000K 56AF83050 C,D1,D3,E,F2,G P39-16 PAPER EXIT SECTION PAPER EXIT DRIVING GEAR 24T 73 5000K 56AA77190 P65-31 74 PAPER EXIT DRIVING GEAR UPPER 24T 5000K P65-27 56AA77980

2/2

メンテナンスリスト ●ページ / キーナンバーのないものは、アフターサービス部品ではありません。

No.	区分	PM 部品名称	サイクル	(K=1,000)	部品番号	仕向地	頁/キー	備考
			員数	交換				
1	外装部	オゾンフィルタ /M	1	250K	57AA10590		P68-6	
2		オゾンフィルタ /S	1	250K	56QA10570		P66-2	
3		現像サクションフィルタ	1	250K	57AA-7150		P68-12	
4	駆動部	搬送駆動クラッチ	3	2000K	57AA82030		P12-20	
5		定着入力歯車	1	1000K	57AA77030	A	P14-12	
6		手差し駆動ギア /1	1	5000K	56AA77120		P14-13	
7	感光体部	トナーガイドローラ	1	250K	57AA-2130		P18-2	
8		クリーニングブレード	1	250K	57AA20080		P17-8	
9		現像剤	1	250K	-			
10		ビラムボ	3	500K	564420700		D10-4	
11		ドラム	1	500K	-		110 4	
12		ドラムボソレノイド	1	2000K	26NA82513		D10-15	
12		トナーコントロールセンサ基板	1	2500K	5644-9100		D10-14	
14			1	5000K	574 77020		D12-5	
14	世命场动		1	3000K	564425020		F13 J	
16	·中· 电1型中			250K	50AA25000		F21 21 D21-10	
10		市电フィンー	1	230K	50AA25090		P21-19	
17		市电視術基督会		250K	56AA25400		P21-0	
18		市電人フィト部材		250K	56AA25380		P21-5	
19		帝電清掃ノロック/上	1	250K	56AA-2531		P21-12	
20			1	250K	45AA20400		P21-4	
21		帯電清掃フロック/下	1	250K	56AA-2541		P21-14	
22		帯電極ユニット	1	2500K	57AA-2500		P21-1	
23	現像部	現像ユニット	1	2500K	57AA-3001		P22-14	
24	給紙部	給紙コム	4	125K	25SA40960		P40-10/P42-6	
25		分離ゴム	4	125K	25SA40960		P40-10/P42-6	
26		ビックアップローラ	4	800K	56AA-4580		P40-6	
27		給紙トルクリミッタ	4	5000K	56AA40380		P41-6	
28		給紙ローラ	4	5000K	25AA40100		P40-19	
29		給紙駆動クラッチ	2	2000K	56AA82012		P41-23	
30		搬送駆動クラッチ	1	2000K	57AA82030		P42-4	
31	手差しトレイ部	ループローラ	1	5000K	56AA42510		P45-19	
32		ギア /A	1	5000K	56AA77160		P45-24	
33		ギア /B	1	5000K	56AA77170		P45-23	
34		給紙ゴム	1	70K	540040562		P46-26	
35		ピックアップローラ	1	140K	55FA42330		P45-12	
36	転写/分離極部	転写分離ワイヤ	3	500K	56AA26090	1	P20-13	
37		転写清掃部組	1	500K	56AA-2640	1	P20-5	
38		分離清掃部組	1	500K	56AA-2671		P20-4	
39		C クリップ	2	500K	45AA20400	1	P20-15	
40		転写押さえゴム	3	500K	56AA17830		P20-21	
41		転写分離極ユニット	1	2000K	57AA-2600	1	P20-20	
42	レジスト部	給紙駆動クラッチ	1	2000K	56AA82012		P26-24	
43		レジスト軸受/右	1	2500K	26NA40820		P26-16	
44		レジストローラー	1	2500K	56QA46030	1	P26-29	
45	ADU 部	レジスト軸受 /2	2	2500K	55GA75520		P58-16	
46		レジスト軸受 /1	2	2500K	55GA75510		P58-14	
47			1	2500K	56AA51110		P58-20	
48			li -	2500K	56QA51120	1	P58-21	
49		転写露光ランプュニット	1	2500K	56AA-3870		P64-11	
50		# 送取動クラッチ	2	2000K	574482030	1	P57-11/P58-10	
			-	20001	0774402000		1 07 11/1 00 10	
			1	1	1	1		
L	1	1		L	1	1	1	

2/2

No.	区分	PM 部品名称	サイクル	(K=1,000)	部品番号	仕向地	頁 / キー	備考
			員数	交換				
51	定着部	クリーニングウェブ	1	250K	57AA-5430	A	P29-22	
52		定着爪 / 上	6	250K	56AA54270	Α	P32-10	
53		定着ローラー/上	1	500K	57AA53050	Α	P28-16	
54		ローラ固定部材	1	500K	57AA53340	Α	P28-25	
55		断熱スリーブ	2	500K	57AA53320	Α	P28-14	
56		軸受	2	500K	57AA75030	Α	P28-15	
57		定着ローラー / 下	1	500K	57AA-5240	A	P27-16	
58		定着爪 / 下	3	500K	56QA53200	Α	P30-3	
59		デカーラローラー	1	500K	57AA53710	A	P28-24	
60		デカーラ軸受	4	1000K	07AA75090	A	P28-17	
61		定着ギア	1	1000K	57AA77060	Α	P28-13	
62		サーミスタ /2	1	2500K	57AA88040	A	P30-6	
63		定着排紙ギア /1	1	5000K	56AA77220	Α	P28-2	
64		定着排紙ギア /2	1	5000K	56AA77231	Α	P28-8	
65		ウェブソレノイド部組	1	3000K	57AA-7160	А	P66-9	
66	排紙部	排紙ギア /1	1	5000K	56AA77190		P65-31	
67		排紙ギア /2	1	5000K	56AA77980		P65-27	

DESTINATION

Destination No.			Destinations	V	Hz	Model No.
А	A1	JAPAN		100V	50Hz	57AA,57BA
	A2	JAPAN		100V	60Hz	57AA,57BA
	В	USA, CANADA		120V	60Hz	57AE,57BE
С		EUROPEAN TYPE		220- 240V	50/ 60Hz	57AF,57BF
D	D1	S.E ASIA TYPE	THAILAND, SRI LANKA, SINGAPORE, MALAYSIA, HONG KONG, PAKISTAN, INDIA, BANGLADESH, INDONESIA	220- 240V	50/ 60Hz	57AN,57BN
	D3	OCEANIA TYPE	AUSTRALIA, NEW ZEALAND	220- 240V	50/ 60Hz	57AN,57BN
	E	PHILIPPINES		220- 240V	50/ 60Hz	57AN,57BN
F	F1	SAUDI ARABIA		127V	60Hz	57AS,57BS
	F2	SAUDI ARABIA		220- 240V	50/ 60Hz	57AN,57BN
G	G1	C.S AMERICA		220- 240V	50/ 60Hz	57AN,57BN
	G2	C.S AMERICA		120V	60Hz	57AE,57BE
Н		TAIWAN		110V	60Hz	57AK,57BK
I		JORDAN, LEBANO ROON, UAE, BAH COAST, MOROCO	DN, SYRIA, SOUTH AFRICA, IRAQ, IRAN, N.YEMEN, CAME- RAIN, OMAN, QATAR, KUWAIT, KENYA, TUNISIA, IVORY CO	220- 240V	50/ 60Hz	57AN,57BN
J		CHINA		220- 240V	50Hz	57AG,57BG

Destination No.	Destinations	V	Hz	Model No.
К	KOREA	220- 240V	50/ 60Hz	57AN,57BN